The Perillous and moſt Unhappy

VOYAGES

of

JOHN STRUYS.

Through

Italy, Greece, Lifeland, Moſcovia, Tartary, Media, Perſia, Eaſt-India, Japan, and other Places in EUROPE, AFRICA and ASIA,

Containing,

I. *Moſt accurate Remarks and Obſervations of the diſtinct Qualities, Religion, Politie, Cuſtoms, Laws and Properties of the Inhabitants:*

II. *A due Deſcription of the ſeveral Cities, Towns, Forts and Places of Truſt, as to their Site and Strength, Fortifications by Nature, or Art, &c. with other things worthy of Note:* and,

III. *An exact Memorial of the moſt diſaſtrous Calamities which befell the Author in thoſe Parts* (viz) *by Ship-wrack, Robberies, Slavery, Hunger, Tortures, with other Incommodities and Hardſhips.*

To which are added 2 Narrativs ſent from Capt. *D. Butler*, relating to the Taking in of *Aſtrachan* by the *Coſacs.*

Illuſtrated with divers curious Plates, firſt deſigned and taken from the Life by the Author himſelf.

Rendred out of *Nether-dutch* by

JOHN MORRISON.

LONDON,
Printed for Samuel Smith, at the Princes Arms in *S. Pauls Church-yard*
MDC LXXXIII.

The TRANSLATOR to the READER.

Ingenuous Reader,

HISTORY, which is the *Light of Truth* and *Life of Memory*, hath two Eies, viz, *Chronology* and *Topography*: That, giving Evidence of Things and Actions as to the Time, This, as to the Place. "Among "Hiſtories (ſaith an incomparable Doctor) Itineraries "have the preheminence, in which we have the "moſt memorable Things and Events faithfully related *ex αὐτοψία*, "(as he phraſes it) or, from Eie-wittneſs: The Utility and Certainty whereof may be meſured from the Reputation and Conſcience of the Relater.

AND theſe, as they are more delectable to read, becauſe ever interſperſed with Actions as well as Things, ſo they are more to be valued in reſpect of their Credit. *Thucydides* that moſt excellent Hiſtorian was highly accounted of by *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, *Cicero*, *Fabius*, and others famous in the World; but abov all by *Demoſthenes* the noble Orator of *Athens*, who to make his works the more familiar to himſelf, is affirm'd by *Lucian* to have copied them 8 times over; and all this for his Faithfullneſs and Credit, being himſelf a chief Captain in the *Peleponeſian* Warrs, and an Eie-wittneſs from the Beginning to the End. Even ſo is *Strabo* juſtly preferred before *Pomponius Mela*, *Ptolomy* and other *Geographers*, for that he is ſaid to have written about no Place but what himſelf had ſeen, as partly may be gathered out of thoſe words of *Blancan* * *Strabo eruditiſſimè ac fusè orbis ſitum, cujus magnam partem peragraverat, deſcripſit.* And what a veneration has the World for that of *R. Benjamin*, the famous *Iewiſh* Geographer? not onely for his elegant manner of deſcribing Things memorable and worthy of Remark (in which, ſaith *Neander*, he was ſecond to none) but that

* Blancan. *in* Chronol. Mathem.

he took little or nothing upon Credit, having himself travailed thrô the moſt conſiderable part of the World, and conſequently (with the help of his great Judgment and Experience) able to correct the Miſtakes of others, who had made too bold Conjectures. Experience every Age makes a *new* Diſcovery of *old* Errors, and *Mercator* often givs *Ptolomy* the Lie.

——— *Ætas ſemper aliquid adportet novi.*

——— *Seris venit uſus ab annis.*

SUCH Obſervations as pertain to various Regions and Diverſity of Countreys may alſo ſeem to giv a more general Satisfaction, and to be of greater Utility than Deſcriptions peculiar to one place; *Semper laudata fuit hiſtoria quæ non unius regionis cancellis conſtringitur; ſed quam latè terrarum termini extenduntur, expatiatur.* They are *L'Empereur's* Words.

BUT as it is not needfull that I ſhould make many inſtances of ſuch Obſervations in general, as to their Uſefullneſs, ſo I ſhall not weary my Readers Patience further than what I ſhall ſay to theſe in particular, which is the only reaſon I have to uſe the formality of a Preface, that might as well have bin left out, if ſom few reaſons had not urg'd me to the contrary, but chiefly to anticipate what I preſage ſom will object againſt them, aſwell as in conſideration of what a Great Man in the laſt Age ſaid, * *Non tutum eſt ullum emittere Librum niſi ſatellitio munitum*: as if he would ſay, *'Tis not ſafe to put forth any Book unleſs guarded with a File of Muſquetiers.*

OUR Traveller without doubt will fruſtrate the expectation of ſom, in not giving a more ample account of every Countrey he has ſeen, by an accurate noting down of the Religion, Politie, particular Rites and Cuſtoms of the Inhabitants, nor making a further ſcrutiny as to the Antiquity and Original Deſcent and Offſpring of the People as ſom have don. 'Tis undeniably ſo, for I find him more buſy in recording the

* *Eraſm. de Utilit. Collog.*

the circumſtances of his own perſonal condition, and what befell him in remote Places, than remarking the State and Quality of the Land and People, nor do I hold it conſiſtent with the Duty of him that would be a faithfull Interpreter to do that Office for him; notwithſtanding the Freedom ſom has aſſumed in another Language (or ſhall I ſay, Another Work) to leav out more than 70 intire Paragraphs, in ſeveral places thô the Book, and ſupplied the vacancy by tranſcribing out of other Journals, which I am confident is not to be found either in the Authors Autograph, or Printed Copy.

THE Gentleman's reaſon, I conceiv, was becauſe the Matter of what he thought good to ommit was not ſo ſolid, containing ſom homely Paſſages not to be taken notice of, and conſequently would not endure ſuch ſoaring Language, as things more ſublime and important would, for, *Ex quovis ligno non fit Mercurius.* Nor had it bin leſs warrantable for me to have don the like, and tacidly to have paſſed over ſuch humble Matter as would rather challenge an expreſſion of homely Sentences than feſtivity of Style, which the friendly Reader will find I 'me no where guilty of.

THIS Journal, I am bound to ſay (notwithſtanding the main Advantages our Author wanted, both in Eſtate and Parts, which you'l readily inferr no Traveller ought to be without, that would bring his Obſervations upon the public Theater of the World) have nevertheleſs found a gremious entertainment amongſt all ſorts of Men, being already publiſhed in ſeveral Languages: nor can I find any reaſon to fear, but, as it is for a more univerſal Peruſal taught to ſpeak *Engliſh*, 't will be as acceptable to our own Nation, as it has bin abroad in other Countreys, where they are in general more inclined to read Fictions and Fables, than true Philology, and ſuch as may juſtly be convinced by that of an obſcene, but witty * Poet:

Qui

* Martial. *in his* 10*th Book of Epigrams.*

Qui legis Oedipodem calligantèmque Thyeſtem,
Colchidas & Scyllas, quid niſi monſtra legis?
Quid te vana juvant miſeræ ludibria chartæ?
Hoc lege, quod poſsis dicere jure, Meum eſt.

OBSCENE indeed inclusivly, but justifiable enough in this, for, as the great *Casaubon* in his modest Answer to the Epistle of Cardinal *Du Perron* saith, *E felle mero mel merum interdum exiſtit*, so there is nothing so corrupt or putrid, but that somthing sound may be extracted from it.

CERTAINLY the Discrepance of Mens Fancies must be notedly great, if the Price and Perusal of this small Volum should seem too great and laborious to the Buyer and Reader, which has cost the Author so much Time and Pains in Travail, for the greatest part of Six and Twenty years, during which time he has bin attended with continual Perils on the one hand and unspeakable Sufferings on the other: by Land in perpetual Jeopardy of his Person for Robbers, Cannibals, Ravenous and venemous Animals; by Sea for Pyrats, Shipwracks, &c. and by both, subject to Hunger, Thirst, Scorching Heats, Colds, Sickness, and other unavoidable Extremities and gravaminous Solitudes; besides the lamentable Condition of Slavery, in which I found him both among *Turks*, *Tartars* and *Persians*, yet after all returned home in safety, and at this present here in *London*.

IT is a thing no less customary than unmannerly among som, who will hold all things for forged and false, except what themselvs see, and would have all themselvs say to be received for Oracles. 'Tis not long ago that a young Sycophant (and one perhaps, who thought himself somthing prejudic'd) affirmed that the Pourfiles of those *Persian* Cities and others, were but imaginary Fictions, and that, I beleev, because the Etcher had set the Letters [*In.*] for [*Invenit*] after his Name, as who should say, but that every Engraver and Etcher understood so much

much Latin, as rightly to distinguish between *Pinxit*, *Invenit*, *Sculpsit*, *Fecit* and *Excudit*, which they often use promiscuously for each other: but besides my knowledge of our Travailers ability in Drawing, I have other reasons to give credit to him, as to his faithfull Delineation of those Places, which, for this time being so narrowly circumscribed, I am forc'd to ommit.

THE first Voyage perhaps may not afford such satisfaction as som will expect, and by consequence give the Reader no Appetite to go forward; but he whose leisure will permit him to go forward, will in the 2d and 3d Voyages find amends for what is defectiv in the first.

IT was intended also to publish his 4th. Voyage with this, which has not as yet bin printed in any Language, but finding the Authors leisure not answerable to those Intentions, we shall deferr it for the next Edition, if this prove but so acceptable, as to give occasion for another: which we know is not usual with Books of this nature, that serv no more than for once reading, and not for a dayly recourse.

IN the first Voyage we find him imbarqued for *Genoa* in a new Ship, which, with another, was built for that State at *Amsterdam* in the year 1647. From *Genoa* he went to the *East-Indies*, where by the way he gives a very exact Description of the *Salt-Islands*, *Sierra Liones*, *Madagascar*, *Syam*, (with the most horrible Massacre committed upon the greatest Personages in that Kingdom) then proceeds on his Voyage for *Iapan*, where he gives you an account of that Island and *Formosa*.

IN the second the most remarkable is the Ingagement between the *Venetians* and the *Turks*, by Sea, in which the former fought a signal Victory. In this Voyage I also find a very accurate Description of the *Greek* Islands, as they are now peopled, with several Footsteps of Antiquity.

IN the third, and last as yet extant, he goes to *Moscovia* to serve the *Czar* aboard a new Ship which was built on the *Wolga*, where by the

the way he gives you a Deſcription of *Liſeland* and its Inhabitants, as alſo *Moſcovia* and the Imperial City *Moſcou*; then proceeding forward he comes at laſt to the *Wolga*, where ſetting ſail for *Aſtrachan*, notes punctually what every day occurred. Arriving there he gives you an account of the Inſurrection and Proceeding of the *Coſac*-Rebels, and the occaſion why he and his Company fled over the *Caſpian* Sea; with the great hardſhip they ſuffered till they got aſhoar, where beſides many cruel Torments were made Slaves by the *Tartars*, in which condition he continued till he was redeemed by order of the Governour and Council for the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company at *Batavia*, whither he travailed thrô *Perſia*, and being by order of the ſaid Company ſent home aboard the Ship *Europa*, which was taken by the *Engliſh* in the laſt *Dutch* Wars; he himſelf was ſent for *Ireland* with about 300 more of his Countreymen. Where arriving imbarques himſelf for *England*, and ſo home.

St. Albans *I. M.*
July 30, 1683.

A TABLE,

Or Summary Comprehenſion

Of every Paragraph in the Three

VOYAGES

of

JOHN STRUYS.

The FIRST VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

THe firſt Occaſion of the Authors going to Travel. A Sea-Storm. Arrival at *Gibralter*, at *Genua*, with it's Deſcription, at *Velez Mulaga*. Reſcontre with 9 Corſairs of *Algiers*. Arrival at *Boa Viſta*. A Deſcription of the *Salt Iſlands*, *Ilha Mayo*, *Ilha del Fuogo*, *St. Jago* and *Ilha del Brava*. Proper Climat of thoſe Iſles. Arrival at *Sierra Liones*; The great Incivilitie of the King, allured to come aboard, fettered, and afterward thrown over board, A Deſcription of *Sierra Liones*. Pag. 1.

CHAP. II.

Arrival at *Madagaſcar*. The remarkable Chance of the Commander, meeting with the King. The Death of the Vice-Commander *Benning*, and the diſorders thence ariſing. Both the Ships put in a Fighting Poſture, and ready to give each other Battel. *Voogt* yields, and is fetter'd. The deſcription of *Madagaſcar*; it's Fertility, Store of Cattel; Goodneſs of their Sheep; Many kinds of Monkeys. Nature of the Inhabitants, Form, Habit, Houſe-keeping, Marriages and Funerals. Their impious cruelty ever their Children. Their Religion, Policy and Warrs. 12.

CHAP. III.

The Author's departure from *Ma-*

da-

dagaſcar, Arrival at *Sumatra*. Four Prizes belonging to *Atchin* taken. The beaſtly Senſuality of ſome of the Ships-company upon a Woman. The Ship whereon the Author was, taken as Prize, and brought up to *Batavia*. The men plundered, and their Cheſts broken up. The Author admitts himſelf into the Service of the *East India* Company, his Voyage to *Siam*. An accurate deſcription of that Kingdom. 24.

CHAP. IV.

The nature and way of Living of the *Siamers*. Their ſeveral Trades and Profeſſion. Travail of their Merchants. Government and Politie. The great State of the Emperour, and Magnificency of his Throne: his Cavalcade, and manner of shewing himſelf to his People. The Riches of his Veſſels, & the Elephants ſerved in Gold and Silver. The Wars about the white Elephant, againſt *Ava* and *Pegu*. 29.

CHAP. V.

The Revenues and Treaſury of the King of *Siam*. The Religious zeal of thoſe Kings in building of Temples, and Houſes for pious uſes. Soldiers without pay. The great Slavery and Charges of the Citizens and Plebeians, their Obedience, and Liberality in Devotion. Ample Revenues of the Spiritual. Habit and Function of their Prieſts. The Multitude and monſtrous bigneſs of ſome of their Idols. Their Ceremonies in Worſhip, wherein congruous to thoſe of the *Romiſh* Religion. 34.

CHAP. VI.

Good materials for building in *Siam*. Their manner of Houſe-keeping, and entertainment of Friends. Neatneſs and cleanlineſs in their Houſes and Bodies. Their way of dreſſing themſelves, both men and Women. Strange Contracts of Matrimony. Early marriage. Education of their Children. Learning and learned Men had in great veneration. Rites about their deceaſed. Urbanity in their Converſation. The great Affection of the Emperour towards Strangers &c. 37.

CHAP. VIII.

The Sieur *van Muyden* invited to the Exequies of the Princeſs. A ſtately Scaffold erected for the Solemnity of the day. A magnificent and ſumptuous Altar. Ornaments of the Corps. The Train attending the Ceremony: Order of the ſame. Money thrown among the people. Stages erected for the Almoſners. Artificial Fireworks. The vaſt Charges of this Preparation. 41.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

The Body of the Princeſs burnt. A remarkable token, whereby, it was concluded that ſhe was poyſoned. The Kings fury againſt all the Domeſtics of the Princeſs, who are committed to cuſtody. The cruel Puniſhment of the ſuſpected Parties. A ſtrange way to find out the guilty. Elephants uſed as Executioners. Fifty men and Women executed in one day, ſome by Elephants, others buried in the Earth, to the Head, where they are ſuffered to ſtarve. A Young Lady with her Brother taken and diſpatched. Their Candour, and free reſolvedneſs to die. 44.

CHAP. X.

The proud, and blaſphemous Titles of the King of *Siam*. The great Preparations uſed to aſſwage the Waters of the *Ganges*. 50.

CHAP. XI.

Departure from *Siam*. They take a Junk. The *Cambodiers* put in a Ship without Rudder or Sails. Arrival at *Formoſa*. The Junk and all the Men caſt away. A Deſcription of *Formoſa*, with an account of its Products, and the Nature of it's Inhabitants, as alſo their Houſes, Habit and Cuſtomes. 54.

CHAP. XII.

The Author departs from *Formoſa*. His arrival at *Japon*. The Deſcription of *Nangueſaque*. The Condition of the Town. A dreadfull fire at *Nangueſaque*. The Stature, Nature, Habits, and Cuſtoms of the *Japoneezes*. Departure from *Japon*. Arrival at *Formoſa* the ſecond time. Their return to *Siam*, where they take in Elephants. The Author beat with a ropes-end at the Main-maſt, and why. His return for *Holland*, and End of the firſt Voyage. 59.

The SECOND VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

AN account of the Authors undertaking his Second Voyage. A great Sea Storm. His arrival at *Yarmouth*, and at *Leghorn*, with a Deſcription of that Town; as alſo of *Piça* and *Florence*, and laſtly of *Bologne*. 65.

CHAP. II.

The Author departs from *Bologne*,

and arrives at *Ferrara*. Assail'd by a Robber: His Arrival at *Venice*, where he lists himself in the Armade. He arrives at *Sante*. A great storm between *Milo* and *Argentero*. The Ship called *The Golden Cock* split upon Rocks. A sad Shipwrack. A Woman wonderfully sav'd. The Authors arrival at *Candia*: Departs with a *Tartan* to the *Venetian* Armade. Their Appearance before *Mytilene*, where they obtain much Spoil and Provision; at last assaulted by 200 of the *Turkish* Chevalrie. Their Encounter, and return aboard the Fleet. 73.

CHAP. III.

The Authors Arrival at *Sante Monte*, and at *Troy*. The Galleys of *Bey* come with the *Turkish* Armade. An *English* Ship ingaged with the *Turks*, defends her self manfully, and at last burned. The Author made Slave, and put in a Galley, with an old *Russ*: Consult to escape: Betake themselves to Water, and are discovered. The *Russ* shot with an arrow. They come both to the *Venetian* Armade. 78.

CHAP. IV.

The fugitiv Slaves brought before the General. The manner of their Encouraging their Men. Number of the *Venetian* Ships and Galleys. Names of the Commanders and Chiefrains. The *Malteezes* joyn with the Armade. The *Turkish* Fleet sail up, endeavour to break through, and are hindred by the *Malteezes*. The *Turks* throw up two Batteries. A dreadfull Engagement, and playing off the Cannon for three days together. The *Turks* begin to settle. The Stability and valour of the *Venetians*. The *Turks* loose their Courage. 82.

CHAP. V.

The Wind turns in favour of the *Venetians*. The *Turks* flee and are obstructed. The brave Courage of the Galleys of *Bey*. General *Marcello* kill'd. The manly Behaviour of *Lazaro Mocenigo*, who looses one eie. Two *Dutch* Ships, to wit, Het Wapen van Nassau, and Den David en Goliath, blown up with their own Powder. The Turkish *Capitana* yields. The General and disorderly Flight of the *Turks*. Their total overthrow, and loss on both sides. 87.

CHAP. VI.

The Siege of *Tenedos*. The two Castles surrendred. A description of *Tenedos*. *Lemnos*, it's Situation, and taking in. The present state of *Greece*. *I. Struys's* arrival at *Pathmos* and *Samos*. Taken by the Turks with 6 of his Companions, and soon after ransom'd. 90.

CHAP. VII.

The Author admitts himself again into

into the Service of the *Venetians*. Arrival at *Corfu* with an account of it's Strength, Bulwarks, Sconces and other Fortifications, near, and about the City. Fertility of the Iſland. Arrival at *Cephalonia*, it's Fertility, Situation and Strength. Arrival at *Sante*, an account of its Strength, its Villages, Scarcity of freſh Water. Arrival at *Cerigo*: Situation of that Iſland, Reliques, or Ruins of the Temple of *Venus*. 96.

CHAP. VIII.

The Author's arrival at *Sante*, or *Xante*, It's admirable Strength, Villages, and great Scarcity of freſh Water. Their Dough for bread kneaded with Wine in ſtead of Water. Arrival at *Cerigo*; Situation of that Iſland. Reliques of the Temple of *Venus*. Arrival at *Candia*, with it's Situation. A Deſcription of the Citie, as to it's Strength, Inhabitants, the moſt eminent Buildings and Churches, Climat, Soil, Vintage, Fruits, Vegetables, Cattel, Fowl, Plenty of Silk and other Commodities, as alſo the modern Habit and Attire of the *Candians*. A Deſcription of *Standia*. The famous Fight between *Lazaro Mocenigo* and the Tributary Auxiliaries of *Argiers*, *Tripoli*, *Theunis* and *Zoëli*. The Fort of *Zouaſchi* taken in by the Proveditor *Mocenigo*. The *Turks* attacque *Tenedos*, but in vain. The *Turkiſh* Armada come out of the *Dardanelli*. The Beginning of the Ingagement. The *Turkiſh* Emperour comes with an Army of 20000 Horſe, and 80000 Foot down to the ſhore, where from a high Tent he ſees the Ingagement. The *Turks* looſe their Poſts, and Sail off. The incomparable valour of *Mocenigo* and *Bembo*, who are unluckily kill'd by the fall of a Sail-yard. Their Galley blown up with 400 Men. The Loſs and Gains both on ſides. 98.

CHAP. IX.

The *Venetian* Armade appear before *Napoli di Malvazia*, where they attack a Redoubt, which is ſurrendred. The City treats with the Govèrnour. The Fleet appears before *Santorini*; 2 terrible Earthquakes: Wine good and cheap. The Author ſent aſhoar to buy Proviſion. The Fleet under Sail. The *Turks* come upon the Iſland, & the Author in danger of being made Slave; hidden by the *Greeks*, and brought to *Embro* with a Barque. Arrival before *Nicſia*, The Ruins of Apollos Temple. Arrival at *Metelino*, it's Situation and Strength; plenty of Marble, Cypres wood, Wine, and Cattel. *Nicſia* the Winter-haven for the *Turkiſh* Galleys. *S. Georgia de Scyro. Delos*: Reliques and Ruins of Heatheniſh Temples and Images of *Apollo*, *Minerva* and *Diana*. The Caſtle of *Tenos* blown up with it's own Powder. The Iſland *Milo*,

it's Situation, Strength, Harbours, Inhabitants, Religion, ſtore of Proviſion and Victuals. The *Dutch* Ship **De Princes**, ſprings a leak. The Author goes aboard a Privateer, leavs her and goes for *Holland*. 106.

The THIRD VOYAGE.

CHAP. I.

THe Author undertakes his Third Voyage for *Moſcovia*. The Names of the Officers and others employed with him on that Journey and Voyage. Their Difficulties in going out. Arrival at *Riga*, with a Deſcription of the Town, and their Departure from thence. The Nature of the *Lifelanders* their Houſes, Cuſtomes, Condition, Religion, and quaint form of an Oath. Arrival at *Wolmar*, with a Deſcription thereof. Their difficult Travels through *Lifeland*. 113.

CHAP. II.

Arrival at *Pitſiora*, and at *Pletskow*, A ſtrange Paſſage of a hungry Bear. The Spindle-bone or Shank of a Giant. The Pleaſant Proſpects and delightſom Landſhips of *Moſcovia*. Arrival at *Novogorod*. The Antiquity and former Glory of that City; how taken by the *Moſcovian*, and Fortified by the *Swede*. Their Departure from *Novogorod*, Reſcounter with a Company of Robbers, and Arrival at *Colomna*. Great abundance of Wolvs. Coldneſs of the Climat. 120.

CHAP. III.

A Quarrel with the *Ruſſians*, Eight *Dutch* Merchants murthered in a Wood. Arrival at *Tweer*, Another Reſcountre with a Party of Robbers. Money ſent from *Moſcou*. Purſuit of their Journey. They enter *Moſcou*. Their good Reception. The great Bear-Garden. Wolf and Bear-baiting. Death of the Empreſs, and the pompous Exequies. 125.

CHAP. IV.

Situation of *Moſcou*. It's Diviſions and Wards. *Kitay-Gorod* the firſt City. The great number of Churches and Cloyſters. High Towers. Noted Humility and Obedience of a *Ruſſian* Gentleman. The greateſt Bell in the World at *Moſcou*. The Church of *Jeruſalem*, *Zaar-gorod* the ſecond, *Skoredous* the third, and *Strelitza Slowoda* the fourth Town. Great number of Houſes within the City *Moſcou*. A great Fire, whereby many Houſes

ſes within the City *Moſcou*. A great Fire, whereby many Houſes were conſumed. The coldneſs of the Climate. Diſeaſes proper to the Countrey. Fertility and Products of the Land. 130.

CHAP. V.

The Form, Nature and Propertie of the *Ruſſes*. Their ordinary Diet. Their great eſteem of Brandy. Their ordinary Habit. Women uſe painting of their Faces. The manner of their Marriages, and nuptial Solemnities. 137.

CHAP. VI.

Divorcement among the *Ruſſes* and the ſundry occaſions thereof. Their Superſtition about Cleanneſs and Uncleanneſs. Baths, and the uſe of the ſame. The Hardineſs and patience of the *Ruſſes* in ſuffering the Extremities of Heat, or Coldneſs. Some ſtrange cuſtomes among the *Ruſſes*. Solemnities at the Burial of their Dead. 146.

CHAP. VII.

The Religion and Church-Government of the *Ruſſians*. The Patriarch and his Office. Of their Sacraments, &c. 151.

CHAP. VIII.

The Juriſdiction of the *Czaar*, his Titles, Revenues and ſtrict Juſtice. 155.

CHAP. IX.

Celebration and Solemnity of Palm-Sunday. The Departure of the Author out of *Moſcou* to *Aſtrachan*. Heads and Officers. They ſet Sail. A heavy ſtorm. Arrival at *Niſen-Novogorod*; Plenty of Proviſion at *Niſen*. A deſcription of the famous River *Wolga*. Beginning of the *Cerem*- or *Crim-Tartars* Their Cuſtoms and Nature. Their Idolatrie. Ceremonies about the Dead. Their Habit, Polygamy, &c. 175.

CHAP. X.

The Ship ſet faſt upon a Foord. The great Utility of the Linden-tree. Some of the Company drowned. Fertility and excellent Soil of the Banks of the *Wolga*. Arrival at *Caſan*. *Caſan* taken in by the *Ruſſes*. The *Caſan-Tartars* fight the *Ruſſes*. The *Ruſſian* Army flee. *Moſcou* taken in. The *Czar* becomes Tributary to the *Tartars*. The good Conduct and valour of the Governour of *Reſan*, who reſtores the *Czar* and the Empire to it's former Freedom. 165.

CHAP. XI.

Departure from *Caſan*. The ſtrange manner of taking Fiſh. Cities demoliſhed by *Tamerlan*. The Ship run faſt aground. The Salt-Pans, and manner of making Salt. Difficult Sailing in the *Wolga*. A New City built for defence againſt Robbers and Pyrates.

rates. The great abundance of Liquirice about *Aſtrachan*, The Land of the *Calmuc-Tartars*. 173.

CHAP. XII.

Situation of *Aſtrachan*. he Inhabitants. How *Aſtrachan* became ſubject to the *Czaar*. Strange manner of Tents, or Cottages. Proviſion very cheap and Brandy dear. A Deſart affoarding good Salt; and a ſtrange kind of Fruit. The Form and Nature of the *Nagayan Tartars*. Their Habit, manner of Life and Houſe-keeping. Their Trades and way of earning money, Horſe-fleſh, Mares-milk and Blood in great eſteem by them. 177.

CHAP. XIII.

Diviſions and Limits of the *Coſacks*. Off ſpring of *Radzin*. The Reaſon of his Revolting. The firſt beginning of his Inſolency. His treacherous Cruelty: The Governour of *Aſtrachan* makes preparation againſt him. He betakes himſelf to flight and reconciles himſelf with the *Czar*. The Incredible Riches and coſtly Attire of the *Coſacks*, The Perſon of *Stenko Radſin* deſcribed. The meeting and diſcourſe of the Author with *Stenko Radzin*. He keeps a *Perſian* Princeſs for his Concubine, which he throws with his own hand into the *Wolga*. His Puniſhment for Adultery. 183.

CHAP. XIV.

Stenko returns back and is followed by many *Ruſſes*, but oppoſed by an Order from *Pſoforoski*, which *Stenko* diſobeys. He returns again with a greater Power. The *Waywode* of *Aſtrachan* ſends out a Fleet againſt him, which ſhamefully yields. The Officers murthered. A great Perplexity at *Aſtrachan*. Power and Aw of *Stenko*. His cruelty and Pride. His Legates are devoured of Dogs in *Perſia*. *Kumuskinka* ſurrendred by Treachery 189

CHAP. XV.

The Animoſities and Tumults in *Aſtrachan*. *Stariza* taken in by the *Coſacks*. A Fleet ſent out againſt them. The *Coſacks* win *Tzarwojar*. The *Ruſſian* Fleet yields to the *Coſaks*. The great Inſolency and boldneſs of the Mobile of *Aſtrachan*. The valour of the *Waywod* or Governour. Adviſed to abſcond or abſent himſelf, which is put in practice. 193

CHAP. XVI.

They fall down the *Wolga*, and miſs their Courſe. They touch at *Oetzjoege*. The ſtrange manner of fiſhing of the *Bieloege*. The great plenty of *Cavear*. They meet with great difficulty to gain the *Caſpian* Sea which at laſt they get. A deſcription of the Iſland *Satyry Boggere*, Tall Reeds grow all along the Coaſt. A dreadfull Tempeſt. The Golden Bay. heir meeting with a *Tartarian* Bark. A deſcription of *Terki*. The Begin-

nin

ning of the *Circas-Tartars*; Their Perſons and Complexions deſcribed. Their Habit and way of Living. Of their Women, their Habit, Humours and Inclinations. Their Idolatry. 198.

CHAP. XVII.

The Author and his Company err in their Courſe. They meet with a *Coſak*-Bark. A great Tempeſt. The Beginning and Limits of the *Dageſtan-Tartars*; Their Poſture or Frame of Body, Habit and Way of Living. They are great Plagiaries. The Barrenneſs of the *Dageſtan* Mountains. Another great Tempeſt. The Shallop run aſtrand and is ſpied by the *Tartars*, who plunder them. The ſtrange way of electing the *Dageſtan* Kings. They are aſſailed by another Company who raviſh the Woman in preſence of her Husband, and convert them all to Slaves. The Author tortured to detect his Companions, which he manfully endures. They are brought before the *Oſmyn*, and chained. 206.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Captivs take their leavs of each other. The great Orchard near *Tzurbag*. Their Arrival at *Urman*. Situation of Mount *Ararat*. An accidental meeting with ſome Carmelite Friars. The Author inſiſted upon to undertake a Cure of a Rupture, which with much perſwaſion, he promiſes to do. His aſcent up the Mountain *Ararat* to the Hermites Cell, who was his Patient, which he performs in 5 days time. He undertakes and cures the Rupture. The Copy of an Atteſtation given him by the ſaid Hermite in barbarous Latin. His return down. 212.

CHAP. XIX.

The Author put in Chains again: He is inſiſted upon to renounce the *Chriſtian* Faith and become *Mahometan*; Divers means to that end put in practiſe by way of Trial. The great gain of warm Baths. The Author taken out of Chains. He is ſold to a *Perſian*. The Situation of the *Caſpian* Sea. Great Whirlpools in the Bay of *Gilan*. A diſcourſe about the Silk-trade. A further Deſcription of the *Caſpian* Sea, &c. 218.

CHAP. XX.

A Deſcription of *Derbent*: it's Walls. The *Sultans* Court. Very old Ruins. Divers Watch-towers. Multiplicity of Sepulchrets without *Derbent*. Their Slave-market. The Author ſold again. His Patron married with a *Poliſh* Woman and runs into Danger of his Life. The Intention of his Patroneſs in running away from her Husband and taking the Author with her. Two of Mr. *Struys*'s Companions come to *Derbent*. How they made their eſcape from the *Tartars*.

The great Inclination of the Sultan of *Derbent* to the *Hollanders*. A Device put in practiſe to ſet one of the Authors Companions at Liberty. The Prince takes the Wife of *Brak* for his own. *Brak* makes his eſcape. 225.

CHAP. XXI.

The great difficulty of getting Wood without *Derbent*. The Author and his company aſſailed by Robbers two ſeveral times. The kind nature of his Patron. They travel to *Scamachy*. The Hill *Barmach*. The Pit of *Naphta*. Arrival at *Scamachy*. A Deſcription of that City. A great Earthquake at *Scamachy*. Abundance of men misfortunatly killed. The Author meets with 2 Franciſcan Friars: A rehearſal of ſome part of their Diſcourſe: their Zeal to get him out of the Service of a *Mahometan*. Advice given him by his Patron. He comes firſt into the Service of the *Poliſh* Ambaſſadour. 235.

CHAP. XXII.

The Hatred and Churliſhneſs of the Ambaſſadour againſt the *Poliſh* Gentry. A *Poliſh* Gentleman murthered in his bed. The pitiful caſe and condition of the *Polanders*, who were in the Retinue of the Legate. The Ambaſſadours Greedineſs. He indeavours to turn *Mahometan*, The Authors intention to make his eſcape. Captain *Butler* and others of his old acquaintance come to *Scamachi*, where they do what they can for the Captivs. The Ambaſſadors Brother goes for *Iſpahan*, where he deſires to be admitted as a *Mahometan*, but is not received, *William* the Maſters Mate of the Ship *Eagle* comes to *Scamachi*. A great Earth-quake. Conſecration of Water among the *Armenian* Chriſtians. A great concourſe of People, and remarkable Ceremonies.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Ambaſſadours Siſter goes to *Tafflis*, and with her the *Poliſh* Chirurgeon. The Corps of an *Indian* burn'd with a Chriſtian ſhe-ſlave. The Woman having taken in a Potion to provoke ſleep, is alſo caſt into the furnace. Two Men murthered at *Scamachi*, and a tumult thereupon. Strange Ceremonies about the Dead. The *Chans* ſon is preſented with a *Kolotan*, or *Robe of Favour*, and one of the Kings Wives. A man ſtruck dead with ſtaves. A fearful Earth-quake. The *Chan* alſo receives a *Robe of Favour*, and a Wife. Pompous Solemnities at the delivery of the ſame. He receives the Princeſs. New Tidings from *Ruſſia*. The Ambaſſador commanded by the King of *Perſia* to return for *Poland*; but makes his excuſe. The miſerable Eſtate of the *Poliſh* Gentry. Theft committed in the Ambaſſadors Palace. A man tortured that was innocent.

nocent. The *Poliſh* Chirurgeon fortunatly married at *Tafflis*. Another Corps of an *Indian* burned with a living Woman. The great kindneſs of *Hadſy Biram* to the Author. His bad entertainment with the Ambaſſador. 249.

CHAP. XXIV.

The manner of Celebrating New years day among the *Perſians*. Advice from *Boynak*: from *Derbent*. Fire-balls fall from the Sky. Five Hundred beautiful *Damoſels* ſought up for the *Scach*, or *Sophy* of *Perſia*. A quaint mean by which a Merchant ſaves his Daughter. The Author writes to *Smarna*. A Chieftain of the *Coſaks* brought into *Scamachy*; and is compelled to carry 3 of his Companions Heads in a Bag to *Iſpahan*, where he is upon promiſe of detecting ſomthing of weight ſet at Liberty. A *Perſian* murthered by a drunken *Georgian*. The murtherer executed by the Brother of the murthered Party. A horrible Self-murther committed by ſeveral Perſons at a Wedding. A great Feaſt celebrated in memory of *Hoſſeyn* the 3d Son of *Ali*. A terrible Earth-quake. The *Chans* Son dies and is interred. 257.

CHAP. XXV.

News from *Aſtrachan*. A Woman and Adultereſs taken in the Fact. A Young Gentleman caned to death by Order of the Prince and Complaint of his Father. Another put to the ſame death. One of the Authors Companions goes for *Iſpahan*, Hail-ſtones as big as Eggs. The Author and a *Venetian* entertained in an *Armenian* Monaſtery. A Woman taken in Adultery, for which ſhe is ſurrendred up to the Will and Power of her Husband, who fleas her alive, nails up her Skin upon the Wall, and throws her Carcaſe out into the ſtreet. The great Jealouſie of the Perſians. The male Children about the Court gelded. The great Slave-market at *Scamachy*. The unnatural cuſtom of the *Georgians*, The Ambaſſadour receives a Charge to depart. 267.

CHAP. XXVI.

A dreadfull Tempeſt. Great Balls of Fire fall upon the Earth. A moſt fearful Deluge, whereby Houſes, Men and abundance of Cattel are carried away. The *Chan* receivs another *Robe of Favour*. The Offerings of the *Banjans*, for the Fowl and Fiſh. The Religious Exerciſe of the *Perſian* Women. The Author's Diſcourſe with the *Chan*. The Author meets with one of the *Tartars* who had made him Slave. He gets out of the ſervice of the *Polish* Ambaſſador. The great Bounty and kindneſs of his Patron *Hadzi Biram*, and of *Altine* his Patroneſs. One of his Company, made free. 273.

CHAP. XXVII.

Their departure out of *Scamachi*.

The Countrey about *Kaſily* deſcribed and the manner of living of the Inhabitants. A Deſcription of the River *Araxes*. The Heath of *Mokan*, whither all the *Banditti* and Mutinous Perſons have recourſe. Abundance of Tortoiſes near *Balharu*. The Poverty, yet contented Life of the People and Inhabitants there about. The Author ſet upon by Robbers. The *Carravan* Aſſailed and Plundered. A famous ſtone Bridge. The ſepulchre of *Zeyde Tzeybrail*. Arrival at *Ardebil*. The Situation of that Town. The bitter Cold. Great and raging Whirl-winds. Extraordinary good Wheat. The great Toll and Duty paid for Sheep. Seven and Fifty Towns within the Juriſdiction of *Ardebil*. A Deſcription of the City, of it's Streets, and of the Street of *Strumpets*, who are Poëteſſes and ordained to compoſe Hymns of Praiſe to the name of the Great *Aly*, Free Places within the City. The Markets and Shops. Sumptuous *Mezids* and Chappels. 281.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Hadzi Byram goes to perform his Religious Duties at the Sepulchre of *Zeyde Tzebrail*. The Author begs of his Lord that he may be Spectator of the Ceremonies, which at laſt after many intreaties is granted. A Deſcription of that noble *Mauſoleum*. Famous Baths in *Ardebil*. The ſulphurous Baths whither the Author accompanies his Patron. The manner of uſing thoſe Baths. The ſtupendious and ſumptuous Sepulchre of *Scach Sephy* deſcribed. The great Zeal and Devotion of *Hadzi Byram*. The Oratory, or Houſe of Prayer, where (as they ſay) *Schach Sephy* prayed and faſted for 40 Days together without Intermiſſion, uſing only a Cup of Water every day. Doors covered with Plates of Gold by *Schach Abas*. The Library, and Repoſitory of the Utenſils for the Kings Table. The Garden or Yard where the *Perſian* Kings lie interred. The names of the 12 Kings that lie there buried. The Revenues belonging to this *Meſar*, or Sepulchre. Som faſt Revenues. *Ardebil* a famous Mart. 290.

CHAP. XXIX.

The Author taken for a *Perſian*, which gave him occaſion to ſee all that was worthy of remark. The *Carravan* leavs *Ardebil*, and goes over the famous Mountain *Taurus*. The Head of the River *Kiſiloſeyn*. Bad and uneaſy Travelling by reaſon of ſteep Rocks. Peril of Robbers. Arrival at *Sultanie*. *Keydar Pey-Amber*, a wonderfull high Mountain it's Situation, and by whom built. *Emarath*, the Noble Palace of King *Choddabende*. The Temple of *Schach Iſmaël*. The preſent decaying State of *Sultany*. The Author ſhorn and habituated after the *Perſian* Manner. Pleaſant Dales and Valleys. Arrival at *Caſwin*. The Situation of that Place,

Place. The Court of *Schach Tames*. The Place of Convention, or Exchange of Whores. The Common Place of Sepulture and *Mezzid of* of *Scach Beſſade*, the Son of *Hoſeyn*, by which the *Perſians* ſwear. The Offering of a Camel. 298.

CHAP. XXX.

Departure from *Caſwin*. Arrival at *Saba*, and an account of the Condition of that Town. The Earth red and barren by the Curſe of *Mahomet*. They arrive at *Kom*, with a Deſcription of that Place. Melons of a very fragrant and lovely ſmell. A ſtrange kind of Cucumbers. *Khom* the Staple for Weapons. The People addicted to Thievery. The Author's combat with a *Greek* Renegado Departure out of *Khom*. Arrival at *Kaſchan*. Its Situation. The People, and their way of Living and Negotiation. Noble *Carawanſeras*; or Houſes of Entertainment. Many Gold-and Silk-Cloth Weevers. A ſort of great and venemous Scorpion and a kind of fell Spiders, which are a powerfull venom, with the ſtrange manner of Cure for the ſame. Their Arrival at *Natens*. A Faulcon fights and conquers an Eagle. 307.

CHAP. XXXI.

Arrival at *Iſpahan*. Their Reception with the *Dutch* Reſident. A Relation of the Stability of *Anthony Munſter*, who was urged to imbrace *Mahometaniſm*: his Death and Burial. The Manner and Situation of the *Dutch* Lodge. The Situation of *Iſpahan*, it's Greatneſs: Rivers running thrô the ſame. The Aque-duct, a mighty work of *Schach Abas*. The Streets of *Iſpahan*. *Maydan* and *Baſar*. Fair Arches and Galleries. The Sumptuous *Meſtzid* of *Schach Abas*. *Dowlet*- or *Schach-Chane*, the Royal Pallace. The *Divan-Chane*, or Court of Juſtice. The *Hieram Chane*, or Palace of the Kings Concubines. *Allycarpi* a Sanctuary, or place of Refuge. *Carawanſeras*, Taverns. *Cahwæ Chane*, Coffee-Houſes. *Perſian* Saints and Philoſophers. *Remal* and *Falkil*, two ſorts of Sooth-ſayers. Their ſtrange and ridiculous way of preſaging. The *Kayſery* or Gallerie of Shops. 313.

CHAP. XXXII.

Taberik Kale the Treaſurie of the Kingdom. The Suburbs of *Iſpahan*. *Tziulfa*, a place where the *Armenian* Chriſtians have their Reſidence. *Tabriſabath*. *Haſſenabath*. *Kebrabath*, ſo called from *Kebber*, Perſians that are ſtill *Pagans*. *Tzarbag*. The Nature of the *Perſians*. Property of the Land. Celebration of the *Epiphany* by the *Armenian* Chriſtians. 321.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The great Civility of *Hadſi Biram*. The Authors Departure out of *Iſpa-*

han. Their incommodous Travelling thrô the Snow. Wells and Pits of Water abounding with Fiſh. They are much incommodated in their Travailing. The *Caravan* aſſailed by Robbers. Their Superſtitious horrour of Swines Fleſh. Sepulchre of *Schach Solyman's* Mother. The Sepulchre of *Noah*, his Wife, Children, and Childrens Children. *Tzilminar.* The Pompous Relicts and Ruins of the famous *Perſepolis*, and the noble Fort thereof. The Statue of *Ruſtan*, a *Perſian* Champion. 327.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Arrival at *Scyras.* They meet with ſom Carmelites. The baſe dealings of thoſe of the *Caravan.* The Author meets with the Theef that had pillaged him. Mr. *Struys* well entertained by a *French* Chirurgeon. A Deſcription of *Scyras.* Divers *Meſtzids*, or Sepulchres. The Pallace of the *Chan.* Excellent Wine about *Scyras.* Noble Orchards. Departure from *Scyras.* The Special Bounty of the *Carmelites.* and the *French* Chirurgeon. Dates plentiful and cheap. How the Date-trees are propagated. Arrival at *Schavim.* They meet a *Caravan.* Aſſailed by night of 30 Robbers, who kill 5 Men of the Company, and at laſt by a unanimous continuance of the *Caravan* force them to yield. The Robbers beg Quarter which is refuſed. They ſuffer themſelvs to be bound; are diverſly tortured and diſpatched. Great plenty of Partridges. 336.

CHAP. XXXV.

The incommodous Travelling over Mountains. They com into an Inn (or *Caravanſera*) where they are well entertained. Arrival at *Lar.* A Deſcription of that Town. The Unwholſomneſs of the Air and water there. The Inhabitants given to Hoſpitality and Lovers of all kinds of Diſcipline and Science. *Mummay Kabas*, a pretious Balſam. Remarkable Monuments of Robbers executed. Departure from *Lar.* They meet with another Troop of Robbers. whereof 7 are killed. They are overtaken by *Monſr. Kaſenbroot*, Their Arrival at *Gamron.* 344.

CHAP. XXXVI.

A Deſcription of *Gamron*, or *Bendar*, and the *Etimology.* The great Traffic with all Nations. Unwholſomneſs of the Air, and Heat at *Gamron. Palepunſhen*, an unwholſom Drink how made. The Earth dry and barren. Fertility of *Kiſmiſch.* Of the Inhabitants of *Gamron.* A wonderful Tree growing without the City. An *Indian* (*reputed*) Saint. The beſt ſeaſon for ſtrangers to com and Traffic at *Gamron.* Merchandiſe brought thither by the *Engliſh.* The *Engliſh* receiv To with the *Schach.* The *Hollanders* trade without paying Toll. The Author fal

falls very ſick and in deſpair of Recovery. The kindneſs and bounty of *L. van Akerſloot* to him. He recovers. Set ſail from *Gamron*. Arrival at *Maſchate* and a Deſcription of that Town. The violent Heat about *Maſchate* which renders the Air very unwholſom. Their Departure from *Maſkate*. Arrival at *Batavia*. The Author hires himſelf for Sailmaker. Comes with 7 Ships before *Bantham*. Arrival at the *Cape of Good Hope*. 349.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Their Departure from the *Cape of Good Hope*. The Ship *Europa* taken by the *Engliſh*. The *Engliſh* take the Iſland of *St. Helena*, and 2 *Dutch* Ships more. The Author warns the reſt of the Ships. Three *Dutch* Ships ſcape a ſcouring. Arrival at *Aſcenſion*. Abundance of Tortoiſes on that Iſland. A Deſcription of the ſaid Iſland. It's Unfruitfullneſs and want of freſh water. A Debate held among the *Engliſh* to leav the *Dutch* upon the Iſland. Departure from *Aſcenſion*. Arrival at *Kingſale* in *Ireland*. Their Departure from thence, Arrival at *Briſtol* and finally at Home. 354.

DIRECTIONS
For the
BOOK BINDER,
How to place the PLATES.

The City Judia. Pag. 17
The Massacring of the Mandorins *and great Personages in* Syam. 4[illegible]
Tenedos. 9[illegible]
Pathmos. 9[illegible]
Delos, *or* Delphos. 110
Astrachan. 177
Radzin *throwing the* Persian *Lady into the* Wolga, 187
Sturgeon-taking. 19[illegible]
The Tartars *on Horseback.* 20[illegible]
Mount Ararat. 21[illegible]
The Card of the Caspian *Sea.* 21[illegible]
The City Scamachy *in* Persia. 23[illegible]
The manner of bringing the Kings Concubines in Persia *to Court.* 26[illegible]
A Woman flea'd alive. 27[illegible]
Ispahan. 31[illegible]
Persepolis. 33[illegible]
Seyras, *or* Sieras. 33[illegible]
Gammeron. 35[illegible]
Moschate. 352
The Massacre in Astrachan. 36[illegible]

THE
Perillous and most Unhappy
TRAVELS
of
JOHN STRUYS,
Through
Italy, Turky, Persia, Tartary, East-India, Moscovia, &c.

CHAP. I.

The first Occasion of the Authors going to Travel. A Sea-Storm. Arrival at Gibralter, *at* Genua, *with it's Description, at* Velez Malaga. *Rescontre with 9 Corsairs of* Algiers. *Arrival at* Boa Vista. *A Description of the* Salt Islands, Ilha Mayo, Ilha del Fuogo, St. Jago *and* Ilha del Brava. *Proper Climat of these Isles. Arrival at* Sierra Liones; *The great Incivilitie of the King, allured to come aboard, fettered, and afterward thrown over board, A Description of* Sierra Liones.

WEll worthy of remark is that Observation of a modern Sage, *Despair drives a man either to the Camp, or a Convent*: With no less reason may we add, *That the insubid Resolutions and Precipitance of youth, lead either to illicit Arts, or Travel:* which last was a Misfortune fatal to my self. My Fathers sole Care was to see me train'd up, in some laudable Vocation, or other; whereby I might for the future be in a capacity to acquire my necessary sustenance, without being burthensom to my Relations, or the use of any dishonourable Mean, or Practise: And

DEC. 1647. to that end put me out to a Sail-maker. He now perceiving some hopeful Prospect of Good in my Undertakings, was ever studious to give me all the Incouragement he could on his part; and to shew the Affection incumbent on a Parent, restrain'd me, as far as in him lay, from going abroad, or associating my self with such Company, as might be obnoxious, or destructive to those good Maxims he had given me: But various are the Tempers and Dispositions of Youth; and sometimes their frame of spirit so occult, that the piercing Judgements of ripe Years cannot sound it, although it were with the Eies of Eagles.

Set sail from Texel. My Father, whose Rigour was somewhat more than tolerable, was never remiss in reprehending me for any noted Vice, so that for some bad deportment he once took occasion to Chastise me, and that with such severity, that I resolved to take my leave both of him, and my native Land. At that time there were two Ships fitted out, and bound for *Genua*: the one was called, The St. *Iohn Baptist*, *Henry Christansz.* of *Amsterdam* Master, the other, The *St. Bernard*, *Iohn Benning* of *Wesep* Vice-Commander, and *Herman Voogd* of *Schiedam* Master; Over both these Ships was Mr. *Iohn Maas* of *Dunkirk*, as Upper-Commander. The former was mounted with 28 Guns, the latter carried 26. I hired my self aboard the St *I. Baptist* for Under-Sailmaker, being then about 17 years old, never troubling my self either whither we were bound, or how long we were to be out.

On the 26 of *December* 1647. By Gods good Conduct, we set Sail, from the *Texel*, but were hardly got without the *Gats*, ere we found that our Ships were not duly poiz'd, and thereupon were fain to Tack about, and put in at the *Texel* again, where we unloaded part of the Ships-burthen, and took in a considerable quantity of Pewter, some Boxes of Quicksilver, and other ponderous Materials, to Ballast us well at the Keel; which when we had done and all ready, we set out the second time, that was upon the 4 day of January 1648. *Ianuary*, 1648, and with a brave Wind, we passed the *Spaniards Gat*, driven with some Shoals of Ice (it being then Frosty weather) Seawards.

On the 10 of *Ianuary* we were forced by a contrary wind to put in at the *Downs*; where after two days aboad, we weighed anchor, having both Wind and Weather favourable. But soon after by a heavy

heavy Storm and rough Sea, we were forced again to put into some other Harbour; which we did at the Isle of *Wright*, & there we stay'd till the 25th when the Weather began to grow more moderate, and the high Winds abated. FEBR. 1668/1 *Storm at Sea.*

Under hopes that this good Weather would continue we set sail, but were no sooner out of the Bay, before the Weather changed, and we now the third time forc'd to look out for a Harbour.

On the 6 of *February* we came to Anchor at *Portland*, where we road three days, and then set sail directly for the Bay of *Gibralter*, where we arrived on the 10th of that moneth. The next day with a brisk gale we entred the Straits, and with a constant and favourable wind, made *Genua* in 15 days, where arriving we dropp'd Anchor behind the Mold.

On the 32th we got *Prattica*, and Licence to unload both the Ships, which done the Men were paid off, and dismis'd. The Ships, as we said before, were sold to the Duke of *Genua*, which he furnished with Provision of Victuals, Powder, Shot and other Ammunition, for 2 years. Aboard each Ship were a Hundred *Dutch* taken into service, the rest for the most part *Italians*, amongst which were a few of the *Banditti*. Here I hired my self for Upper-Sailmaker, and had 18 Livers *per* Moneth, although neither I, nor any else that went before the Mast, knew whither, or upon what Design. *Arrival at Genua.*

Having now regain'd my liberty, I long'd to satisfy my curiosity in taking a view of the Town, with what else was worthy of remark. *Genua* is seated on the Sea side, having a very commodious and complete Haven, on the South facing the Coast of *Affrica*. The City is built partly on montanous and hilly ground, and partly on a Level, seated between two velleys; and is computed to be abut 6 Italian Miles in circumference, being very well and close built, munited with strong Walls, sufficient enough to resist a small Attacque; but would not secure the Town in a long and durable Siege; or violent Storms, without the Militia. Their Militia consists of some *Dutch* and *Corsican* Companies; together with a few small Troops of Horse, which are constantly in motion, either on the Sea-side, or thro the City, to prevent, if need require, any silent Attacque, and suppress Mutinies; as also to secure the Coasts from *Turkish* and other Pyrats, which sometimes come ashoar in their Shalops, to get Slaves *Description of Genua.*

1644. and Spoil. They have alwaies four Galleys ready upon all Occasions, for Defence of the Havens; besides a considerable number more, which they have in their Arsenal, in good equippage; these are often imployed as Auxiliaries for the *Venetians*, against the *Turks*. On the Sea-side stands a Watch-Tower, on which by night they set a Beacon, and just at the Entrance of the Haven, stands a huge piece of Ordnance, mounted upon a Carriage, continually guarded with a Sentinel. The Dukes Person is guarded with a Body of 500 Soldiers, who with their Colonel have a place allotted them in the Palace. The City is generally well built with stately Houses and magnificent Structures, more especially on that side which is seated near the Sea: having besides the more eminent Hostels and Public Buildings, 30 fair Parish Churches, of which that dedicated to St. *Laurence* claims the priority, as Cathedral. In the Church dedicated to the H. Eucharist, they shew'd us a Key made of an Emerald, being of that unusual bignes that it's worth may not be computed. Coming to the Church of St. *Bartholomew*, we saw a handkercheif, with which they told us our Saviour wiped the sweat from his face, and (as they say) has done abundance of Miracles. The City is very populous, their Merchants rich and numerous, and their Manufactury also very considerable, especially in Velvets, there being according to the relation given us, above 8000 Looms in the Town so that considering the Magnificency of Building, the Riches of her Merchants, Commodiousnes of Situation, and Splendor of her Court and Palace, may be reckoned as a Town of the first Magnitude.

Genua.

Velez Malaga.

On the 12 of *April* we set sail, directing our course for *Velez Malaga*, where on the 15 we arrived. On the 18 we hoised sail, and made for *Malaga*, and on the 24 came to cast anchor in the Bay; where almost all the Banditti were set ashoar. Here we took in a hundred Pipes of Wine, with candied Fruits and other Refreshments for the sick.

On the 29 of May we weighed Anchor, and with a brisk gale of Wind reached the Straits mouth on the 2 of *June*. When we were past *Gibralter*, we steer'd our Course towards the *Salt Islands*, which was designed for another place of Refreshment, from whence we gathered that, our Voyage must needs be longer than at first we thought; for till then none aboard the ship (unless the Officers)

knew

knew whither we were bound, or upon what account we were ſent out. JUNE 1648.

On the fourth of *June*, we met with 9 Turkiſh Men of War, about the 3d. Watch in the night, who Hail'd us, asking, from whence our ſhip, we anſwered, From *Genua*, and asked them, From whence they were: they made anſwer, From *Argiers*. Our Commander hearing that unwelcome Eccho, was not a little alarm'd, and could have wiſh'd himſelf at a further diſtance; however he reſolves to exchange a ball or two with them by break of day; and in order thereto gets all in a readineſs; commands every man to his Poſt, and gave us all the courage he could by his own Example. The Corſairs who although better man'd and mounted than we, had no great ſtomach to go ſo early to breakfaſt, for obſerving ſuch marks of Courage in our Officers, and that they were abſolutely reſolved to fight 'um, made all the ſail they could, and left us. *Arrival at Boa Viſta.*

On the 14 we paſs'd the *Flemmiſh* Iſlands, and on the 6 of July, we arrived at *Boa Viſta*, where we came to Anchor in the Bay. On this Iſland were ſeveral of the Banditti, who brought us ſuch Proviſion as they had aboard: we took in alſo ten boats of ſalt. About this Iſland is ſuch plenty of Fiſh that at one draught we got 1500 Corcoads and Salmon-Fry.

Description of the Sale Islands.

Boa Viſta is one of thoſe Iſlands, which are called *Cabo Verdo* Iſlands, having obtained that appellation, from it's delectable proſpect from the Seaward, and lies 7 leagues to the northward of *Ilha del Sal*: and is reckoned to be about 20 leagues in circumference, ſtretched out in length South-eaſt and North-weſt. That part which lies near the ſea is all ſandy and hilly ground, but within altogether montanous and high land. On the north end is a long Bank near half a league in length, which repelleth the billows of the ſea with great violence. There are yet beſides this ſeveral other Foords, which are often the occaſion of Shipwrack. On the South is alſo another, where the Rocks ſometimes appear above water, and points out towards the Eaſt, and E. and by North. The beſt and ſafeſt place to come to Anchor in, is at the Southweſt Point, where is a very commodious Road for Ships of the greateſt burthen, having at leſt 16 or 17 fathom Water, and a fine ſandy ground. *The Iſland Maio.*

In this Road we lay at anchor 6 days, and then ſet ſail for *Maio*,

JULY 1648. St. *Iago*, *Fuogo* and *Brava*; which are the neareſt Iſlands to *Boa Viſta*.

The Iſland Majo. The Iſland *Majo* lies about nine leagues S. S. W. or rather more Weſterly, from *Boa Viſta*, and is the ſmalleſt of all the reſt, being about 7 leagues round. Within land are ſeveral ſteep hills, and on the North a Plain, about a league in breadth from whence reaches out a long Bank towards the North-eaſt, and another towards the Weſt, which cauſe impetuous Breaches of the Sea, and conſequently great danger for Ships that ſail that way. The Iſland is almoſt round in circumference, having its breadth and length almoſt equal, and is full of ſmall Capes or Promontories, which make ſo many Inlets. The common Road belonging to this Iſland, is on the South-weſt Coaſt, where you have 15 and 16 fathom Water, and a ſandy ground; having the Weſtern point of the Iſland at N. and by W. and another Point at E. S. E. and the South end of St. *Iago* S. W. On the North ſide of the Iſland, behind a litle black Cape, lies a ſmall Bay, or Road for Anchorage, at 5 or 6 fathom water, and upon the loweſt point, on the Eaſt, is a Village of 10 or 12 houſes. This Iſland is very rocky, high and dry, having litle graſs upon it but what grows in the clefts of the Rocks. It is alſo very barren of Fruit, neither Lemmons nor Oranges will like there, nor no other fruit whatſoever, unles ſigs, and thoſe, by reaſon of the drought of the Seaſon and Ground, ſeldom ever come to maturity, or return to profit. There are in this Iſland ſome Cotton-trees, and good plenty of Goats, ſo that there are many thouſands of thoſe Hides tranſported yearly from hence. There are alſo ſome wild Horſes, Kine and Aſſes; good plenty of Fowl, as Patridge, Heath-hens, Buſtards, Wild-geeſe, and other Fowl, not known with us in *Europe*.

There are alſo many Saltpans on this Iſland, where the Salt by the Ground Water, and the Ingreſs of the Sea, with the help of the Sun, is well concreted, yet is ſomewhat too yellow in colour. The Inhabitants are a mixt folk, of Negros, and others, who follow Goat hunting, uſing Wolves in ſtead of Dogs. Some alſo follow the Fiſhing trade, and find great plenty of * *Cyprins*, *Dorades*, and other Fiſh.

* A kind of Sea-bream.

St. Jago. St. *Iago* is the greateſt and chief of the *Cabo Verdo* Iſlands, being about 12 leagues in length, lying South-Eaſt and North-weſt: The South-

South-east Cape thereof hath the Road of the Iſland *Majo* on the West, and W. and by N. about 5 leagues diſtant. The high Land of *St. Iago* lies from the Road of *Majo* directly West, but the middle thereof South-weſt from *Boa Viſta*, or rather more Weſterly; and from the *Salt Iſland* S. W. and by S. about 25 Leagues. From the South-weſt Angle; the coaſt ſtretches it ſelf forth 2 leagues South-weſt, where there is a ſmall Hamlet, called *Praye*, ſituated in a commodious place, between two Hills, and environed with 2 Rivers; which running into the Sea, do make two handſom Bays, one whereof is called *Porto de Praye*, and has room enough to contain an hundred Ships, which may ſafely ride at Anchor, without damnifying each other, having 14 fathom water, and ſhot-free from Land, as alſo the benefit of a ſmall Iſland, which breaks off the wind. Sailing paſt *Porto de Praye*, before you come at the Town, is a Cape, or ſmall Promontory, which the *Portugeezes* call *Capo de Tubarao*: On the Weſt whereof is another Bay, called *Porto de Ribeirra Corea*, which alſo is very fitly ſeated between two Hills, and a River that runs through the midle, riſing from a fountain, about 2 leagues from thence, and diſgorging it ſelf into the Sea, by a mouth about a Bow-ſhot in breadth. In the North is alſo another Haven called *St. Mary*. On the Iſland *St. Iago* are yet two Towns of note, whereof the one is called *St. Thomas*, very well ſeated; the other *St. Iago*, or *St. Iames*, which is built upon a riſing Ground: This is the Metropolis of all the Towns of theſe Iſlands, where is alſo the Reſidence and Palace of their Biſhop. Towards the Weſt, on an Angle of the Iſland is a Fortreſs, two leagues from *Porto de Praye*, where Ships come to anchor; and North-weſt from this Angle another Haven, known by the name of *Porto de Camiſos*. JULY. 1648.

This Iſland is very fertile, and abounds with fruit of ſeveral kinds, as on each ſide the *Rio de Corea* grow great plenty of Cocos, Oranges, Citrons, & other Fruit-trees, as alſo ſome Cedars. Beſides this, it affoards good ſtore of Rice, Maïs, and other grain, as alſo Cattel both for work and ſlaughter.

Ilha del Fuogo, or, The *Iſle of Fire*, probably has that name from one of it's Mountains, which continually ſends forth flames, by ſome inteſtin Fire. It lies in 14 degr. 20 min. Northerly Latitude, and 12 leagues from the South-weſt point of *St. Iago*. North-weſt, Ilha del Fuogo.

JULY. 1670. weſt, on the Weſt-ſide, is a Bay, and a ſmall caſtle ſeated at the foot of a hill: but the violent courſe of the ſtream, renders the haven unapt to receive any Shipping. Thoſe that would enter the Bay muſt ſteer their courſe to the North of this Iſland, and ſo about.

About 4 leagues South-weſt of *Ilha del Fuogo*, lies *Ilha del Brava*, that is, *Wild*, or *Deſert Iſland*, with two or three ſmall Iſlands, on the North thereof. On the Weſt-ſide is a Creek, very convenient for ſuch as have occaſion to take in water: but the beſt haven is on the South-eaſt ſide where it is 15 fathom deep, and a Ship of the greateſt burthen may come to anchor cloſe to the Kay. Above this Harbour is a Hermitage, and a Village very well peopled. This Iſland is alſo fruitfull enough, having good ſtore of figs, Mulberrys, Water-Melons, and Indian wheat, but far inferiour to *Mayo* and *St. Iago* for cattel.

The Air of theſe Iſlands is generally unwholſom, ſo that the inhabitants are very ſubject to Feavers, Aches and Fluxes. Theſe Iſlands lying between the *Equator* and the *Tropic* of *Cancer*, afford the People two Summers every year, the Sun paſſing twice directly over their heads. When the ſun enters into *Cancer*, which is in the end of *June*, the ſeaſon is very intemperate, with Storms, Winds, Thunder and Lightning, continuing ſo till the midle of October; theſe the *Portugueezes* call the Rain moneths. They have certain tokens whereby they know when this Seaſon approaches, as, high Southerly Winds which blow along the Coaſt, and the Salt, which begins to diſſolve, with the Billows rolling out of the Sea.

On the 14 we left the *Salt Islands*, and ſet ſail, for *Sierra Lionis* and made land, on the 24 of *Auguſt*, hearing at a great diſtance the Wind roaring from the Mountains, which by the reaſon of their Concavity, do make a great buzzing when it blows hard, that perhaps has given them the name of *Sierra Liones*, or *Lioneſs Mountains*. A litle before the evening we came with our Boat cloſe to the ſhore, where we heard a moſt terrible Noiſe, occaſioned by an impetuous and continual beating of the billows through the cleft of a Rock, which was ſo loud that we could hardly hear one another ſpeak. *Sierra Liones* takes it's beginning from *Cabo de Virgin*, and ſtretches it ſelf ſo far out as *Cabo Tagrin*, or *Lede*, which is alſo by ſome called

Cabo de Sierra Lionee, lying in 8 Degr. and 13 Min. Northerly Latitude; and by reaſon of it's height, is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from that Continent, which lies to the Northward of this Promontory; the more becauſe it reaches further Seaward. The South, and South and by E. part of this Land lies toward the Sea, and is high and hilly, but the land of the Cape towards the North, for the moſt part level and marſhy. There are 13 Rivulets which coming from the Land, run through theſe Mountains, and ſo empty themſelves in the Ocean, and have on their banks plenty of Fruit-trees, as Oranges, Pome-Citrons, and the like. JULY. 1648.

On the 3 of *Auguſt* we arrived in the Bay of *Sierra Lionee*. Immediately upon our arriving there, the Commander ſent the Shallop aſhoar, and ſuch perſons as he did think fit, with Preſents for the King, which were 5 Barrs of Iron, a Barrel of Brandy, and another of *Spaniſh* Wine.

Thoſe men that were nominated to deliver the Preſents, were courteouſly received by the King and his Court. We could not perceive any Mark of Superiority, or Grandour in the Prince, which might diſtinguiſh him from his Subjects, no more than in Mr. Mayor of *Stratford*, from his Worſhipfull Brethren, the Aldermen. Yet found him much to vary from ſome other Soveraign Potentates who enrich themſelves at the Coſt and Penury of their Vaſſals. The King and his Folk were equally inſatiable and covetous; for ſo ſoon as the King had received the Preſent, he deſired as much more, which the Commander was content to ſend him, that he might have the freedom to take in Water, and Wood for Fewel, as alſo to provide our ſelves with Oranges, Lemmons, and other Refreſhments. The Inhabitants, which are called *Caffers*, ſhew'd us no ſmall Friendſhip; for, ſo long as our *Penny* laſted, they never faild of a *Pater noſter*, bringing us every day good ſtore of Fruit. When the King had received the double Preſent; he inſiſted upon twice as much more, before he would admitt of our coming aſhoar. This great incivility ſo inraged the Commander, that he reſolved to be revenged upon him; and purſuant thereto ſent the Long-boat aſhoar to entreat him to come aboard, where he ſhould receive what his King ſhip deſired. The credulous *Barbarian*, made no long paſſe

JUNE, 1648. in the matter; but presently, with a certain number of his Gentry, stept into the Boat, and so were brought aboard. But his Retinue being too numerous, the Commander having regard to our safety, would not permit above 5 or 6 to come aboard. The King was no sooner got aboard, but he ran in all hast to the Great Cabin, in hopes of some ample Gift; but much mistaken, for the Commander gave order that he should be fetter'd, which was accordingly done; and 4 men appointed to attend him. The King was hereat mainly altered, but afterward much more, when he saw the Commander intended to hang him at the Yards arm, which had certainly been had not the Master of the Ship undertaken the Office of a Mediator upon him, and made interceſſion for his Life. The Commanders wrath thus pacified, he gave order to throw him over board, which was immediately obey'd and executed, by 4 of the Ships Company, who threw him out at the Fore-castle Port; But he was so well disciplin'd in swimming, that he presently got ashoar. His Retinue seeing that, with all the hast they could, betook themselves immediatly to their Canoes, and made as if they would do some prodigious Feat, or other, or at leſt obstruct our coming ashoar, to take in what was necessary. The Commander, whose temper was too couragious, to be daunted for a swarm of Flies, sent two Boats ashoar to fetch Water and Wood, both well Man'd and Arm'd, and in spite of all their Force, hew'd as much Wood, and brought as much Water, as they thought might serve our turn. The Commander notwithstanding all this, was not yet content, but remanded the men and Shallops to pillage their Houses and Orchards, and set the Kings Neger-house on fire; all which they did in a moment. The King seeing this, thought it high time to put himself in a posture of Defence; and in order to that, musters up all the Forces he could on a sudden, the whole Countrey being Alarmed, and appear'd with a number of a Thousand Canoes, or more, half of each being loaden with Faggots, whether to set our Ships on fire, or to use them for Shields, we could not determine: however having obtained our ends, we held it best to weigh Anchor, and proceed on our Voyage, rather than to incurr a needless & unprofitable Ingagement, with a Company of such contemptible Schoundrels

The King of Sierra Liones fettered, and threatned to be hanged,

The houses of the Caffers pillaged; and their Orchards Spoil'd,

drels. In which Resolution we set sail, directing our Course for *Madagascar*.

Before we were got out of sight of *Sierra Liones*, we met with a small Flyboat which Traded along that Coast, whereof one *John Backer* of *Durgerdam* was Master. The Master came and proffered his Ship and service to our Commander and Vice-Admiral, to conduct us over the Foords and shallow Places of the Red sea, and to make use of his Vessel as an advice Yacht. But our Ship-master disswaded them to accept of his Tender, whereupon he declared that he was unwilling, and so declined his Favour. This Master had the like Rescontre with that Kings Majesty, and for his Churlishness gave him a toss (as he told us) out of the Cabin-port so that it seem'd a Paradox to us, that he would be so void of Prudence as to hazard himself a second time, being once before in jeopardy of his Life.

Description of Sierra Liones.

Sierra Liones both in regard of its' Copiousness of Fruit, and Plenty of Good Water is a very proper place to put in at, for Refreshment. It abounds with * Millets, Oranges, Lemmons, Banans, Cocos, Wild Grapes, and abundance of many other sorts of Fruits; as also Sugar canes and a kind of Long pepper. It affoards, besides Fruit-trees, good Timber, and Ingredients very usefull in Dying; but by reason of our short aboad, and want of opportunity to make inspection into the Countrey, we could not inform our selves what Product the Land affoarded, as peculiar to it self; nor to make any advantage of our Landing there, except our Refreshment. There is good store of Fish, and Oysters, which ly very thick in the clefts of the Rocks, and are extraordinary large and good. 'Tis true if any be necessitated to put in there for fresh Water, they need not be at a loss, for there are all along the Coast many choice Rivers, which are pure Rain-water, that comes from the Mountains, but in the Month of *May*, (the beginning of the Rain season) it is very unwholsom and unapt for use, as our Masters Mate told me who was well acquainted with those Parts, and is frequently the Occasion of Feavers, Fluxes, and other perrillous distempers; and not only so, but is so venemous, that where it falls upon the skin of one, who is not used to that Climat, will cause Tumors and Ulcers, and breeds a kind of worm or moth in

* *A kind of plant, called also* Milium, *and* Hyrsi *bearing a multitude of small grains, from whence it hath that name.*

SEPT. 1648. cloaths which may ſerve for a Caveat to ſuch as ſhall be forced to make uſe of it, about that time of the year, although it be approved good, when it is ſome days old, as if the venemous property were vaniſhed with keeping. The Inhabitants are not altogether black, but tawny; and their bodies cauterized in many places with hot Irons. The tips of their Ears, and their noſes, are bored through, and hung with Jewels, which they hold for paſſing rare Ornaments. Both Men and Women go naked, and uſe no manner of Veſture ſave only a furcingle, or towel; made of the barks of Trees, which (it ſeems) for modeſty ſake, they wear about their Middle. Thoſe that inhabit thoſe parts which lie further within Land, are Cannibals (or Men-eaters) but ſuch as dwell near the Sea, more civiliz'd, and flexible to commerce with *Europeans*, and other Strangers. The King with whom we were concern'd, was an old, ill viſaged and homely Man, in a Garb tolerably handſom, after the Mooriſh faſhion; having alſo a kind of a hat of a grayiſh colour; but neither he, nor any of his Retinue, had either ſhoes or ſtockings, but ſuch as they came into the World with.

CHAP. II.

Arrival at Madagaſcar. *The remarkable Chance of the Commander, meeting with the King. The Death of the Vice-Commander* Benning; *and the diſorders thence ariſing. Both the Ships put in a Fighting Poſture, and ready to give each other Battel. Voogt yields, and is fetter'd. The deſcription of* Madagaſcar; *its Fertility, Store of Cattel; Goodneſs of their Sheep; Many kinds of Monkeys. Nature of the Inhabitants, Form, Habit, Houſe-keeping, Marriages and Funerals. Their impious cruelty over their Children. Their Religion, Policy and Warrs.*

Arrival at Madagaſcar (or as it is by ſome called) S. Laurence.

ON the 13 of October we arrived at *Madagaſcar*, and came to Anchor in the Bay of *Anton Gill*. So ſoon as we had caſt Anchor we ſent forth our Boat, and put out a white Flag in token of Friendſhip; which they obſerving, did the like. But we were greatly diſmay'd, when we ſaw a great number of men running down the Hills toward us, with Bows, Arrows and Darts: ſo that we not daring to truſt our ſelves to them, concluded our ſafeſt way was to return, and row back again to our Ships; but they perceiving that, one of them cried out, Be not afraid, but come boldly to land,

land; we will do you no harm, we give you liberty to come aſhoar. OCTOB 1648.
Capt. *Maas* told us that he had been there in that Iſland before, and that a Slave of his, whom he had taught to read and write, had run away from him there, having taken his opportunity when the Ship was ready to ſet Sail; and that he had heard how the Slave was come to great Advancement, and by the Natives elected King.

So ſoon as we were got to land, we were introducted by the King himſelf, and his Attendants into his Pallace, which was in the midſt of a Sconce, reaſonably ſtrong, and environ'd with Palizados. The Houſe was hung with neat Mat-work, and the Floors covered with the ſame. The King preſently began to inquire, What for People that we were? and, to what place our Ship belong'd? for he could ſee by her Colours that we did not come out of *Holland*. The Commander made anſwer that we were *Hollanders*; but were then in the ſervice of the Duke of *Genua*, to whom the Ships belong'd. After they had exchanged a few Words together, the Commander aſſumed the liberty to ask him, Where he had learned to ſpeak *Dutch*? I have been, quoth he, formerly in *Eaſt India*, and was at that time a Slave to one *John Maas*, a Marriner, and intending for Holland, we were ſurpriz'd with a diſmal Hurricano, which diſabled us of our Maſts, and made us in ſuch a Condition, that we were forced to put in here to Calk, and fit us out again; but I having no great appetite to proceed on our Voyage, deſerted my Maſter, when I ſaw the Ship was ready to ſail. Well (quoth the Captain) was not your name *Diembro*. Yes, replies the King, do you know me? Why, ſaid the Captain, do you not know *John Maas*? The King was hereupon in a great ſtupor, but viewing him thorowly began to remember his Countenance, and with that embraced and kiſſed him. While they ſtood mute a while and ſtaring one another earneſtly on the face, both ſtupifyed at this ſtrange meeting, the King began thankfully to acknowledge, how good a Maſter our Commander had been to him, and preſented him all neceſſary Proviſion *gratis*: but the Commander courteouſly declined it, ſaying, He eſtemed it a ſufficient Favour to exchange Wares for Wares. The King (according to the cuſtome of that Country) preſented our men the uſe of his Wives and Concubines; who coming forth made choice of ſuch as they would

have, and went aside with them. This kind Tender was as freely accepted as offered, by the greatest part of our Ships-folk, who were not very shy to enter into Conjunctions with that tawny Brood; but what monstrous Complexions they afterward brought into the world, I only guess, since our aboad there could not be long. I may not ommit the fatal Difference, and Misunderstanding of our Officers among themselves, occasioned upon the Decease of Capt. *John Benning*, who commanded the *S. Bernard*. The Chief Commander *Maas*, together with the rest of the Officers thought fit to put *Henry Christians*, Master of the *St Iohn Baptist* in his place, and *Herman Voogt* in the place of *H. Christians*; but *Voogt* did not approve this Transposition, and let the Chief Commander know that he would not abandon his Board and Right, unless he would force him away by force; thereupon he brought up all the Guns out of the Hold, and put himself in a Posture of defence. The next morning by break of Day, our Commander, with some of the Officers descrying that the Red Flag was put out, aboard the *St. Bernard*, were not a litle alarm'd: immediately gave order that we should also (with all possible expedition) put our selves in a Fighting posture, which was don in a moment. Our Commander understanding that *Voogt* had sent off a boat (with intent to fetch water) sent out the Shallop, as full of men as could well stand, all well armed, who row'd as hard as they could till they overtook the other boat, which they brought back. The men being come aboard, the Commander gave order to put them in Fetters, till he could have better information about their intention: with that the Commander made as if he would lay the *St. Bernard* aboard, closing up with her Bow. *Harman Voogt* seeing himself in a great Strait, and for want of men hardly in a capacity to maintain his Pretences, was much disheartned, and after he had advised the matter more fully with himself, thought good to let out the Shallop, and go aboard the Commander, the men incessantly crying out, *Let our Captain and Men return without any molestation, or, by Heaven and Earth, we will either sink, be sunk: we are resolved either to loose our own lives in his Vindication, or, your own an Expiation, without either giving or taking Quarter.* Yet notwithstanding all this, their Schipper was no sooner come aboard but the Commander gave order to bring him upō the Quarter Deck where he was made fast

The Death of of Mr. John Benning, Captain of the St. Bernard.

Tumults thereupon.

Both the Ships ready to fight.

Voogt yields and goes aboard, is clapt into Fetters.

hand and foot; and after him the first and second Mate, together with the rest of the Officers were brought up, and immediatly clapt into shakles. The foremast men seeing themselves outwitted by the Commanders Politie, began to loose their Courage, and after a mature deliberation among themselves, concluded it the safest way to surrender themselves and Ship to the Commander. This done, a Council of War was held, and the Captive Officers (*Voogt* himself only excluded) were brought into the great Cabin, where the Council, for the time being, was assembled, and asked which they would rather chuse, To burn with their Ship? or, To serve the Commander faithfully without murmuring? They conceiving that there was no hopes of avoiding some severe Penalty, or other, which the Council, perhaps, had designed in case of their continuing refractory, chused the latter: and with one humbly begged pardon for their misdemeanours, promising for the future not to be factious in any Uproar, or the Occasion of Tumult. Upon these Supplications the Council sat again, and came to this Result, That their former misbehaviour should be connived at; but, *Voogt* the Master to continue in Irons, till we came again to *Genua*, where he should be banished upon the Galleys, during the term of life, as a condign Punishment for his obstinate Rebellion. However to prevent any mutinous consultations which might otherwise find opportunity, and detard our Voyage, the Ships companies were mixed and counterchanged; some of our men sent aboard the *St. Bernard*, and others from the *St. Bernard* in lieu of them, brought over to us. In the mean while we recreated our selves with the Divertisements of Hunting, Fishing and Fowling; as also ranging the woods, which we found stored with many sorts of Fruit.

Result of the Council of War concerning the Officers and Shipsfolk.

Madagascar is distant from the Coast of *Cefale* about 110 Leagues, and 44 from *Mosambique*. It lies in length Northeast and Southwest; reaching from about 12 degr. to 26, Southerly Latitude; being about 220 Dutch leagues in length and 70 in breadth, and consequently reputed the largest Island in the whole World. It is also divided into several Provinces and Dominions, which are mostly bounded and severed from each other, by Rivers.

This Island is very fertile, and affoards great plenty of Grain, as Wheat (or Maïs) and Barly, as also Pulse, as Lentils Peale & Beans

of

of ſeveral kinds. They have alſo abundance of Water Melons, C
nanas, *Bananas*, and other unknown Plants and Roots. The Trees a
loaden with Oranges, Lemons, Pome-Citrons, and two kinds
Pomegranates, to wit, a ſweet and a ſour, as alſo delicate Pears, Fig
Almonds, &c. Beſides theſe Fruits, they have ſeveral ſtrange Roo
that may be uſed for Diet, which they call *Ouvibaren*, *Schambri*, *Ca
bares*, *Ouviſoutty*, *Offehe*, *Mavondre*, *Damborn*, and others, which
cannot call to mind, at preſent. It affoards alſo very rich Honey, v
riety of Gums, Medicinal Balſams, Oils, Roots and Herbs, nor m
we ommit the commemoration of its rich Mines, and variety
Mettals, though the beſt it affoards beyond other Places, is Steel. T
Gold which is digged here, is much baſer than that of *Peru*, the Oun
not valuing above ten Crowns. Neither is this Iſland without Pre
ous ſtones, as Topaz, Amethyſt, Emerald, Sapphire, J
cynth, Jaſpar, Agath, with Blood Stones and others. It aboun
with Beaſts, as Kine, tame and wilde, Goats which have young
times a year; the Sheep are very fat, their tails weighing ſome
pound a piece; Swine they have alſo, both tame and wild, wh
fleſh whether hung, or pickled, is far better then that which
have in *Europe*. There is alſo a kind of wild Swine that t
Inhabitants call * *Tendrak*, which they hold for a great de
cacy: The ſame beaſt ſleeps ſix moneths in the year, in whi
time ſhe caſts her Prickles, as Hedge-hogs do, which are alſo th
in great abundance. The Dogs of this Iſland are for the moſt pa
little, ſhort-ſnouted and ſtump-ear'd. Apes and Monkeys run
great troops, ſome times 50, 60 or 100 together, of which th
are ſeveral kinds. Thoſe that are white are the moſt cruel, a
hardeſt to catch, or tame. Another ſort there are which are grey, a
not ſo big as the white which are more tame and flexible; theſe th
often take by wiles, and teach them ſeveral practical and artific
exerciſes. There are beſides theſe another kind of white Ape
that go almoſt right overend, and are ſo lecherous that even th
Women in that place, cannot be ſecure for them, which they ravi
if they find an opportunity, one holding her, till another has pe
form'd his Task; whom, when they have had their will, th
ſometimes rend in pieces. But there is a kind of Gray Apes, whi
are held in moſt eſteem; having eies like fire, and are very w
a

* Porcupines, which are of late grown common in Europe.

Why an Ape commit a Rape.

and unapt to be tamed, and ſome ſo ſavage that they will rather ſtarve than be fed out of hand. There are alſo many Squirrels Weſels and Civet Cats. They are likewiſe annoyed with many ſorts of venemous Creatures and Vermin, as Scorpions, Spiders, Waſps and Millepedes, which are here ſo horribly fell, that the party ſtung falls immediately into a ſwound. OCT. 1648.

This Iſland is inhabited both by Whites and Negros, the former having long and lank hair, the latter a litle curled, and handſom bodied. There are alſo a ſort of tawny People that are not ſo well civiliz'd as the reſt, letting their hair and beards grow, which the other for the moſt part ſhave. *The Inhabitants, their Nature, Garb, and Poſture.*

They are in general a treacherous and fraudulent people, prone to Thievery, and greedy of Revenge, which they eſteem a laudable vertue, and deem him a man of merit, who knows how to quit himſelf handſomly in vindication of a Quarrel; but on the contrary he that puts up an affront or injury done him, is held in great contempt, and ſtigmatiz'd for a Coward. They are by nature very ſluggiſh, and inclined to Sloth, much given to Dancing and Singging. Theſe that are willing to take upon them any hard Imployment or laborious exerciſe, are ſuch as follow Husbandry, Smiths, Carpenters, Fullers, Spinners, Weevers, Fiſhers and Fowlers. Their Smiths have a good way to temper Iron and Steel, and are very active in making Knives, Javelins, Pile-heads and Plyers to pull up hair by the roots. They have alſo Silverſmiths, but ſuch as hardly deſerve the naming.

Their Houſes are but little wooden Tabernacles, of one ſtory high and a firm Cieling; yet at the Inauguration of thoſe Cottages they make ſumptuous Banquets: So ſoon as the Houſe is completed the Owner invites all his Relations and Allies, with other acquaintance to the ſaid Houſe, where they are entertained in ſplendid manner: Yet this Treat is not at all chargeable to him, but rather an advantageous mean; for there is not any of theſe Gueſts who dare make his appearance without ſome Preſent, which he is to bring with him (as if it were at a *Weſtmerland* wedding) Some bring Gold, Silver, or Steel; ſome great Bowls with Corn, or perhaps Moveables and Furniture for the Houſe; others Oxen, Sheep or other Belly-timber. So that in brief, none ever comes *Their Houſes*

Oct. 1648. empty-handed; by which means the Builder has not only the Expences of his Feast reimburs'd, but sometimes more than what he has laid out in such a stupendious Fabric. These *Encænia*, or Feasts Dedicatory, do usually hold for some days together, during which time they live an *Epicurean* life, in Luxury and Riot, Dancing, Singing and Playing. Most of their House furniture is what properly belongs to the Kitchin: but as for Table, Stools, Benches, Table-cloth, Napkins, Beds and Cushions they never use any, and when they eat sit down humbly upon a Mat.

Their Habit and Attire. The Common People go almost naked, but these of the best rank are aparreled in different vestures, to distinguish the sexes; the men wearing Breaches which reach from the midle to the Calf of the leg, and from the midle upward a Cotton cloth, (almost like a *Scotch* Plad) thrown carelessly about their shoulders, girded about the midle with a Surcingle. The Women wear a Garb, with, and without, sleeves, demitted to the knees, having also a kind of Drawers with a Girdle about the body, and sometimes a litle mantle thrown about their Shoulders. Their Cloths are mostly of Cotton, Bombast, and Silk of various Colours, garnished with loops of Silk, which is of another colour than the Garment it self. Both men and women go bare-headed, and barefoot, except one sort, whereof the Man wears a Cap, something resembling that of a Jesuit, and the Woman a Hood made after the form of a Pyramid, which comes down to the shoulders.

Their Marriages. Their Marriages are generally performed without many Ceremonies; and Polygamy allowed, every man taking to himself so many Wives as he thinks fit, or is capable to maintain. They are also easily divorced, Their men will not stick to delight themselves with the Wives of others, and the Women as inclinable to that way, as any in the World, and are carefull to make use of every Opportunity they meet with: This they esteem no sin, but account it (if they can do it cunningly without being catch'd in the Fact) but a kind of Filching, or clandestin Theft, which may be expiated, with some inconsiderable Present, or Gift. Their Young women are also great Traders that Way; and without shamefastness will render themselves prostitute, to any that will but give good wages, and those generally most opplauded, which come off with most Gain: and if they intend to marry will not give their Consent to their Party, till they have made pro-

proof of his Manhood. The Parents are delighted to ſee their Children active in imitation, and yet notwithſtanding this licentious ſenſuality be tolerated in the Action, yet they will be offended at their Daughters, if they utter any word without the limits of modeſty. *Oct.* 1648.

When any Perſon comes to die, the neareſt Friends and Allies, do bath the Corps; and then adorned with Bracelets and Ear-rings, and wrapt in fine cloaths, is carried in a Mat to the place of burial. But the Funeral Rites of Perſons of the higheſt rank are performed with greater pomp; for when one of ſuch Quality dies, he is alſo bathed after that manner as we have already ſaid; which done they ſhave him, and if it be a Woman put a hood upon her head, and adorn her with precious ornaments. Then come in the neareſt Kindred, as Father, Mother and others of the Conſanguinity, with Women, Children and Slaves, to bewail the Dead, making a lamentable howling and yelling, the tears trickling down the Cheeks. Others begin by way of Elogy to recite the Prayſes of the deceaſed Party, and others to beat Drums, the reſt fall a dancing. Theſe Ceremonies ended, one of them addreſſes himſelf to the Corps, as if it were alive, Asking theſe, or the like Queſtions. *Oh my dear Friend! how cameſt thou to die? Or, didſt thou want for any thing? Hadſt not thou Cattel, Gold, Silver, Steel, and other Goods enough?* &c. When they have deplored the Departure of their Friend, and danc'd the whole day, they kill a Fatling or two, which is diſtributed among his Relations in the Evening. So long as the Corps is above ground they burn light by it; and when they are ready to interr him, they cloſe him in a Coffin made of the Trunk of a Tree which is fitly ſhut up, and carried to a litle Cottage made on purpoſe, in the midle whereof is a Grave about 6 foot deep, here they lay him, and ſet by his ſide a Basket of Rice, a Tobacco-box, an Earthen Pan, a Chaffin-diſh, a ſuit of Apparrel, a Girdle, with what other things they conceive he ſhall have occaſion for, in ſuch a long and tedious Journey. So ſoon as they have done that, they roll a great ſtone to the door of his ſepulchre, and ſacrifice ſome beaſt or other to the Devil, that they may not annoy or moleſt him on his way to Paradice. *Their Funerals*

Of all the Idolatrous Cuſtoms that I could obſerve among them, there is ſome Nation or other that hath parity with them; But one Barbarous and inhuman Practiſe they have, as peculiar and proper to themſelves, that is, making away of their own Children. True it is *Impious cruelty over their Children.*

Oct. 1648. that in moſt places in *India* and *Tartary*, they make merchandiſe of their Children, and that by reaſon of their not being in a capacity of bringing them up, but never (like thoſe of *Madagaſcar*) take away their lives. This they are induced to by an implicit Faith, being perſwaded by their Prieſts, that they are born upon unhappy days, and ſhall be ſubject to great miſery and afflictions ſo long as they live; or that the Planet under which the Child is born, has ſome bad influence upon it; and having view'd the Palms of his hands, and his Face, make concluſion that he will be either Thief, or Parricide, &c. Upon theſe and the like Occaſions, they deliver the Child over to a Slave, which he is to carry out of the way, and throw it into a Ditch or under a Thorn-hedge, where the poor Infant muſt either die of hunger, or be devoured up of Dogs, or other Beaſts of Prey. Others there are among thoſe Women, who when they are with Child if they find themſelves never ſo litle out of order, immediamediately aſcribe the cauſe to the ill Nature of the unborn Babe, and either kill it before it come into the World, or ſo ſoon as it is born bury it alive, and ſometimes throw it into the Water. If a Woman ſlave chance to prove with Child by her Patron, and be turned away, ſo that ſhe be not able to bring it up, ſhe either ſtrangles, or diſpatches it before it come into the World: and ſometimes a white Woman having a Child by a Negro, if ſhe ſee it reſemble the Father, or have curl'd hair: as alſo their Young-women, who make themſelves proſtitute for Gain, follow the like Courſe, but commonly murther the Infant before it be born, deeming it but a burthen to them, and a hindrance of their Profeſſion. But beſides all theſe inhuman Cuſtoms they have another no whit inferiour to thoſe already ſaid, that when the woman dies in Child-bed, the Child is thrown alive with the Mother into the Grave, ſaying. *Better it is that the Child dies, than be brought up by ſtrangers.* And becauſe ſo many days are by them held infortunate, almoſt half of the Children are diſpatch'd, which with other occaſions already mentioned, is undoubtedly the reaſon that this great, happy and moſt fruitfull Iſland is not very populous, where not only Polygamy is allow'd, but alſo ſuch freedom given to the unmarried to ſatisfy their luſt, and libidinous ends. Yet certain it is that there is a Stock of people among them, who are more compaſſionate with their Young, and when they preſume that the Child is ſo

poſſeſſed

poſſeſſed, do only cauſe a Slave to carry it away and hide it a while, and ſoon after fetch it home again: aſſoon as they have got it home again, they Sacrifice ſome beaſt, or Fowl, or perhaps ſhut it up in a Hen-rooſt, thinking thereby to aſſwage and moderate the ill temper of the childs ſpirit, which otherwiſe would lead him to ſome unhappy end. OCT. 1648.

Their Religion

The Religion of the *Madagaſcars*, is hardly worth recounting, they being wholly Strangers both to Houſes of Worſhip, and alſo to Prayer. They beleeve that there is a God who hath made both Heaven and Earth, but neither adore nor ſerve him, yet growing old or ſick, they make a kind of Confeſſion to him. They alſo beleeve that there is a Devil, who is the Occaſion of all evil, having the power of Life and Death in his hand, and that they muſt conſerve a perpetual Peace with him, by Worſhip and Sacrifice. Beſides their Opinion that there is a God and an evil Spirit, they have a third Power, which they call *Dian Manans*, or Lord of Wealth, at whoſe diſpoſing will, they think that they are made rich and proſper in their affairs. They ſeem alſo to have ſome light of inviſible Angels, and of the firſt peopling of the World, after the Creation by *Adam* & *Eve*, and the repeopling thereof, after the great Deluge by *Noah*; as alſo ſome glance of a Saviour, who was made a *Piaculum*, for ſome great offence committed by all mankind in general. They have alſo their Faſts and Holy-days.

Their Circumciſion.

Circumciſion is alſo a rite in uſe with them, which they do at one certain time of the year, with great ſolemnity. The day before all the Friends and Acquaintance meet together, and drink Metheglin till they grow raging mad: and then draw up upon the beating of a Drum, exerciſing with their Darts and * Aſſagays; the Youngmen and Women all the time dancing in Maſquerado, and in the Evening conclude with a luxurious Banquet, and open table for all that pleaſe to come. At night the mother takes the child to bed with her, in a little Houſe made for that purpoſe, about a moneth before the day of Circumciſion, by the Father and Uncles of the Child. The next morning by break of day, the Woman riſeth, and baths her ſelf, afterwards her child: which done ſhe dreſſes it with Corral and Precious ſtones, and thereupon they fall a drumming again, after which a great ſilence is made, and all the Gueſts which are there, muſt withdraw, as alſo all ſuch as have any thing about their body that is red; thinking that if ſuch were preſent, the blood

* *An Aſſagay, as themſelves call it, is a kind of dart, about 5 or 6 foot long.*

Oct. 1648. would not ſtench. Aſſoon as all are withdrawn, except theſe that are nominated to aſſiſt, the Prieſt takes his knife, and ties a white towel about his left legg; that done the Father and Uncles of the Child, take each of them a Child under the Arm, enter in at the Weſt-door, and out again at the Eaſt; and ſo ſitting down, the Prieſt performs the work. If it be the Son of a Slave or Bondwoman, the Prepuce is thrown away, but if otherwiſe, it is preſerved by the Uncle of the child, who lays it up in the Yelk of an Egg, for ſome Inchantment, or other; theſe people being reputed very active Exorciſts, and much inclined to Necromancy: and laſtly they apply a mixture of Cocks-blood and the juyce of ſome Herbs, to the wound; which done they march home, with great Exultation and joy, and ſo ends the Ceremony.

Their Government and Policy. This Iſland is divided into many Kingdoms and Dominions which are the Occaſion of perpetual diſcord and warrs among them. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, Javelins, and Targets, which they can uſe expertly well. They are for matter of courage and valour ſecond to none; but fight without any Diſcipline or Order breaking in with the main Battalion upon the Enemy, till they grow ſo confuſed, that they cannot diſtinguiſh their own, from the contrary Party. During the time of War. They run out in ſmall Companies to plunder and pillage the Towns and Cottages of their Enemies, and afterward ſet them on fire. When the Man is in Battel or under March, the Wife continually dances and ſings, and will not ſleep, or eat in her own Houſe, nor admit of the Uſe of any other Man, unleſs ſhe be deſirous to be rid of her own; for they entertain this Opinion among them, That if they ſuffer themſelves to be overcome with an *inteſtin War* at home their Husbands muſt ſuffer for it, being ingaged in a *forreign Expedition*; but on the contrary, if they behave themſelves chaſtly and dance luſtily, that then their Husbands by ſome certain Sympathetical operation, will be able to vanquiſh all their Combatants.

During the time of our aboad there, we ſaw the King *Diembro* ſeveral times ingaged with his Enemy, who had a more powerful Army than he, his own not exceeding 7000 men. So ſoon as the Enemy gave battel, *Diembro* with his Battalion ran upon him (after the

they had done with the Javelins) in a promiſcuous order, every one pitching upon his man, and after a ſhort Ingagement gave over, with the loſs of ſome of the beſt on each ſide; although *Diembra*, conſidering the great imparity of men, had the better Succeſs, and honour of the Camp. When the Battel was done, our party returned, with great Joy for the Day, and every one that could bring the Heads of the Champions, with whom they were particularly ingaged, laid them at the feet of the King, who either gave them a noble recompence, or honoured them with ſome Dignity. OCT. 1648.

The manner of their Treating about Peace.

They have a very quaint manner of making Peace. The Parties inclined to adjouſt their Quarrels, ſend firſt a Herald, with Preſents, who deſire to have communication with the Hoſtility, which when it is granted them, they nominate Time and Place where they may have conference, in order to bring their Diſcord to ſome amicable compoſure. The Meſſenger having performed his charge, returns to the King his Maſter, who gives the General order to put himſelf in a Poſture of marching; the General in obedience thereto muſters up all his Forces and ſits down before ſome River, where the Enemy faces him on the Bank, on the other ſide. When both parties have made their appearance, they kill each of them a Bullock, take out the Liver, and roaſt it, and ſend each other a piece, which is interchangeably received and eaten in preſence of the Heralds or Legates which are ſent on purpoſe to ſee that the Ceremony be effectually performed, binding themſelves with a ſolemn Oath, and under a Curſe, never to break the Truce which is agreed upon, between them: and at the ſame time repeat ſome mutual Articles, as,

Not to kill one anothers Men.
Not to ſteal one anothers Cattel.
Not to burn Villages.
Not to poyſon one anothers Rivers and Fountains. &c.

And afterwards utter many bitter Execrations, as, That the Liver they eat, may be their poyſon if they do not faithfully hold all the Articles ſpecified both ſacred and inviolable.

CHAP.

Chap. III.

The Author's departure from Madagaſcar, *Arrival at* Sumatra. *Four Prizes belonging to* Atchin *taken. The beaſtly Senſuality of ſome of the Ships-company, upon a Woman. The Ship whereon the Author was, taken as Prize, and brought up to* Batavia. *The men plundered and their Cheſts broken up. The Author admitts himſelf into the Service of the* East India *Company. his Voyage to* Siam. *An accurate deſcription of that Kingdom.*

MAR. 1649. HAving ſtay'd fully 5 moneths at *Madagaſcar*, we ſet ſail for *Sumatra* on the 16 of *March* 1649, where we arrived on the 12 of *Iune* then following. We came to anchor in the Bay of *Sillabar* where we exchanged ſome Commodities for Pepper and other Spices. On this Coaſt we took two Iunks belonging to *Atchin*, but all the people jump'd over board, and ſav'd themſelves, except one Woman, whom the *Italians*, raviſhed, the Officers not able to reſtrain them. The Woman after ſhe had been thus treated by theſe ſenſual bruits (that rather than to deny their beaſtly appetite made a *Bawdy houſe* of our *Ship*) was after much intreaties put aſhoar, and delivered to her Husband, who inhumanly mangled her till ſhe died.

On the 28 we weighed anchor, and ſet ſail for *Indrapoura*, taking by the way, two Iunks more, loaden with Pepper, Camphir and other Druggs and Spices. On the 29 we arrived at *Indrapoura* where we took in ſome neceſſary Proviſion and Refreſhments, thinking by the way to meet with more ſmall Prizes, but had not our expectation.

On the 2 of July, we left *Indrapoura*, and ſo ſet ſail for the Straits of *Sunda*. When we had got the height of *Toppers hook*, we met 14 Sail of Ships, belonging to the *Dutch Eaſt-India* company which were ſent out by expreſs order of the General, and the Council, to bring us up, whether willing, or unwilling. So ſoon as our commander had received the Meſſage; he returned anſwer That he was not under the command of the General, and that if they ſhould aſſail him, he was reſolved, to fight in his own defence. The *Dutch* commander was hereat in a doubt, and ſent to *Batavia* for new Inſtructions. It was not long before he got an Order from

from the General, with a Ship of War to aſſiſt him in caſe of Oppoſition: and thereupon imperiouſly commanded him to ſtrike, threatning to fire a whole tear of Guns in caſe of refuſal. Capt. *Maas*, who ſeeing himſelf now in a great Strait, and the uneaſineſs of his Ships-folk, called together all the Officers, to conſult the matter, when after mature deliberation they concluded it more faſe to ſurrender themſelves, and give their Maſters a true account of the buſineſs, ſeeing they were not able to defend themſelves againſt ſuch a number of Ships. This Reſolution was very acceptable to the Ships-company, who ſince that diviſion and uproar at *Madagaſcar*, were ſtill at odds, continually jarring among themſelves, and long'd for this, or the like oportunity. The Company now made Maſters of our Ships, brought them up to *Batavia*, where we arrived the 12 of *July*. Our Ships outſail'd the reſt by far; we arriving at the Haven 6 or 8 hours before them; ſo that if we had been willing, might have left them, and made our eſcape by night. JAN. 1650. *The Ships ſurrendred to the Dutch.*

On the 15 came Captain *vander Meulen* aboard, with an Order from the Heer *vander Liin*, then General, to take poſſeſſion of the Ship. Aſſoon as he was aboard, went into the great Cabin, where he examin'd us one by one. All the *Dutch* were brought abaft; and afterwards committed to the *Javans Corps du Garde*. The *Italians* and other Strangers remain'd aboard, and in the mean while pillaged our Cheſts, and took all the money they could come at. They being now at liberty and diſmiſſed, went every man where he beſt liked, the *Italians* moſtly to *Goa*, or *Banthem*, but the *Hamburgers* and others imbarqu'd themſelves for *Europe*. Shortly after the Commander died, and by ſeveral tokens he had on his body, was ſuppoſed to be poyſoned; and as ſome conjecture was done by thoſe which were left aboard the Ship, when we were carried aſhoar. After we had now lain about 14 days in priſon, we delivered a Petition, deſiring Inlargement; which was not only granted, but by Order of the General, all our Arrearages pay'd us to the utmoſt penny, and a Choice preferr'd us, Whether we would return home, or, Liſt our ſelves in the Companies ſervice: ſome rather chuſed to go home, but I, with the moſt part of the men, accepted of the latter. I hired myſelf as Sailmaker, for the

Term of three years, at 18 Gild. *per* moneth.

Jan. 1650. *Arrival at* Siam.

On the 15 *January*, I was put aboard the *Black Bear*, bound for *Siam*, where we ſafely arrived, and caſt anchor in the Bay.

The Kingdom of Siam *deſcribed.*

The Kingdom of *Siam* lies in the moſt Eaſterly part of *Eaſt India*, from 7 to 8 degr. Northerly Latitude. There are many Cities, and Towns of note in it, and thoſe very populous, among which *Iudia* is the chief, being the Metropolis of *India extra Gangem*, and the city where the King has his Court and Reſidence. The land is very fertile, affoarding all that may ſerve for the delight and ſuſtenance of human Bodies, the Fields ſtored with many ſorts of Cattel, the Rivers with Fiſh, and the Towns with Magazines of rich Merchandizes. The Inhabitants are of a tawny and yellowiſh complexion, and ſuperſtitious Pagans in Religion, as appears by their great Zeal, in adorning of their Temples, and ſtrict Reverence for their Prieſts which are here too great and numerous for the Laity. Their Government is Monarchical, and the King for many ages has been abſolute Sovereign, over this and the neighbouring Territories and Dominions, and that with as much Power, Grandour, and Reverence from the Subject, as any Potentate or King, under the canopy of Heaven. In ſhort, *Siam* in regard of it's Fertility, Wealth, Number of Inhabitants and ſubordinat Principalities, may paralel any other Empire in the Univerſe.

Iudia.

Iudia, which (as we have already ſaid) is the Imperial Town of *Siam*, lies about 16 degrees Northerly Latitude from the *Aequator*, and is ſeated on one of the faireſt Rivers (without doubt) in all the Eaſtern World, where a Ship of the greateſt burthen may come up cloſe to the Kay, to load or unload, without fear of ſuſtaining dammage.

The River, and delightſome Countrey there about.

In going from the mouth of the River upwards about 30 Leagues, we found ſeveral Inlets and ſwift Currents, which diſgorge themſelves into this great and noble River, with abundance of fair Orchards, pleaſant and delectable Groves, an infinit number of Villages, Religious Houſes, Hamlets, and other amiable Proſpects; the Fields all the while caſting a fragrant ſmell from her ſpicy Flowers; and the Groves affoarded a moſt raviſhing melodie of Birds warbling their wanton ſtrains, and chanting in the ſhades and thickets







ets, whither they retired to ſhelter themſelves from the too power- JAN. 1650.
ull raies of the ſcorching Sun, and thoſe anſwered again by the
oft whiſpering gales of the gentle Wind, and the baſe murmurings
f the great Cataracts and Water-falls at a diſtance, raiſ'd and de-
reſſ'd with the unconſtant turnings of the Wind: all which ſeemed
o have ſuch Harmony, that it raviſh'd us as much, as ever the re-
owned *Theſſalian Tempe* could the men of old.

The Land is for the moſt part level, of a clay and ſandy earth;
ew Hills appear, or any thing elſe ſeems to ſurmount the Horizon,
ve the high Towers and Pyramids, whereof we found an incre-
ible number.

About 8 leagues up the River is a ſmall City, of a triangular Plat-
orm, and environed with a wall, called *Bankok*. In the ſame City
the Kings firſt Toll-or Cuſtome-houſe, which they call the *Canon* *Cuſtome-Houſes.*
ankok, and every Ship and Junk to whomſoever they belong are
bliged to come to anchor there, and give in their information, upon
hat account they come, and from whence; as alſo what Men and
oods they have aboard. Having performed that Duty, they pay
eir Toll, and receive their Billet, with Letters of Conduct, to
o ſo far up as they liſt, till they come within a League of *Iudia*,
here the ſecond Toll-houſe is, called, the *Canon Bantenau*; and
re they are a ſecond time bound to anchor, and exhibit their Coc-
ts, which having ſhown, they have their liberty to go further. This
cond *Canon*, is erected only to ſee that the Prince have his due,
nd to examin whether that the Stranger be not defrauded by the
ommiſſioners of the firſt; and to give Licences to enter the Town,
nd traffique. It is alſo to be underſtood, that when any Ship is
tward bound, they are to pay their Toll at the *Canon Bantenau*.
hich at coming up was the ſecond, now the firſt Cuſtome-
ouſe; and are to paſs an Examen at the *Canon Bankok*, as they did
fore at the other, without paying any thing, if they can manifeſt
their Cocket, that they have already paid: and this every Veſſel
w mean ſoever it be, is bound to do, or in caſe of refuſal to
rfeit Ship and Carga.

* *Fifteen making a degree, it follows that 3 Dutch miles muſt be 12 Engliſh miles, or four Leagues at Sea.*

Siam although it have abundance of Towns, yet there are but 5
at are walled, in all the Kingdom, whereof *Iudia* is the ſtrong-
, being about 2 * *Dutch* miles in circuit: The walls are con-

JAN. 1650. ſiderably ſtrong, with round Bulwarks after the old way, but ter its manner very Stately and magnificent. Within the To are ſome Thouſands of Temples, Cloyſters; and gilded Turre which together do make a pompous ſhow. The ſtreets of t City are very long and ſpatious, the Town it ſelf ſurrounded w a River about 2 Musquet-ſhot in breadth, and divides it ſelf int ſtreams, at that place where the King has his Court and R dence. The Royal Palace is very magnificent and Coſtly, ſtron walled about, and fortified, within alſo are very ſtately and no Appartments, a Fabric which for Workmanſhip and Riches paſſes all that ever I have ſeen in *India*, and certainly, for Power and Grandour of the Prince, Splendour of the Pala immenſe Wealth of the Inhabitants, Fertility of the Countr and Temperateneſs of the Climate, it is ſecond to no place in *dia*, if *China* may be excluded.

Soil and Fertility of Siam. The Soil is very good, and the Land fertile, producing ye a vaſt increaſe of Rice and other Corn; It is alſo rich of Ca as Kine, Hoggs, Buffels, Elks, Hares and Coneys, incred Flocks of Deer, which are more hunted for their Hides than caſes, they reckoning That one of the Staple commodities, export many Thouſands yearly to *Iapon*, and other places of T fic, ſo that the main Trading of the Company there to I conſiſts in that Merchandiſe. Wild-beaſts are alſo here in g abundance, as, Elephants, Rhinocerots, Leopards, Tygres, the like; as alſo all kinds of Fowl, both great and ſmall, th have ſeen in *Europe*, Swans and Nightingales onely excepted, w I dare not be poſitive whether there be any or not. Nor are

Fiſh. Rivers, as alſo the Sea without good ſtore of Fiſh, and th many kinds: The Sea-ſhore lies thick with Oiſters, and Lobſ which are as delicate as they are plentifull. They uſe the Fiſ Trade alſo as in other places, and make great profit, eſpecial a kind of Scate, that they take chiefly for the Skin, which

The great value of Scate Skins. of *Iapon* hold in great eſteem, paying ſometimes at the rat 50, or 60 Ducats for one Skin, if it be choice and good; yet ſu the difference, that I have ſeen a hundred Pieces of Eight paid ſingle Skin, whilſt it has been known, that a whole hundred w not yield 4 Rix-dollars. Theſe Skins they firſt dry, and

eat care pack them up, and ſo export them. There are alſo in *JAN.* 1650.
is River many Crocodiles, which the *Siamers* call *Cayman*, and
e them for Phyſic. There are alſo many venemous Creatures as *Crocodiles uſed for Medicine.*
rpents, Adders, Scorpions and Snakes. It exuberates, beſides
e ſeveral Products already mentioned, in Sugar, Oil, Kitchin-
d Medicinal herbs, and various kinds of Fruit: and in a word
am is ſo well provided by nature of it ſelf that the Inhabitants may
pply themſelves with what is neceſſary for human Life, and Re-
eation, without the means of exotic Commerce, and importa-
on of forreign Commodities.

CHAP. IV.

The Nature and Way of living of the Siamers. *Their ſeveral Trades and Profeſſion. Travail of their Merchants. Government and Politie. The great State of the Emperour. and Magnificency of his Throne: his Cavalcade, and manner of ſhewing himſelf to his People. The Riches of his Veſſels, the Elephants ſerved in Gold and Silver. The Wars about the white Elephant, againſt* Ava *and* Pegu.

Siam, as I ſaid before, is very populous, and the Inhabitants
generally of a good and free diſpoſition. They Negotiate
rongly in every kind of Merchandiſe, whereof they can make a pro-
t, and that more eſpecially within Land.

They are great incouragers of Art and Artiſts, eſpecially the Me-
hanicks, and ſuch as they cannot well want, as Houſe-and Ship-
Carpenters, Maſons, Smiths, Braziers, Founders; Turners,
lummers, Pewterers, Painters, Carvers, Gold-Smiths, Fullers,
awiers, Joyners, Weevers, and an infinit number of Jewellers
nd Lapidaries; Nor are they without their Phyſicians, Chirur-
eons, and Lawiers, after their own manner. Here are alſo Ped-
rs by Thouſands, that travail from Town to Town, like ſuch
follow the Fairs in *Europe*; theſe have no faſt dwelling, but
e in motion the whole year round, and ſleep always in the booths
hich they erect whereſoever they come. Fiſhing and Husbandry
e well promoted, for every man, be he never ſo mean, if he have

JAN. 1650. a faſt Reſidence, has his Lands, either leſs or more, which a cultivated with all imaginable diligence, as appears by the yea Product of Grain, which not only ſupplies themſelves, but is ſo exported into other Countreys, as well on the main Contine as the adjacent Iſlands. And ſo cheap is all manner of neceſſa Proviſion and ſuſtenance, that Labourers and common Slaves w work any ſervile work for 3d a Day.

Every City has a Prętor, or Deputy, who derives his pow from the King, and with a Council of Aſſiſtance is to determi of all Matters and Affairs, as well Civil as Criminal. The ſa Prętor, or Vice-roy has alſo charge over the Imperial Revenue Tolls, and Cuſtoms, to ſee that they be payd without defraudi of the King, and that the Sub-commiſſioners of the ſaid Duti do not exact upon Forreigners, that are not acquainted with t Rates impoſed upon their Goods. This Officer, as alſo eve Officer of State, is only to continue three years in one place, a at the expiration of that term, is either removed to a place of gre ter Truſt and Eminency, or has his Diſcharge ſent him. Th Suits at Law are preſently brought to an end, and Sentence paſ according to equity, without regard to the Degree and Quality the Parties; the Client firſt going to a Notary, and has his c fairly ſtated, which then is brought to an Advocate, who i diſcuſs and comment it before the Prętor, as in moſt places *Europe*: with this difference only, that the Advocate or Attorn has the power to continue or give over the Suit, as he thinks f which is ordained to prevent tedious Appeals, and perpetu clamours at Court. Criminal Affairs are puniſhed ſeverely enoug eſpecially, Treaſon and Murther, nor do they diſpence with a places of Refuge, or Sanctuary, for the Perpetratours of ſu enormous Crimes.

Malefactors ſeverely puniſhed.

There is no Potentate in the Eaſt may paralel this Emperour Magnificence and Pomp. He never ſets his foot upon the Earth, b is carried on a Throne of Gold, from place to place; and uſual appears once a day before his Peers and Grandees, which alwa attend the Court: theſe ſhow him all imaginable Reverence, a aſcribe him ſuch honour as accrews to no Mortal. When any deſi to ſpeak with him, ſo ſoon as he gets admiſſion, preſents himſ upo

upon his knees, his hands folded, and his countenance caſt to the Ground; then bowing of his body and kiſſing the Earth, he begins his Harangue, which is alwaies done with a ſubmiſſive voice, and at the end of every Sentence, rehearſes his Title, JAOUA TJAUW PERRE BOEDE TJAUW JAOUA, which by an Idiotiſm of our own, is *King of Kings, and Lord of Lords*. His ſupreme Throne is of maſſive Gold, made after the form of a Pyramid, and ſo contrived that none can ſee him aſcend. On each ſide of the Throne ſtand ſeveral Statues, and Creatures of monſtrous ſhapes; as is recorded of the Judgment-ſeat of *Solomon*, which was guarded with Lions. His Perſon is ſecured with a very noble Guard, and well arm'd; ſeveral Elephants alwaies ready in the inner court of the Pallace alſo, for his Pleaſure and Service upon occaſion; theſe are mounted with Trappings of rich Silk, fimbriated and imboſſed with Gold, and precious Stones.

JAN. 1650.

Stately Throne of the King.

When he goes abroad to viſit his Pagods and Religious Houſes, or to take his Divertiſement (which is ordinarily twice or thrice every year) he is attended with an infinit Retinue of Grandees, and Officers at Court, as alſo all his Wives and Concubines, which are very numerous; all mounted upon Elephants. When this Setting forth is not performed with a Cavalcade, but by Water; there are a certain number of *Praws*, brought up cloſe to the Pallace. Theſe are almoſt like a Barge, but far greater, having 20 or 30 Oars a piece, with 5 men to an Oar; without they are richly gilded and charged with Feſtons and Foliages on a diapered ground. Others there are leſs noble and rich, which ſerve only to tranſport the Soldateſque, and aboard every *Praw* are ſeveral that play upon Wind Inſtruments and Drums, which make a confuſed noyſe; Upon the hearing of this, every one, whether Citizen or Peaſant, Freeman or Slave, Young or Old, is injoyned to come forth and fall proſtrate, with all imaginable Reverence, upon very ſevere Penalties, according to the Quality and Diſcretion of the Party. This Injunction is obſerved very ſtrictly, and certain Officers ordained to take notice of the Delinquents, whoſe Rule is Arbitrary, and Meſures ſudden; they are ſo correct in puniſhing ſuch that few eſcape; I my ſelf having ſeen, while I was there, ſome two or three beheaded with a Scimitar, only for being too remiſs, in doing Wor-

JAN. 1650. Worſhip; although in ſuch as want Diſcretion, or otherwiſe unable to perform the Ceremony, through invalidity of Body or Mind, the Offence is either diſpenced with, or expiated with ſome inconſiderable Forfeiture. This Solemn Appearance happening ſo rarely and that with ſuch Majeſtie, creates great Loyalty and veneration in the heart of the Subjects for their Prince: and ſurely the concluſion and effect of every Maxim in Politic Affairs is the ſecureſt Index; or Diſtinction from a Contrary, which almoſt all the Kingdoms and Dominions of the East affoard an Example of, and more notedly the *Sophy* of *Perſia*, who when with a huge Retinue he makes a Cavalcade (which might ſeem to be for no other end than to be ſeen) none dare preſume to appear in the ſtreet, upon pain of Death; of which more hereafter.

Great plenty of Gold. Gold is here in ſuch plenty that not only Plates, Chargers, Goblets, Bowls, Baſons, Lavers, and whatſoever els is uſefull for the Kings Table, is all of ſolid Gold, but alſo greater veſſels in the Kitchin; which had I not ſeen them my ſelf, ſhould have held incredible, if the weight and greatneſs had truly been reported. But what is yet more, the white Elephant, with the reſt (which are about 6 or 8 in Number) kept within the Palace, are ſerved in Gold and Silver. The Gallantry of the Court, and the gorgeous attire of the Courtiers, is unſpeakeably rich. And to be brief, I ſhould repeat the Maieſty of that Prince in Power and Command, The profuſe Emulation of the Courtiers in Embroydery, Jewels and other coſtly Ornaments, and the Magnificent Structure of the Palace and other ſtately Fabrics; I ſhould either prove too weak for the performance of ſuch a Province, or, hazard my reputation in giving a Narrative of the Pomp which I have in reality beheld, to ſuch as have not ſeen it, who would in all probability be too curious to take things of that nature upon Credit. This I ſhall only add, that rather than to be undeſervedly tax'd with hyperbolical Froth, I'le content my ſelf with a recommendation thereof other modeſt Gentlemen that have been there, and publiſhed their Journals for the public peruſal of the Curious in general.

The Elephants ſerved in Gold and Silver.

Of their Wars. The preſent King of *Siam*, has lived in great peace and tranquillity, ever ſince he firſt ſway'd the Scepter: But in the time of the late King, that nation has been deeply ingaged in ſome

troubles: Specially with *Pegu*, *Ava* and *Langjander*, partly out of the ambitious minds of thoſe Princes, and partly out of a ſordid covetouſneſs; as of the king of *Pegu*, who indeavoured to make himſelf Maſter of the white Elephant, which he of *Siam* had: but after the depopulation of the countreys, and loſs of many thouſand Souls, they made Peace upon ſtrict Articles. JAN 1650

Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi.

In the year 1648, the King of *Ava* with the aſſiſtance of a neighbouring Potentate, invaded part of *Siam*, and took in ſome open Villages, and Towns of ſmaller note; but the king of *Siam* coming to have notice of this ſudden Expedition, levies an Army of 200000 men, or upwards, marching himſelf at the head in Perſon; and encamped about 2 *English* Miles from the Enemy, where without either Battel or Skirmiſh they lay for 3 Moneths, when the Enemy not finding himſelf able to continue longer in camp, for want of Proviſion, and Recruits of men, was fain to break up; and march homewards. Thoſe of *Patany* had ſent Ten Thouſand men, all well diſciplin'd and arm'd, for Auxiliaries in the Service of the king of *Siam*; but thoſe arrived too late, the King being juſt upon his March for *Iudia*; where about 20 days after, he was Solemnly fetch'd in by his Nobles with great Triumph and Joy, as if he had obtained ſome notable Victory: and certainly it was the moſt prudent courſe he could have taken, to ſpare his own people, by ſhunning the Blood-ſhed of ſo many innocent ſouls, vanquiſhing the Hoſtility by the reſtraint of his Arms; and in making himſelf formidable with the greatneſs of his Battalions. There was alſo a Navy of Twenty Thouſand *Praws*, preſſed for the behoof of the Army, to tranſport the Baggage and Proviſion; and beſides the ſtanding Militia and Voluntairs, 52000 Citizens preſſ'd for this Expedition, whom the King allowed Rice for Victualling, the reſt they were to take care for themſelves. The Mandate was no ſooner out, but this Body was completed, which gave occaſion of wonder, to ſome, when they obſerved the readineſs and obedience of thoſe Pagans to their lawfull Soveraign. The weapons uſed then for that Diſpatch, were moſtly fire-arms, and about 20 Pieces of Ordnance, which were committed to the charge of 2 expert Gunners; beſides 5 Thouſand Elephants, and 2 Thouſand Horſe; thoſe that were mounted on Elephants were armed with Bows, Arrows and Darts, and the Cavalry with Fire-locks, Scimatars

A.Ch. 1650. matars and Bucklers, which Armory is alwaies ready for uſe in the Kings Repoſitory. As for Powder they are never at a loſs thro want of it, having ſuch plenty of Salt-peter, which is the main Ingredient thereof: ſo that it is moſt certain, the *Siammers* are never deſtitute of any neceſſary Ammunition for War, either upon offenſiv or defenſiv Occaſions. Nor yet ſecond to any for true valour and courage, which is checked by a prudent Conduct, and politic Direction of their Power; and thereby the Prince, and the leading Officers of the Army, become dreadfull to the Neighbouring Potentates abroad, and awfull to the Subject at home.

CHAP. V.

The Revenues and Treaſury of the King of Siam. *The Religious zeal of thoſe Kings in building of Temples, and Houſes for pious uſes. Soldiers without pay. The great Slavery and Charges of the Citizens and Plebeians, their Obedience, and Liberality in devotion. Ample Revenues of the Spiritual. Habit and Function of their Prieſts. The Multitude and monſtrous bigneſs of ſome of their Idols. Their Ceremonies in Worſhip; wherein congruous to thoſe of the* Romish *Religion.*

Revenues of the King of Siam.

THe Revenues of the King of *Siam*, as we have elſewhere ſaid, conſiſt moſtly in Cuſtomes, Tolls and Exciſe, for all exported Wares and Commodities, beſides the Fiſhing, and Growth of the Land, as Corn, Fruit, Trees, &c. There are alſo in the Country ſeveral ſubterrannean and foſſible things, Mines of Gold and Silver, Lead and Pewter, beſides great ſtore of Sappan-wood, as good as that of *Braſilia*, which is reputed a very rich Commodity and ſent abroad both to *Coromandel*, *Dabul*, *China*, *Iapon*, and other Iſlands in the Eaſt. When Any that is imployed in the Kings ſervice dies, 2 Thirds of his Eſtate fall to the King, and the reſidue to the Wife and Children of the deceaſed; or elſe in lieu thereof ſuch Salary as they are contented with. The like when any Merchant Stranger comes to die within the Kingdom, two Thirds of his Eſtate are brought into the Chamber of Finances.

The devout zeal of the Kings of Siam in erecting of Pagods, Religious Houſes and Temples.

The King having that ſpecial mean of making the Army ſupport it's ſelf, is at very litle Charges elſe, ſave what his zeal moves him

to, in Building of Temples, Religious Houſes and Towers, to the Honour of his Gods, which indeed are infinitely numerous and coſtly in this Countrey; the enobling of his court, with ſome unneceſſary things tending to his own Honour, about which much money is conſumed; and laſtly providing of Annunition and Shipping upon occaſion of War: but as we have already mentioned, the Soldateſque have no Pay from the King, except a certain allowance of Rice, and what Spoil they can take from the Enemy; and theſe, although they goe under the Denomination of Soldiers, yet are but Slaves at beſt, being imployed in all ſervile uſes, as Labourers, when, and where, the King commands. IAN. 1650.

Soldiers without Pay, and uſed as Slaves.

The Citizens (which may be called Freemen or Proprietaries) are but half a remove from Soldiers, they being obliged to maintain and repair all the Fortifications at their own coſt, and defend them in time of need. Yet notwithſtanding thoſe heavy burthens impoſed on the Commonalty, in the performance whereof they are not found remiſs, or tardy, they bring up above twenty *Tun of Gold yearly, for Offerings to their *Pagods*, and the behoof of the Spiritual; inſomuch that the Prieſts, with the large Offerings of the King, and Liberality of the People, grow rich and in great eſteem, notwithſtanding their being ſo numerous in this Kingdom.

The Condition of the Citizens.

*Dutch Tuns, without diſpute.

The King and People embrace no other Religion than barely Gentiliſm, which, as appears by the ruins of Monaſteries and Cells every where, has been anciently profeſſed among them. Their Ceremonies they ſeem to have borrowed from the *Roman*, or *Greek* Church, which they ape, as near as may be, with reſervation of Paganiſm. They are inceſſantly building, repairing and adorning the Temples of their *Pagods*, founding Cloyſters, and erecting of Pyramids; wherin they ſpare not for money: for though they ſpend their whole Eſtates, about them, they muſt be gilded without, and richly hung within. Their *Bonzi*, or Prieſts, are diſtinguiſhed from the Laity by a yellow Veſture, and thoſe again differing among themſelves by certain Badges, or tokens, denoting their degrees: Their Beards, Head and Eiebrows are always ſhaven. According to their Order, they may not handle Money, Marry, nor make uſe of Women, upon ſevere Penalties; for if any be taken,

JAN. 1650. in company with a Female, he is burn'd alive, or at beſt baniſhed the Kingdom during the Term of Life; and certainly if their Cod-piece were not faſtned with ſuch a heavy Padlock; the Laymens Wives and Daughters could never be ſecure, from that peſtiferous rout? 'Tis true by their Rule they are not to handle money, yet like the Jeſuits, have accumulated to themſelves vaſt Treaſures, which are accompanied with a great reverence and honour from the Commonalty, who whether they have ſuſtenance for their Family and Children at home, will not ſee the *Bonzi* deſtitute of what he has a mind to, whether it be in Victuals or Apparrel. Their Function is to exhort and teach the People, for which end they have certain Lectures, four times every moon, and at that time ſet open the Temples, where all the people reſort, and meet in due order. So ſoon as they have buzz'd over a few formal words, they begin a kind of Admonition, inſiſting upon ſeveral good works and moral vertues, but eſpecially to be liberal to the *Bonzi*, or Prieſts, and the *Pagods*: How far this prevails upon them appears truly in their free-will offerings, which are indeed very conſiderable, in Gold, Silver, Garments and Meat, which the *Bonzi* then receive at the Offertory, promiſing to make ſome new Gods therewith, or adorn the Old.

At morning and at night they go to prayers, which they rehearſe with a loud voice, that any ſtranger thereto induced by curioſity, may be permitted to ſee and hear. They go alſo to viſit the Sick, and pray for the Deceaſed, with great ſobbings, and tokens of ſorrow. When they have done Prayer they ſing all together in a Chorus, in the * *Pegu* or *Borneo* Tongue, and that with a tolerable good Harmony; that done, they walk leiſurely toward the head of the Temple, and kiſs the *Pagods*. The *Pagods* are images of divers ſorts of Metalls, as ſome of Gold, Silver and Braſs, others of Woodor Stone. In the Cathedral of *Iudia* are twelve *Pagods* of a vaſt Bigneſs, ſitting all croſs legged, like Taylors upon a Table: the chief whereof was 13 fathom high, as he ſat, being of due Symmetry and Analogy, through all his members. This is uſually called by the *Dutch*, **Den grooten Afgodt van SOES**, that is, *The great Idol of* SOES. The reſt were ſomewhat leſs than this, and were placed directly one before another. The Ceremonies which

* *Which are their Ghoſtly Languages, as Arabic in the Alcoran, and Latin at Maſs.*

which we have already said to have affinity with the Church of *Rome*, are, Burning of Lamps, Consecrated, or Holy-water, Auricular Confession, Indulgences, and Pilgrimages, undertaken for themselves and others, whereby they are of opinion that they merit much, One of them would (if I had given my Consent) have gone on a long and tedious Pilgrimage for me. They have some special kindness for the *Hollanders*, in that they allow Liberty of Conscience, and revile not their * Gods, as do the Mahumetans, for which reason the Opinion of that grand Impostor, could never get footing in this Kingdom. JAN. 1656.

* For that were not consistent with

Money catching in those Countreys, where they could never yet finger it by Violence and Tyranny.

CHAP. VI.

Good materials for building in Siam. *Their manner of House-keeping, and entertainment of Friends. Neatness and cleanliness in their Houses and Bodies. Their way of dressing themselves, both men and Women. Strange Contracts of matrimony. Early marriage. Education of their Children. Learning and learned men had in great veneration. Rites about their deceased. Urbanity in their Conversation. The great Affection of the Emperour towards Strangers &c.*

Good Materials for building in Siam.

Siam has of it self whatsoever is requisite in building either for Houses or Shipping; they neither want Lime, Stone, Lead, Iron, nor Wood, or whatsoever else is necessary. Yet notwithstanding Stone be here in plenty enough, yet they build their Dwelling-houses mostly of Wood, and reserve Stone for the use of their *Pagods*, Temples, Pyramids, Fortifications and other Public Edifices. Their Houses they cover with Tiles, and within have several Appartments, as we have in *Europe*. They use not many moveables in their Houses neither use they Benches, Stools, or Tables. Their Floors are all spread with Matts which they use for cleanliness, and upon these they sit down. But if a person of Eminency comes to visit them they honour him with another Matt, or else an *Arabian* Carpet, which is of excellently well wrought Tapestry. When he is set, they give him Fair-water in Gold or Silver Goblets, and a * *Siery Pinang*, which is the chief thing wherewith they caress their Friends. They are very nice and curious about their Vessels in the Kitchin and Dishes; which for the

House-keeping and entertainment of Friends.

* As of see in the Levant, or Chocolate in Spain.

Ann. 1650. Cleanly in their Chambers and about their Bodies.

moſt part are of braſs, and of a neat faſhion, but generally chaſ
They are alſo very cleanly in their Chamber, and ſurpaſs any oth
people that I have ſeen, either before or ſince. They keep their b
dies cleaner than the Turks themſelves, and bath themſelves of
than they eat, which is not only their Head, Hands and Feet,
was the Cuſtome of the Talmudiſts, and thoſe under the Levit
Law, but all over: which being done, they anoint themſelves w
perfumed Confectures, made of fragrant Spices, and Herbs. Som
them I have known uſe an Oyntment made of *Xylaloës*, or, wood
Aloës, Sandal, Musk, and Ambergreece, tempered with R
water, which beſides the delectable odour it renders, is a g
Preſervative againſt epidemical and peſtilential Airs.

Men how attired when a broad.

Whenſoever their Devotion moves them to go and viſit t
Friends, or the *Pagods*, which they frequently adore, they b
and anoint themſelves after this wiſe, and afterwards, attire th
ſelves in a Garb peculiar to ſuch Solemnities: the Men have all t
fingers loaden with gold Rings, as many as they can well pu
without hindring the due uſe of their Joynts, and a long Co
Robe, or Caſſock, of divers colours either ſo woven, or p
ted; which appears very gorgeouſly: this is their Habit from
middle downward; under that they wear a Shirt of very fine Lin
or Cotton, of red, white, or other colours: bove the middle a kin
Surplice, with wide ſleeves (like the Gown of a Batchlour of
in our Univerſities) Head, Hands and Feet are all bare.

Women how attired.

The Women have their hair tied up in a round ball, on the cr
of the head, faſtned with a golden Bodkin, 5 or 6 inches long.
their Ears they hang Pendants of Gold about a finger long, wh
are faſtned to the Tips of their Ears, by great wide holes, bo
when they are Young, the head where they faſten the Penda
ſet with Precious ſtones, as Ruby, Diamond, Amethiſt, Emera
Pearls. Beſides the Rings, which are alſo ſet with Diamonds,
other Stones, and ſometimes plain, they wear others about t
arms, which are maſſie and ponderous. They wear alſo a long Ve
of 7 or 8 foot long, and 6 or 7 broad, painted of divers colo
being faſtned with a Surcingle about 16 foot long, wound ro
their body, which is neatly embroidered with Gold; From
middle upward they have nothing but a Cotton-cloth, or a Sca

coloured Silk which they throw about their ſhoulders to cover their breaſts. To be brief the Habit of Men and Women, as well as Children, is as coſtly as gaudy, and their Perſons of a very handſom ſtature, but rather with the ſhorteſt; ſo that with the ſtatelineſs of attire, and comelineſs of bodie, they preſent better than thoſe of *China* or *Japon*. When they walk the ſtreets, they are attended with a retinue of Slaves conformable to their Rank and Abilitie, which are alſo in gentile habit. JAN. 1650.

Marriages the Siammers.

The *Siammers*, although Pagans, have a ſacred veneration for Matrimony, and are generally very chaſt; Yet they do not eſteem it a diſhonour or ſhame to be Adulterers. Whoredom is in ſome regard diſpenced with (or at leaſt connived at) nevertheleſs they are not much inclined to Venery, but content themſelves with ſuch as they are ingaged to by Wedlock: and in their honeſt demeanor towards their lawfull Conſorts (of whether ſex it be meant) may convince moſt of us, that profeſs the Faith of Chriſt: The conjugal Love of Man and Wife is ſo mutually obſerved on both ſides, and the filial Duty of Children towards their Parents, ſo reciprocally paid, that ſome who pretend to a more than natural Light, need not to reckon thoſe too mean a precedent for Morality. The parents are very carefull to educate their children, when they are young, and the children diligent in nouriſhing and providing for their parents, when they are grown aged, and unable to help themſelves.

A Batchlour deſirous to marry, and conſequently having ſettled his thoughts upon a Maid, muſt addreſs himſelf (or ſend ſome friend) to the Father of the party, or having none, to her Guardian, and not the Maid her ſelf, with whom they may not converſe; and theſe are to treat together upon the matter. But it is more uſual, that the Parents of both the parties make the Overture, among themſelves. They have no reſpect to Conſanguinity or Affinity, but marry ſometimes with the neareſt relations they have, Brother and Siſter only excluded, unleſs they have different Mothers. But to ſtrangers they rarely marry, although it were to a Family of a better rank or Fortune. They look much after Wealth and Beauty, but not ſo much after vertuous Inclinations, as we do; neither are they prone to be led aſide with affability, or flattery, as ſometimes happens among us, which tends frequently to a future diſcontent and irrevocable calamity.

JAN. 1650. mity. Now as the Parents alwaies make up the Marriage, the young couple may not of themſelves diſſolve it; and the better to avoid any diſſatisfaction, which may ariſe from the diſlike that the one may have of the other, they are generally married before they come to maturity, when they are not capable of judging, as at 10 years of age. I have ſeen a Couple married, the man at 12 and the Woman not fully 9. Another couple I have known, who had 2 Children, and both their ages could not make up 25 years. Polygamy is here allowed, for every man may marry ſo many Wives, as he liſts, unleſs he be under ſome particular obligation to the contrary. They are ſometimes divorced for ſlender reaſons, but alwaies when they cannot procreate Children, and being ſeperate they may ſeverally marry again. Their Marriages are not confirmed by the Spiritual, but Temporal Magiſtrate, yet always the Prieſt, muſt be preſent to do Sacrifice on behalf of both the Parties. They are very punctual in obſerving all the Articles ſpecified in the Covenant of Matrimony, without the ſtringency of the Law. They regulate themſelves in Houſe-keeping, Education of their Children and the like, moſtly after the Law of Nature, without reſtraint or compulſion. Their Children are very flexible and obedient, without beating or other ſevere chaſtiſement. When they are young their Parents commit them to the *Bonzi*, who inſtruct them in all Sciences and good manners, as alſo mechanical Profeſſions and Trades, whereby they afterwards get their living: Although moſt of them deſire rather to ſtick to their ſtudies, and ſo embrace the Function of Prieſt-hood, ſuch being among them eſteemed honorable, that have any tincture of Learning.

Polygamy.

Learning and Learned men in great eſteem.

The dead burned to Aſhes. Their Dead they bury not, but, after the manner of the *Romans*, burn them; which is celebrated with great pomp, and expences, proportionable to the merits or abilitie of the Partie. The Aſhes they conſerve in an Urn, which they incloſe in a Pyramid erected to the Memory of the Deceaſed: others out of Zeal cauſe Churches and Monaſteries to be built; or bequeath large Revenues to the *Pagods* and *Bonzi:* nay, there is hardly a Slave among them but gives ſomething for Religious uſes, or perhaps all that he was maſter of; and upon theſe occaſions they are burned at the

charges of the Convent. Thoſe that die of any diſeaſe which they repute unclean as Small-pox, Feavers, &c. are not burned, but either thrown into a River with a ſtone about their neck, or given to the Beaſts of prey. The ſame they do with Children, if they come to die before a certain age, for that they ſay, That for want of diſcretion they could not rightly Worſhip their Deity, and conſequently do not deſerve an Urn. JAN. 1650.

They are of a very liberal nature, and civil to converſe withall, but eſpecially to Strangers. *English*, *Portugueezes*, *Hollanders*, and *Moors*, without reſpect to their Profeſſion, have liberal acceſs to enter, inhabit and traffic in the Land, by order of the King; and enjoy as much Liberty, and benefit of the Law, as his own natural ſubjects; which draws abundance of Forreigners, from all Countreys, who come thither, either upon the account of Commerce, or to ſeek Protection. This concurrency of ſo many ſeveral ſorts of People doth not only daily teach new Politie, but renders the Prince formidable to his neigbouring Potentates, who know his Kingdom to be ſo populous and the people ſo deeply ingaged to their Sovereign. *Urbanity in their converſation.*

The Crown is ſucceſſiv, yet during the minority of the Heir (which is at 15 years) the Uncle, or ſome Guardian nominated by the King, takes place as Adminiſtrator: By this Precedent alſo are all the Officers in the Kingdom regulated, that are ſucceſſiv. *The Crown hereditary.*

CHAP. VIII.

The Sieur van Muyden *invited to the Exequies of the Princeſs. A ſtately Scaffold erected for the Solemnity of the day. A magnificent and ſumptuous Altar Ornaments of the Corps. The Train attending the Ceremony: Order of the ſame. Money thrown among the People. Stages erected for the Almoſners. Artificial Fireworks. The vaſt Charges of this Preparation.*

ON the 23 of *February*, the Sieur *van Muyden*, Conſul for the Company, was ſent for, by two Interpreters, to wait upon the King; who invited him to attend the Ceremony of burning the Corps of his ſole legitimat Daughter. I went my ſelf alſo *February* 1650.

FEBR. 1650. to see the Exequies performed, but by the remissness of the Messengers, came too late to see the Train; for the Corps was brought to the place, before we got thither; but yet came in time enough to get to the stage, which was erected for us. On the middle of the Parade before the pallace, were erected 5 Towers; upon each Tower a poll, that which stood in the middest was 30 fathom high, the other 4 that stood in a quadrangular form, each 20 fathom. The Fabric of those Towers was very artificial: Round about under the Architraves, they were neatly painted with Foliage, rais'd with Gold, and depress'd with Umber and burn'd Ivory. On the Stylobat were carved Heads of Leopards, Tygres and Panthers. Under the Projecture, Supporters in antic-work, and emblematical to the occasion; the *Scima*, or Cornish with close Leaves suitable to the Phrise and Architrave, but could not at the distance I was at, perceive whether it was carv'd or painted. Within the great Tower which stood in the midle, was a very costly Altar, covered with Gold and set with Sapphirs and other stones, being about 6 foot high from the Ground. Upon this Altar was the Corps of the Young Lady laid, after it had lay imbalmed about 6 Moneths within the Pallace. The Body was attired in a Royal Garb, with Gold chains, Bracelets and Collars of Gold, and fastned with Diamonds. She was set in a Coffin of solid Gold, in which she sate upright, with her Hands close joyned, and her face looking upwards: upon her head was a Crown of Gold, very richly set with stones. Then came all the *Mandorins*, or, Grandees of the Nation, with their Ladies, attired in White, without any ornament, for White is their Mourning colour; they feigned themselves sorrowfull for the Dead, and passing by strow'd the Corps, with Flowers and odorous Waters. When these Ceremonies were done, the Corps was brought out of the Tower, and set upon a Chariot of Triumph, richly gilded, and shown to the Grandees of the Empire, whereupon all the Ladies began to weep aloud, which was not altogether real, but feigned; every one emulating to shew a greater appearance of Sorrow than the rest; which was with such earnestness, that it might have been heard all through the Town. After the Chariot had stood there about 2 short hours, it was removed to another place, where the Body was to be burned; and was followed by the *Mandorins*, and their Ladies, who went softly after

In the first rank went the Kings eldest son, aged about twenty Years, who was only brother to the Deceased, and was mounted upon a Young Elephant all in White: next him were two brethren of his, by another Queen, mounted also upon Elephants, on each side one: each of these had a long silk Scarf fastned to the Herse, in their hand. On each side the Herse were 14 of the Kings Sons, with green twigs of palm in their Hands, who all the time went in a heavy posture, their eies dejected to the Ground, framing a sad Countenance, and uttering many sighs and expressions of Sorrow. On each side of the way, by which the Herse must pass (that was about 6 foot broad) were erected several stages, for the *Mandorins* of a meaner rank. These at the passing by of the Herse, threw Oranges among the common people; in some of which were * *Ficols*, and † *Mases*. this occasioned such a throng of People, that several lay under foot, and 7 Persons trodden to death. When they were come to the Altar, the Corps was taken down by the *Mandorins*, with Waits and Wind-Musick, which made a melancholic noise; and was carried with great Solemnity to the Altar; where it was set down, and laid round with aromatic Woods, and Drugs, amongst which was poured many sorts of perfumes and odorous balsams. When this was done the Princes of the blood, and the *Mandorins* returned to the Kings Palace; but the Ladies were injoyned by the Emperour to remain at the Altar and bewail the Dead, for two days longer; at which time the Bodie was to be burned: and acccordingly they stay'd there till the time was expired, striving, who could manifest the most sorrow; hoping so to obtain the greater favour from the Emperour. But the greatest folly I could observe among them was, that when any of them could not dissemble, or let down tears, they were whipped with thongs, by some persons, thereto appointed, till they wept indeed; and this was duly executed without having regard to their Persons. Near those Towers, was erected a stage, covered with thick gilded paper, whereupon sate the Chief of the *Bonzi*, and a little lower sat the Priests of a lower degree and rank, of which there was a great number; these (like those under the Hierarchy of *Rome*) were imployed to pour forth praiers for the Soul of the Deceased. Which when they had done by order of the King, there were several Gifts sent them which for the most part, consisted in Apparel,

FEBR. 1659.

*Which is a piece of Money Valuing about 2s 8d Sterling.

†Which is half a Ficol.

Presents sent the Bonzi, for their good Service in praying for the Soul of the deceased.

FEBR. 1650. parrel, Houſe-furniture and mechanical Implements, of every ſort. At the going down of the Sun there were ſeveral Fire-works play'd off, which iſſued out of Twenty Turrets, covered with gilded paper. All theſe preparations, beſides what was that day given to the *Bonzi*, and diſtributed among the poor, according to the relation given to the Heer *van Muyden*, by the Kings Agent, amounted to 5000 *Catti* of *Siam* Silver, which is about 66000 pound Sterl. beſides the Images that were beſtowed on the chief Temple, whereof two were of Gold, about 4 foot high, which alſo amounted to a great ſum: for what Gold, Jewels, or other Gifts were in her life time preſented her, by the King, or *Mandorins*, were expended upon theſe exequial Rites.

CHAP. IX.

The Body of the Princeſs burnt. A remarkable token, whereby, it was concluded that ſhe was poyſoned. The Kings fury againſt all the Domeſtics of the Princeſs, who are committed to cuſtody. The cruel Puniſhment of the ſuſpected Parties. A ſtrange way to find out the guilty. Elephants uſed as Executioners. Fifty men and Women executed in one day, ſome by Elephants, others buried in the Earth, to the Head, where they are ſuffered to ſtarve. A Young Lady with her Brother taken and diſpatched. Their Candour, and free reſolvedneſs to die.

TWo days after the Corps were brought forth, the King went himſelf in perſon, and gave fire to the wood with a Torch, which was done with great Solemnity, and Muſic of all ſorts, that all the time play'd very dolefull Airs. The Cheſt of Gold, together with all the Coſtly Ornaments, wherewith ſhe was attired, when ſhe lay in ſtate, were burn'd with the Corps, and reduced to duſt.

An odd Paſſage. We may not ommit to relate a very remarkable paſſage which happened about theſe Exequies; for when the King went to gather up the Aſhes, which were to be put in a golden Urn, he found a piece of Fleſh, about the bulk of a Young childs head, freſh and unconſumed. This ſeeing, he was mainly altered, and turning about to one of the *Magi* who ſtood at his left hand, Asked him, What his opinion was? and, What might be the reaſon that this gobbet of fleſh

flesh remained unburn'd. The Sage judging it to be done by some Enchantment, durst not declare his opinion about it; but to satisfy the King, replied, That his Majesty could not but be sensible of the Cause, since nothing could ly occult from his searching Wisdom: the more in regard it was a thing so palpable and open. The King by the Saying of this Parasite, concluded with himself that she had been poysoned, cries out with great raging, *At length I have discovered the certainty of what I ever had in suspicion: My Daughter is without doubt poysoned.* Upon that in great discontent he went into his Mourning appartment whence he issued an Order for the sudden Apprehension of all the Ladies, that attended the Princess in her Life time, who were in obedience to his Royal Will immediately secured. FEBR. 1650

On the day following divers others of the greatest rank were siezed and committed to Custody, who were wont to converse with the Princess, although they had not been in her presence for the space of a whole year.

Shortly after it was my fortune to be Spectator to such a cruel Tragedy as ever I have seen elsewhere. The King being now possessed wthi Jealousy, and suspecting several to be factious in the matter, yet could not find out any certainty in the thing; he therefore to sift it out, who those should be that were concerned in the deed, practised this cruel Stratagem and impious way of Trial. The king sent a Messenger to Summon up some of the chief Nobility in the land to Court, where being come to give attendance, were shut up in Prison, till the Prison would not hold any more, so that he was fain to find a new place, where to committ those unhappy Gentlemen. When the principal Officers and Courtiers were taken into Security. The king not contented so, sent also for their Wives, and several Young Ladies, who were known to be familiar with the Princess some time before her death: these were apart, that they might not have the benefit of Communication. Also secured in a place When the Emperour had as many Persons in Custody, as he, or others that advised him suspected, he gave order to make several Pitts in the ground about 20 foot square, one near another; which the Soldiers were commanded to fill with Charcoal, kindle and blow it up with long Fans, such as the Slaves in *Siam* do fan their Lords and Ladies with. When all was performed according to the Commandment of the king, they brought forth some of those Personages

FEBR. 1650. that were impeached with their hands tied behind their backs b all the time guarded with a Body of Soldiers: and being come to place, they ſtript them naked and put their feet in warm Water, make them tender; after that, the Soldiers paired of the skin w razours. Afterwards they were brought before certain Officers, minated by the King as Examinators for that day, and were aſſiſ by the chief of the *Bonzi*, who inſiſted upon them to confeſs the F but upon their ſtedfaſt denial, had the * *Rigoloza* pronounced ag them, and ſo tranſmitted to the Tormenters, who were forced run over the hot coals without their *natural Shoes*. So ſoon as t were come through the fire their feet were viſited; and if they w bliſtered, it was concluded by the *Bonzi*, that they were guilty ſo led away to the place appointed for them to be kept in, till al ſuppoſed Criminals were turn'd through the Furnace: but when t Officers had don their viſits as they were injoyned, they found n but what were bliſtered, and conſequently condemned as g ſome there were on whom this impious Teſt was impoſed, t indeed with a ſtrong reſolution ran through, without receiving a damage: yet many there were who fell down flat in the middle o Fire, where they expired their laſt, for (as we were afterwar form'd) there was a ſtrict charge given, as well to the Spectator Officers, not to reach forth their hand to pull any perſon out, u pain of Death. A Scene (I muſt confeſs) ſo ſad as I have never ſe yet, and hope I never ſhall. That *Perillus* was thrown into the br Bull, which he had preſented to the Tyrant *Phalaris*, to puniſh as he was offended with, had good colour of Juſtice; but th many in innocency ſhould be maſſacred upon bare ſupicion, that with ſuch unheard-of Cruelty, is in no wiſe juſtifiable. I ſpectacle diſmal enough, none can deny, to ſee a Ship rent u the Rocks; and the diſtreſſed marriners Swimming upon maſts planks, to ſave their lives; but yet harder to ſee ſo many rare P nages burnt alive, and fried in their own blood: for that is fr Divine hand, to which we ow our very Lives and Being: but the effects of a wretched Tyranny from our fellow-creatures, w Juſtice it ſelf had nothing to demand.

Every perſon who had paſt this horrid Purgatory, and by the a ſaid rule convicted, was led aſide, and by the Soldiers made

* *Which is a kind of Curſe like that in the Levitical Law, when the Womanis to drink the water of Jealouſy*

't Verbranden en ombrengen van veel



o a pale: which done the Elephants were brought forth. Now the Reader muſt underſtand that at *Syam* they have no other Executioners, on the ſcore of Death, than Elephants. When the great Elephant was brought, and viewed the Condemned party, went twice or thrice round about him and at laſt took him up with his Trunk, pale and all, and toſs'd him aloft into the Air, and catch'd him at coming down upon his teeth, which ſtruck quite through his body, afterwards throwing him off, trampled him under his feet till his Gutts burſt out, and trode his body flat to the ground. When the Elephant had diſpatched, the Soldiers draggd the Carcaſes to the River, which made the way ſlippery with blood. In this manner were the greateſt part executed; but others were brought to the path, which leads to the City, and there put in holes, digged in the Earth on purpoſe, where they were cloſed up, to the neck, and every one that paſſed by, was to fulfill the Emperours pleaſure. (*forſooth*) commanded to ſpit upon them; to which order I was fain to ſubmit my ſelf, being to paſs by that way, ſo that I could not avoid it. Theſe were to remain there ſtill they died, and none daring to give them any thing to eat or drink. It was lamentable to hear them cry out to every one that paſſed by to diſpatch 'em; but the Officers kept ſo ſtrict an eie that none durſt move his hand. Four moneths long dured this horrible Maſſacre, and every day a great number put to death: on one day I have ſeen 50, and the like number on a forenoon. The general number of all that died was by ſome reckoned to be 3000 Souls, by others almoſt 300 more; and certainly few had eſcaped if they had not abſented themſelves from Court during the implacable fury of the King.

FEBR. 1650.

Elephants the Executioners in Siam.

This may ſeem to be a mean reaſon, for ſo great a piece of Tyranny, but it was well known afterwards that the King had formerly a deſign to cut of the chief of the *Mandarins*, of whom he himſelf began to ſtand in aw, and therefore took an opportunity to do it under this ſpecious pretence: and the better to effect it without mutiny or rebellion, he had newly levied an Army of 250000 men, and made as if he would denounce war againſt *China*.

On the 28 of *Febr.* were 300 of the Domeſtics of the late Princeſs brought to the place of Execution, who were alſo led through the fire;

FEBR. 1650 fire; but having paſſed through, were (I know not for what reaſon) ſet at liberty. Shortly after was the Youngeſt daughter of the late King with all her Houſhold, committed to Cuſtody: and the king as it appeared had a great ſuſpicion of her, the more when he was informed that whileſt other Ladies at Court, were bewailing the Dead, ſhe could hardly all the time reſtrain her ſelf from laughing: but what made the Matter have a better hue, was, her complaining to the king how that her daughter (who was alſo the King's Child) was had in contempt; and his eldeſt Daughter, in her time promoted to great honour.

MAR. 1650 On the firſt of *March*, was the ſaid Princeſs brought forth and a great number of Ladies; who were all led through the Fire but (according to common fame) none but the Princeſs was bliſtered on the feet. Hereupon ſhe was ſecured with Silver Fetters and brought into a Dungeon, where none was permitted to have Communication with her.

The next day the ſaid Princeſs was brought forth again into the Palace, where the *Mandorins* were aſſembled in the Auditory: ſoon as they began to make inquiſition, upon threatning to put her to torment; if ſhe would not make an ample diſcovery of the Treaſon ſhe, whether out of Fear, or Glory, is uncertain, uttered theſe Words or to the ſame effect; *If the King will promiſe upon his Royal word, ſo ſoon as I have exhibited the Cauſe of his Daughters death, he will ſpare execute me, without making, me a mocking-ſtock to the World, I will promiſe upon the Honour of a dying Princeſs; to manifeſt the whole without further trouble.* Upon that liberal ſaying, ſeveral of the *Mandarins* then preſent, who had a great honour for her Royal Father, were moved to pity; and 'twas thought, that they would have interceded to the King for pardon for her, if the preſence of the King had not kept them in ſtricter aw. However after the faireſt manner they could made report to the King; who promiſed to grant her requeſt, and ſent the *Mandorins* back, to take her into further examination. Being returned, they brought her the reſult of the Petition, and willed her to confeſs the Cauſe and Circumſtances whereupon ſhe declared in preſence of them all, *That ſhe with the Help of her Nurſe were both guilty of the Fact, and that they had uſed certain exorciſms therein, which was the reaſon, that that fleſh was not combuſt*

as the reſt. She added further, *That her ignominious death did not concern her ſo much, as that her juſt Deſign ſhould have no better iſſue; whereby the ſmall remainder of her Stock ſhould be reduced to their priſtin ſtate, and free'd from the Slavery of ſo fierce a Tyrant.* When ſhe was further examined in ſome circumſtantial things, She proteſted that it was not provided for the innocent Princeſs, but for the King himſelf. So ſoon as Report was made to the King how ſhe had made a liberal Confeſſion, and what it was, he commanded inſtantly that an Executioner ſhould be ſent for; who being come, he gave him order to cut a gobbet of fleſh out of her Body, and force her to eat it. When the Executioner went to fullfil the Kings command; the Lady ſuffered the fleſh to be tore out with wonderfull patience; but when he tendred it her to eat, ſhe refuſed, crying out, *O wretched Tyrant, thou mayſt be my Executioner, but thou canſt not conquer my noble mind. Know, that I deſy thy Cruelty; and that the end of thy* Sham-*poyſon will ſpeedily come, when the remaining Vertue of my Royal Race ſhall avenge themſelves of thee, and thy Tygre-brood.* With theſe and the like words ſhe reviled the King, till by a ſecond Charge ſent to the Executioner from the Palace, ſhe was hackt in pieces, and thrown into the River. FEBR. 1650.

The ſame day her only brother, aged 20 years, was brought to the place of Execution, who during all theſe ſhowers of Cruelty, had feigned himſelf diſtraught, by which means, they told us he was excuſed.

But whether he was guilty or not, it appeared ſo ſoon as he was mounted the ſtage, that he had his Witts about him: for he behaved himſelf with ſuch candour and modeſty, that ſome of the *Mandarins* could not forbear tears; and with a bitter Harangue ſo reviled the King, and vindicated himſelf for what he ſuffered, that the Plebeïans were almoſt moved to an Inſurrection; declaring himſelf more ſorrowful for the fruitleſs attempt of his ſiſter, than his own Death. So ſoon as he ſaw the Executioner come to him, he cried out, *Innocent indeed I am, as was my Siſter, but now Thou inhuman Tyrant, it is thy will it ſhould be ſo, I ſcorn, although I were ſure of enjoyment, to deſire thy pardon; that thou ſhouldſt not hope for the leſt pity from the Hands of them that ſhall revenge my Blood in after times.* With theſe and the like words he ſeemed to declare his Innocency, yet uttered ſome expreſſions which contradicted thoſe Proteſtations, that probably were

MAR. 1650 to only in ſpite of the King. Thus was the laſt of the former Kings race extirpated, except one Daughter, which was not capable of doing any thing againſt the Intereſt of the preſent King.

CHAP. X.

The proud, and blaſphemous Titles of the King of Siam. *The great Preparations uſed to aſſwage the Waters of the* Ganges.

YOu have heard by what we have related in the former Chapter with how much power and aw, the king of *Siam* rules. It will further appear how well he knows it, by the proud, ſwelling Titles he aſſumes to himſelf; two of which were preſented me by a *Mandarin* and I hope will not ſeem impertinent to inſert here; although the Reader may be pleas'd to take notice, that the Idiom of their Tongue is ſo barbarous, that it will hardly bear ſence, when rendred; however we ſhall give it Word for Word.

THE Alliance written with letters of fine Gold being full of God-like glory. The moſt Excellent, containing all wiſe Sciences. The moſt happy, which is not in the VVorld among men. The Beſt and moſt Certain that is in Heaven Earth and Hell. The greateſt Sweet, and friendly Royal word. VVhoſe powerfull-ſounding Properties, and glorious Fame range through the VVorld, as if the Dead were raiſed by a God-like power, and wonderfully purged from Ghoſtly and Corporal Corruption. At this both Spiritual and Secular men admire with a ſpecial Joy, whereas no Dignity may be herewith Compared. Proceeding from friendly, illuſtrious, inconquerable, moſt mighty and

high Lord; and a Royal Crown of Gold, adorned with nine sorts of Precious Stones. The Greateſt, Cleareſt and moſt God-like Lord of unblameable Souls, The moſt Holy, ſeeing every where, and Protecting Soveraign of the City Judia, *whoſe many Streets, and open Gates are throng'd by Troops of Men. VVhich is the chief Metropolis of the whole VVorld. The Royal Throne of the Earth that is adorn'd with nine ſorts of Stones, and moſt pleaſant Valleys. He who Guides the Rains of the VVorld, and has a houſe more than the Gods, of fine Gold and of Precious Stones; they the Godlike Lords of Thrones of fine Gold, the VVhite, Red and Round-tayl'd Elephant; which Excellent Creatures are the Chiefeſt of the nine ſorts of Gods. To none hath the Divine Lord given, in whoſe hand is the victorious ſword; who is like the fiery-Armed God of Battails, to the moſt Illuſtrious.* MAR. 1650

The ſecond is as as blaſphemous as the firſt, though hardly ſwells ſo far out of Sence.

THE higheſt Paducco Syry Sultan, Nelmonam, welgaca, Nelmochadin Magiviitha, Jouken der cauten lillaula fylan, *King of the whole world, who makes the VVater riſe and flow. A King that is like a God, and ſhines like the Sun at noon day. A King that gives a glance like the Moon when it is at full. Elected of God to be worthy as the North-ſtar; being of the Race*

MAR. 1650 *and offspring of the great* **Alexander**; *with a great Un-*
derstanding, as a round Orb, that tumbles hither and thither,
able to guess at the Depth of the great Sea. A King that hath
amended all the Funerals of the departed Saints, and is as right-
teous as God, and of such power that all the World may come
and shelter under his Wings. A King that doth right in all
things, as the Kings of old have don. A **King** *more liberal than*
all Kings. A King that hath many Mines of Gold that God
hath lent him; who hath built Temples half Gold and half
Braß, sitting upon a Throne of pure Gold, and of all sorts of
Precious stones. A King of the white Elephant, which Ele-
phant is the king of all Elephants, efore whom many Thou-
sands of other Elephants must bow, and fall upon their
Lucifer *knees. He whose eies shine like the Morning-star A king*
that hath Elephants with four Teeth; Red, Purple and Pie-
Elephants, **ay**, *and a* **Buytenaques** *Elephant; for which*
Trap-pings *God has given him many and divers sorts of Apparel*
wrought with most fine Gold, enobled with many Precious
stones: and besides these, so many Elephants us'd in Battel, hav-
ing Harnesses of Iron, their teeth tipt with teel and their
Harnesses laid ore with shining Braß. A King that has many
Hundred Horses, whose Trappings are wrought with fine
Gold, and adorned with Precious stones of every sort, that are
found in the Universal World, where the Sun shines, and

those shod with fine Gold. Besides so many Hundred Horses that are used in War, of everykind. A King who has all Emperours, Kings, Princes and Soveraigns in the whole World from the Rising to the Going down of the Sun, under Subjection; and such as can obtain his Favour are by him promoted to great Honour, but on the Contrary, such as revolt, he burns with fire. A King who can show the Power of God, and what ever God has made.

MAR. 1650.

Has the man got any Scotch Ponnys?

And so by this time I hope you have heard enough of a King of Elephants and Horses (though not a Word of his Asses) in this Instrument called a Title: and thereby perceive the Pride and Folly of this unpolish'd Potentate, where we shall leave him and take a walk towards the *Ganges*,

The River of *Siam* is a branch of the famous *Ganges*, and ebbs and flows at the same time with that noble River. When it is at highest and ready to fall of it self, according to it's natural Recourse at a certain time of the Year, as doth also the *Nile*, the King imbarks himself in a Galley which is within and without so richly Gilded, that it seems to be all of massy Gold. Within the same is a Throne of solid Gold, upon which the King sits, having a Canopy richly set with Pearls, Diamonds and other Precious Stones. About him sit the greatest of the *Mandorins*, on Chairs suitable to their Quality; and on his left hand the Chief of the *Bonzi*, in his Hierarchical Garb. On the Galleries of this Galley, sit several Musicians; which are answered by the inferiour *Mandorins* and Plebeïans, who are placed all along the Banks with Musical Instruments, and Flags of an infinite number. The Imperial Galley is followed with a Retinue of some Thousands of smaller Shipping and Yachts. When the King is come to the place where the Ceremony is usually performed, he steps out into a *Prawe*, where the High Priest delivers him a golden sword upon his knees. After the repetition of some formal words, he beats the Water three times, and commands it with a God-like Authority to fall down, and so re-

The Ceremony used to aswage the River Ganges.

MAR. 1650 turns into the Galley: upon which all they that are on the Banks fell down flat upon the ground and ſhout. And thus the blind People who have not the Benefit of Chronicle or Antiquity, and ignorant of the courſe of Nature, the hand-maid of God; do really take it for a miracle, effected by their Pagan Sovereign.

CHAP. XI.

Departure from Siam. *They take a Junk. The* Cambodiers *put in a Ship with rudder or ſails. Arrival at* Formoſa. *The Junk and all the men caſt away. Deſcription of* Formoſa, *with an account of its Products, and the Nature of Inhabitants, as alſo their Houſes, Habit and Cuſtomes.*

OUr Ship having now taken in her whole Carga, we had all order to come aboard. Our Loading was moſt Bucks-hides, Sanders wood, and *Amrack*, which is a kind of Colour, uſed by the *Iapones* in their Cabinet-work for Veriniſhing: and on the 12 of *April* we ſet ſail directing our Courſe for *Tojovan* or *Formoſa*.

APRIL. 1650 About the *Pracel* banks we deſcried a *Iunk*, making toward us with full Sail, having *Dutch* Colours aloft, which made us ſuſpect her to be a Pyrat: and thereupon our maſter reſolved to throw his Goods over-board, and put himſelf in a Fighting-Poſture. But when we came nearer to the ſaid Junk we ſaw that it was a Merchant-man and not ſo well man'd and mounted as we. Coming to hail him, the Commander bad him come aboard and ſhow his Paſs; but he made anſwer that his *Champan* was in pieces and unfit to put out: whereupon the Commander put forth the Shallop well man'd and arm'd, to go aboard him and demand his Paſs, but found that he had none, but was a *Cambodier*, and loaden with contrabanded Goods, we therefore took him as Prize. His Loading did alſo moſtly conſiſt in Hides, Hides, Sanders and *Amrak*, as ours did: The men aboard her were moſtly *Cambodiers* and *Chineeſes*, which Capt. *Fayer* (for that was the Commanders name) put all into the *Champan*, that notwithſtanding their evaſion was not leaky, allowing them neither Sail nor Rudder; ſo that without all controverſy they were loſt, it being three leagues from any coaſt; nor could we ever hear what became of them.

A Junk taken, and made Prize.

The tender mercies of the wicked are cruel.

On the 10th. of *May* we arrived safely at the Island of *Formosa*, and anchored before the Fort *Zelandia*, where *Peter over't Water* was then Governor. As we sailed in at the Bay, we were surprized with a great Wind; insomuch that the Prize we had taken ran upon a seat of Rocks, which almost conjoyn, or as it were, imbrace the Bay, like that at *Rhodes*, in the *Levant*, made by Art, on which was erected the Image of *Apollo*: so that these are with a gale of Wind, somewhat stiffer than ordinary almost unavoidable. The Junk broke all in pieces, and the men were all lost, save 3 *Hollanders*, who saved themselves upon Planks; amongst those that were lost were 7 *Hollanders*, the rest *Chineezes*, being about 20 in number. *MAY* 1650

The Island *Formosa* lies almost directly under the *Tropic* of *Cancer*; its nombril or Center being exactly 23 degr. Northern latitude, reaching in a stretch from it's southern Cape, which is in 21 degr. to the *Navel* or Northen Promontory, in 25; and is computed to be about 300 *Dutch* Leagues in circumference, facing the coast of *Fokien* and *China*. Round about this Island are taken abundance of Fish, especially *Harders*, which are somewhat bigger than a Haddock. This Fish they salt like Cod, and send it for *China*, where it is had in great esteem. The Row of this fish is also held for a great delicacy among the *Chineezes* when pickled, being red, and lies close and round in a thin skin, which naturally grows about it. The *Chineezes* us'd heretofore to give the Tenth Fish to the Company, for their Liberty to fish on the Coasts of this Island.

Formosa is a very fruitfull Island, but lies untill'd; the Inhabitants being for the most part a lazy People, not much unlike the *Spaniards*, rather willing to starve than work. The most fruitfull part is at present under the Jurisdiction of the King of *Midag*. It abounds with Rice, Wheat, Barley, *Kaylang*, *Masquinades*, as also Ginger and Sugar. There are many sorts of Trees, and Fruit in great abundance, as, Orainges, Lemmons, Citrons, Pomegranates, *Guigavas*, *Perang*, and other Fruits, not known in *Europe*; and some only Proper to this Isle, which I could never see either in *Europe*, *Asia*, or *Affrica*, as *Moupellos* and *Crambrods*. Melons, or Musk-millions, are here so plentiful and delicious; that I have been cloyed barely with looking at them when they were cut up; besides Water-milions and Pompions which are also of a very good taste and Juycy. They have besides many kinds of *Fruitfulness of* Formosa

Plants

MAY. 1650. Plants and Herbs, as CABBAGE, Hartichoaks, &c. Seve rich and medicinal Roots and Seeds, as *Ananaſſes*, *China*-Roo Potatos (not much unlike ours) *Ubes*, *Kadiang* and *Fakkafocas*. *Ka* is a litle green ſeed almoſt like that of Coriander, which they boyl pickle for a Sauce for freſh Fiſh; and gives it an admirable good re *Fokkafokas* has the Shape of a Pear, or Quince, but 3 times as big, grows near the ground like a Pompion: above it is ſmooth like gl and below of a purple and whitiſh colour: this they boil with and Pork, as we do Turnips in *Holland*. There are ſome ſheep in Iſland, but not very many. Harts and Roes there are abunda

Great ſtore of Cattel. ſometimes 2 or 3 Thouſand in a Flock together, Wild-goat Swine which are very terrible and noxious to Travellers that go or unarm'd, ſome they have alſo tame. Beaſts of Prey do much a the Inhabitants that they dare not adventure themſelves far w Land, as, Tygres, Leopards, Bears, &c. Apes and Monkeys have, which are generally litle. There is a certain Creature on Iſland which the *Hollanders* call, **Den Duyvel van** TAJO that is, *The Devil of* Formoſa. Being about 2 foot long, and 5 in broad upon the back, with ſcales all over the body; it has four with ſharp claws, a ſharp long head, and a tail thick at the r and ſmaller towards the end, likea Crocodil. This litle beaſt feeds upon Piſmires, which he catches by laying his Tongue upon a where they come to feed upon a ſlimy matter, that runs out o mouth, and that holds them ſo faſt that they cannot get off a When he thinks that he has enough, he draws in his tongue an vours them. It cannot do any harm unleſs to the Ants, which natural food, but if he ſee a man come towards him, either runs the Earth, or rolls himſelf in, like a Hedghog: ſo that to ca Devil ſeems a great improperty. This Great Deſcription of a Creature, we thought not altogether impertinent, becauſe it Creature proper only to this Iſland. *Formoſa* affoards all kinds of which other Iſlands in the Eaſt have, except Parrots. And were it

Venemous Creatures a great annoyance. for the great annoyance of Serpents, Scorpions, Millipedes, Lizz and other vermin, it were a very delightſom Land, being in a t rable good Climat, and bleſſed with a moſt wholſom Air.

As to the Frame and Stature of the Natives, we cannot give any general Deſcription, ſince thoſe vary according to the pl

they inhabit. Their men are moſtly well bodied and luſty, eſpecially thoſe in the Valleys, and Champane Countrey; but thoſe that keep themſelves in the Hilly part of the Iſland, not ſo big of ſtature. Their Women are but ſhort in Compariſon of the Men, yet are ſtaring beauties; having a Full face, great Eies, a flat Noſe, long Ears with breaſts hanging down like a flitch of Bacon, and would have handſom beards too, if they did not pull up the hair by the roots. The tips of their ears they bore through, and ſcrew them flat with a horn, made for the purpoſe, which they think ſtands wondrous neat. Finally, I hold it uncertain whether this Iſland has had the name *Formoſa*, ſeriouſly from the Land it's ſelf, or Ironically from the monſtrous People that Inhabit it. *Anno* 1650. Formoſa Beauties.

During the time that I was at *Formoſa*, I heard often of Men with Tails: to which I never gave much heed, looking upon it as fabulous. Yet I will aſſure the Reader by all lawfull aſſeverations, that I found it truth. For it happened that a *Formoſan* of the South-Countrey was apprehended for an inhuman Murther, committed upon a Clergy man. After the matter was examined and the Party pronounced guilty, he received Sentence to be burned. The day of Execution being come, the Murtherer was brought forth, and tied to a pale; As ſoon as his cloaths were ſtript off, we ſaw his Tail, which was about a foot long, and all grown over with Hair; ſome of my acquaintance out of their curioſity, went to ſee him, before he was executed, having heard that he had a Tail, and learned from him, that all, or moſt, of the South Inhabitants had Tails. But as to the certainty of that, I can not ſay much, for that, not underſtanding his Dialect, they might be miſtaken; only of this I ſolemnly aver that I am an eye-wittneſs to it, and would be loath, to impoſe it upon any man's beleef if it were not truly ſo.

Upon Feſtival days when the *Formoſans* go to preſent themſelves before their Idols they hang great round boards almoſt like Trenchers to their ears, which are artificially painted: others hang Shells full of Small holes, which loll over their breaſts: but upon other days they let their ears be naked, and without any ornament at all.

Their Hair is jet-black and long: ſome of them wear it as we do in *Europe*; others tie it up above the crown of the head, after the old *China* faſhion, or plated. Their complexion is of a Swarthy yellow,

MAY. 1650. or between a yellow and black; but thoſe of *Kabelang* look more white and pale. The Women of *Midag*, *Soeten Nowe*, and *Lamea* are of a brown-yellow complexion. They are generally of a ſubtile and acute witt, endued with a good memory, and tractable enough to learn any Science; but beyond all other *Indians* flexible to Chriſtianity.

The Habit of the Formoſans. In the Summer-time they are attired onely with a cotton cloath, wide about the ſhoulders like a ſheet, and tied by two Corners athwart the breſt: It is alſo girded about the middle, and ſo hangs down to the calf of the leg. Their ſhoes, which are rarely worn among them, are made of Goat-skins, faſtned above the foot with thongs. But in the Winter, they wear Garments of Furrs, as Skinns of Tygers, Leopards, Bears and Apes. Thoſe of *Soulang* were formerly apparelled as *Europeans*; but all the reſt as *Chineezes*. Before the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* into that Iſland, the Natives were all naked, like as now, thoſe that inhabit the Hill-countrey, which wear only a cloth about their middle.

The Habit of the Women doth not vary much from that of the Men, only with this diſtinction, that their Robes are wrapped about their leggs and made faſt, and ſometimes an upper coat which comes only to the knees: About their head they wear a black Towel knotted before, which looks like two Horns. Every woman has a Pig which follows her like a dog.

The Men have ſometimes their back, breſt, and arms painted with a kind of colour which never goes out ſo long as they live. About their necks they wear Glaſs-beads, and Bracelets about their arms. Others have great iron hoops, which reach from the wreſt of the hand to the elbow, having ſuch ſmall creviſes where they open that it ſeems a wonder how they get them put upon their arms. About their leggs they wear a ſtring of white ſhells, neatly hung and ſet in order, that at a ſmall diſtance it would be taken for Lace.

The Men of *Tokkadekol* wear a long Reed, which is made faſt to their Girdle behind, and comes bending over their head; to which they hang a Silk Pendent (or ſtreamer) about 2 palms broad, and 20 long. Upon Feſtival days they adorn their Heads with the feathers of a Cock, and hang Bears-tails at their Leggs and arms.

They have no Trades nor Mechanicks among them, but every man among them makes what he has occaſion for himſelf. When the

lie down to sleep, they only take two Harts hides, the one serving for a Bed, and the other for a Coverlet. They are excellent at swimming, and use the Bow well. But above all other faculties surpass any that ever I have seen at running; no horse being able to hold with them for a stretch of 6 or 8 leagues together: and when they run, have in each hand a tinkling instrument, with which they ever now and then hit the iron hoop about their arm, to encourage them forward. MAY. 1646.

They are wholly unskilled in Navigation, having no other Shipping than a sort of Canoo, that is made out of a hollow tree, with which they go a fishing. This with Hunting is all the employ they follow to sustain themselves. But Agriculture, as I said before, is but little exercised, partly out of their slothfull inclinations, and partly out of fear of the Enemie, they being continually at Warrs amongst themselves, and hate nothing worse than Peace.

CHAP. XII.

The Author departs from Formosa. *His arrival at* Japon. *The Description of* Nangueſaque. *The Condition of the Town. A dreadfull fire at* Nangueſaque. *The Stature, Nature, Habits, and Customes of the* Japoneezes. *Departure from* Japon. *Arrival at* Formosa *the second time. Their return to* Siam, *where they take in Elephants. The Author beat with a ropes end at the Main-mast, and why. His return for* Holland, *and End of the first Voyage.*

WHen we had taken in our loading at *Formosa*, I left the Black-Bear, and was put aboard a Flyboat called, *The Lady*, which was bound for *Japon*, and set sail on the 15 of *July* following.

On the 10th of *August* we arrived at *Japon*, where according to the manner, we signified our Arrival. Immediatly upon notice given came several Officers aboard, who took away our Rudder, Sails and Ammonition. That done they unloaded our Ship themselves, not suffering us to put to our hand to help them.

The name of the Haven was *Nangueſaque*, a Town which the Portugueezes had built out of the Water, but upon their being rooted out of this Island was granted to the *Dutch*, who till their coming hither, had their Residence and Magazine at *Firando*. The Nangueſaque (*or* Nangueſaky *as some call it*) *described.*

MAY. 1650. *Dutch* Lodge is upon a ſmall Iland, ſevered from the City by a water about 40 foot broad, having a Drawbridge, which only is let down from Sun to Sun. The Iſland is fortified with Pallizados, and that ſo ſtrong, that they think themſelves ſecure enough from any unwarrantable violence. The Magazine of the Company is juſt within the Gates, and about the middle ſtands the houſe of the Preſident, which is a very large and ſumptuous Building. Beſides that there are ſeveral other Houſes and Shops which make ſo many Streets and Courts. On that ſide next to the Sea ſtands another Gate, which goes down with great and broad ſteps, built for the receiving in of Goods which come by water. This is a very famous Place for Merchandize of all kinds, but the chief Commodities they deal in here, are *Amb.* Steel Buck and Kaymans Hides, Silk both raw and wrought, Velvet, Damask, Sattins, Cotton, Mercury, Quick-ſilver, Verdi-greece, Camphir, Wax, Allome, Pepper, Ivory, and Furrs.

After we had been three days at *Nangueſaque*, and all our Cargo unloaded by the *Iaponeezes*: they ſhut our Hold up, and ſealed it with the Emperours Signet. Which done the Officers went aſhoar, and ſent us 6 *Balis* of *Sakky*, a Drink they make of Rice, which is very pleaſant, yet heady and ſtrong. After our Ships-folk had got a little in their heads, they put out our Colours; but while they were in the heighth of their mirth, there roſe a bluſtring wind, after which followed a mighty Hurricano. Upon that our Courage was ſufficiently allayed, for both our Cables broke, and the Ship was toſsed mountains high, we looking for no other all the time than death. The Ship **De Ureede** was like a litle Boat upon the top of every ſurge, and at laſt thrown upon the Strand where ſhe lay drie: but all her Bow was bilg'd, her Head broke, and her Hold full of Sand and Water. Our upperworks were ſadly battered, and the maſts brought by the board. The *Black Bear* and another great Ship lying both with out the head, were ſo ſhattered, that they were brought up by the *Iaponeezes* as Wrack. Beſides this great loſs which the Company ſuſtained in the Shipping, were alſo moſt of the Wares in the Magazine damnified by the Sea which beat over the Walls. The Town alſo ſuffered much by the high wind, they not expecting ſuch a Tempeſt, at that time of the year. When it had continued about half an hour or more, the Hea-

An Orcano.

began to clear, and we to get courage, but durſt not fall to *M. A. Y.* 1650
king again, for fear of another bout.

Nangueſaque lies in 33 degr. 15 min. northerly latitude in a very *Situation of Nangueſaq.*
ſant Land-ſhip and is both very great and populous; but like moſt
the Towns of *Japon* lies without walls. It is ſeated upon a very
mmodious Bay, or Road, fit to receive Ships of the greateſt
urthen. It has a very magnificent proſpect from Seaward, having an
infinit number of Towers, Temples and Spacious Palaces. *Their Houſes.*
The Houſes are moſtly built of Wood, for the Ground is weak
nd frequently ſubject to Earthquakes, ſo that they cannot uſe
one. But the poorer ſort have litle Cottages made of Twigs and
laiſter'd over with Clay, as in *Brabant*, *Germany* and other Countreys.
They are Covered with Planks which ſhoot far out over the walls like
Pent-houſe, to ſhelter them from Sun and Rain. They have upon
ch houſe ſeveral Tubs with water, which is kept in caſe of fire, to
hich ſuch buildings are liable. And certainly were it not for the great
nefit of the water running through the Town in Ditches, as it does
moſt Towns in *Holland*: it would be ſuddenly reduced to ashes and
r this reaſon have they built ſeveral Houſes of Stone where to ſecure
eir Goods upon ſuch occaſions. The Houſes of this City are uni-
rm, and the ſtreets regular, there being 88 Streets, each 400 foot
ng, which are are all fenced off with Palizados at the end, and Lant-
orns ſet up. Here they have alſo their watch-houſes, and none are
ffered to paſs by night; no not to fetch either Doctor or Midwife,
thout a Paſs from the Governour. This Watch is ſet allways at 10 a
ck, after which hour few people are ſeen upon the ſtreets. This
a good means to prevent Mutiny and Theft, but is a great incon-
nience if Fire do happen to break out; for no ſtreet or Ward can
ve the Aſſiſtance of another in ſuch caſe: beſides the great danger
at the People themſelves are in, being ſometimes ſo narrowly pen'd
p. An Inſtance of this happened in the year 1646, when a dread-
ll fire happened in a houſe where ſeveral *Dutch* had their lodging,
hich on a ſudden had conſumed a great part of the Street and ſeve-
l Houſes on both ſides, burnt down to the Ground. The *Dutch* then
eing themſelves in ſuch peril, chuſed rather to hazard the effects
f the Governours diſpleaſure for that time, than to be roaſted alive,
roke up the Fence and ſaved themſelves.

MAY, 1650 The Form Nature, Habit and cuſtomes of the Japoneezes.

The *Iaponeezes* are reaſonable fair of complexion, but a little more ſwarthy than the *Europeans*. The ordinary Habit of the Man is much diſtinguiſhad from that of the Woman. They go all with long Robes thrown careleſly about their body, and tied round the midle with a Surcingle. The Ladies of the beſt Quality, wear a garment of cloth of Gold and Silver, and that very richly embroidered: Their Hair is neatly adorned with gems and precious ſtones. The men are robuſt and very perſonable; their Heads ſomething bigger than is duly analogical with their Bodies. The Women are but ſlender, yet let their Body grow as it will, wearing alwaies a looſe Garment, only their feet they ſcrew and pinch as much as they can to make them litle, which they think handſom: So that when they are come to their full growth, have feet like Children of 5 or 6 years old. The *Iaponeezes* are in general very hardy people, and can endure any extremity of Heat or Cold, Hunger or Thirſt to a miracle. This they ſeem to come to by a hardy uſage when they are young; for they always bath their Infants in cold weather in Rivers, and ſometimes plunge them over head and ears in Snow. They are excellent Warrious, and are well acquainted with Fire-arms; as alſo with the Long-bow and Javelin. They are grown famous in all the Eaſt, for expert Armorers, and temper Steel better than the *Chineezes*, which far exceed the *Europeans*. Their Swords are ſo well tempered that I have ſtruck one through an Iron pin, of half an inch thick, without the leaſt ſign of damage to the edge. They follow Hunting much, which is their principal Trade and Paſtime there in uſe, and prefer Venſon before any other dainty whatever. In their entertainments, they are very open and liberal, and uſe Tea for a Careſs, which is far better than that which is exported abroad, and prepared in a different manner: but they refuſe to impart it to Chriſtians, which I held ſomewhat ſtrange, in regard, that the more it is uſed in other Countreys the greater is their advantage, ſeeing that they have better in this Iſland than any where elſe in the World.

*Januarry 1651 *That is, a Wind which blows from one point for certain moneths together, called alſo Monſon.*

When we had done our Negotiation at *Iapon*, we ſet Sail for *Batavia*, directing our Courſe firſt for *Formoſa*, and ſet Sail the 30th of *Decem.* with a hard Wind, and a Northerly * *Mouſſon*; ſo that we arrived at *Formoſa* in 10 days Sailing; and on the 9th of *Januarry* following we

night caſt anchor before the Fort *Zeelandia*. Upon our arrival I was put aboard the *Poſt-horſe*, which was bound for *Siam*, where arrived on the 22th. of *January*, and there took in the Sieur *Van der* ...*den*, Conſul for the Company at *Iudia*; who was to go for *Batavia*. Here we took in 8 young Elephants, with Provender, which was ...*ut* and Sugar-cane, as alſo a certain quantity of Rice. Here I may ommit a certain paſſage, which (though unadviſedly done) almoſt coſt me my neck. About noon when the dinner was ...dy, I went to the Cook for a bowl of hot broth, which having I came to bring it to 2 of my Comrades, and paſſing by the Hold, ...e of the Elephants wound me about the leggs with his Trunk (or ...out) that I came tumbling down, Plater and all, which being ...ding hot, fell upon the Elephants back, and made him to roar out ...l ſtamp, that the Ship tumbled and ſhaked again, this ſo amazed ...e Commander that he came running out of his Cabin to know what ...e the matter. Here I was in a great ſtrait fearing to cry out, being ...ible that he was a choleric man, and yet durſt not ſtay below for ...e Elephant, who if he could have come at me would have trod- ...n me as flat as a Flounder: but conſidering with my ſelf that the ...ptain would aſſuredly come to hear of it, one time or another, and ...ſtaid long I was ſure this beaſt of vengeance would ſend me to ...y Grandſir. I cryed out and the Commander in all haſt ſent one ...o pull me up. So ſoon as they had got me upon the Deck, he gave ...der to tie me to the maſt, and commanded a fellow to lick me ...dly with a ropes end. MAY. 1650

On the 15 of *February* we ſet Sail for *Batavia*, where I was diſcharged ...y Service, and permitted to go for *Holland*: and in order thereto ...t aboard the Ship *Zelandia*, which was then almoſt ready to ſet ...l. On the 26 we ſet out, having a good Wind, and a fine ſerene ...r. Within a few days we ſailed through the Straits of *Sunda*; and ...ence ſet our courſe for *S. Helena*. *February* 1651 *The Author diſmiſſ'd. His return for* Holland.

On the 21 of *April* we got ſight of *Saint Helena*, where we came ſafe ...to the Harbour, being 7 Sail in all. As ſoon as we were arrived, ...e went up into the Iſland to Hunt, fiſh and range the Woods for ...ranges, Lemons and other Fruits. *Arrival at St. Helena.*

Having now refreſhed our ſelves ſufficiently, and all things in a *May.* readi-

The end of the first Voyage.

readineſs we ſet ſail in order to the purſuit of our Voyage, and made Land on the 10th. of *Auguſt*, where we bartered with ſuch Goods we had aboard, for Oxen, Sheep, and other neceſſarys; and forwards for *Holland*, where by God's gracious Conduct we arrived the firſt of *September* 1651, and put in at *Goeree*.

THE SECOND VOYAGE of JOHN STRUYS.

CHAP. I.

An account of the Authors undertaking his Second Voyage. A great Sea Storm. His arrival at Yarmouth, *and at* Leghorn, *with a Deſcription of that Town; as alſo of* Piça *and* Florence, *and laſtly of* Bologne.

BEing now ſafely arrived in my Countrey, after a long and tedious Voyage, which nevertheleſs by the Goodneſs of Almighty GOD, was not without ſome ſatisfaction for what was paſt; yet finding my ſelf in a State litle better than before, and at a loſs for Imployment, I was brought into a melancholic paſſion. After I had ſpent ſome time at *Amſterdam*, in waiting for an opportunity to make another Voyage, and not hearing of any, ſuitable to my mind and capacity, I reſolved to go for *Durgerdam*, to ſee what entertainment I ſhould find at home; and purſuant to that my intention went to the Boat, where I caſually met with one Capt. *Ketel* of *Durgerdam*, a perſon with whom I was formerly acquainted. After he had congratulated my happy return, asked me, What courſe I was bound to take? I told him, that I had a deſire to undertake a new Voyage, but I could not meet with an opportunity to Ship my ſelf upon any conſiderable Terms. *Well* (ſaid he) *upon what Terms would you go?* I replied, *For Sailmaker. That occurs very well*, quoth he, *for I have been inquiring for one, and we had already determin'd to go this Voyage without one: And*

DEC. 1655 *if you like to go with us, I will be as civil to you as I may.* This answer of his was no small matter of comfort to me, being then, as I have already said, destitute of Service. The Captain brought me ashoar, and in a Victualling-House agreed with me, when he had almost made me tipsy with Strongwaters, and so got me aboard the Passage-boat, where I lay and slept that whole night and the next day, till we arrived at the *Texel*, where the Ship lay at anchor. When I awaked I began to look about me, not knowing where I was, at first I thought I was in my Lodging at *Amsterdam*, but perceiving the Vessel tumble and toss too and again, I concluded that I was still aboard the *East-India* man. Whilst I was in this quandary the Captain comes down to me which unriddl'd the doubt. When I bethought my self what I had done, I grew very uneasy and displeas'd at my self, for my inconsiderat and unadvised Actions: however the Captain gave me fair words, and assopiated the Quarrel between Me and My self.

On the 20 of *December* 1655 I Shipp'd my self aboard the Fly-boat, called **Het Huys te Gemip**, which was bound first for *Yarmouth*, where she was to take in Red-herring.

On the 14 of *Decemb.* we left the *Texel*, and on the 20th. got *Yarmouth* Roads, where we met with a contrary Wind, which blew so hard that we could carry no Sail, but were fain to let all drive, and trust to the mercy of GOD. This dured for the space of 12 Watches, at which time we made the *Texel*; and to our great happiness had a Pilot aboard, that was intended for *Yarmouth* who brought us safe in at the *Spaniards gat*: for it was impossible for us to keep off at Sea, the Ship being so full of Sand, that we could not stir the Pump: and before we made land, found that we had 7 foot Water in the Hold, so that had we not luckily put in there then, the Ship had not held out one Watch longer. When by the Grace of God, and Diligence of the Pilot we had got in there, we unloaded the Ship, stopt the leaks, and supplied the defects of our equippage. and,

January 1656 On the 28 of *Decemb.* we set Sail, having a brave Wind, and clear weather; and on New-years day arrived safe at *Yarmouth*.

On the 15 of *January* we weighed anchor, and left *Yarmouth*, having taken in our intended Loading, and directed our course for the Straits of *Gibralter*.

On

On the 2 of *February* we entred the *Straits*, and on the 10th. got *Leghorn*. When we lay at anchor here, there happened a miſunderſtanding between Mr. *Ketel* and my ſelf, about a trifling buſineſs, which brought us both without the bounds of Moderation; for proceeding from Words to Blows, we were at laſt ſoo deeply ingaged that we both tumbled over board. Our Maſter was ſo kind as to let me climb up but when I came upon Deck put me in Irons, that ſeeing our courage was not yet cooled in the Sea, he had that one mean to keep us aſunder. In the mean while ſome had taken opportunity to pillage my cheſt, and borrow 116 Ducatoons: but I could never be ſo happy as to learn who was my Creditor: ſo that I had but a ſmall portion left me, with which I purpoſed to go by land to *Venice*. FEB. 1656.

Leghorn is ſo well known of all Gentlemen and Marriners that have ſeen *Italy*, that it may ſeem needleſs to deſcribe it. Nevertheleſs ſince it is a part of my Province, to take notice of ſuch Towns as are in any regard eminent and famous, I ſhall not ommit to ſay ſomething briefly of it.

This City which is one of the chief Havens in renowned *Italy*, was by *Francis* and *Ferdinand*, great Dukes of *Tuſcany* upon conſideration of it's commodious ſite raiſed from a mean village to a great Emporium. The ſaid Dukes fortified it with a ſtone wall, ſince which time it was gradually advanced by the encouragement of Trade; and is at preſent ſtrengthned with 5 Bulwarks and 2 Cittadels, or Forts the one whereof commands the Haven, and the other ſecures the Town on the Land ſide, towards *Piſa*, which is furniſhed with 60 great Guns. About 6 Engliſh miles from the City is a Beacon for direction of Marriners by night, there being many Rocks toward the South that are often the occaſion of Ship-wrack, and is therefore called *Malhora*. Theſe Rocks do cauſe impetuous breakings of the Sea, which yet render the entrance of the Haven more free and ſecure. So that Ships and Galleys may ride ſafely at anchor in this Road. The City on the out-ſide appears more magnificent than it is indeed inwardly: The Frontiſpieces, as well of Privat as Public Buildings being plaiſtered, upon which are painted Sea-fights, Hiſtories and Landſchap. In the midle of the Town is a ſtately Market place and an Exchange, where (as at other Places) Merchants meet and negotiate their Affairs. Corn, Fleſh, Fiſh and other neceſſaries are here very

FEB. 1656 good and cheap, which occaſions almoſt all that are bound farther up to put in there for Refreſhment. On a Corner Stand four ſtatues in braſs, repreſenting the Father and 3 Sons, who attempted to row away a Galley, belonging to the Duke of *Tuſcany*; and ply'd ſo ſtrongly that the reſt of the Galleys, had enough to do to overtake them, and were ready to yield it for loſt. Theſe 4 men were *Moors*, and for that notable Eſſay, are recorded with their Images in mettal which are ſet one againſt another, with their Hands behind their back.

Leaving *Leghorn* I ſet forward for *Piſa*: but before I was got half way, was aſſail'd with 4 Highway men, who were well mounted and arm'd: two whereof allighted, and clapt their Piſtols to my breaſt, bidding me deliver my money. In the mean while they fell a ſearching of my pockets and breeches, but not finding my money, which I had ſtitch'd up in the lining of my Coat, they gave me 2 bunches of Grapes, and rode away.

Arrival at Piſa. On the 22 of *February* I came into *Piſa*, where I took up my lodging for that night, and the next day went to take a view of the Town. It is ſeated at the foot of a great Hill, about 8 leagues from the Sea, between two Rivers *Auſere* and *Arno*: and ſeems to be of * ancient Standing. It was made an Univerſity (as ſome write) about the year 1339 but began to grow out of Eſteem till reſtored by *Coſmo di Medicis* Duke of *Florence*, and afterward by *Laurence* his Nephew; to whom *Vollaterran* and *Machiavel* aſcribe the Founding. There are here ſeveral fair Churches; that dedicate to Saint *John* is a very ſtately building, and renowned beyond any other Church in *Italy*, for it's coſtly Tower which is of admirable rare Workmanſhip. The Church-yard, otherwiſe called *Campo Sancto*, is viſited by many ſtrangers, which was made at that time, when *Frederic Barbaroſſa* went to Warrs againſt the Infidels in the Holy Land: to which Expedition thoſe of *Piſa* aſſiſted him with 50 Galleys. But the ſaid *Frederic Barbaroſſa* being caſually drowned, the Galleys returned back again, all freighted with Earth, of which they ſay the Church-yard is made.

On the 23 towards night I left *Piſa*, and went to *Florence*; Between which two Towns is the moſt delectable Fields and Valleys, that ever I have ſeen, either before or ſince, inſomuch that I thought my Journey neither long nor irkſom, though on foot.

On.

* *Piſa, vel ut apud Ptolomæum Piſſa, teſte Strabone lib. 5. Tuſciæ oppidum, inter Arnum & Auſeremmanes, à Piſeis, conditum, Elidis populis, qui Neſtorem ad Ilium ſeculi in redita tempeſtate diſſeſſi, alii quidem Metapontum, alii littus Tyrrhenum tenuerunt, ubi à nomine relictæ patriæ Piſas condiderunt.*

On the 26 I entred *Florence*, which is ſeated in a pleaſant Valley, and divided by the River *Arno* into two parts, which is the ſame River that runs by *Piſa*. On the Weſt it hath the Champane land which is admirably delightfull: on the Eaſt the Countrey is Hilly, and ſtored with abundance of Fruit-trees, and on ſome part it is fortified with the *Appenin* Hills. This City is reckoned about 7 miles in compaſs, and enjoys a ſubtile and wholſom Air, which renders the Natives and Inhabitants more acute and of a ſharper Genius than thoſe that Inhabit, or are born in places of a groſſer: The City which is divided by the River, is again united by four ſtately Bridges. which ſo beautify the Town that perhaps gave *Charles* the Arch-duke occaſion to ſay, that this was a City only to be ſeen on Holy-days. The fertile Hills and rich Valleys wherewith it is environed, affoard the Inhabitants plenty of all neceſſaries. Here is the Court and Reſidence of the Duke: The Palace being one of the moſt magnificent in all *Italy*, yet far more ſpacious and ſplendid within than without: but to recount the ſpacious Halls, Pompous Antichambre, Marble Statues and Pictures in the Galleries, with all it's Appendencies, were an endleſs labour. Right over againſt the Pallace is a Lifeguard, conſiſting of a hundred *Germans*. Before the Palace is alſo a very ſtately Fountain, adorned with huge Statues both of Marble and Braſs, out of which ſprings Water, being all in emblematical repreſentations. Upon the *Mercato Novo* is a very ſumptuous Building in which the Citizens, meet and treat about the affairs of Merchandiſe. The Palace of the *Medici* is a ſtupendious Fabric, and for artificial carved works, aſwell in Wood as Stone, and Pictures of the moſt eminent *Italian* Maſters, ſeems to emulate the famous *Vatican*. Beſides theſe are many other inferior Palaces, Bublic Puildings, Churches, Chappels and very ſpacious Cloyſters, all which would take up ſome moneths to make an exact ſurvey of. In many ſtreets are Galleries or *Piazzas*, (as in *Covent Garden*,) where one may walk to avoid either Sun or Rain. Here are alſo many Houſes built for Charitable uſes, where the Sick are relieved with what they ſtand in need of; and every one of thoſe Houſes kept very neat and clean, eſpecially the Hoſpital adjoyning to the Church *Alla Nunciata*. Yet above the many famous Structures which grace *Florence*, the Houſe of *Prattelino* outbraves them all, which was built by *Francis de Medicis*. The firſt

FEB. 1656

FEB. 1656. you come at is the Palace, which is raiſed upon a ſquare Fund, or Platform, which entring, you have at firſt view four Chambers that are oppoſite to one another, and ſtand alſo in quadrangular form, ſo that the 4 quarters are again ſubdivided each into 4 leſs, which make 16 Appartments. In one of theſe ſtand 2 coſtly Beds, one for the Duke, and the other for the Dutcheſs. The reſt of the Chambers are hang'd with Tapeſtry, and ſome with Cloth of Gold, unſpeakably rich; and illuſtrated with artificial and coſtly Statues, which are ſet in convenient Places thereto ordained. In like manner when we went up another ſtory, we found 16 Chambers more, paralel with the Platform of the former. In every one of theſe was a ſtately bed, the meaneſt whereof is computed to have coſt more than a Thouſand Crowns. Comeing out of the Pallace you come *alla Grotta*, which is a fair Arch having therin a Fountain, that ſeems rather to be Natural than performed by Art. Round about the Fountain are Snakes, Adders, Lizzards and other Serpents, ſo artificially made in Braſs that they might be taken for Living. On each Pillar ſtand Organs, which are moved by the force of Water, in ſuch manner, that they make a moſt lovely and ſweet Harmony. The Walls are in ſeveral places ſo thick ſet with Gems, Coral and other things of value, that they cannot be perceived. The reſt is ſet with Marble. About the middle ſtand fair Alabaſter Tables, to which if you draw near, the Water riſes from under your feet, and flies all over your head and bodie, but indeavoring to ſhun it, you are again ſaluted after the ſame manner from another place. On the other ſide is another called *Grotta Sibylla*, which is alſo very coſtly, and ſet out with many fair Statues of Marble and Alabaſtre, richly adorned with Coral, where are alſo curious Water-works, none ever coming there but is wet with thoſe ſubterranean Showers. On your right hand is the Bath of the Prince, which is under full of holes, through which the warmth can come to cauſe Sweat. Beſides theſe there is a third Arch, which is for the Heat in Summer, whither the Duke and his Houſhold retire to refrigerate themſelves. In this Arch, is a fair large Table of Alabaſter, and at each end ſeveral Holes, in which they ſet their wine to cool. There is belonging to this Houſe a pleaſant Garden, wherein are many Springs and Ponds: and every rare and choice Tree that will like in that Clime. Behind this Garden is a Park, full of ſtrange Birds and Beaſts, and therein a ſtately and de-

delightſom Arbor where the Duke frequently dines in the Summer ſeaſon, and from whence he can view both his Palaces, the one within the City and the other without. Right over this aforeſaid Garden is yet another, in the middle whereof is a Chappel, where the Duke for the moſt part goes to Maſs, and Veſpers. This Chappel is built round, after the manner of the Heatheniſh Temples of old, planted round with Cypreſs trees, and has all its inner works of that Wood. Near to that ſtands an Image of 24 foot high, which will repreſent *Neptune*, or *Thetis*, made of White marble, from whence all the Waters in the Fountains have their Riſe: upon which if a man ſtands he hears a wonderfull murmuring and buzzing of Water from below. FEB. 1656.

This City is a place of great Traffic and Commerce, eſpecially in Silks and Velvets, of which I ſaw many rich ſhops upon the *Ponte Vecchio*, or Old Bridge. The *Florentines* themſelves are very able and skillfull in the Affairs of Merchandiſe, and very litle Traffic don in *Italy* wherein they have not an intereſt; ſo that Pope *Clement VI* called them the fifth Element. Beſides their domeſtic and exotic Trade, they have given encouragement to, and bred up many, ingenious and famous Maſters in Architecture, Painting, Carving and other Practical Sciences and Arts, and have for a perpetual memory and Gratitude to many ſtately Pallaces, Churches, Pictures and Statues left them to Poſterity. This City is alſo very Courtly in reſpect of it's Situation, through which all Ambaſſadours and Miniſters of State from foreign Potentates muſt paſs, intending for the Court of *Rome*, or Seignory of *Venice*. It is much frequented, viſited and likewiſe inhabited by many Private Gentlemen, who ſpend their Eſtates here, and is a choice place to live in as well for Artificial as natural Delights, for ſuch as have an Eſtate to bear it out with. However, I had litle reaſon to complain of bad meaſure during the few daies I ſtaid there. For meeting accidentally with a Monk, who ſeeing me to be a *Hollander*, did not only careſs me all the time in ſuch manner that I needed not pay any thing either for Lodging or Diet, but alſo ſhow'd me all what was remarkable about the City. This Monk underſtanding that I was ſhort of Moneys, and intended for *Venice*, procured me 4 Rix-dollars, which was as much as I had occaſion for, to bear my Charges thither. *A Chriſtian Monk.*

On the 1ſt. of *March* I left *Florence*, and took my leave of the Monk, *Departure from Florence*

JAN. 1656. Monk, whom I thanked for his great Favour and Civility, which he had ſo ſignally manifeſted to me a ſtranger, on ſuch an extreme and emergent occaſion: and tending towards *Bologne*, I was fain to climb over a high ſteep Mountain, and in the valley found the City.

Bologne lies about 44 degr. being a Town of ſmall circumference, yet wealthy and full of Inhabitants. The form of the City ſeems to reſemble a Ship whereof the Tower *d' Aſinelli* is the Maſt. It has ever been a Maxim among them not to ſuffer either Cittadel or Fort to be built, under the ſpecious name of Fortification, being jealous that under ſuch a colour they might check the Citizens at their pleaſure; So that the *Bologneezes* have nothing to rely upon, than only the Walls, and valour of their men. The City is founded on the Banks of the famous *Savona*, which River incorporates with the *Rhene* a litle above *Ferrara*, by which way all Goods are conveighed. The Air is here for the moſt part moiſt, which renders the circumjacent Countrey very fertile, there being the beſt Meadows and Arable ground in all *Italy*. There is alſo very good Wine, Olives and Oil: although Fiſh they have none except what is brought from afar; but Veniſon in great abundance. In this place are made ſuch Sauſages, as are ſent abroad for great rarities, which ſome would perſwade us at home are made of Aſſes fleſh: but my curioſity induced me to make ſuch examination of that matter, that I found it otherwiſe; for they are made of * Pork and Mutton. Beſides the Traffic in the natural Products of the Land, they are great Encouragers of Manufactories, and eſpecally in Silks. The Streets are very fair and ſpacious, and at each corner is erected a Conduit, or Fountain. The Houſes on the outſide ſeem as if they were quite gone to decay, yet within are very ſumptuous and coſtly, quite contrary to thoſe in moſt places in *Spain*, that I have ſeen, where every Houſe by the Frontiſpiece ſeems rather a Palace than a private Dwelling, yet within naſty, full of ſpiders-webs, and void of Utenſils, pure Emblemes of Hypocriſy. During my aboad there I found not any thing extraordinary, as worthy of Remark, unleſs the Tower of *Gariſenda*, which is built crooked on purpoſe, for a proof of Art: although ſome hold the Churches of this City (if taken in general) to ſurpaſs all others in any particular Town in *Italy*, more eſpecially in regard of the many and rich Images, both of Gold and Silver, but their ground

* *Yet nothing is more coveted and eaten by the Jews.*

for ſuch an opinion is ſo deep, that I have not line enough to ſound it. MAR. 1656.

CHAP. II.

The Author departs from Bologne, *and arrives at* Ferrara. *Aſſail'd by a Robber: His Arrival at* Venice, *where he liſts himſelf in the Armade. He arrives at* Sante. *A great ſtorm between* Milo *and* Argenter. *The Ship called* The Golden Cock *ſplit upon Rocks. A ſad Shipwrack. A woman wonderfully ſav'd. The Authors arrival at* Candia: *Departs with a* Tartan *to the* Venetian *Armade. Their Appearance before* Mytilene, *where they obtain much Spoil and Proviſion; at laſt aſſaulted by* 200 *of the Turkiſh Chevalrie. Their Encounter, and return aboard the Fleet.*

AFter I had ſtaid 2 days at *Bologne*, I ſet forward for *Ferrara*, where being arrived I found it a dead Town, having nothing of Trade; but on the contrary many places void and unbuilt, a ſure and evident token of the declining condition of that City. Notwithſtanding all that, there are many curious Structures in *Ferrara*; eſpecially on the River *Po*, which runs that way, and expatiates it ſelf in Trenches or Ditches through the Town. It is ſtrengthened with many ſtrong Bulwarks and Ramparts, and has many ſpacious and airy ſtreets, with Piazzas on each ſide along the Houſes. Beſides this, I could not find any thing worthy of remark, and certainly it was no time for me to conſume my ſmall Eſtate upon ſuch unprofitable Pleaſures.

On the 6 *ditto* I left *Ferrara*, tending my journey for *Chioggio*, but by the way met a Foot-padder, who pillag'd me, and took away 2 Rixdollars, which were given me by the Monk at *Florenza*, and left me about 20d to help me to *Venice*. *The Author rifled.*

On the 8th. I arrived at *Chioggio*, which is a ſmall City on the Sea-ſide, from whence I could view the long-wiſh'd-for *Venice*, being but 3 miles diſtant. Here is a very convenient Haven, moſt haunted by Fiſhers, yet has litle other Trading to depend upon, except Gardening, and that only to ſupply *Venice* with Plants and Herbs. The prime thing I ſaw here, was an Image of the Virgin, with a weeping Child in her arm, held by them in great Veneration. As for Churches *Arrival at Chioggio.*

Mar. 1656 and Cloysters I had neither leisure nor money to gaze at'em, for my Noble was brought to Ninepence, and only as much left me as would pay my Passage to *Venice*: where being arrived, and paid my *naulum*, I had not a Farthing left. Nevertheless I knew that I could list my self when I would, and receive advance-money: and after a litle Inquiry, met with Monsr. *Theodore de Haan*, Commander of the *Golden Cock*, who took me on as Sail-maker. It was not long before the Ship was in her due equippage, and set forth in order to joyn with the Armade of *Venice*, which was upon an Expedition against the Turks in the *Dardanelli*. But *de Haan* having received letters from *Holland*, about some urgent affairs of his own, resigned the Command to his Son, and went home by Land.

On the 10th of *April* we set Sail from *Venice*, in company with the *Grand St. George*, which was then commanded by the Sieur *Court Adelaar* afterwards Admiral of *Denmark*, and lately deceased.

On the 20 *ditto* we arrived at *Xante*, where we supplied our selves with fresh Water, and took in some Pipes of Wine, which is here exceeding good, and tolerably cheap: for the *Barillo*, a measure of about 5 Gallon, or rather more, costs but a *Scudo*, that I suppose is equivalent with 5s 8d *Sterl.* which again is vended in the Armade for 6 Crowns.

On the 22 we departed from *Xante* directing our course for *Milo*, and on the 5th of *May* got the heighth of that Island, but did not touch there, steering directly between *Milo* and *Argentero*, and here we came to anchor, but too near the coast of *Argentero*, for we were annoyed with mud. Upon this arose a great Storm of Wind, which rock'd us to and again, and at last broke our Cables. We endeavored all we could to get Sea room, but the Wind being towards the Land, drove us flat against the Coast, where the Sieur *Adelaar* seeing us in such danger, sent off his Long Boat with 5 or 6 men to fetch a Person of Quality from aboard us, who was a Superintendant of some eminent Place, under the Jurisdiction of the Common-wealth: but all the rest of the Gentry, with about an Hundred Soldiers and Marriners stayd aboard. Soon after, the Ship was cast upon a Rock with the violence of the Sea, where she split all in pieces: in such manner as no tongue can express, nor pen decipher, that a Ship of such Burthen, like a Plank was thrown so high above Water, and in the twinkling

twinkling of an eie daſht into a Thouſand ſhivers. Lamentable it was to hear the pitifull moan of ſo many that were Parents for their Children, Men for their Wives, Wives for their Husbands, Children for their Parents, and every particular for their Friends and Alliance, The Maſter of the Ship and my ſelf got a Maſt, which, what by the boyſtrous Wind, and what by the violence of the Floods, did ſo tumble and roll, that we could not keep it in a due ballance, ſo that we thought beſt to look out for ſomething elſe, and by Heavenly Providence met with the great Hatch, which came driving with ſuch force againſt the Maſt, that it had almoſt ſent us both to ſound the Deep. However indeavouring to ſave our Lives, we got faſt hold of the Hatch, and won the Shoar. All the reſt were drowned to 19 Men, and 2 Women; the one whereof was a *Venetian* Lady, whoſe Husband was a Captain in that Expedition. This Gentlewoman, after a long and weariſom beating thro the Surges, and Foamings of the Sea, was thrown mother-naked upon Land, but moſt miſerably torn and rent with Nails and Splinters; having according to the report made by the Chirurgeon, above Fifty Wounds and Holes in her Body: yet notwithſtanding all this, was more grieved to hear of the loſs of her Husband, than ſenſible of her own calamity; However conſidering the extreme cold ſeaſon, and her weak condition, we covered her Warm with cloaths and Bedding. The other Woman that was ſaved, was the wife of a Privat Soldier, who was great with child, had driven Six and Thirty Hours upon a piece of the Hulk, and to our great admiration was taken up alive. It was certain that ſhe could not have endured any longer being already ſtiff and benummed, and as pale as a Corps. So ſoon as ſhe was brought aboard the *Saint George* and warmed, was delivered of an Abortiv Child: but her ſelf revived, being cheriſhed by the help of other Women aboard that Ship. Shortly after the Ship-wrack came all the Moveables and Goods aſhoar. Being now come aboard the *Saint George*, and a litle refreſhed, we ſteer'd away for *Candy*, where we arrived in ſafety; but what by our unhappy lingring at *Argentero*, and increaſe of Folk, the Victualling grew very low; upon which we deſired the Governour to ſupply us with what we had occaſion for, but Anſwer was returned us, That *Candia* was of it ſelf but very meanly provided, and that they were not in a capacity to aſſiſt us. We then

MAY. 1658.

A Gentlewoman wonderfully preſerved.

M.A. 1656. desired, that we might have a *Tartan* to transport us to the Armade, in order to admit our selves again into the service of the Commonwealth. To this the Governour gave his assent, and with a Ship and 15 men, and some Ammonition dispatched us for the Armade.

On the 3 of *May* we set Sail from *Candy*, but were put to our allowance at the rate of 2 *lib.* of Bread each man a day, upon a Calculation of 10 days, and so consequently 20 *lib.* the Voyage.

On the 8 *ditto*, we came close under *Mytilene*, and found that our Provision was already spent, so that it was resolved by the major part of the Company, that we should go ashoar and see out for something to supply our Wants, although we knew that the Island was under the Jurisdiction of the Turkish Emperour. However seeing there was as much Danger on the other hand, we chused rather to adventure our selves on land, than to starv aboard: and accordingly 12 *Hollanders* and 15 *Greeks* stept ashoar, and seeing a drove of Cattel we took 6 fat Kine, which we led to the Boat and so got them hoyst'd aboard, one by one. This fair beginning encouraged us to go further within land and about a mile from the Creek where the Tartan lay, found a small village of about 10 or 12 Houses, but not any appearance of either man, woman or child, who we concluded had hid themselves for fear. In the mean while finding no scarcity of Bread, Meal, Butter, Cheese, Honey, Wine and Oil, we pick'd and chus'd each what he had a mind to, and having pack'd up more than we could carry, we thought it a sin to leave any thing behind us: we therefore went a litle out of the Village, where we found about 20 Asses, these we took and loaded with our Spoil, and in our return to the Shallop espy'd a Castle which before we had not seen, and thither we supposed that the Peasantry of that Hamlet were fled to secure themselves. But in coming forwards, we found that there was but one high way to the Boat from the Village, and that close by the Castle; for every man had fenc'd in his Ground with a high Flint-wall: nevertheless coming past the Castle we met with no obstruction or annoyance in the World, till being got about half-way I looked about, and spied 200 Troopers following us as hard as they could drive, whereupon I cried out, *Gentlemen, Here comes a Command of Horse, see what you have to do, and resolve without much loss of time, for if you do not behave your selves courageously we are all dead men. Be valorous and keep together, let us be faithfull, and*

and if, we muſt ſubmit to death at this time, let it be in a honourable manner. MAY
The *Turks* in the mean while drew nearer and nearer: and we loath to 1655
part with our Plunder, made a faint-hearted fellow (that was good for nothing elſe) drive the Aſſes before, whileſt we drew up into a Body and put our ſelves into a Poſture of defence. Our men unanimouſly gave me (for the time being) the honour of a Chieftain, in lieu of a better. As for the *Greeks*, they were greater Strangers to martial Diſcipline than we, and ran confuſedly up and down without any order. When the *Turks* were juſt come upon us, I gave charge that they ſhould not fire all at once, but by 5 at a time, and that not till they had taken good aim, and the Enemy within ſhot. With that the *Turkiſh* Commander (being a *Moor*) advanced upon a ſtately Horſe, was bound to level his Carbine, but to anticipate him I gave the Word to the firſt Rank, who brought him down to the Ground and three more beſides him. This falling out luckily the ſecond Rank gave fire, and ſo following the third, till we ſaw above 20 of the Enemies Party dead, that gave us no ſmall encouragement; but on the contrary ſo diſheartned the Enemy that they began to retreat; for beſides the great advantage we had of the High walls of Flint, which ſerved us for a Rampart; our Arms were large Muſquets, and theirs but ſmall Carbines, which at that diſtance could not do much Execution. When they were gone a good way back, we climbed over the Wall, marched along the high way with four in a Rank, and kept our ſelves together. The *Turks* ſeeing that faced about on a ſudden, clapt ſpurrs to their Horſes, and came driving upon us with a moſt horrid ſhouting; thinking ſo to bring us out of our Ranks, and to put us into a diſorder: which if they could have effected, had ſerved their turn. But our men the ſecond time faced about and levelled their Muſquets, till we had them at a due diſtance and ſo we fired for a good while together, without either gaining or looſing ground; till at laſt the Enemy ſeeing themſelves conſiderably weakned by the loſs of their Leaders, were forced to retreat again till they were out of ſhot: but ſo ſoon as we began again to march, they followed us, but in a very eaſy pace, intending (as we had colour to beleeve) to ſurprize us at taking our [illegible]es aboard, but they ſeeing us too near the Boat were content to let us alone for that time: for had they come we had

MAY. 1656. four ſmall braſs Pieces in the Shallop which would have done more ſervice than the Muſquets. So after this ſmall Bickering, we got our Spoil aboard, with the loſs of 2 dead, and 3 wounded in the Conflict.

CHAP. III.

The Authors Arrival at Sante Monte; *and at* Troy. *The Galleys of* Bay *come with the* Turkish *Armade. An* English *Ship ingaged with the* Turks; *defends her ſelf manfully, and at laſt burned. The Author made Slave, and put in a Galley, with an old* Ruſs: *Conſult to eſcape: Betake themſelves to Water, and are diſcovered. The* Ruſs *ſhot with an arrow. They come both to the* Venetian *Armade.*

ON the 9th. *dito* we left *Mytilene*, and with a brave Wind got *Monte Sante*, or *Holy Mount* in 2 days: This being the Hill (as the devout Romaniſts beleeve) whereon our Saviour was tempted by Sathan, and from whence he ſhow'd him all the Riches of the Earth.

On the 12 *dito* we Sailed into the River of *Conſtantinople*, where we found the Sea-Armade of *Venice* at *Troy*, which is the place and remnant of the famous *Troy*, ſo much read of in the Poets of old, although it is hard to judge where the Town has verily ſtood. All that is to be ſeen, is a Gate which is built of white Marble, and ſeems to be exceeding ancient, and a ſmall Village with the Foundations of a wall, that encompaſſe the Town 7 times, not in circular form, but as it were involved like a Snake, or the ſpring of a Watch. Towards the Sea are ſome Trenches and a Redout of Earth, which have been lately made by the Turks to check the Paſſage of the *Propontis*, or Channel of *Conſtantinople*.

On the 14 we were taken into ſervice, and I put aboard the *Litle Princeſs*.

On the 15 we ſaw the Galleys of *Bey*, who ſeeing that we had ſtopt the Channel, row'd away toward the *Greek* ſhoar, where they ſtay'd together, being 22 in number.

On the 16 came an *English* Ship from *Sante* called the *Midleton* to bring Bread, Oars, and Ammonition for the Armade, which the *Turkish* Galleys aſſail'd, when ſhe came near the *Dardanelli*. We hearing that, did all we could to ſail off and aſſiſt them; but it was ſo calm,

calm, that our Sails cling'd about the maſt. The Turks in the mean while lay battering the *English* Ship, and the *English* on the other hand defended themſelves couragiouſly. After they had fought ſome hours, the *Turks* boarded her abaft and got the Poop, which the *English* ſeeing blew up the Decks, and ſo ſet the Ship on Fire, which nevertheleſs when they ſaw her on Fire to the Main Maſt, ceaſed not to fire valourouſly out at the Prow till ſhe began to ſink, which they marking betook themſelves to ſwimming, rather willing to burn or ſink than ſurrender themſelves or Ship upon diſhonorable Terms. However the *Turks* took up as many as they could, and made ſlaves of them. Aboard this Ship was an *English* Woman who kept a Houſe of Entertainment at *Venice*, notedly known by the name of Mrs. *Penters*, and one that was very kind to the *English* and *Dutch* when in any ſtrait or trouble, and many of our Nation were ſorry when they heard of her Death. The Ship *Middleton* was mounted with 36 Guns, and 60 Men, whereof about 40 were drown'd and burn'd, as we found by the Bodies we took up an hour and a half after the Battel. And afterward underſtood by the Slaves we took in the Engagement at the *Dardanelli*, that the Galleys were ſo diſabled that they repented the Aſſault, beſides more than 500 Men outright kill'd, and a far greater number wounded. MAY. 1656.

While we lay at Anchor at the entrance of the Channel, and floating to and again before the *Dardanelli*, the moſt part of our men were quell'd with a Scorbutic diſtemper, for want of freſh Water. For all the Water we could have, we muſt fetch out of the River of *Troy*, which we could not doe without great perril, and jeopardy of our lives; the *Turks* having ſeveral hidden Trenches, in which they lay ſculking till they ſaw opportunity, and then ſurprized us. To my great misfortune, I was ſent out with 7 more to fetch Water with a Boat; and coming to *Troy*, we ſaw very rich Vineyards, at a diſtance, and mightily longing for ſome ſuch refreſhments, we caſt lots who ſhould make the attempt to go and fetch ſome Grapes, and the lot fell upon me: wherefore without much loſs of time I betook my ſelf thither, viewing warily if the coaſt were clear, but ſeeing no ſtir or appearance of men; I went up undauntedly, where I made both Hands and Chaps move. But whilſt I was thus buſy, heard a great noiſe, and turning me about, deſcried ſeveral *Turks* that had lay in ambuſh

M.DC. 1656. ambuſh running towards me, from ſeveral places between me and the River. Our men were newly come aſhoar and filling their Casks with Water, who made all the haſt they could, gain'd the Boat, looſ'd off from the ſhoar, and eying the Enemy too earneſtly ran the Shallop upon a Sand, where they were ſet faſt; but having ſome Fire-arms aboard, they kept the *Turks* off, till they got the Boat adrift, and ſo made their eſcape. In the mean while I ſat biting my nails, and ſcratching my head in the Vineyard. Seeing my way forelaid, and no hopes of coming to the Sea-ſide. I began to conſult with my ſelf what ſhift to make, and concluded it the greateſt folly in the world to oppoſe my ſelf againſt ſo many men, for which (being once in their clutches) I might expect ſeverer uſage. It was not long before they came to ſee what kind of a *Fool*, they had got in their Gin, where they found *Peel-garlick* ready to yield up the Ghoſt for fear. They brought me firſt to the Hamlet, where *Troy* was ſaid to ſtand in times of yore, and afterwards to thoſe Caſtles which are built oppoſite to each other, and command the entrance of the *Dardanelli*. Here they put me in a Galley, ſtript off my Robes, ſhaved my head, and ſet me to an Oar, which was work enough for ſix of us to tug at, allowing me only a pair of linnen Breeches to cover my nakedneſs. I was chain'd to a *Ruſſian*, who had been 24 years in the Galleys: for all ſtrangers that they take in the *Venetian* Sea-Armade, are to ſtay in the Galleys during life, without the benefit of Redemption. Which when I came to underſtand, began in all haſt to repent my temerity, and foolhardineſs, and had thought my ſelf more happy if I had been pilling of Turnips or Cucumbers at *Durgerdam*, than plucking of ſuch ſour Grapes in a *Trojan* Vineyard.

The Author made a Slave.

How inhuman and barbarous our Uſage was, no Tongue can duly utter, nor Pen decipher. For the Guardian of that Galley was reputed the moſt ſevere of any other in the Fleet, and although we plyed never ſo ſedulouſly, were ſure to be threſh'd on the naked ribs with a Buls-pizle, when the fit took him; and one mans hide muſt unjuſtly be made a *piaculum*, for another's Remiſneſs, or Sloth, nor was the Tygre ever well, but when he heard ſome a roaring, or yelling out The *Ruſs* was ever now and then counſelling to betake our ſelvs to flight, which I had a great mind to eſſay. (for the *Venetian* Armade lay but two leagues from us) but could never ſee an opportunity, meeting

meeting perpetually with one obſtruction or other; and the Coaſt narrowly watch'd by the *Turks*. The *Ruſs* had ſeveral times attempted to run away, but was ever taken, and had neſther Noſe nor Ears left him. This woful Precedent daunted me ſo, that I had no great ſtomach to try, but one day above the reſt he gave me good encouragement, ſaying, *Prethee Brother, Which is beſt, To live in perpetual Slavery, or, Doe what you can, to make your Eſcape? Put the caſe it ſhould be fruitleſs and we ſhould be taken, I ſhall be ſure to have the hardeſt meaſure, but you, only a hundred ſtroaks on the foot, at worſt. 'Tis true, they have threatned to burn me, if ever I run away again, and am caught; but I will rather dy ſo, than to live all my days under the laſh of thoſe unreaſonable Hell-Hounds, and to be tormented with a Thouſand Plagues, after the manner you ſee. Come, come, reſolve.* Faint heart never won fair Lady, *and* Nothing venture, nothing have; *What is there in the World, that may be præferred before a Golden Freedom?* By theſe and many other reaſons he moved me to hazard to matter. The *Moſcovian* or *Ruſs*, who was a ſubtile Impoſtor, and had an excellent hand at any kind of Roguery, had been ſome time before at *Conſtantinople*, where he had bought a File; this he had ſtitch'd up in his Coat, and carried always a litle Tinder-box and a Watch-light about him, to uſe in time of occaſion. MAY. 1656.

Having now for the ſpace of 6 Weeks endured this wofull ſtate, we found an Opportunity to rid our ſelvs of that miſerable Slavery: for being now left to our Liberty to fetch Water for our ſelves, my Camrade and I that were chain'd together went farther within Land than we needed, and ſo returned honeſtly back to the Galley, and that for 2 or 3 times together, the better to prevent ſuſpicion, till at laſt, we ran ſo far out of ſight that we thought our Enterprize half won. The night coming on, it began to rain, and we to ſhelter our ſelvs, crept into a cave, where my Mate ſtruck fire and lighted his Wax-candle, that we might ſee to file: and after a litle labour got our ſelves looſe. The night in regard it was dark favour'd us mainly, ſo that we came to the ſtrand an hour before break of Day, which we ſaw full of Tents. But being a very rainy night and ſtormy weather, the Sentinels did not attend their Poſts, ſo that we paſſed through the middeſt of them without any examination, and betook our ſelves to ſwimming before it was obſerv'd. But it was not long before they began to ſuſpect ſomething, or other, for that Water is *The Author makes his Eſcape.*

May. 1656 very ſalt and has this property, that with the leſt motion, or troubling, it burns like fire. Hereupon they ſhot at us by gueſs and random, with the Long-bow (for by reaſon of the Rain they could not uſe their Fire-arms,) ſo that the Arrows came pelting about our ears, and ſometimes grazing upon the Water, till at laſt one hit the *Ruſs* directly upon the buttock. However he ſwom ſo long with it, till we were out of ſhot, but when I would have pulled it out; the poor caitiff began to yell out moſt miſerably, crying, *Let alone, let alone, 'tis an Arrow with a wicker.* And thus he was fain to ſwim for two Leagues together, before we came to the *Venetian* Armade: and had the ſtream heavy on our ſide. When we came to the Armade we were taken into the Ship *Abrahams Offering*, where the *Ruſs* had the Arrow drawn out of his buttock, which had piereed him to the very bone, and put him to a miſerable torture before it was drawn out, being a Harpoon with 8 wickers. However he was by the diligence of an able *Chirurgeon* in a ſhort time cured of his Wound; and we thanked God for his delivery of us from the hands of thoſe mercileſs Tyrants, preſerving us through the dangerous floods, and bringing us to a Chriſtian People.

The Ruſs ſhot with an Arrow.

CHAP. IV.

The fugitive Slaves brought before the General. The manner of their Encouraging their Men. Number of the Venetian *Ships and Galleys. Names of the Commanders and Chieftains. The* Malteezes *joyn with the Armade. The* Turkiſh *Fleet ſail up, endeavour to break through, are hindred by the* Malteezes. *The* Turks *throw up two Batteries. A dreadfull Engagement, and playing off the Cannon for three days together. The* Turks *begin to ſettle. The Stability and valour of the* Venetians. *The* Turks *looſe their Courage.*

June. 1656 ON the 24 of *June* by break of day we got the Armade (in manner as aforeſaid) and about 8 a clock, I was brought before the General, to whom I ſignified what had paſſed as to my particular concernment, and gave him what Intelligence I could from the *Turkiſh* Fleet, who intended that day to fall down, had already reckoned the day their own, and made a Dividend among themſelves, of the Ships, Spoil, and Slaves, for which reaſon the Offi-

cers

cers were very eager, and indeavored to haſten the Expedition. The General received me kindly, thanked me for the Information, ordered us each 50 Crowns, and ſo diſmiſſed us. So ſoon as we were come out of the Generals preſence, he ordered a Proclamation to be proclaimed and affixed to the Maſt of every Ship and Galley, That every privat perſon ſhould freely enjoy what they could get by plundering; and a ſtrict Interdiction was ſent to the reſpectiv Officers not to deprive or moleſt them upon pain of Death: which was no ſmall incouragement to the Marriners and privat Soldiery. At firſt the *Venetians* were very weak, but afterward, by the joyning of the *Maltheezes* and ſome *Dutch*, they were increaſ'd to 28 Ships of War, 14 Galleys, and 7 Galeaſſes. Their Officers were as follow. *June.* 1656

A LIST

Of the Head-Officers and Commanders in the Venetian *Armade, as they were ingaged againſt the* Turks Anno 1656

Lorenzo Marcello, GENERAL.
Barbaro Badoer PROVEDITOR of the ARMADE.
Joſeppo Moroſini, ADMIRAL of the GALEASSES.
Antonio Barbaro, Captain of the Gulf.
Zuanni Marcello, LIEUTENANT GENERAL, and Captain of a Galeaſs.

The Heads, or Prime Officers of the Galeaſſes were,

Alviſe Foſcari. *Marco Riva*
Anthonio Priuli. *Alviſe Bataglia*
and *Giacomo Loredan.*

Captains of Galleys

Pietro Contarini, ADMIRAL.
M. Antonio Paſquaglio. *Dioniſio Diſani.*
Pietro Quirini. *Zorzi di Mezo*
Giacomo Semiticolo. *Zuanni Venier*
Nichole Muazzo. *Franceſco Pizzamano.*

MAY, 1656.

Nichole Colergi.	*Angelo Muazzo.*
Aurelio Longo.	*Aleſſandro Dondolo.*
Alviſo Baſſo.	*Thomaſo Fradello.*
Giacomo Polani.	*Z. Giacomo Quirini.*
Franciſco di Mezo.	*Herolamo Peſaro.*
Pietro Barozzi.	*Alvize Soſcarini.*
Zorzi Mengano.	*Guglielmo Avogrado.*

Of the Ships of Warr the Head-Officers were,

Marco Bembo, ADMIRAL
Zuanni Contarini, VICE-ADMIRAL
Gerolamo Malepiero, RERE-ADMIRAL.

Captains of Men of War.

Z. Andora Bragadina.	*Zuanni Corner.*
Barnardo Bragadino.	*Fauſtino Riva.*
Nicolo Dona.	*Zorzi Zancarat.*
Agoſtino Marcello.	*Franceſco Baſadono.*
Vincenzo Quirini.	*Franceſco Piſani*
Gerolamo Loredano.	*Bernardin Vizzamano* } Voluntiers without Pay.
Marco Barberigo.	*Franceſco Quirini* } Voluntiers without Pay.
Nicolo Zane.	*Aleſſandro Zane.*

Great Perſonages and Voluntiers.

The Prince of *Parma.*
Zuanni Anthonio Muazzo, a youth of 13 Years.
Andrea Muazzo, aged 12 Years.
Dominico Anthonio Semiticolo.
Marco Zorzi. Pietro Gritti. Lazaro Mocenigo.

For the ſpace of one whole moneth we cruſed upon the *Turkiſh* Armade, which we waited for daily from *Conſtantinople*. In the mean while thoſe of *Maltha* came up with their Galleys to the *Venetian* Armada, under the Flag of the *Prior of Rochel*. The *Turks* on the contrary had 28 Men of War. 9 Galeaſſes, and 60 Galleys, thoſe of the Bey reckoned with them. The ſaid Fleet was alſo full of men, and well provided with Ammunition.

On

On the 23 the whole Armade came down with full Sail before the *Dardanelli*, as if they would direct their course for the Islands of *Greece*, or some place in the *Archipellago*, aiming to make a breach sometimes at one place, and sometimes at another; But the *Venetians* were too vigilant to suffer it; for they composed their Fleet in such order, that the *Turks* could not find a Passage. Nevertheless the *Maltheezes* disown'd themselvs to be under the Standard of *Saint Mark*, but reserved the Command of their own Galleys, as themselves listed and thought good. MAY. 1656.

On the 24 the *Turks* held themselves close to the Banks near the two Castles, mentioned before (in Pag. 80) which tended mainly to their advantage. Besides this they had thrown up two Batteries, one upon the Corner of *Barbaria*, on the *Anatolian* Side, and another, on the *Greek*, or Western Coast, from whence they play'd off their great Guns against the *Christian* Navy, to work a passage through for their Fleet. Three days long continued they on both sides firing with their Canon, the Admiral of the *Venetians*, as bearing the chief Standard; riding neareſt to the Enemy, and consequenly suffered more dammage than the rest of the Navy: for the Turks threw out great Stones with their Bombs, that they killd three men on a breast, who stood very near the General. In these Castles are Guns of an incredible mussin, and as some say, those in the outmost Redoubts 30 inches diameter. And although there was not any hope of doing the Enemy much harm, yet the *Christian* Fleet kept still in good Order, waiting greedily for the *Turkish* Navy, which we thought would come out, when ours was a litle more disabled. On the 26 they came out with full Sail, and in good Order, with such a hideous roaring and shouting, that we could not understand the words of Command, nor hear one another speak. Their Ships as well as their Galleys were so stow'd with men, that they were a great incumbrance to themselves.

The Wind was now at North, and favoured the *Turks* so, that the *Christians* were almost blind and stifled with smoak: yet the whole Fleet kept their Posts without giving way to the Enemy. The General to give a good example and encouragement to the whole Navy, put the Fleet in the form of a Crescent and himself in the Nombril; and so expected the Infidels Armade: but they kept off at a considerable distance, still playing off their Cannon. The Wind and stream *The Turks have the benefit of the Wind.*

JUNE. 1656. which favoured them againſt us, was alſo advantagious for us againſt the Galleys of the *Bey*, that were to the Rereward of us; who alſo fought courageouſly, and held their Poſt all the while. The *Venetians* did all they could to cloſe up with the *Turks*, but could not move forward and keep their due Order, thro reaſon of the Wind, and violent Breakings of the Stream, occaſioned on purpoſe by the *Turks* in opening of their Fleet, that beat Strongly againſt the Chriſtian Navy. The Enemy in the mean while battered the Squadron of *Marco Bembo* with an inceſſant ſhooting of whole Tears and Broadſides, that all crack'd again; nor had *Lazaro Mocenigo*, and *Geroline Malipiero* the Vice-Admiral, aſſiſted by the Prince of *Parma*, the leſt ſhare in this hot Ingagement. But beyond all others, memorable was the magnanimous and reſolved Valour of *Bernardo Bragadino* Chieftain of the *Contarina*, a ſmall, but a well-built Friggat: who notwithſtanding the Enemy poured out great ſhot, like Hail upon her, yet dured all the brunt of the battel thundring with her Cannon againſt the *Turkiſh* Galeaſſes, that they were forced to remove their Poſt 5 ſeveral times. An admirable rare Courage! which if it either could, or had been ſeconded, by all the Naval Forces of the *Chriſtians* then preſent, would have given ſuch an Overthrow to the Infidels as no Age might paralel. Nor may we forget to commemorate the good ſervice of the *Dutch*, who ſerved as Auxiliaries in this Naval Expedition, and behaved themſelvs very well. The *Turks* now ſeeing the prudent Conduct of the General, and undaunted Courage of the whole Fleet did all they could to draw off, fell down to the Seaward and retired into the Bay of *Barbery*, where they dropped Anchor, hoping that now they were in Sanctuary.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

The Wind turns in favour of the Venetians. *The* Turks *flee and are obſtructed. The brave Courage of the Galleys of* Bey. *General* Marcello *kill'd. The manly Behaviour of Lazaro* Mocenigo, *who looſes one eie. Two* Dutch *Ships, to wit,* Het Wapen van Naſſau, *and* Den David en Goliath, *blown up with their own Powder. The Turkiſh* Capitana *yields. The General and diſorderly Flight of the* Turks. *Their total overthrow, and loſs on both ſides.*

AFter the Chriſtians had long laboured to cloſe up with the *Turks*, but could not effect their Intentions, for the Wind blew hard at North, and North and by Eaſt, and the ſtream ſtill falling with great Force upon their Ships and Galleys, rendred their Indeavours fruitleſs, ſo that they could not do any enterprize, than barely what was done with their Ordnance, they had reſolved to reſt a litle: till on a ſudden by Heavenly providence the Wind came about, and GOD, out of his unſpeakable Goodneſs, granted the *Chriſtians* a helping Hand, almoſt after the ſame manner, as about a Hundred Years agon in the famous Sea-fight againſt the *Turks*, under the Conduct of Don *Juan d' Auſtria*, when the *Turks* had the Wind fair and favourable, till they came to engage with the Chriſtians, and then by the Divine Bounty of the Everlaſting GOD, the Wind turned to the advantage of the *Chriſtian* Fleet; in ſuch ſort that the Chriſtians gave them the greateſt and moſt fatal Overthrow, that ever yet was either known, or heard of, in the world. The General *Marcello* had no ſooner obſerved that the Wind blew a litle Southerly, but he gave Command to ſet ſail, and ſtretch the Oars, in order to give the *Turks* a ſudden Aſſault, which was in obedience to his Will immediatly put in practiſe. The *Turks* being thus ſurprized by our ſilent Attacque, and finding the Wind directly againſt them, were dreadfully diſmai'd: inſomuch that upon our entring the Bay we ſaw them by whole flocks jump over board. Some ran with their Ships and Galleys bluntly againſt the Wall, others that lay at Anchor neareſt the Sea, ſtrove to drive through the Fleet and gain the Rere; and thoſe that ſaw themſelves not able to retreat, left the Ships, and betook themſelves to ſwimming; few of which eſcaped (for there runs a ſtong Tide) and moſt of them were carried to the Seaward, that we met whole Shoals of

JUNE. 1656.

The Wind turns in favour of the Chriſtians.

M.DC. 1656. of them driving in the ſtream, and amongſt them many Chriſtian Slaves, which we took up with our Shallops. In the mean time the *Turks* continued their Flight, endeavoring with their Galleys to tow away ſome of the ableſt Ships, but the *Venetians* fell ſo furiouſly upon them that they were anticipated, and only made their eſcape with 14 which got the Caſtle for their Refuge: *Lazaro Mocenigo*, who was Volunteer and commanded the *Sultan* (formerly taken by the *Turks*) made in with great Courage, and cut off their Paſſage, where he lay thundring and firing his Cannon till the General *Marcello* broke through the middeſt of the Enemies Armade, put them into diſorder, and kept his own Fleet in good Condition holding ſtill in the Nombril or Center of the Creſcent, joyntly with the Proveditor *Barbaro Badoer*, the Squadron of *Malta*, with the Ships and Galeaſſes of *Ioſeppo Moroſini*. The Right Wing (or Horn) was commanded by *Anthonio Barbaro*, a Captain of the Gulf, the left by *Pietro Contarini*. The *Turks* ſeeing themſelves environed on every ſide with the *Chriſtians*, and their Paſſage obſtructed, began to fight with better courage than before, and defended themſelves very bravely, as ſometimes deſperate Soldiers do. But above all the Galleys of *Bey* appeared ſignally ſtout, and for their laudable behaviour and ſingular valour merited as much the Honour, as the *Turkiſh Muſtapha* the Diſhonour of the Day. But with a Lion-like Courage, and as wiſe a Conduct, did a certain *Baſſa* manifeſt his generous ſpirit, who was the ſame that had promiſed the *Grand Seignior*, to preſent him with *Marcello's* head, or to forfeit his own in lieu thereof (being a *Greek* Renegado) and aſſuredly he gave none reaſon to tax him with Remiſsneſs on his own behalf, yet fail'd in the Atchievment of his well-intended Enterprize; for when he was bound to board him, the General got aſſiſtance, and offered to enter the *Baſſas* Galley, but was unfortunately killed with a Cannon ball, and four Gentlemen that ſtood next him. *Zuanni Marcello* ſeeing this, held all in ſilence, for fear of diſcouraging the *Chriſtian* Armada, took the Command upon himſelf, and purſued the Battel hotly after the ſame Order, till he had privately ſignified the General's death to *Barbaro Badoer*, Proveditor of the Navy, who without loſs of time ſtept over, and ſucceeded him, ſtill holding the ſame Order which the General had deſigned. *Lazaro Mocenigo* in the mean while buſy to obſtruct the Paſſage of the *Turks* with the *Sultan*, ran her unluckily upon

The notable valour of the Galleys of Bey.

The General Marcello kill'd.

upon a Sand, near the ſhoar, and at laſt too eager in ſhooting ſet the ſhip on fire, having a litle before loſt his Eie with a ſplinter. JUNE. 1656

The *Sultan* had aboard her divers Perſons of Quality and Volunteers, who *maximis ad minimos* quitted themſelves well and honourably: amongſt which was, Capt. *Zorzi Dadick*, The Sieur *Ebert*, Capt. Lieutenant *Gremonville*, and *Bernardino Canal* a Reformado Captain, whereof the two laſt were irrecuperably wounded. During the Fight, was the *Dutch* Ship, called **'t Wapen van Naſſauw** under the Command of Capt. *Fauſtino Riva* blown up with her own Powder, as alſo another *Dutch* Ship called **Den David en Goliath** by an unfortunate ſhot in her Powder Chamber, when ſhe was ingaged with the Galleys of the *Bey*, and lay ſo cloſe to the ſaid Galleys that 5 of them were blown up with her. Aboard the ſame Ship were 44 *Hollanders*, and 22 left, being juſt the half loſt. The Prince of *Parma* was ſo forward that his Companions were fain to reſtrain him by force, running himſelf oftentimes into a needleſs jeopardy of his Perſon. Remarkable was that of the General *Borri* being aboard the Galeaſs of *Marco Riva*, who having his young Son by him, carried him up and down to ſee what was worthy of note. When the Night came on, they unanimouſly left off on both ſides, and all was ſtill; but the next Morning by break of day, they fell on *amain*, and ſeem'd for ſome hours to be equally match'd as that the Day was thought dubious, but at laſt the *Turks* were fain to give over, only the *Capitana* held out very manfully, till the Admiral *Marco Bembo* came to cloſe up with his Lar-board where he ſaluted him ſo with Broad-ſides, that he was forc'd to yield as well as the reſt. *Courage of the Turkiſh Capitana*

The *Venetians* ſeeing the *Capitana* yield gave a great ſhout that the Caſtle and Banks rang again, and ſo well encouraged they were that, they fell furiouſly in one entire Body upon the *Saracens*, that they forthwith betook themſelves to flight, and retired to the Fort, but the Chriſtians had ſo hindred their paſſage, that few of them got clear. The Sieur *Barbaro Badoer* who ſucceeded the General concealed his death ſo long untill that the Fight was over, and he able for to give the Fleet an account of the Enemies Overthrow, which was in the ſecond Evening, pretty late.

The *Venetians* having now made themſelves Maſters of ſo many Ships and Galleys, were at a loſs for Men enough to manage them, *The loſs on both ſides.*

JAN 1656 that they were fain to set the most part on fire, reserving only such as were left disabled, as a token of this notable Victory, which had cost the Common-wealth above 400 Souls, and amongst those their most faithfull and valiant General *Marcello*, whose (unhappy) Death can never be enough lamented. The number of those that were wounded was great, but uncertain. The *Sultan*, and the 2 *Dutch* men of War, which as we have already said were unfortunately destroyed with their own powder, was all their loss of Shipping. They took 18 Galleys, and the *Maltheezes* 11 Ships, besides 54 Ships that were burn'd: so that of 97 Galeasses, Ships and Galleys, only 14 were saved on the Enemies side. By this laudable Enterprise and Victory of the *Venetians*, above 5000 *Christian* Slaves were restored to Freedom. But how many of the Infidels lost their lives was uncertain, only by a rude conjecture, and a modest Calculation were computed between 5 and 6000 Men. When we went to ruminate for Spoil among their Dead we found the *Fretum*, or Mouth of the *Dardanelli* floating so thick with Bodies, that we could not force our Boat through, but with our Oars and Boat-hook were fain to drag and draw them behind the Shallop, which again with the force of the stream were thrown on heaps one above another, like Shoals of Ice, and so came tumbling into the Boat, in spite of all the means we could use.

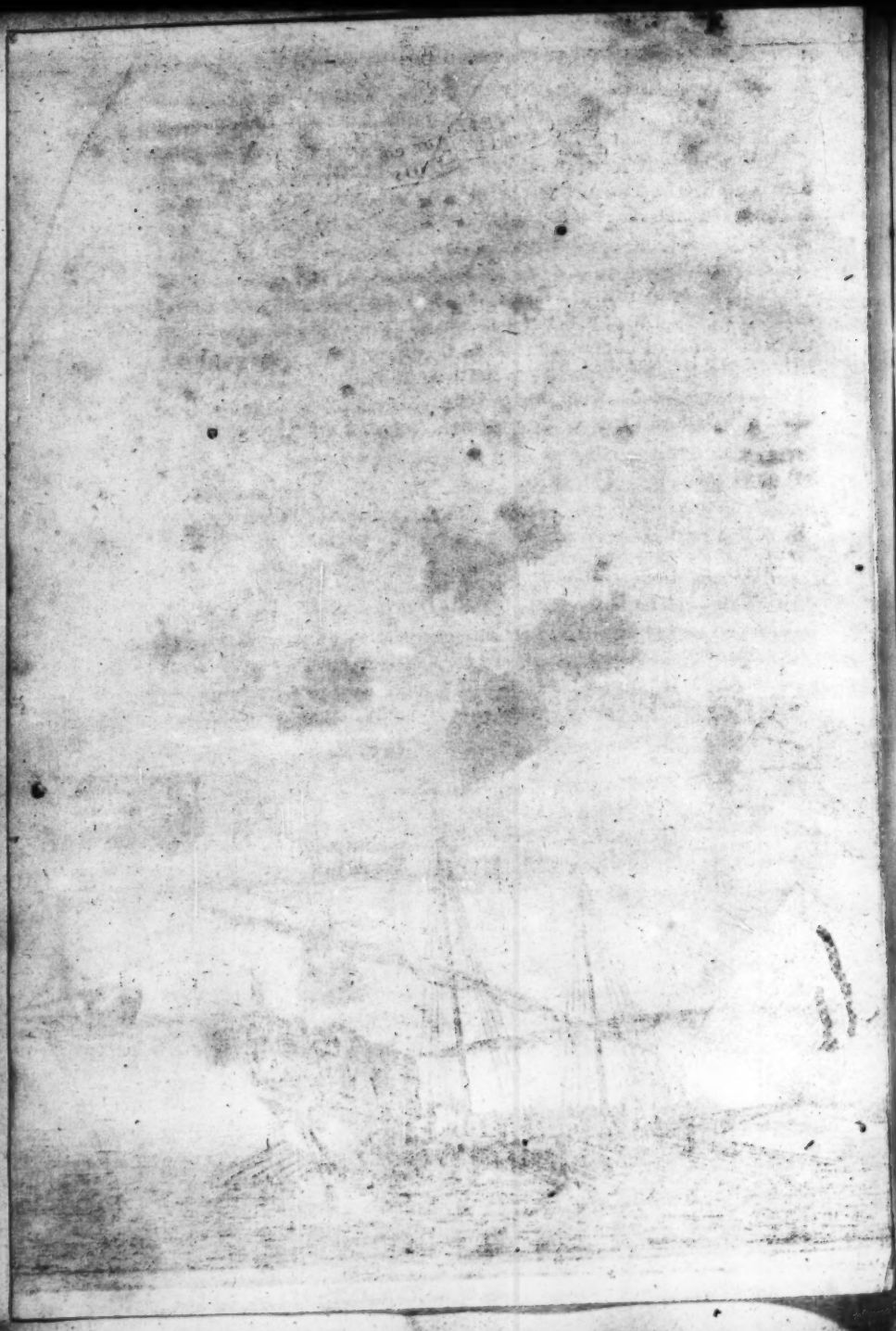
CHAP. VI.

The Siege of Tenedos. *The two Castles surrendred. A description of* Tenedos. Lemnos, *it's Situation, and taking in. The present state of* Greece. J. Struys *arrival at* Pathmos *and* Samos. *Taken by the Turks with 6 of his Companions, and soon after ransom'd.*

After this signal Victory, all the maimed Soldiers, together with the Corps of the General, and other Noblemen were sent back to *Venice*: and the new General *Badoer* upon this succesfull day, resolved to fire them out of their own nests. Pursuant thereto he steers away for *Tenedos*, which is an Island situate at the very mouth of the *Propontis*, or River of *Constantinople*, which is as it were the Key of the said River, and Commands the Passage so, that no Ships can come







come in or out, againſt their will. There are on this Iſland two well fortified Places, the one on the South and the other on the North; both built after the beſt manner of Fortification, having Bulwarks and Walls of an incredible Thickneſs. We lay Siege to theſe, both by Sea and Land, but the main Forces we applied on the Haven-ſide, for the Bay is very wide, where we came to caſt our Anchors. Fourteen days long we lay battering the Caſtle with our Cannon from the Sea, at what time they put out a white Flag, and propoſed to the General certain Articles, upon which they declared themſelves free to ſurrender the Fort, the main of which Propoſals was, JUN. 1656. *Tenedos beſieged and ſurrendred upon Articles.*

That all freeborn Turks *ſhould be ſet upon faſt Land*;
and,
That all the Renegados ſhould be at the mercy of the Chriſtians.

The ſaid Articles were mutually counter-changed and ratified by the Heads of both Parties, and all the *Turks* and *Moors* drawn out, even the *Greeks* too, who were ſuffered to ſtay upon the Iſland but not within the Caſtle. The Heads of the other Caſtle ſeeing the *Venetians* in poſſeſſion of this, put out the White Flag and deſired Articles of Peace, which after a ſhort Treatie of Commiſſioners on both ſides were ſigned, exiſting moſtly of the ſame Tenure with the former.

Tenedos lies near the coaſt of *Anatolia* and is called *Bouchadde* by the *Turks*. It is of a fertile Soil, and produces plenty of Fruit, but eſpecially Grapes, and has good ſtore of Melons and other delicacies, which they have alſo in the Winter-ſeaſon. And according to it's ſmall extent (not exceeding 28 *Engliſh* miles in circuit) has abundance of Cattel. It is beſet with Hills towards the Sea on every ſide, but within arable, and fit for tillage. The General committed it to the Truſt of Seignior *Loredano*, a Gentleman of *Venice*, with a Garriſon of 700 *Italians*, and others. *Tenedos* deſcribed

Tenedos being now in poſſeſſion of the *Venetians*, we ſet Sail for *Scalimene*, or *Lemnos*, which we found about 6 Leagues diſtant from the other, being Seated directly before the mouth of the Channel, and therefore a Place in which the *Turks* had repoſed great Confidence. This Iſland has ſeverall ſmall Towns upon it, as *Condea*,* *Cochino*, *Palſo* chief Town, and called Epheſtias. Lemnos or Scallimene where ſituated. *which was of old the Bellon.

JUNE. 1650. *Palso Castro*, and others, beside 75 Villages and Hamlets. When we came before the Place in order to lay Siege to it, we found a Fort having 700 men in Garrison; but the *Sou-bassa* hearing that *Tenedos* was already taken in by the *Christian* Armade, and finding himself incapable to defend the Place by reason that all communication was cut off, he desired to treat by Deputies, and without ever a shot surrendred the Fort and Island upon dishonourable Conditions.

Lemnos surrendred upon dishonourable Terms.

Lemnos, or *Scalimene* as it is now called, has *Thracia* on the North, and the Hill *Athon* towards the West, and as we have said, lies not far from *Lemnos*. It is no whit inferior to any Island in the *Ægean* Sea, for a wholsom Air, and a good Soil: it affoards all kind of Grain and Puls, as also Almonds, Oil, Lactuaries, and plenty of Sheep, which for their Wool is no small profit to the Inhabitants: and from hence comes that excellent and usefull * Earth, called *Terra Lemnia*, or *Terra Sigillata*, which is so highly prized by those that profess Physic. The Inhabitants and Peasantry are *Greeks*, which may not live in any fortified Place. In this Island has been a famous Labrynth, whereof the Ruins yet appear in some places. The chief City thereof is called also *Scalimene*, and is indifferent strong. When the General left the Island he constituted a Governour and sent some Ships to cruise through the *Archipelago*, and urge the payment of the Arrearages in the Tributary Places, of which the *Venetians* were now Masters, and light also upon such as were free, for so unhappy are the Islands of *Greece* that they must pay Tribute both to the *Turks* and *Venetians*, which is a great oppression to so poor a People.

Described.

* Georg. Agricola *in his Dialogue of Mettals intitled* Bermannus *gives this relation of that Earth*, Pastillos praeterea ibidem vidi ex eadem urbe portatos coloris fere fulvi, & literis Turcicis signatos quos ob id Terram Sigillatam appellant quinetiam Lemnia illa terra olim imagine capræ signabatur. *And a little afterward he adds this.* Turcæ eam ubique pestis remedium esse asserentes, ita magni æstimant, ut alter alteri muneris loco ipsam donet. *See more also this excellent mineral in* Dioscorides, *and in* Galens 9*th Book of Simples*.

Greece is at this day as fertile as ever, but is greatly deficient of its former Power and Wealth, by the Dominion of the *Turks* and perpetual Wars. As for the People they are very urban and good to converse with. The Customary Habit of the Merchants and Citizens is as follows. They wear on their Heads a long red Cap, with a fold hanging down before, and affect long hair, although some I have seen shorn, and with a Turbant like *Mahometans*. Their Breeches long and narrow demitted to the calf of the leg, and litle red boots above their stockings. Above all a Coat like the *Persians* but without a Girdle. In stead of a Cloak they wear a Coat with long narrow

sleeves

ſleevs hanging down to the middle of the Thighs, which they ſeldome or never put their arms into. The Peaſants alſo wear long red Caps as the Merchants and Citizens, but wide linen or Cotton Breeches like Trouzers. Their *Gentlewomen* wear a white Silk or Cotton Sharf about their Head, hanging over their back and ſhoulders like Nuns. Their Stockings are moſtly ſcarlet and neatly embroyded, their ſhoes with litle handſom heels, and ſometimes for their more eaſy going with ſlaps. Thoſe that are of ability wear a kind of Boddice or waſt-coat of cloth of Gold, and above that an upper-Coat with long Silk ſleeves, this is girded about the middle with Ribbons. Some there are alſo which wear a ſhort ſilk Jacket or Juſticore coming down to the calf of the legs, their ſhifts hanging down 2 palms below that. JUNE. 1656

Being now as we already told you, ſent to collect Tribute, the firſt Iſland we came at was *Pathmos*, the place where the H. Apoſtle *John*, and the beloved Diſciple of our Lord, was confined, or baniſhed to, and where he wrote his *Revelations*. When we went aſhoar, they ſhow'd us a litle Chappel in the clefs of a Rock, which (as the Greeks aſcertain'd to us) was the very place where he ſaw thoſe Heavenly Viſions; as alſo a ſtone which lay above his Bed. This ſtone the Greeks ſell, and make great profit of it, being ſtampt into powder is reputed the beſt Remedy that ever was known, for a Quartan Ague. The City *Pathmos* is founded upon a Hill about the middle of the Iſland, and has within it a very fair Monaſtery with the Tomb of *Chryſolodos* the Founder thereof. The Iſland is both Fruitful, populous and well built, on the Sea-ſide is a litle ſtrong Sconce to defend the place againſt Pyracy, but when they heard of the Overthrow of the *Turks*, did not in the leſt oppoſe themſelves againſt us, being overaw'd by the *Codis*. *Arrival at Pathmos.*

When we had diſpatched at *Pathmos*, we ſteer'd away for *Samos*, which is an Iſland right over againſt the Gulf of *Smirna*, to ſee if we could meet with any *Saiks*, or other *Turkish* Shipping, and according to our expectation met with two rich Prizes, laden with raw Silk, and other precious Commodities. After we had Sail'd to and again 5 or 6 days, we came to *Samos* to demand the Contributions as at other places. When we were arrived in this Road our Commander thought good to ſupply us with Water and other neceſſaries, upon which I and 19 other of our Ships-folk were ſent aſhoar. Ten of our *Samos.* *The Boats ſent aſh oar.*

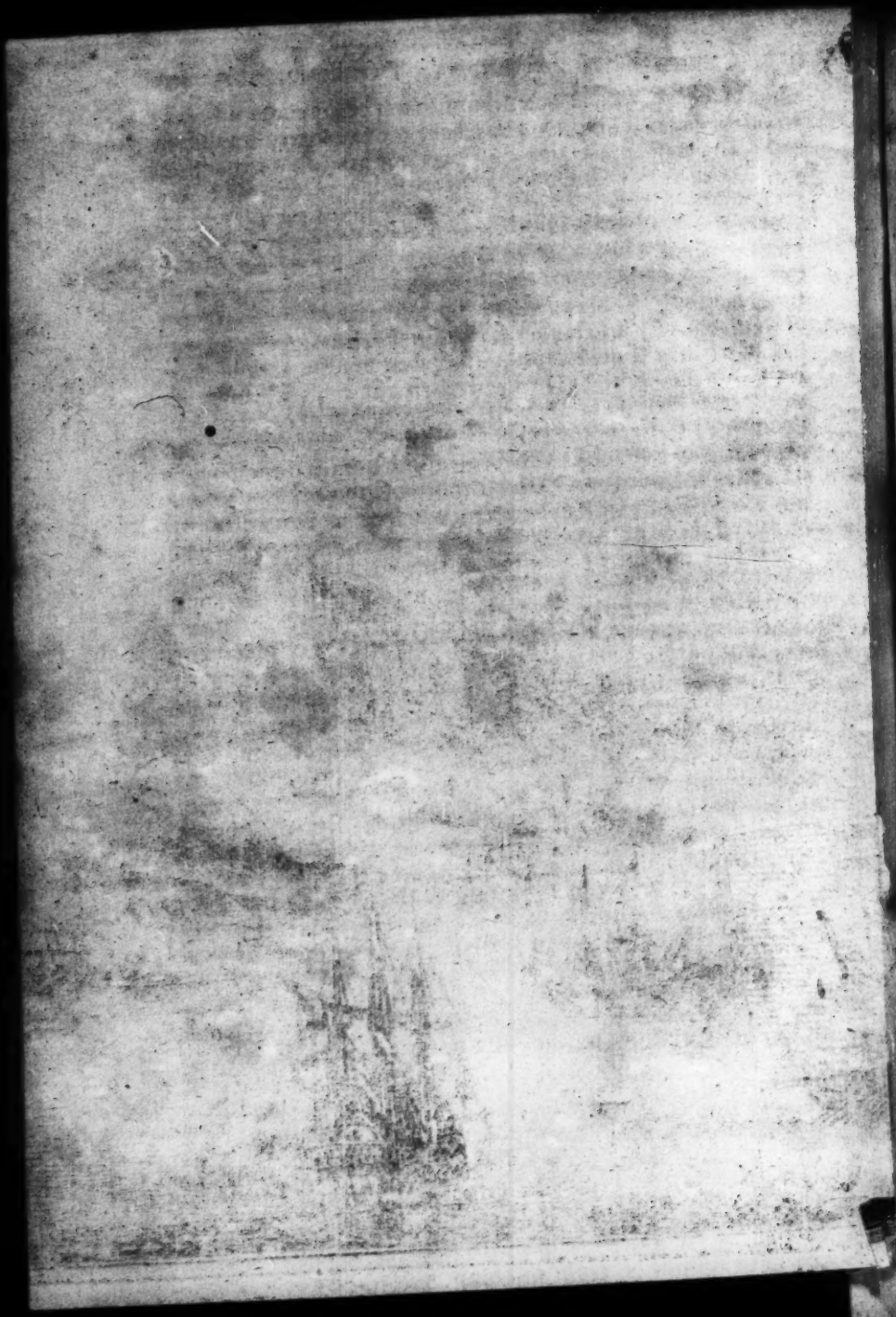
JUNE. 1656. Company were ſent up to the Village to buy Proviſion and Refreſhments, and the reſt, amongſt whom I my ſelf was one, were to take in Water, and manage the Boat. But hardly had we taken in two Boatfulls but we ſaw a Brigandine making toward us, ſtow'd full of Men: whereupon we concluded it was no time to dally, and therefore threw our Things aboard, and betook our ſelvs to rowing as hard as we could drive towards the Ship. But the *Turks* having far more hands than we, and conſequently ſwifter at rowing, came in between us and the Ship, which lay half a *Dutch* League from Land. We then ſeeing litle hopes of getting aboard, wheel'd about and made towards Land; but were as hotly purſued by the *Turks*, and ſeeing the Brigantine within piſtol-ſhot of us aſtern, we jump'd over board and betook our ſelves to running. But when I ſaw that I could not run any longer, I was forced to ſeek a lurching place, for my feet were ſore in running through Thorns and Thiſtles. Our Commander and Folk aboard ſeeing how caſes ſtood, came nearer the ſhoar and ſhot at the Infidels with their Guns from aboard, tho they held not up to purſue us. When I had lay a litle there, I began to peep out, to ſee if the coaſt was clear, but was ſpied by 4 *Turks*, who were hunting after us, and ſeeing no mean to make my eſcape was forced to ſubmit. When they had tied my hands behind my back, as they had done with 6 more of the Company, they dragg'd us away to the Brigadine, where coming aboard we met with more civility from the Captain than we could indeed expect. They were alſo ſo civil to us when they took us that they did not ſo much as take a rag of cloaths from us, for I had then 25 Ducats about me which I ſtill kept. The Captain, who was a perſon of a generous Spirit, and with one compaſſionat, ſeeing us in ſuch diſtreſs and conſternation, ſaid, *Be not grieved for the loſs of your Liberty, for I will not uſe you unkindly, neither ſhall you ſuffer want for any thing, that is needfull if we our ſelves are able to ſupply you.* However he brought us to *Rhodes* where the Plague raged with great violence and conſequently the Slave-market very low, for we could not yield him above 100 Pieces of Eight. But the Captain not willing to part with us at ſo low a price brought us to Great *Scio*, where the *Turkiſh* Armada then lay, thinking ſo to get a better Sum, but found it quite to the contrary: whereupon we pray'd him to ſell us to our own Ship. *Well*, ſaid he, *if your Commander, or your Countreymen will buy you, I am*

The Boat intercepted by the Turks.

The Author and 6 more of the Company taken.







I am content, their money is as good as another's. With this Reſolution we were brought back again to *Samos*, where when we were arrived, ſent a Letter to the Commander, humbly praying him that he would have the goodneſs to redeem us: upon which he made anſwer, "That he was well inclined to do it, but that the Ship was at that "time very ſcarce of Money, and that he could not make up above "1800 Pieces of eight, which if that would redeem us 7, we might "ſtrike a bargain with the Captain. Upon this anſwer we were very glad, and under good hopes of coming out of the Hands of the *Turks*. The Captain of the Brigantine obſerving that we had got an anſwer from aboard, asked us, *What news? will your Commander redeem you or not? Yes*, ſaid one of us, *if you will be reaſonable with us, we ſhall find means to be redeemed, but otherwiſe not.* Hereupon he demanded 2000 Pieces of eight, whereat we ſeemed to be aſtoniſhed, and bad him 800 withall declaring that our Proffer ſeemed more to the matter than his Demands; but he would not ſeem to hearken to that. We then raiſ'd it to 1000 but he told us, That it was but Labour loſt unleſs we bad ſomething more to the purpoſe, and at laſt declared, "That for 1300 we ſhould be redeemed, provided we "would pay him that day, but if not, that the next day he would go "out of Town, and ſell us to thoſe that would bid moſt, be who they "will. We ſeeing it now brought to a good end, and ſenſible of our ability, of performance, took him at the word, leſt ſome other reſolution ſhould take him in the head: and preſently put out a white Flag. The Commander thereupon ſent out a Shallop, which came rowing towards us, till they came within ſpeech of us, and underſtanding the Conditions of Redemption row'd back again to the Ship, to bring us the Money for which we had covenanted with our Patron; upon this we were again Freemen and thanked GOD for his divine bounty towards us. The other men had ſtay'd at *Samos* ſo long in quiet, till they were fetch'd away by the Ships Company when the Brigantine was gone. JUNE. 1656.

The Author and his Companions ranſomed

When we had don, and diſpatched our affairs in the *Archipelago*, we ſet Sail towards *Venice*, tho our Ship was ſo leaky, that we were fain to pump continually, however by the help of GOD we arrived Safe. But by the way were forced to put in at a certain Iſland right over the City *Maddonna*, not daring to truſt our ſelves any longer

at

JUNE. 1656 at Sea, till we had (as well as we then and there were able) ſtop'd ſome of her leaks, which were principally at the Bow. But our Carpenter notwithſtanding all he did, could not ſtop the main leak being in the worſt place it might be in, for no great Nails would hold, inſomuch that the Commander ſet me at work to ſtop it which I did with Sail-cloth 2 or three times folded, and faſtned artificially and firm, for which he gave me a good reward.

CHAP. VII.

The Author admitts himſelf again into the Service of the Venetians. *Arrival at* Corfu *with an account of it's Strength, Bulwarks, Sconces and other Fortifications, near, and about the City. Fertility of the Iſland. Arrival at* Cephalonia, *it's Fertility, Situation and Strength. Arrival at Sante, an accounts of its Strength, its Villages, Scareity of fresh Water. Arrival at* Cerigo: *Situation of that Iſland, Reliques, or Ruins of the Temple of* Venus.

SO ſoon as I had received the Arrears of my Wages at *Venice*, I hired my ſelf again into the *Venetian* Armade for chief-or upper-Sail-maker, the Armade then lying before the *Dardanelli*. We had a Proveditor aboard us, ſo that we put in at all the Tributary Iſlands under the Seigniory of *Venice*, to urge the payment of the Arrearages. And Corfu. in the firſt place *Corfu*, an Iſland lying in the latitude of 34 *deg.* 45 *min.* The City may well be reputed one of the beſt fortified Sea-towns in *Europe*, being encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall and higher than ordinary, built altogether after the modern Fortification, and well furniſhed with great Ordnance. It is moreover ſecured with two Caſtles, or rather Sconces, one towards the Sea barely named, *The Caſtle*, the other on the Land-ſide called, *Caſtello nuovo*, or *New Caſtle*, That Fort which lies towards the Sea is built upon a high Rock, and munited with 3 Walls and 5 Bulwarks, whereof one is built againſt the Sea, and beats off the Floods and Billows. This Sconce, or Fort, has 3 Gates, that on the Weſt is called, *Porta di Caſtrado*, that toward the Sea, *Porta di Mandrahico*, and the third *Porta Real* which is very narrow, and has a Draw-bridge. This Port alſo ſerves for a privat Sally in time of need, and is the place where they goe out at to the other Fort, for they can have communication

and

and aſſiſt each other if attacqu'd, by certain cavernal or ſubterranean paſſages, wrought through the Rocks. They lie about 1000 paces from each other and do not only ſerve for their own Defence, but alſo command the whole Iſland, and that next the Sea of ſuch power that it might over aw the Town, being well provided with all kinds of Ammonition, and Cannon which they caſt themſelves. There a re beſides theſe Sconces ſeveral other Fortifications, and inferior Forts, Seated on high Rocks, and Walls proportionable to the other, encompaſſed alſo with very deep Ditches which receive their Water from the Sea. *Corfu* is alſo of it ſelf very ſtrong and divided into 3 ſeveral Wards as *Spileo*, *Urio nuovo*, and *Spianato*. The high Fortifications have no Fountain Water that is good, and are therefore fain to make uſe of Rain Water which they receive and keep in ciſterns and pits like thoſe of *Amſterdam*: but without the Walls of *Corfu*, is a certain fountain or Well which they call *Cardacchio*, that affoards good Water and very clear. Upon this Iſland ſtand 68 Villages and Hamlets, all reaſonably well peopl'd. The *Venetian* Garriſon as it then appeared by their Muſter-roll conſiſted of 400 light Horſe and 900 Infantry. The Haven is very fair and covenient, and comes to the middle of the Iſland on that ſide which faces the main Continent. On the other ſide lies *Butriato* a noted place for Fiſhing. On this Iſland is much * *Bottarge* made, which is a Diſh prepared of the Roes of Sturgeon, ſalted, dried, and for the longer and better preſervation thereof dipt in Wax. Here is alſo much Oil of Olives, or *Oleum omphacinum* made, and the Vine well cultivated. It is alſo very fruitfull, affoarding plenty of Oranges, Lemmons, Citrons &c. beſides Honey, Wax and Salt for which Commodities this Iſland is very famous abroad.

IUNE. 1657.

* *Which I preſume is either the ſame, or much at one with* Cavear, *or* Ichary *prepared by the* Moſcovians.

From *Corfu* we ſet ſail for *Cephalonia*, where there is only one ſmall City, raiſed on a high ground at the South-end of the Iſland, and well fortified; but the Haven thereto belonging is large and convenient. There appear the Ruins of three other Cities, which are ſaid to be diſmantled upon the continual Jarrs of the Inhabitants amongſt themſelves and at length reduced to ſuch a poor remnant. Beſides this City is a litle Fort, in which they repoſe no ſmall truſt. It is ſituated in the latitude of 38 *degr.* and 29 *min.* and is almoſt of a triangular form. The Eaſt-end faces the Cape of *Ciarenzo*, a Promontory of

Arrival at Cephalonia.

Situation and Form

JUNE 1657. *Morea* or *Peleponeſſus*. The North-point, *Capo Guiſcardo*, confronts with *Staumara*, and the weſt-angle or *Capo Sidro* looks toward the main Continent of *Affrica*: Between this angle and *Ciarenza* which lies to the South-weſt is a large Bay, making a fit Harbour not far from the City *Cephalonia*, called *Argoſtoli*, where a great number of Ships may very commodiouſly ride at anchor. At the entrance of this Gulf is a ſmall Iſland called *Guardiana*, which is fortified with a little Moot or Caſtelet, which they call *Naſſo*. They have great ſcarcity of fresh or ſpring Water in this Iſland, which is nevertheleſs of a rich and fat Soil, and good paſturage for Sheep which there abound. It produceth alſo vaſt quantities of Grain, Wine, Oil, Manna, Wax, Honey, Flax and Silk, beſides the great plenty of Currans, which is the Staple-Commoditie of the Land.

CHAP. VIII.

The Author's arrival at Sante, *or* Xante, *It's admirable Strength, Villages, and great Scarcity of fresh Water. Their Dough for bread kneaded with Wine in ſtead of Water. Arrival at* Cerigo; *Situation of that Iſland. Reliques of the Temple of* Venus. *Arrival at* Candia, *with it's Situation, A Deſcription of the Citie, as to it's Strength, Inhabitants, the moſt eminent Buildings and Churches, Climat, Soil, Vintage, Fruits, Vegetables, Cattel, Fowl, Plenty of Silk and other Commodities, as alſo the modern Habit and Attire of the* Candians. *A Deſcription of* Standia. *The famous Fight between* Lazaro Mocenigo *and the Tributary Auxiliaries of* Atgiers, Tripoli, Theunis *and* Zoëli. *The Fort of* Zouaſchi *taken in by the Proveditor* Mocenigo. *The* Turks *attacque* Tenedos, *but in vain. The* Turkish *Armada come out of the* Dardanelli. *The Beginning of the Ingagement. The* Turkish *Emperour comes with an Army of* 20000 *Horſe, and* 80000 *Foot down to the ſhore, where from a high Tent he ſees the Ingagement. The* Turks *looſe their Poſts, and Sail off. The incomparable valour of* Mocenigo *and* Bembo, *who are unluckily killd by the fall of a Sail-yard. Their Galley blown up with* 400 *Men. The Loſs and Gains on both ſides.*

THe Proveditor which we had aboard not willing to looſe much time, made but ſhort delay at *Cephalonia*, for he had not much time to ſpend according to his Order and Inſtructions to go to the Armade; wherefore after a ſhort aboad we ſet Sail, and ſteer'd away for *Xante*.

Xante

Xante is an Iſland lying in the latitude of 38 *degr.* about 13 [*English*] leagues from *Cephalonia*. On this Iſland is a City conteining about 4000 Houſes, or rather Cottages, without chimneys, that they ſay, is by reaſon of frequent Earthquakes, of which they are in daily jeopardy: but the Muniments as well in reſpect of Site, as Strength are very conſiderable; for the Cittadel is built upon a high Hill, and what by Nature and what by Art, ſeems to be almoſt inacceſſible, well provided alſo with Ordnance and Ammunition of War ſuitable. On this Iſland are ſeveral Capes, the moſt eminent whereof are *Capo del Guardo* on the South, and *Capo de Tiri* on the Eaſt: between which two Capes lies a Commodious Harbour, called *Porto de Chietto*, which has a good Road for Anchorage at 8 fathom Water. *Xante* has 45 Villages and Hamlets whereof the moſt principal lie toward the Sea, to wit, *St. Chietto*, *Littachia*, *Pigalachia*, *Stulicado*, *Saint Nicholo* and *Natte*. The laſt of theſe has a Harbour fit to receive 100 Galleys. In the hilly part of the Iſland are ſeveral Convents, Cloyſters and Religious Houſes of the *Greek* Church, who have alſo a Bishop here as well as the *Romaniſts*, but the *Greeks* exceed the *Italians* in number, and conſequently have their Religion in greater ſplendour. You are no ſooner come ashoar but you are met by a parcel of *Iews*, who shall ask you if you have any money to change. Theſe deal in any contemptible Traffic, but eſpecially in Slaves, when any *Turkish* Saiks, or other Shipping is brought up by *English*, *French* or *Hollanders*.

JUNE, 1657.

Strength of Xante.

Villages

Xante is of a very fertile Soil and fruitfull, in nothing inferiour to *Cephalonia*, yet exceeds it in Quality and Plenty of Wine, but yet ſcarcer of Water, inſomuch that the Inhabitants are ſometimes conſtrained to knead their Dough with Wine, whereof they make their Bread. Here is alſo prepared the delicate *Botarges*, eſpecially in *Iuly* and *Auguſt*, when the Sturgeon comes from the *Archipelago*. The Land is very populous, and all go armed; ſo that when the *Turkish* Corſairs ſend ſome men aſhoar to take Slaves, do frequently change Fates with them: and for that end the *Venetians* maintain 70 or 80 Horſe, day and night to ride about the Coaſt. We alſo brought hither ſome new Infantry to relieve the old.

Fertility of Soil. *Scarcity of Water.* *Dough moiſtned with Wine.*

From Xante we ſail'd to *Cerigo* which lies in 36 *degr.* and 45 *min.* directly over againſt *Capo Saint Angelo*, before the Gulf of *Colochino*;

Arrival at Cerigo

JUNE. 1657. It's Situation. on the other side it has *Candia* about 13 Leagues distant, insomuch that the *Italians* say, *Congo is a good* Corps du guarde *and a Lanthorn for the* Christians *to enter the* Archipelago. On the south-east side is a strong Fort built upon a proclive Rock, and has but one way to enter it. The nether-City is populous enough; and the Inhabitants very diligent in their respective callings. Here they shew'd us the Foundations and Ruins of a famous Temple dedicate to the Goddes *Venus*, in the times of Gentilism. The Land is very hilly, but the Valleys rich and fertile, having one Well of very good Water. The Inhabitants are chiefly *Greeks*, except the Garrisons, and the Governour, who is always a *Venetian* Nobleman.

Ruins of the Temple of Venus.

Candia. From *Cerigo* we set sail for *Candia* the renowned City of *Crete*, which now is also called *Candia*. The Island lies about 47 *degr.* Northerly latitude, and is about 200 *English* land-miles in length, lying almost East and West. It has many Creeks, and abundance of fair Cities, of which the most noted are *Candia*, *Canea*, *Retimo*, *Sitio*, *Apicormo*, *Chyssamo*, *Melipotamo*, *Garahuse*, besides a great number of unwalled Towns, which they say amount to 650, all the inferior Villages and smaller Granges excluded out of the number. The whole Island has been heretofore under subjection of the *Venetians*, but at that time when I was there, the *Turks* were Masters of all except the City *Candia* it self, which was then under the *Venetians* and a few strong Holds as appendences on the Town, which they held (as is universally known) for a considerable time together against the *Ottoman* Forces. The Fortifications have been and are frequently altered, according to the Discretion of the respective Governours: and is from the very first Foundation famous for it's admirable rare Site, and natural strength. It lies in a fair flat Countrey: the East and North Angles fronting the Sea. Upon that Angle which lies to the northward was an impregnable Fort or Castle, which had not only all the Fortifications that could be thought usefull, or any way advantageous for the Town, but also the Sea for a further strength, which encompassed it as a Mote. The same Castle has not only the Command of the Haven, but also the Sea on both the right and left side. Between this Castle and the City was a Wall of 20 foot broad, on which the Soldiers marched, from the one to the other. Besides this the Town was munited with divers Ramparts, Bulwarks and other Fortifications with-

Strength of Candia.

without; that it ſeemed to me at that time, and ſince, the greateſt folly in the World, for the *Turks* to ſpend ſo much Treaſure and looſe ſo many of their beſt Soldiery in ſuch a long Siege, and ſo little hopes or encouragement of taking it in; although at laſt they are become Maſters of it. The Citizens are *Greeks*, as are moſt of the Inhabitants throughout the whole Iſland; but the Garriſons and Gentry, *Venetians*; beſides a great Concurrency of Strangers from all parts of the *Levant*, which make the City very populous. The moſt eminent Buildings, are the Pallace of the General, that of the Biſhop, which for its Antiquity and magnificent work is well worth ſeeing, the Pallaces of ſeveral Noblemen, and the Churches, which are 8 in number, to wit, *St Mark*, *St Francis*, *St Paul*, *St George*, *St Mary*, *St Catharine*, *St Rochus* and *St Titus* amongſt which the firſt is the Cathedral. The *Greeks* have alſo their Churches, but thoſe ſo mean, that the beſt which is allowed them is much inferior to the pooreſt of thoſe which the *Romans* reſerve for their own uſe. Beſides theſe there is not much in the City worth Obſervation. As to the long Siege and Storming of this City 't were needleſs for me to give you any account, ſince it has been from the very beginning traced along, and fully written by others. JUNE. 1657.

The Air of *Candia* is temperate enough, but on that ſide facing *Affrica* is ſomething hot, and rendred unwholſom by ſoutherly Winds: for which reaſon moſt of the Towns are built on that ſide of the Iſland which lies next to the *Archipelago*. The Soil is exceeding good, and all kinds of Grain and Pulſe take kindly well, inſomuch that ſometimes, one piece of ground affoards two Crops in one year. Yet the Inhabitants are more inclinable to the planting and cherishing of the Vine, which they cultivate with all imaginable diligence, that being far more profitable than the propagation of Grain and other Husbandry, their Malmſey, Red and white Wines being exported every where, and reputed the beſt that Earth can produce. But they have two ſorts of Malevaiſe or Malmſey, differing greatly both in taſt and quality: the better ſort is that which grows about *Retimo*, that they boil ſo ſoon as the Grape is ripe, and are very curious in the preparation and ordering of it; but that about *Candia* and *Canea*, but ordinary, for there they let the Grapes be rath ripe before they pluck' em, and therefore boil them not: but the Wine that comes *Climat.* *Soil.* *Vintage.*

JUNE. 1657. from them has a kind of ſlimy matter in it of which it, is not to be purified. Here I have ſeen the Wine-ſtocks grow thicker, than any where elſe, which is a great Argument of the excellent Soil, with which this Iſland is bleſſed; and beſides that the vaſt bigneſs of the Bunches, weighing moſtly 8 or 10 pound a piece, and thoſe ſo delicate that after I had once taſted of theſe could not for ſome years after ſo much as taſt the *Spaniſh*. And not only Grapes, but alſo every other fruit the Land affoards is paſſing good and delicate, inſomuch that not only the *Turkiſh* Emperour but all the Princes and Potentates near this Iſland have their Fruits from hence for Table uſe and Banquet. Whole Groves and Woods I have ſeen ſeveral Leagues in compaſs, having little or nothing but Trees bearing the beſt kinds of Fruit, as Citrons, Pomegranates, Oranges, Apricocks, Figs, Almonds, Olives and many ſorts of Apples, Pears, and Nuts. Cypreſs wood is in this noble Iſland in greater plenty than in *Cypres* it ſelf, which they do not only uſe for Timber, which gives a very amiable ſmell, but alſo for Fewel. The Common paſturage which the Inhabitants neither uſe for Grain nor the Vine, is all grown over with Roſemary, Thyme, Camomile, *Abroton*, or Southern Wood, and other Herbs which the Apothecaries uſe. Nay, the very Weeds which with us have no ſent, affoard here a moſt amiable flavour, for which *Candia* is often called an Earthly Paradiſe. All kind of Cattel like well, eſpecially Sheep and Goats which run together in incredible Flocks. Hares, Coneys, Heath-hens and Partridges abound here. The Woods and Hills are ſtored with 3 or 4 ſorts of Deer, and the Rivers with Fish. The Honey which *Candy* affoards is preferred before all other in the World, and that by reaſon of the abundance of Thyme and other choice Herbs; as alſo the various Bloſſoms of Pomgranats, Citrons, Oranges, &c. and conſequently Wax is a great Commodity amongſt them. The Land 'tis true affoards not only Salt and Lactuaries for the Inhabitants themſelves, but alſo for the neighbouring Iſlands in the *Archipelago*, whence they draw conſiderable profit. But far greater profit they have from their Silk, for Mulberries grow here in vaſt plentie, of which every School-lad knows the Silk-worm is fed and nouriſhed. Cotton, Wool, Honey, Wine, Vinegar and Fruits are exported hence to every Maritim Countrey in *Europe*.

Huge and delicate Grapes.

Vaſt plenty of Fruit. And of Cypreſs Wood.

Cattel and Fowl Wild and Tame.

Fish.

As

As for the *Candians* (or * *Cretians*) they are naturally inclined to Lazineſs, and more addicted to vouluptuous lives than their neighbours; They are alſo great affecters of a glaſs of Wine, yet not ſo eaſily ſubdued, as the Phlegmatic *Hollanders*. As for their Habit, thoſe that are of the beſt quality ape the *Venetians*, the vulgar ſort and Peſantry retain ſtill the old *Greekish* mode, only their heads are for the moſt part ſhaved, which to ſupply they wear a thin Silk vail, about the breadth of an ordinary handkercheif, and above that a great, heavy hat.

JUNE 1657

* *Which St Paul ſeem'd to take notice of in his Epiſtle to Titus Biſhop of Crete, citing that of Epimenides.* Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί. *Sec. Tit. 1. 12.*

Our Proveditor having finiſhed his Charge at *Candy*, we ſet ſail and ſteer'd away for *Standia* an Iſland, lying about 2 or 3 Leagues from the North-coaſt, but not inhabited; However the *Venetians* in their ordinary Courſe and Traverſe through the *Archipelago* put in here, becauſe of it's commodious Road or Bay; and therefore uſed as a Rendevouz for the benefit of Communication. After we had lay at anchor a few days we weighed and ſail'd with the whole Fleet for the *Dardanelli* to give the *Turks* battail: But I muſt mind you, how that by the way we met with a Squadron of Ships, which were ſent by thoſe of *Argiers*, *Tripoli*, *Thunis* and *Zoile*, for the Aſſiſtance of the *Turkish* Armada. So ſoon as we had got ſight of them, we put out *Turkish* Colours and hover'd a little, that they might come up to us; which they ſeeing made all the Sail they poſſibly could, till they came near us, at what time they began to ſuſpect that they had got a wrong Sow by the tail, and ſo indeavoured to go off: but *Lazaro Mocenigo*, the General ſeeing them ſteer to the ſtarboard, made towards them, and coming within Cannon ſhot fired a Gun, which did ſo diſorder them, that they thought better to ſtay together in one entire Fleet and try their valour, than to break their Squadron, and accordingly put themſelves in a convenient Poſture, in order to receive Battel. Upon this fell a very hot Ingagement: which laſted more than a full Watch; by which time the *Venetians* had taken and ſunk 4 Ships, 3 whereof were of their firſt Rate, and the remainder being 12 in all, were fain to betake themſelves to the *Turkish* Havens, but were ſo diſabled that they were not in a long time fit either for Sailing or Service. After this fortunate Enterpriſe, the General ſail'd directly for *Zouaſchi*, being a ſtrong and well fortified Sea-Town, and a Neſt of *Turkish* Pyrats, lying on the coaſt of *Anatolia*: which after a ſhort attacque we took

Standia a ſmall Iſland not inhabited.

Lazaro Mocenigo fights the Argierines Tripoſezes, &c.

Takes in Zouaſch

JUNE 1657. took in and plundered. From hence we departed for *Tenedos* where to our great Joy we had the report, which we heard before our departure from *Veniee* confirmed; which was, That the *Turks* were sadly foil'd in in their attacquing of that Island, which we had taken in not long before (as was said Pag 91) The Sum of the Attacque was after this manner. When the *Turks* had got notice that *Tenedos* was surrendred to the *Venetians*, they sent a Fleet consisting of 33 Galleys, 3 Galeasses and several Brigantines to retake it, where so soon as the said Fleet was arrived they lay Siege to the Castles both by Water and by Land, but were at last fain to remove the Siege, leaving some Hundreds of Dead behind them upon the Island, besides all the damage which the Fleet received, who also according to the relation given us must necessarily have many Dead and Wounded. When they had drawn off the Siege and imbarqued their Land-forces, the Weather grew very tempestuous, and the Sea boistrous high, insomuch that 3 Galleys and 4 Saiks were cast away and few of the men saved.

Tenedos besieged by the Turks.

July. *The Turkish Armada comes out of the Dardanelli.* *The Ingagement*

Four moneths long we tarried at *Tenedos* before the Infidel Armade came out, which happened on the 27 of *July*. Their Fleet consisted of 33 Galleys (amongst which was one of an unwonted greatness called the *Royalio*) 9 Maons, 22 Ships and 150 Saiks, with a huge number of Soldiers and Marriners. At the Approachment the *Turks* weather'd us and kept to the Windward, and indeavoured to break our Order, but the *Venetians* to get the Advantage of the Wind, tacked and turned so long that they brought the *Turks* to the Lee-ward, which having gain'd they fell upon the Enemy very hot, and with the dawning of the day made the *Turks* yield their Posts and betake themselves to the Cape of *Troy*, upon which the Fight ceased till the next morning, when the Ingagement held on sharper and heavier than the day before. The *Turks* for a while had the advantage of the Wind, which nevertheless turned against them, as it did the year before, about the same place (mentioned Pag. 75) Meanwhile * *Oon* then *Primo Vizier* of the *Turkish* Empire, came down to secure the Strand, with an Army of 20000 Cavalry and 80 Thousand Foot, and set down near *Troy*, where he had caused two Sconces to be made, as well as the shortness of this Warning would allow. The *Maltheezes* were the first that drew on to give battel, and so seconded by the *Venetians*. The *Ottoman* Armada knowing that the Emperour was himself

* *Who was afterward strangled by a Sicilian. Gentlemen.*

himſelf a Spectator (who together with the *Primo Vizier*, ſtood upon a high Tent made on purpoſe) behaved themſelves admirably well. However the *Venetians* (without reſpect to the Land Forces which battered them heavily with their Cannon) came ſo cloſe to the Enemies Fleet, and withall ply'd their Guns ſo rank that they ſtranded ſeveral of their Galleys, upon which the Men ſtept aſhoar and joyn'd themſelves to the Land Army. The *Primo Vizier* ſeeing the Fleet continually looſe men, partly by their forſaking the Navy, and partly by the great Slaughter aboard the Shipping, uſed his utmoſt diligence to ſtop the Deſerters, and recruit the Naval Army, but all to little advantage; for the Chriſtians purſued their Enterprize with ſuch an ardency and vigour, that they prevented them: and not to be ſlack when ſuch an apt occaſion preſented, fired and ſunk a conſiderable number of the Galleys and Saiks, the *Turks* ſtill retiring further and further towards the Coaſt. And ſuch was the Zeal of the renowned *Mocenigo*, when he ſaw them cloſe to the Coaſt, he made an intercourſe with 3 Ships and 5 Galleys, to fetch them off, that he made himſelf an unavoidable ſcope for the Enemies Cannon at Land, which was ſo tended againſt his Galley that ſhe took Fire, and himſelf with the valorous *Marco Bembo* Admiral of the Ships, both killed with the fall of a Yard, upon which of an inſtant the Galley was blown up with 400 Souls aboard. This fatal miſchance was ſeconded by another, which was a Galley that ſank outright. This was all the loſs that the *Venetians* ſuffered, as to Shipping in general. The *Turks* loſt 6 Galleys, 4 Ships, 4 Mahons and 50 Saiks. The reſt drew off indeavouring to conjoin with the Land-forces where the Proveditor *Badoer*, who by due courſe and reverſion carried the Standard of *S. Mark*, gave them an egregious blow, and ſunk, burn'd and and took ſeveral Galleys and Saiks; which ended, the *Venetians* ſet ſail for *Tenedos*, where they repair'd their damages. The *Turks* according to their own confeſſion loſt between 8 and 9 Thouſand Men beſide 600 and odd Captives, amongſt whom was an eminent *Bashaw*, and delivered 567 *Chriſtian* Slaves.

JULY. 1657. *The Grand Scignior comes to See the Fight.*

The bold attempt of Mocenigo and Bembo in which they are both kill'd.

CHAP. IX.

The Venetian *Armade appear before* Napoli di Malvazia, *where they attacque a Redoubt, which is ſurrendred. The City treats with the Governour. The Fleet appears before* Santorini; *2 terrible Earthquakes: Wine good and cheap. The Author ſent ashoar to buy Proviſion. The Fleet under Sail. The* Turks *come upon the Iſland, & the Author in danger of being made Slave; hidden by the* Greeks, *and brought* Embro *to with a Barque. Arrival before* Nicſia, *The Ruins of Apollos Temple. Arrival at* Metelino, *it's Situation and Strength; plenty of Marble, Cypres wood, Wine, and Cattel.* Nicſia *the Winter-haven for the* Turkish *Galleys.* S. Georgia de Scyro. Delos: *Reliques and Ruins of Heathenish Temples and Images of* Apollo, Minerva *and* Diana. *The Caſtle of* Tenos *blown up with it's own Powder. The Iſland* Milo, *it's Situation, Strength, Harbours, Inhabitants, Religion, ſtore of Proviſion and Victuals. The Ship* De Princes, *ſprings a leak. The Author goes aboard a Privateer, leaves her and goes for* Holland.

IVLY. 1658.

AFter we had repaired our Dammages, caulked and trimmed our Ships and Galleys, refreſhed and ſupplied our ſelves with neceſſaries, we left *Tenedos*, and came before *Napoli di Malvazia* with our whole Fleet, conſiſting of 36 Ships of War, 6 great Galeaſſes, and 40 Galleys; ſome of which laſt belonged to *Rome*, and others to *Maltha*.

Arrival of the Fleet before Napoli di Malvazia.

Napoli di Malvazia is a City ſituate in the Bay of *Morea*, right over againſt *Canea*, on a barren Rock, cloſe to the main Continent, to which it is annexed with a ſtone-bridge, upon that was a ſtrong Redoubt, fortified with 12 large Braſs Guns, which ſtood very well for the ſafeguard of the Town, and ſerved in place of a Cittadel. Our General immediately gave order to approach the ſaid Redoubt with our Galeaſſes, and break it with our Cannon; which was accordingly done. The whole day we lay battering it on both ſides, with a ſtrenuous reſolution, till towards night the Soldiery within ſaw that they could not hold out any longer to defend themſelves, left the Fortlet, and retreated into the Town; which we perceiving ſcaled the Walls and took away the Ordnance. The reſt of the Ships and Galleys drew up cloſe to the Kay, where the Ordnance (from the Top of a Rock where they were placed, and in which they repoſe their main Truſt) could do us no miſchief, for they ever ſhot beyond us. When

The Redoubt battered,

and ſcaled.

we

we had made a great Breach through the Wall, the General gave Charge that the Soldiers, with the help of ſome of the Marriners ſhould ſtorm the Town that night. Upon this mandate all the beſt and moſt reſolute Seamen joyntly with the Soldiery, went aſhoar and entered the City, but the Governour ſenſible, that the Redoubt was diſabled, the Bridge broken down, Communication hindred on the Land ſide, the whole Fleet before the Town on the Water-ſide, our Men in the City, the Garriſon ſcarce of Men, and ſummarily not in a capacity to defend himſelf, at laſt puts out a white Flag, and ſo treated with the General: but what the ſum or purport of that Treaty was, we could not learn, for the matter was held privy; and whether the General had betray'd his Truſt, in making of a diſavantageous Covenant for lucres ſake, or ſome other ſtrange affair occurr'd at that time, I cannot reſolve my Reader; certain I am that a Truce was made between them, for we fired not a Gun after the Deputy left the Ship. It ſeemed to us no ſmall wonder, that ſo brave an Enterprize ſhould be abandoned at ſuch a rate, without ſo much as repairing the loſs, that the Common-wealth ſuffered in this ſhort Attacque, eſpecially, that being one of the moſt eminent and abſolutely the moſt convenient Place for an *Aſylum*, or refuge, upon occaſion: and not only commands all the maritim Towns of *Canea*, but is likewiſe the only Magazine of the whole Land, through which all Wares and Merchandiſes are tranſmitted, coming from Sea; and is in ſhort the Key of that Gulf. But this is a Chapter too hard for me to read, and the myſteries of ſuch Politicians are ſometimes ſo abſtruſe, as every head cannot penetrate or unriddle. July 1657.

When we had removed the Siege of *Napoli di Malvazia*, we ſet ſail for *Zantorini*, which is a fertile Iſland, but ſubject to Earth-quakes and influence of Meteors. In the year of Grace 1507 happened a dreadfull Earth-quake, which deſtroyed one Moyety of the Place, and ſubverted all the Strand-countrey: and afterwards in the year 1653 happened another, which deſtroyed another Mediety, or half of what was left, at what time not only Men and Beaſts, but alſo whole Mountains and Villages were waſhed away with the inundation of the Sea. There are at this day many of the Inhabitants which are ſtrucken blind with Lightning. It is bad coming to anchor about this Iſland, by reaſon of the ſteepneſs near the Coaſt, having within a Zantorini.

JULY. 1657. Piſtol-ſhot from the ſhoar upwards of 70 or 80 fathom Water. Here is the Staple for Cotton-ſtockings, which are fine and very well woven, and ſo cheap that you may buy them at 6d a pair ſingle. Wine is here likewiſe incredibly cheap and good, being ſold at half a Piece of eight the *Bariglia*, and all kinds of Proviſion proportionably. This moved our Commander to ſend me aſhoar to buy ſome Sheep and Wine, and accordingly I went to a Village that was about two miles from the Fleet, where I was no ſooner arrived but I heard the Admiral fire a Gun, at which I was mainly perplex'd, for I knew by that, that the Fleet was ready to depart, and ran as faſt as ever I could towards the ſhoar: but before I could come there, they were under ſail. When I ſaw that there was no hopes to get to the Fleet, I turned back, but not without fear of being taken, knowing that this Iſland was but 3 or 4 leagues from *Scio*, and that it was often viſited by the *Turks*. After I had been here 4 days and as many nights, came 2 *Turkiſh* Brigantines to receive Contribution-money, which I underſtanding ran into the Woods to hide my ſelf, but it ſeems one Pick-thank or other had told them that a *Venetian* was left aſhoar (perhaps to excuſe them of their *Quota*) they began to make inquiry after me; and would needs inſiſt upon the *Greeks* to be reſponſible for me; they told them that I had made my eſcape by night in a Barque; which nevertheleſs would not pacifie them till they had dawbed the Captain in the Fiſt, which cloſed his Eies and ſhut his Mouth effectually. So ſoon as the Brigantines were out of ſight, the *Greeks* fearing ſome trouble might enſue, brought me with a Barque to *Embro*, where the *Venetian* Fleet lay, and gave me my Proviſion aboard with me which I had bought for 32 Rix-dollars. Upon my arrival the Commander gave them 2 Pieces of eight for their pains, and glad he was to receive me ſo, and they no leſs joyfull to be rid of me; for the *Turks* had already taken a Civil Magiſtrate of the *Greeks* into cuſtody, with his Son being but a child, who might upon my being found there, after they had denied me, have had hard meſure; and they nevertheleſs forced to deliver me up at laſt; which if they had, the Admiral of the *Venetians* would have plundered the Town, and taken them all for Slaves; ſo that theſe poor People are in a worſe and a more pitifull ſtate under both, than they would be, if they were entirely under one.

* *Which is a meaſure containing about 6 quarts leſs than half a Hogs-head.*

While we lay before *Embro*, the Fleet was divided into two parts, and

and ſent for the reſpective Iſlands to get in the Contributions: the one part went for *Stampalia*, or *Aſtypalæa*, which is one of the *Cyclades*, and from thence to *Nicſia*, an Iſland about 7 *Dutch* leagues in length, and as many in breadth, for it is almoſt four Square: the North-ſide is montanous, but towards the South flat and arable. On this Iſland are ſeveral Reliques of Gentiliſm and Idolatry; and amongſt thoſe a famous Temple, in times paſt ſacred to *Apollo*, now dedicate to *S. Salvador*. On the South we ſaw the Ruins of another Temple, built alſo to the Honour of *Apollo*. The Inhabitants are *Greeks*, *Jews* and *Turks*, who are ſedulous Planters and Cultivaters of the Vine, the land anſwering their Induſtry with a fertile Soil. The City which is called alſo by the name of *Nicſia*, lies on the Eaſt-ſide of the Iſland, having a very fair and commodious Haven, preſenting for all Winds, and fit to contain Ships of the greateſt burthen. Here is found a kind of black ſtone which is held in great eſteem, not much unlike the vulgar Touch-ſtone, called by the *Italians*, *Smeriglio*.

JULY 1657

Arrival at Nicſia.

Ruins of Apollo's *Temple.*

In our Courſe through the *Ægean* Sea we touched at *Parus*, *Lero*, *Embroa*, *Pſyra*, and viſited *Metellino*, where I had been the year before, and was tranſported thence to the *Venetian* Armada, in a *Candian* Tartan, making by the way a good booty, as you will find more amply related in Pag. 76 *&* *ſeqq.* but now I found better opportunity and leiſure to take notice of the Iſland than before. *Metellino* lies in 48 *degr.* near the main Continent of *Greece*, and from the neareſt point hardly 3 *English* leagues diſtant. The City which alſo bears the ſame name, is ſituated on the North-weſt ſide of the Iſland, fortified with a Caſtle that commands 2 Havens, and is called *Moliva*.

Arrival at Metellino, *or* Mytilene

There are beſides this ſeveral ſtrong Holds and fortified Places throughout the whole Iſland. The South-and North-ſides are Champain Land; but the Eaſt and Weſt for the moſt part hilly and montanous, affoarding rich Quarries of white and black Marble; and about the Center of the Land it is woody, and moſtly grown over with Cypres Trees. The arable part of the Land which is tilled, is of a good Soil, and affoards plenty of Corn, of which they make two Sorts of bread, the one they call *Trachana* and the other *Bouchourt*, either of which is more durable than our Ship Biſcake. They make an excellent ſort of red Wine, which the *Turks*, notwithſtanding the voice of their *Alchoran*, greatly covet and ſwallow when they can have

July. 1657. *Good ſtore of Cattel.* it. The Paſtures ſwarm with all kinds of Cattel both great and ſmall, in which, by reaſon of their very great abundance, they hold commerce with the Iſlands of the *Ægean* Sea; but eſpecially in a breed of ſmall Horſe they have, which are in good eſteem abroad.

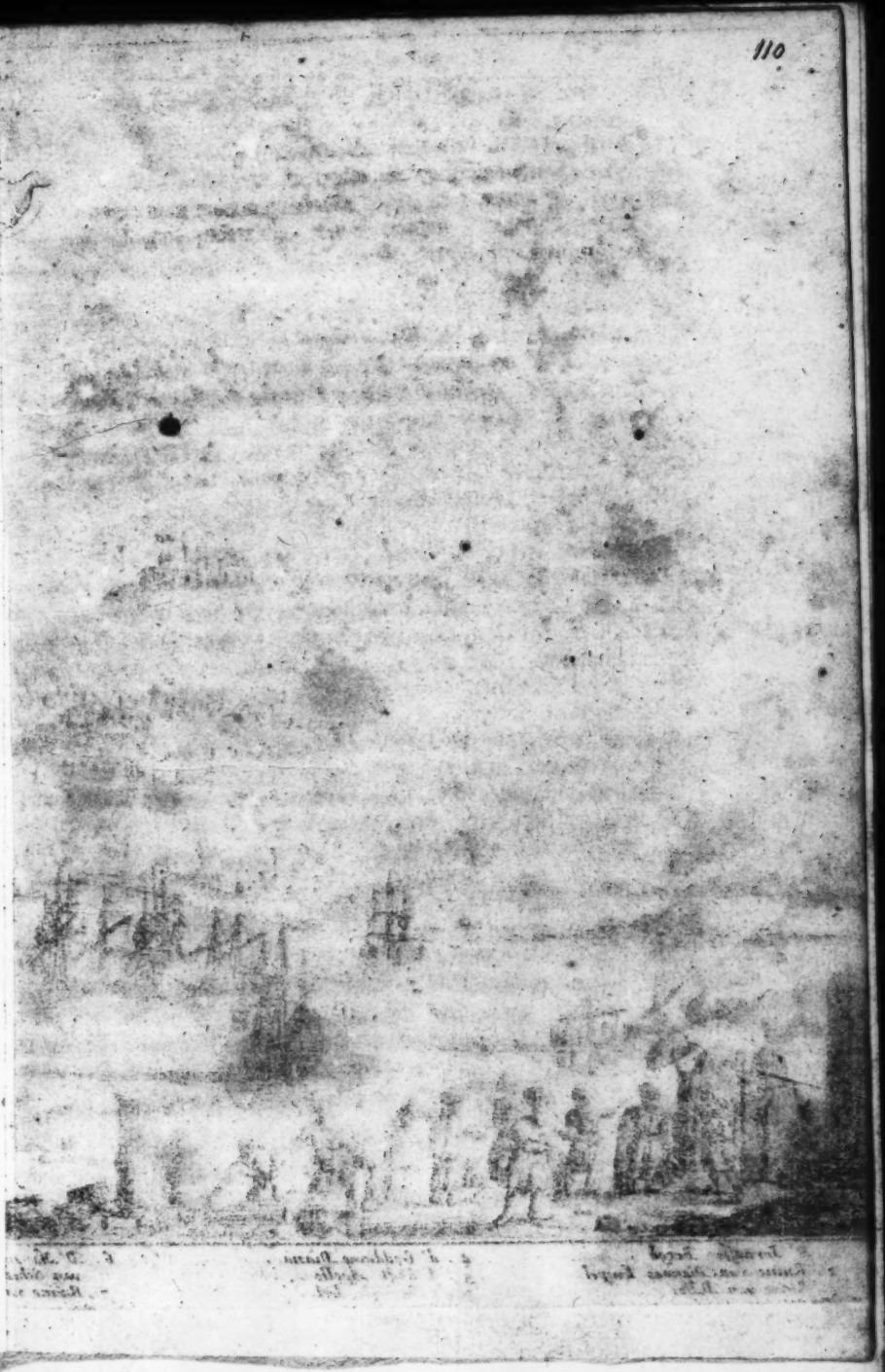
After we had done our affairs at *Mytilene* we went for great *Scio* but being by the way warned of ſome Fiſhermen, that the *Turks* had landed a great number of Soldiery there, we ſail'd paſt the Iſland, and put in at *S. Giorgio di Scyro* which is a ſmall Iſland lying in 47 *degr.* 23 *min.* being almoſt of a triangular form, where the Inhabitants follow the Vineyard. Leaving *Scyro*, we ſail'd directly for *Delos*, which now for the moſt part goes by the name of *Sdilly* and lies in the latitude of 47 *degr.* The Iſland is at preſent of no great note: only that it is viſited by the curious in Antiquities. Here we found many Ruins of Temples, and Altars, ſacred to Heatheniſh Deities, and the Image of *Apollo*, which is in two pieces, whereof (as the Greeks told us) the *Engliſh* ſaw'd off the Head, and carried it away. But ſo much as remains of it I have drawn, as may be ſeen in the Print. There appear yet the Ruins of 3 Temples more, to wit, of *Apollo*, *Minerva* and *Diana*, beſides ſeveral pieces of Marble and Alabaſtre, in various figures of Animals, as Lions, Leopards, and the like. Here are alſo many Quarries of a rich ſort of Marble, and various kinds of Alabaſtre. Proviſion may be had at very eaſy rates, Hares and Coneys are for their plenty held in diſeſteem by the Inhabitants. Agriculture is a thing quite out of uſe, but the greateſt profit it yields the *Venetians* is the conveniency of the Haven, which ſerves them for a Rendevouz.

Scyro.

Delos.

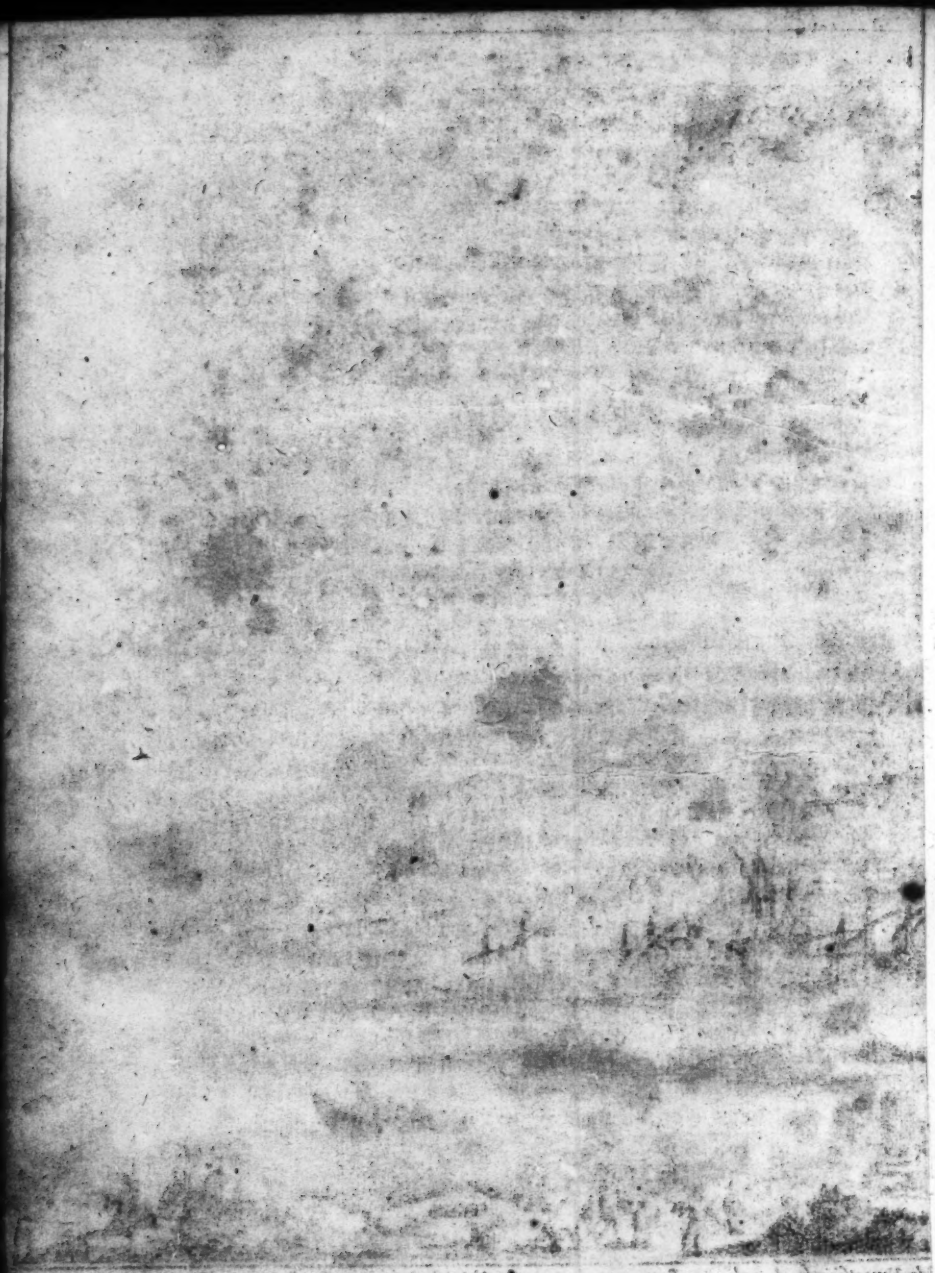
The Caſtle of Tenos blown up with it's own Powder. Between *Delos* and *Andros* lies the Iſland *Tenos*, where there is a Caſtle built upon a high Hill, that ſeems of it ſelf ſufficient enough to defend the whole Iſland. In the year 1656 was the greateſt part of this Caſtle blown up with its own Powder by Lightning, at what time, I was in the Fleet not far from *Delos*, and ſaw it. I beleeve alſo that a great part of this Iſland is overflown with the Inundation of the Sea, as *Zantorini*, or rather ſunk: for when we came to anchor at 26 fathom Water, we wrought all we could to weigh, but thought verily that the Cable would break before any anchor would looſe; at laſt it was reſolved to try once more for the laſt, and if it would not then come, to cut the Cable, but at laſt the anchor came, bringing a great

peece









peece of a Wall with it. In the Gentile age was a Bath at *Tenos*, where every one of what rank or quality ſoever he was, muſt waſh himſelf, or otherwiſe, it was not lawfull for him to enter the Temples of *Apollo*, *Minerva*, or *Diana*. *Tenos* is of it ſelf fruitfull enough and would produce more grain than indeed it does, if the Inhabitants were inclined to that Tillage, but they find more profit in Silk, having large Woods of Mulbeery Trees, ſo that this Iſland is the chief place for Silk Stockings in the *Levant*. IULY. 1668.

After we had ſtaid a few daies at *Tenos*, we ſet ſail further up, and by the way put in at *Milo*. Which lies in 37 *degr.* and 21 *min.* It is in length about 7 Leagues, tending North and South. Amongſt the many convenient Havens it hath, there is one on the Weſtern coaſt, where Ships may ride in the hardeſt weather that is, without either Anchor or Horſer. The Villages on this Iſland are very neat and cloſe built; and is alſo fortified with two ſtrong Holds which command the Sea on each ſide the Iſland. The Inhabitants are ſome of the *Greek* church, but ſpeak moſt *Italian*, for that it is much frequented by the *Venetians*, and other *Italians* of whom the Women of this Iſland (as they ſay) learn the Language between Sheets, which their wanton deportment ſeems to verify. Common fame gives *Milo* the bell for able Sea-men and Fiſhers, who for both thoſe faculties do the *Venetians* no ſmall ſervice. And here is the prime place for the Armada to Water at, where they alſo generally provide themſelves with Bread, Oil, Salt, Wine and Vinegar. There is alſo much Honey found in this Iſland, but wild, in the Rocks and Hollow-Trees. *Milo, it's Situation* *Havens,* *Villages,* *Strength.* *And Religion of the Inhabitants.*

Thus Traverſing to and again, to and from the Iſlands, our Ship, *The Princes*, grew very leaky, ſo that we were affraid, that if we ſhould be taken in a Tempeſt ſhe would not hold out, which our Mate obſerving, willed the Commander to acquaint the Admiral with her Condition, which he did; and thereupon we were diſmiſſ'd, and the *Venetians* aboard us received order to go aboard other Ships. Having taken our leave of the Fleet with a Gun or 2, we ſpeeded us for *Venice*, where not without much difficulty we arrived. Here I took my leave of the Ships-folk, and went into a Privateer called the *St. Iohn*, which was firſt intended for *Legorn*: but by the way underſtanding that our Captain, whoſe name was *Herman Been* had 3 Commiſſions and went for a General Caper, I took my leave of the Gent-

JULY 1657. Gentleman, ſo ſoon as we arrived at *Leghorn*; the more becauſe he had already made a beginning, and converted the Goods intruſted him by ſome Merchants into a Prize and Booty, thought it therefore beſt to leave him betimes, leſt I ſhould be brought with him to pay the ſhot. The Captain ſeeing that others, with me, were reſolved to leave the Friggat, and ſo conſequently, he in danger of being betray'd, and to be called to an account for his Villany, begins to ſet ſail, but by an Order from the Duke, the Ship was arreſted at the inſtance of *Captain W. van der Saar*, and *Capt. de Wilde* who then lay at anchor in that Haven. The Ship was brought up and chain'd, the Ships-folk ſet free, and the Captain himſelf committed to Cuſtody, where for ſome time he remained: till afterward coming for *Holland* was taken Priſoner; but what became of his Friggat I could never come to hear. After I had been at *Leghorn* 2 or 3 days, I hired my ſelf aboard *Mr. Peter Veldmuys*; with whom, after many perillous adventures, I returned home to my native Countrey.

THE

THE THIRD VOYAGE of JOHN STRUYS.

CHAP. I.

The Author undertakes his Third Voyage for Moscovia. *The Names of the Officers and others employed with him on that Journey and Voyage. Their Difficulties in going out. Arrival at* Riga, *with a Description of the Town, and their Departure from thence. The Nature of the* Lifelanders *their Houses, Customes, Condition, Religion, and quaint form of an Oath. Arrival at* Wolmar, *with a Description thereof. Their difficult Travels through* Lifeland.

THus by Divine Preservation I arrived in my own Country, after the exposal of my Body to so many Jeopardies and Perils, and now began to weigh the great Felicity of a settled life, and the many Dangers which attend such a manner of Living as I had unadvisedly made choice of, to the great discontent of my Friends and Alliance: I therefore purposed with a new Resolution to follow my honest Vocation at home, and enjoy that Tranquility of Body and Mind, which I then preferred in my Thoughts beyond a restless and disquiet Wandring abroad. Pursuant to this my Intention I married after I had been about 6 Moneths at home, and so continued in that state, for the term of 10 years during which time I found but poor advancement in my Fortune, and mean Products of so many years hard labour and toil; so that I resolved to take the very first oppor- SEPT. 1668.

SEPT. 1668. tunity I met with to ſee what was reſerved for me in the Cabinet of Chance abroad. and,

In the year 1668, I came to underſtand that ſome Gentlemen were ſent from the *Czar* of *Moſcovy* to *Amſterdam*, to take on men into the ſervice of the Emperour, for equipping ſome Ships in the *Caſpian* Sea, and ſo to promote the Trade between *Moſcovia* and *Perſia*, by Shipping of his own, which otherwiſe till then was done by *Perſians*, *Tartars* and other Nations, and that moſtly by Land, from whence aroſe many Difficulties by Robberies and the like. The Conditions upon which they were taken on liked me very well, upon which I applied my ſelf to Mr. *David Butler* who was to be our Leader, and to conduct us to *Moſcovia*. After I had treated with him a litle upon what Terms I did deſire to go; we made an Agreement for 75 gilders *per* Moneth, for which I was to ſerve as Sail-maker, and to make up all the Sail-work for a new Ship and a Yacht, which was newly built in *Ruſſia*. The Fore-maſt Men had 50 gilders *per* Moneth allow'd them, their Boardwages included, which was 15 gilders.

The Names of thoſe that went, were

David Butler of *Amſterdam*, Captain.
Lambert Helt, Maſter.
William Klopper, Firſt-Mate and Carpenter.
Iohn Alberts, Second-Mate.
Peter Bartelſz, Boatswain.
Cornelius de Vries, Gunner.
Theodore Peterſz, Carpenters Mate.
William Williamſz, Block-maker.
Anthony Munſter, Diamond-cutter.
——— *Schack*, Chirurgeon.
Wiggert Poppes.
Meyndert Meyndertſz.
Cornelius Brack.
Els Peterſz.
Iacob Trappen.
Iacob Tolk.
Peter Arentſz, and
Iohn Faſſely, Servant to Captain *Butler*.

The

The Maſter together with the Carpenter, Carpenters Mate, *Anthony Munſter*, *Iacob Trappen* and *Tolk* had been the year before in *Moſcovia*. Having furniſhed our ſelves with Proviſion and things neceſſary for the Journey, we imbarqued our ſelves in the Ship **Abrahams Offerhande**, which then lay at *Amſterdam* and was bound for *Riga*, being 15 in company. SEPT. 1668.

On the 2 of *September* 1668 we ſail'd through the *Pampuys*, and on the 3 towards the Evening came before *Enchuyſen*, where we put in and Shipped 50 Tun of Herring.

On the 4 we ſet ſail again and got the *Texel*, where we tarried 8 days for a good Wind: and on the 13 the Wind blowing fair all the Ships outward bound which were about 50 ſail; began to weigh, and we reſpectivly to take our leave of Wives and Family, for 5 years: but before we got clear of the Land, the Wind turned, ſo that we were fain to traverſe and wind all we could to get out, in the mean time came a Ship belonging to *Ter Schelling* with a full drift againſt us, and ran her Bow-ſpreet through our main Sail, which was with ſuch force that he rent our ſail, and broke his Spreet-ſail yard, inſomuch that we were both fain to put into *Ter Schelling*, to repair and fit our ſelves out again.

On the 20 being clear we ſet ſail the ſecond time, and had a freſh gale at South and by Weſt, which held favourably, ſo long till we arrived at *Riga*: but when we entred the *Baltic* Sea, it blew ſo hard that our Mizzen ſail was all rent and unfit for uſe; whereupon the Maſter ſet me to work to repair the defects.

On the 1ſt of *October* we got the *Boldera*, which is the Haven or River of *Riga*, where we dropt Anchor. Immediately upon our arrival came the Searchers to viſit the Ship, and amongſt other Goods found a Parcel of contra-band Wares, and took it aſhoar with them, but the Maſter told them that it was thrown in by chance, and pray'd them to be ſo kind as to leave it aboard, which, after he had daubed them a litle in the fiſt, they did. The next day being under ſail, we were becalm'd, and fain to caſt anchor half way up the River. *Arrival at Boldera.*

On the 3 *ditto* we came up to the Kay of *Riga*, where being arrived, the Maſter refuſed to pay me the moneys, he agreed with me for, to make up his ſail, which was 10 Rix-dollars; but on the contrary, gave me very ill Language, and told me if I had any pretence upon *Arrival at Riga.*

SEPT. 1668. him the Law was open, and Judges appointed for the deciſion of ſuch controverſies. This great ingratitude, made me to take a courſe I never intended, which was to ſend him ſummons to appear in the Town hall; where upon a ſecond citation, he made his appearence, and was condemned to pay the money, in preſence of the Court.

Riga deſcribed. *Riga* is an eminent Emporium lying within the Prinſdom of *Lithvania*, and ſeated in a Champain land, on the north-eaſt ſide of the great River *Duna*. It is fortified with Walls, Bulwarks, and Ditches or Motes, populous and full of Trade, being as it were the Magazin to ſupply the whole Countrey above, with all kinds of Wares and Commodities, and is alſo a great Thorow-fare. By Winter they receive Goods over Land in Sledges and Waggons from *Moſcovia* which is tranſmitted abroad; and by Summer from *England*, *Germany*, *Holland*, and other Places, by Shipping, which are ſent that way again with the Moſcovian Waggons and Sledges. The Countrey about *Riga* affoards good plenty of all kinds of Proviſion, as Kine, Sheep, Goats, beſides 3 ſorts of Deer, the Sea and Rivers affoard good ſtore of Fiſh, and the Boors, beſides their diligence in breeding up of Cattel, ſupply other Countreys with Corn, of all ſorts, and Lactuaries: ſo that it is cheap living at or near *Riga*. This City was formerly within the Juriſdiction of the Kings of *Poland*; but was taken in by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, upon the 16 of *September* 1621, after a long and hard Siege, and is at this day in ſubjection to that Crown.

It's Commerce both by Sea and Land.

Departure from Riga. On the 10 *ditto*, we left *Riga*, and with our compleat Company and Baggage imployed 30 Waggons to bring us to *Pletsko*: and took up our firſt nights Lodging at *Niew-meulen*, being a Village where all the Waggons and Horſes are ſet over a River with great Logs of Timber faſtned together, that float above the Water.

Nieu-Meulen.

On the 11 we proceeded again on our Journey and broke two of our Waggon-wheels, which the Waggoners repaired, and ſo we proceeded on our Journey. At night we came into an Inn which was ſo meanly provided for Bedding that we were fain to lay all night in the Waggons. The next day we travelled through a great Wood, in the middeſt whereof was a broad Marſh, that coſt us ſome Hours to go over. When we were through the Wood, we paſſed through ſeveral little Villages, the Inhabitants whereof were a miſerable ſilly People, hardly

hardly able to draw one leg after the other. The Women have only an old Rag, like a Plad, thrown about their bodies, hardly ſufficient to hide their nakedneſs, except a litle below their ears, to let the World know, they have hair as well as other People; ſo that they look like ſo many Gypſies newly come from the famous Peak of *Darby*. As for their Houſes they are but one degree beneath a Hog-ſty and thoſe as full of Utenſils, as a Knave is full of Honeſty. All that ever I could ſee was an earthen Pan or two, and thoſe ſo clean, that I had rather faſt a week than eat any thing, that has come out of them. Great plenty of Cattel they have, and ſuch as have three times as many feet as they themſelves. As for Beds they have none but ſuch as their Oxen ly upon, for when they have ſtuffed their Gutts, they ly down upon the floor one after another, as the Nap takes them. Their Diet is ſuitable to all things elſe they have, for although they might have Veniſon for knocking on the Head, the Creature may live till Doomſ-day before they will take the pains to lift a hand to kill it, unleſs it be a louſe, which ſometimes they cruſh to death for change of Diet. As for their Bread it is not much unlike our *New-caſtle* Coal for colour, but how it is of Taſt I know no more than the Man in the Moon, for neither my Appetite nor Curioſity could move me to it, Cabbage they have in great abundance, which is of a Taſt like Sorrel, but cloſe and white like ours, That and Cucumbers are the main ingredients whereof theſe People ſeem to be compounded, but more eſpecially the latter, for *Cumber* attends them from the Womb to the Tomb, being held in perpetual Slavery by their Lords. They are conformable to no Laws, unleſs what they are forced to obſerve by a ſtrict aw, which their Lords impoſe upon them, and injoyn them to. They are by nature obtuſe and dull, inclined to Necromancy and Sorcery, but in the performance of an Exorciſm, ſo palpably ridiculous, that I wonder how they have obtained that repute they have in the World among thoſe, who ought to be wiſer than to beleeve ſuch groundleſs Fictions. They have no manner of Schools wherein to educate their Children, that ever I could ſee or hear of: neither Churches or other Houſes for Religious uſe; ſo that they are brought up in the greateſt Blindneſs and obſcurity that may be. Some of them, 'tis true, will needs be called Chriſtians, but thoſe are they that have travelled as far as *Riga*, which they think is the Head of the World,

SEPT. 1668. *The Life-landers their Properties, Habit and Cuſtoms.*

Octob. 1668. yet are thoſe ſo ſtupid, as a *Lifeland* Gentleman told me, that they have learn'd Catechiſm enough, if they can but know the Church from a Dwelling houſe, or to pull of their Caps when they ſee a man with a ſhoulder knot paſs by. Yet they are flexible enough to Idolatry by Nature, and withall ſuperſtitious. In our going through the Woods we ſaw a great Troop of them buſy about Conjuring of a Tree, which they had tied with a Garland of twigs, creeping round about it and making a great Howling; but ſo ſoon as they ſaw us, took them to their Heels and away. By the Forms and Tenures of the Curſes and Conjuration they ſeem to be ſenſible of a Future ſtate and ſometimes (by I know not what Tokens) preſage Death; and the Soul of any that has been a diſturber of the Public Quiet they deliver up to the Devil. They have a formal Oath, that they take upon divers Occaſions which is thus, The Party cuts up a Turf or Sod of Earth, this he ſets upon his Head and takes his ſtick into his Hand, Wiſhing if ſuch, or ſuch a Matter, be not ſo, and ſo, that They with their Cattel may be conſumed with Fire. They have beſides this, other ſuperſtitious Cuſtomes, to which they are ſo ſtrongly inclined by nature that they will not be better civilized, or if they happen to ſhow themſelves willing, and learn a litle Urbanity it muſt be only for lucres ſake, and they promiſed ſomething to boot to remember it, which if you forget to perform, they will forget to obſerve your Document. In ſhort they are but one remove from Bruits, and ſo ignorant, that the moſt part of them thinks there is no other Land in the World beſides their own.

Two days long we went through the Woods and found it ſo ſoft and Marſhy that we could hardly bring our Waggons through in ſafety.

Arrival at Wolmar. On the 14. we arrived at *Wolmar* where we met many *Horſes*, Waggons, and Boors going to market with Corn and other Things. One of our Company growing weary of his Journey thought to go away in this Throng, but the Captain being informed of his Deſign, watched him ſo narrowly, that he could not meet with an Oppotunity to march off.

Wolmar, is a litle, but a well-fortified Town, munited with a ſtone-Wall and a deep Ditch, but without Water. The Market in regard of the Poverty of the Countrey is very conſiderable, and is held twice a week.

a week. This City as appears yet by the Ruins of it, has been formerly much greater than it is at this day, but with all the Countrey round about has been often depopulated by the *Polish* and *Muſcovian* Armies. It is about 18 leagues from *Riga*. OCTOB. 1668.

On the 15 by break of Day, we ſet forward on our Journey, paſſing through a Champain Countrey, and many ſmall Towns and Hamlets. By the way we obſerved that the Boors had burn't up great Woods, and converted them into Paſturage and arable Ground. Afterwards we went through a large Wilderneſs, where we could not ſee the Sun, by reaſon of the denſity of the Trees, yet the way was full of Mires, and plaſhy. About 7 in the Evening we came to our ſtage, where we were to ſtay over night. The next morning we broke our faſt, yoked the Horſes, and ſet forward, paſſing over a huge River which had only a Bridge there where we were to paſs over, and no where elſe within 20 leagues above or below: but the Bridge being old and ſeemingly rotten, we durſt not go over all together, but one by one. When we were got over, Evening came on, and the Sky began to grow gloomy, after which followed a very great Tempeſt that the River ſwell'd over the Banks and overflow'd all the flat Lands, which we ſeeing ſo ſuddenly happen, left the common Road; for that our Land Pilot told us, that the High way was ſubject to ſuch Floods with an extraordinary Inundation. After two Hours Storming, the Weather began to clear and the Pilot aſſured us we were not far from the Town where we were to take our nights reſt, and ſo it happened, for juſt as he was ſpeaking of it we ſaw Light, through the Trees, which mightily revived us for we were extreme cold and weary. The next morning we ſet forward for *Pitſiora*, and had very good Weather, but came ſhort of the Town that night, inſomuch that we were fain to ly all night in the Woods, where we gathered all the Windfalls we could find and laid them on a heap, and with dry Sticks made a huge Fire, which ſerved not only to warm our ſelves at, but likewiſe to affright the Bears and Wolves away, which are very bold and cruel in theſe Parts, as alſo the Muskettos, which ſwarm here by Millions, and annoy both Man and Beaſt, after an incredible rate.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Arrival at Pitſiora, *and at* Pletskow, *A ſtrange Paſſage of a hungry Bear. The ſpindle-bone or ſhank of a Giant. The Pleaſant Proſpects and delightſome Landships of* Moſcovia. *Arrival at* Novogorod. *The Antiquity and former Glory of that City; how taken by the* Moſcovian, *and Fortified by the* Swede. *Their Departure from* Novogorod, *Reſcounter with a Company of Robbers, and Arrival at* Colomna. *Great abundance of Wolves. Coldneſs of the Climat.*

OCTOB. 1668. ON the 30th. of October 1678 we arrived at *Pitſiora*, which lies on the Confines of *Ruſſia*, and under the Protection of that Emperour. It is ſeated in a fair and pleaſant Countrey, affoarding all things neceſſary to the ſuſtenance of human Bodies. 'Tis true *Pitſiora* is no more than a Village, yet for wealthy Inhabitants, Commerce abroad and Advancement of Manufacturie, ſurpaſſes any City in all that part of the Countrey. In paſſing through the Town we ſaw many rich Mercers and Drapers Shops; the Markets ſtored with all ſorts of Proviſion, as Corn, Butter, Cheeſe and Fruits, with a very noble Butchery or Fleſh-ſhambles, and the ſtreets crouding with People from all Parts. So ſoon as we were arrived, there came ſeveral Jewelers, who asked if we had any Pearls, or other Jewels to ſell or barter.

Having refreſhed our ſelves at *Pitſiora*; we left the Town the next day about 10 in the Morning, and about noon entred a large Wood where we found great ſtore of Hurtles or Bilberies, that were far greater and better taſted then any I have known elſe where; which moved me to fall a plucking of them; but going a litle way into the Wood, and making a ruſhing through the Thickets, up ſtarts a huge Bear, which ſo affrighted me that I had hardly power to run from him; however it ſeem'd that he was as fearfull of me as I of him, for when I ran Eaſt he ran Weſt, and glad I was to ſee his Bear-ſhip turn tails with me. This was the only Bear that ever I had ſeen in *Lifeland*, or all the way from *Riga* hither, but the Boors often warned us to take care of our ſelves, ſaying that, ſometimes both Men and Cattel are devoured with thoſe cruel and ravenous Beaſts.

On that Evening we arrived at *Pletskou* where we had Lodgings and all neceſſaries provided us; and on the 22 payd our Waggoners who returned for *Riga*.

Pletskou,

Pletskou, is a large City, a great part thereof is surrounded with a wall, the rest with huge Balks like Pallizados, and computed about 8 [*English*] miles in compass. Their Houses are made sleightly of Trees and pieces of Timber, let in with joynts, without any Gentility or ornament. The Town it self gives a noble Prospect if you view it from without; by reason of the many Parish-Churches and Towers it has, but when you come within, it appears very ugly, the streets are irregular without Uniformity, and the Houses built after multifarious manners, so that the poorest Village, in the *Low-Countreys*, is a Paradice in comparison of *Pletskou*. 'Tis true they have some Houses of stone, but the most eminent and wealthy Citizens chuse rather to live in Wooden-Houses than in those, for that they say, The latter are more wholsom. Here I happened to meet with a *Hamburger*, and after we had exchanged a few words together, concerning our journey from *Riga*, I told him of my rouzing the Bear. He replyed that I was happy to make my escape so, since not only men are sometimes devoured by them, but also Horses and Kine, and withal told me, how that they dig up the Graves for the Bodies of the Dead, when they are hungry. But more lamentable was a story he told me, of a She-Bear, *that in the year* 1656. *broke by night into a House in the Country not far from thence, where she had found the Woman of the house with a sucking Infant in the bed with her. The woman she devoured, leaving only a part of her left leg and a little of the Scalp, but the Infant was altogether miss, whence it was concluded that the Bear had eaten it up, as being young and consequently more delicate. Not long after this dismal hap, the Peasant took his Musquet with him into the Woods not far from his House, with intent to shoot an Otter which haunted his Fish-ponds, and by the way espies a Bear, at which he levels his Musquet, and hits him directly on the skull. The Bear (as the custom is when shot) rolls himself in a heap, the Peasant runs to her and finding it a Female, and her Dugges full of Milk, resolves the next day to make search for her Seat, for then he thought that her Whelps would be hungry and yell out. The day following he went out to seek the Cave, taking 2 or 3 other Peasants with him, who being about the Middle of the Wood, on the side of a hill, heard a young child cry, and following the direction of the sound, found his own Infant in the cleft of a great Rock, which he took and brought to* Pletskou, *to be nurs'd up by his Wives Sister, where out of curiosity I went to see it.*

In the Suburbs of *Pletskou*, was to be seen a shank-bone of a Giant, 5 foot

1672. Octob.

OCTOB. 1668. 5 foot long, which together with the whole Skeleton, was found in a Tomb of ſtone, by the Boors, when they were digging up the roots of Trees that they had burn'd up.

On the 26th it began to freeze hard, and afterwards to ſnow, which made us uneaſy for our delay, being conſtrained to wait here ſo long, till we received the *Poddowodda*, which is an Order given by his Imperial Majeſty, that every Town we came at ſhould furniſh us with Horſes, Wagons, Bedding, and defray our other Charges. On the 28 towards night came an Expreſs from *Moſcou*, and the next day we ſet forward, intending firſt for *Novogorod*. This part of our Journey was much more eaſy and delightfull than that through *Lifeland*, which was altogether deſert and Marſhy, this on the contrary, Inhabited and till'd.

On the 31th we came at a great Lake before *Novogorod*, where we left the Sledges and were fetch'd over in a kind of a Cymb, or Boat which is made of a hollow tree, and by them called *Knoos*; of theſe they had two ſorts, the one for Paſſengers, who may ſit 4 or 5 at a time, the other broader, and every way larger, fit to tranſport Goods. This Lake is very broad but ſhallow, not having above 5 foot Water in moſt places. When we were ſet over, our Goods were put into Sledges, and brought after us into the Town.

In paſſing through the Town we found the Suburbs far greater than the City it ſelf, which as appears by the Ruins of the Walls, has been formerly a well fortified Place. In times paſt it was neither ſubject to the *Ruſſian*, *Swede*, nor *Polander*, but had a Prince, who coined Money and ruled as abſolute Soveraign, with an independent and arbitrary Power; Yea, to ſo high a ſtate was it once advanced, that it was grown to a Proverb, *GOD and* Novogorod, *who is able to withſtand*. Their Puiſſance I need not diſpute, ſince it is well known to thoſe that are acquainted with Geography what Sway the Princes of *Novogorod* have born, and what a name this City has had abroad for her Wealthy Merchants and great commerce with other Places. About the year 1477 it was beſieged and ſtorm'd by *Ivan Vaſilowitz*, Great Duke of *Moſcovia*, who took away all the Priviledges and Immunities of the Citizens: ſince which time their Wealth and Traffic began to decline and decay. However by reaſon of it's commodious Situation, it retains the footſteps of its former Trade, and is eſpe-

cially

cially frequented by *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Hamburgers* and *Lubeckers*, who come up the River *Nerva*, with their ſmall Shipping. The chief Commodities they deal in, are Wheat, Ry, Lin-and Rapeſeed, Furrs, Hemp and Flax. The Countrey is bleſſed with a good Soil, and produces ſufficiently enough of what is requiſite to human ſuſtenance, which is here very cheap. This is reckoned the beſt place in all *Moſcovia* for River-fiſh, eſpecially Pikes and Perch, Salmon they have in great abundance, as alſo Carp, Bream, and Sturgeon, with other kinds not commonly found in the *Low-Countreys*. OCTOB. 1668.

Novogorod (which is as much as to ſay, *New-town*, or *Newton*, being compounded of the Latin word *Novus*, and the ſubſtantive *Gorod*, in the *Moſcovian* Tongue, a City) is at this preſent ſtrengthned only with a Wall of Timber, but well provided with Ammunition, and Braſs Ordnance. On the one ſide is a ſtrong Caſtle with a high ſtone-wall, which as then was the Reſiding place of the Primate or Arch-biſhop of the Weſt-Province, and ſome other Temporal Lords. The greateſt Decorum and Ornament of this City is the Pomp and ſtatelineſs of the Churches and ſome Public Edifices, as at *Pletskou*, but the Houſes and Private Dwellings of the Inhabitants without any Order or neatneſs of Structure. Between the Caſtle and the Town is a long wooden Bridge where the beforenamed *Ivan Baſilowitz*, a great Tyrant, threw in ſome Thouſands of the Inhabitants. When you enter the Town, by that way you come within view of a famous Cloyſter, dedicate to Saint *Anthony*: *which Saint they beleeve and will perſwade you came driving on from* Rome, *out at the* Tyber, *through the* Ægean *Sea*, *the* Propontis, *the* Negropont, *the* * Mare Caſpium, *and ſo up the* Wolga *to* Novogorod *upon a Milſtone: where he met with a company of Fiſhers, with whom he covenanted for a certain ſome of Money, that the firſt thing they took ſhould be his. The Fiſhers drew their Net, and brought up a Cheſt, which was full of Money, beſides a Ghoſtly Attire, and ſome Books, With the money he built there a Chappel where he lies interred, and (as they tell us) his Body is yet to be ſeen, freſh and undecay'd, by which many miracles have been done, but none can ſee him, or them, but ſuch as are of their own Faith.* And ſo much of a floating Mil-ſtone.

* Which is a Lake and has no communion with any other Sea.

In the year 1611 this City was beſieged and taken in by *I. de la Gardie*, the *Swediſh* General, and in the year 1613 redelivered to the *Czar* of *Moſcovy* upon Articles of Peace. Novogorod taken in by the Swede.

Nov. 1668. Departure from Novogorod.

Upon the 8 of *November* we left *Novogorod*, having had time enough to view every Remarkable that was worthy of sight, and about 2 a clock in the afternoon arrived at a village called *Bruynitz* where we stay'd, and took up our Lodging for that night. The next Morning we took fresh Horses, but the snow was so melted with the Sun that we were fain to take Waggons, and leave the Sledges: but the way was so miry, that we had much ado to get the Horses through, for the Earth there is of a tough clay. About 8 in the Evening we came to *Mieana*, which is a poor Village, and could hardly afford us Hous-room for that night.

On the 10th we had bad travailing way, being for the most part marshy and full of Boggs, with Planks and trees laid over to make them passable, which tottered and shaked so that our Waggons were often out of order, but were as often mended by the Pesants who by continual use are very expert at it. By the way we saw abundance of Squirrels and Foxes which run together in Troups, yet so shy that we could not come within musquet-shot of them. That night we got *Gankrezza*, a handsom little Village, where we refreshed and supplied our selves with necessaries for our Journey.

Rescounter with a company of Robbers.

The next day being the 11th of *Novemb.* we set forward on our Journey, and travelling thro the Woods, we were surprized with a Party of High-way men, well mounted and masked, who demanded, what we were? We replied, that we were *Dutch* and servants to the Emperour. They hearing that, were in a doubt whether they should plunder us, or not; but at last rode off and bad us adieu. It was our opinion that they were affraid that our Company was stronger, and that the rest followed us, for they were better arm'd and mounted than we, besides the Waggons we had to take care of, or otherwise in all probability they would not have neglected such a fair booty, that being, as we were told by the Waggoners, one of the most dangerous places in all the Countrey. That night we took our rest at *Iazel-Bitza*, being very bad and showy weather.

On the 12 *ditto*, we took in fresh Horses, and put our Baggage and Moveables into Sledges because of the snow, passing through thick Woods, and a vast Wilderness, before we came at *Gamzymnagoru* where we were to take up our Lodging.

On the thirteenth we changed Horses and set forward on our Journey,

Journey, passing first through a thick Wood, and afterwards, came into champian Land, which was dry, level, and tilled as far as we could see. By the way we saw many small Villages, but at night came into *Colomna*, which was the faireſt and beſt Village I had hitherto ſeen in *Moſcovia*: the Inhabitants are reputed wealthy, and live in very good faſhion. We came pretty early to our Stage, having had very good way, and reaſonable fair weather, ſo that we had time enough to take a view of the Town, Our *Priſtaf*, or Guid, who ſpoke good *Nether Dutch* went with us to ſhow what was worthy of remark, and very courteouſly reſolved us in any thing we deſired to be ſatisfied about. Nov. 1668.

On the 14th we went through a great Wood where we ſaw abundance of Wolves playing together, which, when we would have taken aim to ſhoot with our Long Guns, they ran inward and took the Wood. Our *Priſtaf* told me that they knew us to have Fire-locks about us, that being the only ſafeguard to travel with, without which they will not fear to aſſail Horſe and Man, and ſometime lay ſculking in the way ſide, where of a ſudden they run out and prey upon Paſſengers. Towards the Evening it began to freez hard, that we were fain to ſtep out of the Hurdles, and walk afoot.

On the 16th we got *Vvaizna*, and from thence departed for *Gam-Vvoldoka*, where we tarried 4 days to reſt our ſelves. In the mean while it froze very hard, and I with another of our Company went out to ride upon Scates, upon which an infinit number of Men, Women and Children, yea the Prieſts themſelves, came running out to ſee us.

CHAP. III.

A Quarrel with the Ruſſians. *Eight* Dutch *Merchants murthered in a Wood. Arrival at* Tweer. *Another Reſcountre with a Party of Robbers. Money ſent from* Moskow. *Purſuit of their Journey. They enter* Moſcou. *Their good Reception. The great Bear-Garden. Wolf and Bear-baiting. Death of the Empreſs, and the pompous Exequies.*

ON the 22th after we had ſufficiently taken breath, we ſet forth, having freſh Horſes provided us, and ſo entred a great Wood,

SEPT. 1668. where we ſaw great ſwarms of Squirrels fly from Tree to Tree; as alſo abundance of Pheaſants and Partridges, which the Peaſants take and ſell for a mean price. About the Evening we came to *Vvuidra Pusk*, where we remained that night, but could not get any Lodging fit to entertain us either for Houſ-room or Victuals, this being yet a poorer Village than that of *Miedna*. At this place happened a Quarrel between one of our Company and a *Ruſs*, the firſt having taken the others Ax, for that the *Ruſs* had ſtole ſom Tobacco from him: which being made known to the Company, they ſtruck and miſuſed the poor *Ruſs*, after an unſufferable manner, which Capt. *Butler* reſented very ill, not willing to give the *Ruſſians* any diſguſt. But above all the people in the World there are none that covet Tobacco ſo much as they do, and will be ſure to ſteal it, if they cannot otherwiſe come by it, although they were ſure to looſe their Heads for it.

On the 23 by break of Day, we ſet out and entred another thick Wood. Here they ſhowd us ſom Graves where they told us, 8 *Dutch* Merchants were buried, who had been murthered by Robbers. When we were got thro the Wood we went over a fair Paſture-ground, and ſaw divers Boors Houſes by the Way-ſide. In the Evening we arrived at *Torſtock*, which we found to be but a ſmall, yet well-built City, although it appeared greater, from the Number of Towers which we ſaw, when at a diſtance, having above 30 Churches and Chappels within the Walls. Here we unloaded our Sledges and left them, putting our Goods aboard ſome ſmall Shipping that was provided for us, and ſayled down the River to *Troetzka Miedna* where we took in ſom neceſſary Proviſions. That night pretty late we came to *Tweer* which is Seated upon the River *Vvolga*, which River with many windings and turnings runs to ſeek the *Caſpian* Sea, into which its diſgorges its ſelf. *Tweer* is ſomething greater than *Torſtock* and is built on the ſide of a Hill from whence it has it's name. Here is alſo the Place where the River of *Torſtock* incorporates with the *Wolga* making a great and loud noiſe where the Floods are hurried in together. This City like *Torſtock* makes a greater Show abroad than it does within; being neither well built nor at all fortified, ſave only with a Wall of Wood and 2 or 3 Braſs Cannon on the Land ſide. Here we took out our Baggage and laid it again upon Sledges, taking our way through the Woods where we were aſſail'd by two *Ruſſians* a foot,

but

but upon what account I know not. First they began to make a quarrel, and so boldly offered to strike with their Axes, saying, that they were upon their own Ground, and that we were a parcel of Rogues and Vagabonds &c. To which some of our Company who could speak the Language, prai'd them not to molest us, as they tendred their Welfare, and that we had no time to stand disputing, and answering their impertinent Objections. This not availing, or perswading them to be quiet, but rather made them worse, for they came closer and closer to us: which Capt. *Butler* observing fell a caning them, whereupon they retired a little, as if they would go away, but all on a sudden came running in upon us full drive with their Axes, upon which three of our Company levelled their Musquets, but the Captain forbad to fire, and let the Mastive loose upon them. The Mastive flies directly at one of them, and had him so fast by the Throat, that we had much ado to get him off: the other seeing his Mate so hard put to it, ran away as fast as he could, but the Dog being loose flew after him, and tore off his left ear; and had we not done our indeavour to take him off, had rent him all to pieces. So soon as we had got rid of them we proceeded on our way, and at night came to *Gorodna*, where we staid till morning. DECEM 1663.

On the 24 *ditto* we went forward, passing over 2 Rivers, where we came to a Village called *Sawidowa*, and at night came to *Saulka Spaz* which was our Stage. Here we provided our selves again with fresh Horses, but not without much difficulty, for in the mean time we were very uncivilly treated by the Inhabitants, whom we found mightily inclined to quarrel with us, although without occasion. *Saulka Spaz*.

On the 25 we took our leaves of *Saulka Spaz* going over a large plain, and at night came to a village called *Klien*, where for want of Moneys we were forced to stay, till we had an Expres from *Moscou* which came not before the 4 of *December* following, at which time came also one of the Domesticks of the *Heer van Sweden*, Kinsman to Captain *Butler* bringing the unwelcom news of his Masters Sickness whom the Physicians judged to be past recovery. The Captain upon the opening of the Letter was sadly dejected, and immediatly took Horse and rode post for *Moscou*, leaving us Order the next day to follow with the Baggage. In the mean time it began to snow hard, insomuch that we were forced to tarry 6 days at *Klien*. On the 11 we *Klien*.

set

DEC. 1668. set forward having fair Weather, which at our setting out seemed to be durable. On this days Journey we met with, Rivers which we were to pass over that hindred us not a litle; by reason that the Floats were so litle, not able to carry above 3 or 4 Horses at a time with Sledges and Wagons, At night we arrived at *Serkisowo*, where we took up our Night-lodging. In the mean time it froze so hard, that we were all benummed, and fain to run after the Waggons to keep our selves Warm.

On the eleventh *ditto*, we went through several thick Woods of Juniper, where we saw abundance of Foxes playing together in the Sun. About 3 in the afternoon we arrived at *Nicholo Direverno*, from whence we could see the long-wish'd-for *Moscou*. About Evening we entred the Suburbs, where by one of our own Nation we understood that the *Heer van Sweden* was deceased, and that the Ship was fit for Lanching.

On the 12th. we had order to come into the City, and had Appartments provided us near the House of the *Heer van Sweden*. Our Landlady had so little satisfaction in the Guests that were appointed to have quarters with her, that she addressed her self to Court, to desire that we might be brought some where else, but instead of obtaining her Request, was sent home with a hundred strokes on the Ribs for her pains. When she came in, she ran into a back-room, where was the Image of *St. Nicholas* painted upon a Plank, and falling down prostrate before it, shed a shower of Tears. However she was forced to content her self for 14 days longer, during which time we made good chear, and spared not for Fewel in the Stoves. And albeit the Woman was so dissatisfied at our being there, yet her Husband could have wish'd us there the whole year round, for our Brandy and Tabacco sake.

On the 27 we had order to go into the House of the late deceased Gentleman, even now remembred, which was a very commodious House and provided with a great *Stove, which was by reason of the bitter Weather, very welcome to us; the more becaus the said House was well furnished with Wood, and other fewel for the Winter. We stayd here three weeks, during which time there was care taken for what we had need of; when that time was expired we received sudden Orders, forthwith to depart for our wharf at *Astrachan*.

* Or Cackel.

On

On the 19 of *January* we brought our Baggage aboard a ſmall Ship, that lay about 3 Miles without *Moſcow*. At this Place was the Court of the Emperours Siſter, being a fair Palace, but of Wood, built after a quaint and artificial manner. Here was alſo the Emperours Bear-Garden, being accidentally when we were there a great Concourſe of Gentry, from *Moſcow*, and other places to ſee the Paſtime, and the Evening before, came the Emperour with the whole Court and Retinue. The Theatre was only environed with Stakes and Pales, that the People might alſo ſee, that were without. Before they began were brought out about 200 Wolves and Bears, and almoſt twice the number of Dogs; all which were drawn in their Kennels ſet upon Sledges. The Emperour, and the prime of his Nobles ſate in a Gallery made on purpoſe in a very convenient place, to ſee on every ſide. So ſoon as the Emperour was ſet, a ſign was given, upon which a litle Wolf and an old Bear were turned out looſe together, that after they had encountered about half a quarter of an Hour, were parted, which notwithſtanding their being in the heat of the Fight, were eaſily brought aſunder and led to their Kennel. The Wolves were afterwards engaged with Dogs of which many lay dead upon the place, and others ſo wounded that they were no more fit for uſe. JAN. 1669.

On the 23 of *February*, one of our company married with a *Tartarian* maid, who had been taken Captive when ſhe was a Child and brought up in the Chriſtian Religion, by the *Heer van Sweden*, who taught her to write and ſpeak *Netherdutch*, both which ſhe did expertly well. And a day or two after was another of our Company married with a *Lubekker*, both theſe two went with their Huſbands to *Aſtrachan*.

On the 13 of *March* died the Empreſs in Child-bed who by reaſon of her great Charity, Piety, and the beſt of Vertues, was much lamented by the Common People, who oftentimes in diſtreſs were accuſtomed to addreſs themſelves to her, as a Mediatrix. The next day ſhe was interred with great Pomp and magnificency, for it is not their Cuſtome as in other Countreys to embalm the Corps, or to let it lie in State. On each ſide the way ſtood the Guards, but none follow'd or went before; except ſome of the chief Perſonages about Court who walked a ſoft pace. The Herſe was cowered with a rich Canopy of cloth of Gold, having Taſſels and Fringe ſuitable, born up by 8 young Lords. After the Herſe followd a Train of Noble-men, *Death of the Empreſs.* *The Funeral.*

MAR. 1669. ted by the first Ministers of State who bore a Bag of money which the said Empress on her Death-bed had bequeathed to the Poor. These followed next to the Emperour and his two Sons; who were apparreled in a Garment, lined with Black Fox skins, which is a Fur of very high esteem. The Emperour and his two Sons were supported each by two Gentlemen. There were also the several Ministers of Forreign Courts present, who were attired after the manner of their own Countrey, these went on each side the Herse at a distance, and after all followed an innumerable Train of Citizens and Forreign Merchants, but those without any Order. On this manner the Corps was brought into a Cloyster which she her self had founded, and there committed to the Earth.

CHAP. IV.

Situation of Moscou. *It's Divisions and Wards.* Kitay-Gorod *the first City. The great number of Churches and Cloysters. High Towers. Noted Humility and Obedience of a* Russian *Gentleman. The greatest Bell in the World at* Moscou. *The Church of* Jerusalem, Zaar-gorod *the second*, Skorodom *the third*, *and* Strelitza Slowoda *the fourth Town. Great number of Houses within the City* Moscou. *A great Fire, whereby many Houses were consumed. The coldness of the Climate. Diseases proper to the Countrey. Fertility and Products of the Land.*

BEing constrained to tarry some time at *Moscou* against our will, it gave me opportunity to take a view of the Town, and to make what observations I could during the time of my aboad there, which I shall according to my best knowledge impart to the Reader.

Moscou it's Situation and State

Moscou is the Metropolitan, or Capital City of *Moscovia* and the Imperial City of *Russia*, and all that is within the Jurisdiction of the Emperour, whose Empire is bounded on the North with the *white Sea*, on the East severed from the *Samoieds*, and other *Tartarian* Countreys, on the South it has the *Mare Caspium*, and on the West, part of *Poland*, *Lifeland*, and *Sweden*. So that the large and wide Dominions of the *Czar*, are extended as well into the *Asian* as the *European* Continent.

The City of *Moscou* (which seems to have it's name from the noble River *Moscqua*) lies in 50 *degr.* 37 *min.* Northerly Latitude. It is a very

very large City, and computed to be about 30 or 35 Engliſh miles in compaſs, yet was almoſt twice as great, before it was taken in and depopulated by the *Tartars*. It gives a very fair proſpect from without by reaſon of it's many Towers and high Buildings. This City is divided into 4 wikes or Wards, to wit, *Kitay-gorod*, or midle City, *Zaar*-or *Czar-gorod*, the Emperours City, *Skorodom* and *Strelitza Slowoda*. Theſe ſeveral Diviſions ſeem rather ſo many diſtinct Towns or Cities whereof * *Kitay-gorod* ſtands in the middeſt, and is environed with a high wall, which they call *Craſna Stenna*, that is, Red Wall. It is ſeated between 2 Rivers, to wit *Moſcqua* on the South, and the *Neglina* on the North, which are united behind the Palace. The Palace together with its Appendences, to wit, the Wall, Hornworks, Creſcents and other Fortifications is the larger part of the *Kitay-gorod*, called alſo *Crim-gorod*; being well provided with Men and Ammunition. In the midſt of this Palace is a very ſtately Church, in which we ſaw a Silver branched Candleſtick, formerly preſented to the *Czar* by the Ambaſſador of our States. Beſides this Church is another dedicated to the Archangel, where are to be ſeen the Tombs of thoſe of Imperial blood, as alſo *Triotzis Maria* and that of *St. Nicholas* which are both very ſumptuous. Thoſe which are in *Kitay-gorod* without the Palace are alſo reputed the beſt and faireſt in all *Moſcou*, being reckoned 56. Beſides the Churches which are within the Walls of the Palace are 2 very beautifull Cloyſters, the one for Young Gentlemen, and the other for Ladies, who have reſolved to live a monaſtichal Life; altho the former may rather go under the denomination of an Illuſtrious School, becauſe it is appointed for the Education of the Young nobility in all kinds of Literature and good Manners, who at 16 Years have a choice preferred them, whether they will lead a Ghoſtly or a Secular Life: but that for the Ladies, diſpences not with ſuch a Freedom, but all that are admitted muſt continue *durante vitâ*. In the middle of this Palace, or rather Fort, is a high Tower, which the Ruſſians call *Ivan Velike*, that is *Great Iohn* being covered with Copper and double guilt. This is that Tower, on whoſe Top the Emperour *Boris Gudenow* (as is to be ſeen in their Chronicles) brought a *Perſian* Ambaſſadour to view the City *Moſcou*, and amongſt other diſcourſe began to ſpeak of the great Loyalty and Obedience of ſome ſubjects to their Soveraigns in paſt ages: Whence the

MAR. 1669.

*Perhaps from Cathaia.

This Story has been recorded of another Potentate, but 'tis no great matter.

MARC. 1669. the Emperour took occaſion to ſay) *So faithfull are my ſubjects from the higheſt* Bojar, *to the meaneſt Vaſſal, that there is not one of them who would refuſe to throw himſelf præcipitantly from the Top of this Tower, if I thought good to command*: and thereupon calls a *Bojar*, or Lord, whom he inſtantly commanded to throw himſelf head-long down, which after he had taken his Leave of his Imperial Majeſty and thoſe that were with him, jump'd off from the higheſt pinacle, where he was taken up dead, buried with greated Solemnity, and his Children promoted to the greateſt Places of Truſt, in which they and their Deſcent continue till this day.

The great Bell Beſides this there is yet another Tower and one of the wideſt that ever I have ſeen in my life, in which is the greateſt Bell without doubt in the World, weighing 394000 *lb.* and the Clapper 10000 *lb.* I meaſured it and found it 23 foot Diameter, and 2 foot ſolid mettal. It is as much as 50 ſtrong men can move, and that only ſo as may juſt be perceived. It is ſeldom rung, and that only upon Feſtival days, or when any Forreign Prince or Miniſter of State deſires it. When they intend to do it at any extraordinary time, they make proclamation through the Town, by which warning the Citizens take down all the Glaſſes and Earthen Ware, for it makes all tremble and ſhake.

There are beſides the Imperial Court ſeveral other ſpacious Palaces for the *Bojars*, or Nobility, as alſo for the Spiritual Lords, amongſt which that of the Patriarch is the moſt magnificent. Without *Kitay-gorod*, directly before the Palace of the *Czar*, is one of the faireſt *Jeruſalem Church.* Churches (I muſt neds ſay) that I have ſeen in all my Travels, which is built after the model of the Temple of *Jeruſalem*, from whence it has that Name. Near unto this church is the great Market having Shops of all Wares and Merchandiſes that may be imagined, but every Shopkeeper has his own Row or Street, ſo that people of one Dealing have all their Shops together, and by themſelves. In this part of the City dwell likewiſe the ableſt Merchants [*Kneeſen*] and other Perſons of note, who dwell in ſtone houſes to preſerve their Goods, if a Fire ſhould happen.

Zaar-gorod which is the ſecond part of *Moſcou* encompaſſeth *Kitay-gorod* almoſt in the form of a Creſcent, which is alſo environed with a huge Wall, which they call *Biela Stenna*, that is, The white Wall. *Zaar-gorod* is divided into two parts by the River *Neglina*, which runs

runs thro the midſt of it. Here is alſo a famous Founding-Houſe for caſting great Bells and Ordnance, as alſo the Emperours ſtable. Near the River is a Beaſt-market, and a famous Butchery or Fleſh-ſhambles, where you find not only Beef, Veal, Mutton, Pork, Lamb, Veniſon, &c. but alſo Horſe-fleſh to ſell. Corn, Meal, Butter, Cheeſe and other Proviſion is here good, cheap, and very plentiful. MARC. 1669.

The Third City which is *Skorodom*, embraces *Czar-gorod* on the Eaſt, North and Weſt-ſides likewiſe in the form of a Creſcent. In this City, or Ward, is the Houſe-market, where at a low price you may buy a Houſe, of what greatneſs you pleaſe. Theſe Houſes are made of Square pieces of Timber notch'd and let into each other, which when you have bought you can disjoint and bring it where you liſt upon Sledges, that amongſt many inconveniencies has this one Conveniency, that if a Citizen has his Houſe burn'd he may be every day ſupplied with a new, which (conſidering the old is brought to Aſhes) may without much coſt, be placed where the other ſtood; whereas on the contrary, we are often forced to ſtay ſometimes a year or more before the Rubbiſh be taken away and a convenient Houſe built in lieu of the old. Beſides that conveniency, they have another, which is, that at what time any Houſe happens to take fire, and any probable danger of breaking out, the Neighbours upon timely notice have their Houſes taken in pieces and removed as if they were but Tents.

The fourth and laſt Wike is *Strelitza Slowoda*, which reaches out toward the South, over the River *Moſcqua*, and towards the *Tartarian* Countrey. Here is the place where the *Soldateſque* are inquarter'd, which they call *Strelitzen*, from whence this Part of *Moſcou* has it's name. It is very well fortified with Bulwarks, and other Fortifications. Strelitza Slowoda

The number of the Houſes within the four Diviſions and the Suburbs, according to their computation are ſaid to be about 95000, the Palace and all its appendencies excluded. The Churches, and Cloyſters, wherein they preach are 1700. Amongſt this great number of Dwelling-houſes you find few or none, but what are altogether of Wood, except ſome Merchants Houſes in *Kitay-gorod*, who as we have already ſaid, build moſtly of Stone for the better ſecurity of their Goods. They uſe no Chimneys as we do for fires, but great Gackels,

MAR. 1669. Or rather Ovens; made altogether of ſtone, which ſometimes being over heated, or by the negligence of the People, who are great affecters of Brandy, is the occaſion of ſetting their Houſes on fire, as it happened about 6 Weeks before our arrival there, at what time, by the negligence of a poor Woman, happened a moſt dreadfull Conflagration, that reduced about 35 Thouſand Houſes to aſhes, and that in the beſt part of the City, which beſides an incredible loſs of Houſe-furniture, Merchandiſe and the like, there were many children and impotent People killed. The *Dutch* Merchants, who had moſtly their Reſidence near the place where the Fire firſt broke out, ſuſtained an incredible loſs. Tis true the Houſes are upon ſuch occaſions removed with as much eaſe as ours are blown up, but if the Timber be knotty the Sparks and Cinders fly abroad and kindle other Houſes at an incredible diſtance, which being covered with dry Planks are not ſo eaſily extinguiſhed, The *Czar* upon conſideration of the frequent Fires has appointed a party of the *Strelitzers*, to be quartered in ſeverall places, at a due and convenient diſtance from each other throughout the 4 Wards; who are continually to be at hand upon ſuch occaſions. Now by reaſon of the great ſcarcity of Water in *Moſcou*, the firſt thing they lay their hands to, is to disjoynt the Houſes, and therefore for the moſt part are train'd up in that kind of Architecture, to be aſſiſtant again in the rebuilding of the ſame, when all danger is ſuppoſed to be over.

A great Fire in Moſcou.

Great but miry ſtreets. The ſtreets of *Moſcou* are very ſpacious and wide, but in rainy weather ſo miry, that in walking you are up to the very knees in mud; for which reaſon both Men and Women are fain to wear Boots. Although 'tis certain that inconvenience might be remedy'd, by paving it with ſtone, as they do in the *Low-Countreys* and elſe where. During the time we were there, it was not poſſible to thwart the ſtreets if they had not thrown great beams and planks acroſs the way.

The Air. *Moſcou*, and all the whole Countrey towards the North is capable of a very unwholſom Air, for thoſe that are not brought up in it, being in the Winter exceeding ſharp and cold, and in the Summer hot and moyſt. In Winter they muffle up their Noſe and Ears in Furs, eſpecially when they go upon a Journey. And in *Moſcou* it is well ſeen that many of the Inhabitants have neither Noſe nor Ear, which they ſay is by coming out of the bitter cold Air into a hot Stove: for although

although it may ſeem ſtrange, yet cannot that be avoided in ſome places, unleſs they rub their Noſes and Ears, which are frozen, in Snow till they grow hot, which done they may come into a Houſe without danger, and this you ſhall ſee them continually a doing in ſuch Seaſons. It is alſo obſervable how that after a hard Winter the very Earth chinks and opens when it once begins to thaw. But on the contrary, it is there ſo hot in the Summer that a ſtranger cannot endure it, at what time alſo the Marſhes and ſtanding Pools do ſo ſtink that one is ready to faint away: beſides the great annoyance of Gnats, Muskettos and other Vermin, againſt which there is no way to defend ones Face. The Peſtilence is ſeldom ever known there, but in lieu thereof another Epidemy, which ſo torments them in their Bowels that thoſe that are taken with it rarely recover, or live above 3 days. Some I have heard ſay that in times paſt it was far more frequent and rigorous than at this day, for before, they had not the uſe of Phyſic nor would admitt of any that profeſſed it to practiſe, as of late, finding the great benefit thereof, they have done. MAR. 1669. *The Countrey Sickneſs.*

Moſcovia is a Countrey of a fat and fertile Soil, far beyond that of *Lifeland*. Their Wheat, Ry, Barley and Oats, they ſow about St. *Johns* day at Midſummer, which within 7 or 8 Weeks is fit for the Sickle, or Sithe (for they uſe both) and that by reaſon of the conſtant heat. They have beſides the beforementioned fruments, good ſtore of Pulſe, as Peaſe, Beans and Lentils. Cucumbers, Pompions and Melons are more common there than with us, of which laſt I have ſeen ſome weighing above 40 pound. The Fruits they have are Pears, Apples, Quinces, Medlars, Cherries Plumbs, and of theſe ſeveral kinds. There grows in the Countrey lying upon the River *Moſqua* a kind of an Apple ſo tranſparent that you may diſcern the Seeds, as Grapes: The Shell or Rind thereof is very thin and ſubtile and the Fruit it ſelf very delicate, but too juycy, and after a long Rain ſo watriſh that they grow inſipid. 'Tis generally known abroad that *Moſcovia* affoards Flax and Hemp to that exuperancy, that they ſupply almoſt all *Europe* with Rope-work. The next Staple-Commoditie of *Moſcovia* is Wax and Honey, which the *Ruſſians* take wild and make a vaſt profit thereof. In ſhort there is no Vegetable of general uſe with us, but what likes there, ſave only the Vine, which the Extremity of the Winter will not ſuffer to like or come to perfection: but that

defect

MAR. 1669. defect is ſufficiently ſupplied from abroad, by the *Engliſh*, *Dutch* and others, who bring the Products of every Vintage from *France* and elſe where. They have no Mines ſave only of Steel and Iron.

Of their Cattel, *Ruſſia* if taken in general is better ſtored with tame Cattel and Wild-beaſts than any Countrey in *Europe*, or as ſome beleeve, in the whole World. Kine is without doubt in greater abundance there than in *Tartary*, agreeable to the opinion of all Travailers and Geographers, who have given an account of either. The rich Furs which are yearly exported hence to moſt places of the World ſufficiently teſtify the ſuperabundancy of Foxes, Sables, Martens, &c. But moſt dangerous it is to travel alone for the many Beaſts of prey which run together in vaſt and innumerable Troops; and thoſe, when the Earth is covered with Snow, very bold and daring, inſomuch that the Inhabitants are in continual danger, and are fain to keep their gates barricado'd from thoſe cruel Animals, to ſecure themſelves and their Cattel; nay, it has been often known that they have undermined Houſes in ſome parts, and devoured whole Families at a time. Wild-Fowl I have ſeen of ſeveral kinds, as chiefly Heath-hens, Herns, Wildgeeſe, and Cranes by Millions in a flock together. As for ſmall-birds, by which I mean Larks, Finches and the like, which we hold for great delicacies, they have them in litle, or no eſteem, and that by reaſon of the vaſt ſwarms, for they fly together as thick as Gnats or Inſects over a Pond. Theſe are havock'd by the Hawks, Faulcons and Merlins, which are there in a proportionable plenty to the prey. The Rivers and ſtanding Lakes are ſtored with Fish of all kinds, which are throughout the whole Land incredibly cheap; in ſum *Moſcovia* has whatſoever is neceſſary for Food and Rayment, as good and at as eaſy rates, as any other Land in the World, none excluded: altho I do not ſay but that one Province differs much from another, and that every particular Province and Region has ſomething or other, as proper or peculiar to it's ſelf.

Fowl,

and Fish.

Woldomir. *Wolodomir* is reputed to be of ſo good a Soil, that from one Buſhel of pure Grain ſown is ſometimes 20 or 25 produced in Harveſt and yet *Rheſan* is reckoned far more fertile than the other, for from every ſingle Seed ariſeth 3 ſtalks, and ſometimes more, which is not commonly found in any other Province in all *Ruſſia*. This Province afoards likewiſe the beſt and moſt Beavers.

Rheſan.

The

The Dutchy of *Syberia* is the most woody of all other Provinces within the Empire of the great *Czaar*, especially towards the Northeast where at *Braquin* there is a Wood which takes it's beginning, the end whereof none ever yet was known to find out. This Wood is the main place whence the *Moscovians* fetch their richest Pelure and Furs, as Ermins, Sables and Black Fox, which is one of the richest Pelts in the World. *Volske*, *Smolensko* and *Beleasor* deliver vast quantities of Skins and Furs, which the Inhabitants bring up yearly to *Moscou* and other eminent Marts. *Ustioga* is a Province that yields great store of Cattel, and many sorts of Fish; yet very Barren as to grain. *Rostof* is the only Province for Salt. *Dwina* is a barren and dry land, but the Inhabitants obtain great Riches of the Furs, which is the Principal Trading of that Province. These they barter with what Commodities and Necessaries they find themselves destitute of. In this Province are many white Bears, which seem to live as well by Sea as Land. *Viatke* has great want of Grain, yet store of Fish, Honey, Wax, and also Pelts. *Petzora*, is very montanous, in which Principality I have heard it averr'd, That there are some mountains that require 10 days work to ascend. The Valleys of this Province are fertile enough, and very good pasturage, yet Corn will not take kindly there. What may be further said of *Astrachan*, and the *Tartarian* Regions, now in subjection to the Great Duke, I shall wave till I come to make mention of things, as I found them upon our Arrival there.

MARE. 1669. Syberia.

Volske. Smolensko and Beleosor. Ustioga. Rostof.

Viatke.

Petzora.

High Mountains.

CHAP. V.

The Form, Nature and Propertie of the Russes. *Their ordinary Diet. Their great esteem of Brandy. Their litigious humors and inclinations to Quarrelling. Their ordinary Habit. Women use painting of their Faces. Their manner of their Marriages, and nuptial Solemnities.*

THe right *Moscovians*, or *Russians* (for the *Tartars* now under Protection of the *Czar* we shall speak of in their due place) are mostly able, corpulent and big, especially of Head, Arms and Legs. The Common sort are very hard by Nature and patient in extremity, seldom pamper their Bodies with soft lying, when they rest, or delicat Diet when they eat. In summer they lie upon boards, or at best upon

straw, and in Winter on the tops of their Ovens, or Cackels, where Man and Wife, Children and Servants lie all down together, without any distinction at all. Utensils they have not many, but so many as themselves judge needfull, which are Earthen or Iron Pots, Wooden Dishes, Brandy- and Metheglin-Cups, which they rarely rince. As for rubbing and scouring they are meer strangers to it, as also to ornaments and Toys, unless it be a Figure which they call *St. Nicholas*, or perhaps some other Saint for whom they have some particular or extraordinary veneration. Slaves they are by nature, and born to servitude and Bondage, seldom ever aspiring so high, as to indeavour to make themselves franc, and yet will be excited to nothing by fair means, or use diligence about any affair, save what they are driven to by constraint and blows: and yet so sweet this Slavery seems to be to them, that rather than to become free upon the Decease of their Lords to whom they ow allegiance by nature or otherwise, that they will immediatly sell themselves *durante vitâ* to some other Patron. They are very prone to Theft, yea and to Murther when they think that they can do it clandestinly, or to any advantage, how poor soever it be, which seems to be primordially occasioned from the Penury of their Lords, who hardly allow them what is requisit to support and sustain human Bodies: as for Brandy and Tobacco they hold it but a venial Transgression to filch when they can come at it, notwithstanding the strict and severe Laws against Theft, in the lowest nature and lest importance.

MARC. 1669.

This only is to be applied to the Vulgar sort, as for those of greater Ability and Rank, they spare not for what tends to a voluptuous Life, and indulge their sences, as much or more than is tolerable. Free they are, and indeed generous enough at their Table, especially when they treat or welcom Strangers, who are very welcom and received with all imaginable Urbanity, on Condition, that they observe the Countrey fashion, which is to bring a Present with them, that may countervail more than thrice the value of what is set before them: and this if you forget to bring, you may take my word, they'l forget to make you welcom. The Slaves in *Moscou* are very hardly dealt withall and poorly fed, but much harder those that are in the open Countrey, where their Lords are sparing of their Allowance, and therefore connive at their Filching; thinking it falls out at last to their own pro-

profit, especially if it be any thing of Food.

MDCLX. 1669. Their Diet.

The *Russes* feed most of Roots, Pulse and Fish, use much Onions and Garlick in their Pottage and also for sauces. Their Bread is mostly of Course Ry. As for Fish they eat it rather pickled than fresh, which is plentifull in their Markets, and by reason that washing and making clean the shambles is a kind of an Abomination to those people, you cannot come within a hundred paces of the Market, unless you stop your nose, so nauseous and hatefull is the smell. Those of the greatest Rank and ability do in general hold good Tables, but eat most Spoon-meat although it were but bread out of Water that fish has been boil'd in. *Caveer* is a great Dainty amongst them, but not so high in esteem, there as abroad. When they have drunk more than well agrees with them, so that their stomach be surcharged, they prepare a certain Dish which they call *Pochmelie* made up of cold Beef or Mutton sliced very thin, and *Quas*: *Quas* is a Liquor which they use as Beer of which it is made, with a Composition of Water, Beer-Vinegar, Garlick and Pepper: this *Quas* being so prepared they put their meat into it, and seeth it a litle, which afterwards they eat with Spoons. The poorer sort have a certain Liquor much in use among them, which they also call *Quas*, this is made of Water with a litle Bran and Barley-meal, which according to their ability they temper thicker or thinner. The Gentry drink Beer, that there is very strong and heady, but more commonly Metheglin, which they make of the best Honey, adding Cloves, Cinnamon, Pepper, Galangal, Cardamom and other Spices: This is a very strong and stealing Liquor of it self; yet they think good to mix it with Brandy to make it more effectual. Brandy which they call *Wina* they covet above all other Liquors, which without any discretion or noted difference is drunk both by Spiritual and Temporal, Nobles and Plebeians, Men and Women, Young and Old, and that at all times of the Day, before and after Meals; Sometimes to add a medicinal vertue they put a litle Pepper amongst it. Nay, so befotted are the Vulgar with Brandy, that in the sharpest Weather, they will not only part with their Caps or Coats for the Reckoning, but likewise with their Boots, Shirts and Stockings, so that I have seen some of them come mother-naked out of the *Kaback* or Tipling-House. The Common people were formerly so irregular and void of Order that they would drink themselves full,

MAR. 1669. and afterwards the men and Women, ſetting aſide all Reputation and Modeſty commit ſenſual and beaſtly Actions together: This great Diſorder was lately remedied by the care of the *Czar*, who, by the advice of the Patriarch, put down all the ſmall Tap-houſes throughout the whole Empire, appointing in every Town and Village one public Houſe, or *Kaback*, which they are to farm of the Emperour himſelf. They are very covetous of Tobacco, as has been elſewhere ſaid, notwithſtanding the Tenure of a Decree or Mandate promulgated about the year 1634., which ſtrictly forbids every perſon of what degree or quality he may be, to ſmoke it: which nevertheleſs is done privately.

The *Ruſſians* are generally groſs of Body yet ſubtile enough in affairs of Merchandiſe which they can manage very well. Their Women are much inclined to Goſſiping, and buſie Tatlers, often beat by their Husbands, who ſometimes uſe them unkindly: upon which they ſometimes addreſs themſelves to Court, where the men once convicted over ſuch Crimes are ſent to *Syberia*. The Emperour conſidering the multitude of Complaints of this nature, has ordained that if any Woman makes complaint without ſufficient Evidence, that the Man is to be tortured on the Rack, which if he ſtands out, the Wife is condemned to exile, her ſelf, before which Law the Court was dayly troubled with ſuch like Differences.

Batbibing and Jarring a property of the Ruſſians. Few people, there are in the World that are more accuſtomed to ſcolding, railing and calumny than theſe, although 'tis very rare to ſee them come to blows, yet much more rarely do they make uſe of their Weapons. This evil cuſtome of abuſing one another oftentimes is the occaſion of Quarrels with Strangers to whom it ſeems a Novelty.

Their Habit. The ordinary Habit of the Citizens, is firſt an upper Coat of a dark green, red, brown or violet-colour'd Silk, open before and on the ſides, and garniſhed with loops, having behind great Capes, almoſt like old-faſhioned Cloaks in the *Low-Countreys*: Under that they wear another coat of Say or Silk, with a high and ſtiff Collar, theſe have long ſleeves which are tied up round with loops and ſtand Cooks in good ſtead to remove hot Pots and Cauldrons from the fire: Thoſe that have, an intent or deſign to ſteel or murther, uſually have an iron Bullet, or ſome other hard and ponderous thing where-

with

with they knock their party down at unawares. Under this they wear yet another Coat which nevertheleſs is not very cloſe, for they affect looſneſs as well in their Habit as in their life. Their ſhirts they tuft with Silk on the back, as alſo the Necks, which the Gentry adorn with Pearls, Gold, Silver, or Precious ſtones. In Summer the Citizens wear white Felts, in Winter Caps turned with Beaver or ſome other Furs, and the *Kneeſes*, *Bojars* and other Perſons of the greateſt quality Black Fox and Sables. The Habit of the Women is not ſo much different from that of their Men, as they differ from each other, agreeable to the Quality of the Perſon. They wear generally Caps turned with Sables or other Furs but greater than the Mens, ſet with Pearls and Rubies upon the Crown, under which they let their Hair hang in its full length, theſe are thoſe of higher Rank and Quality; thoſe of meaner Condition have them only turned with red Fox. The Young-women when they grow Marriageable, have their hair knotted up above the crown of the Head in a round ball, but under the age of 10 or 12 years have their Heads all ſhaven, except only two Tufts that hang down on each ſide ſo that they can hardly be diſtinguiſhed from Boys in their Habit, only the Girls are known by the great rings which hang at their Ears. On this manner the Gentry and Citizens are attired, but the Peaſantry as poorly as thoſe of *Liſeland*, and much after the ſame manner. Their Upper-garment is ordinarily of ſheeps-skins, with a Cap of the ſame ſtuff; their Boots and Shooes are made of the Barks of Trees cunningly plated. MAR. 1669.

Painting of faces in uſe among the Ruſſian Women.

The Women are by nature well proportioned, and fair enough to boot if they did not paint, which they do ſo botchingly that every one may diſcern it. *Spaniſh* Wool and Tincture of Brazil-wood it ſeems they do not yet know the uſe of, but inſtead of that uſe Vermilion and *Minium*, and for Flake, a dull White-Lead, or Ceruſe at beſt.

Of their Marriages.

The Reader may obſerve that their manner of Marriages is far different from that in the *Low-Countreys*, and all *Europe* elſewhere a Young-man having fixed his eie upon ſome Maid with whom he could be content to enter into a nuptial ſtate, he Courts her and Solicits by Friends to make an Overture. A *Ruſſian* Youth inclinable to admitt himſelf into the conjugal number detects his purpoſe and deſire to his Parents, or neareſt in Conſanguinity, who thereupon

MAR. 1669. go about and seek out a Virgin suiting his Degree and Condition, whom having found, they apply themselves to her Parents or Guardians, to treat about the subject; where neither the Young man nor any near Relation of his are to see the Bride, in sum the Purchase is like a *Pig in a Poke*, for all people of fashion keep their Daughters chamber'd, setting always an old Woman to look to her, who is as vigilant in her Office, as a Turn-key at *Wood-street* Counter. And hence it comes that they live in perpetual Jarrs, and contention, when sometimes in hopes of a sweet, well-shaped, and comely Darling, they are chain'd to a stinking, crooked and deformed Hag. This induces me to a Tale of a young Squire, who thinking himself old enough to be a man, intimated his Inclinations to a common Broker, or Match-maker, withall conditioning beforehand that he would not come to any conclusion with the Parents of his Party, till he had by some means or other got a sight of her Face, which the man promised to do; and accordingly goes to an old Couple who had long intreated him to procure a Husband for their Daughter: this said Couple he acquaints with the business who no less joyfull to understand it pray'd him to hasten the Match: now you are to understand by the way that their daughter had but one eie, which made some difficulty in the carrying on the matter, by reason that the Young man would not venture upon the purchase, unless he saw what kind of a Bargain he had: However the Broker gives her instructions, how to behave her self in passing by the House where this Youngman was to be, and bad her look alwaies on one side, which she did. The young man peeping through a crevise, saw her have a good half face, assents to the Articles and Propositions whatsoever they should be, but comming before the Altar, was so concerned that he took an Ax and clove his own head.

They have many quaint Ceremonies about Marriage: those of the highest Rank use these following Rites. The Bridegroom and Bride have each of them one to attend them, to prepare and provide all necessaries, these they call *Swachas*. The day before the Wedding the Brides *Swacha* goes to the Bridegrooms House to provide and furnish the Brides Chamber and Bed with what else is requisite, being attended with 60, 80, or perhaps 100 Persons according to the degree and ability of the Parties. These all go in their under-cloaths, bearing each

each ſomething upon their Heads which will be requiſite at the Mar- MARC.
riage. Having once entred the Chamber ſhe takes the Bed and ſpreads 1669.
it upon 40 ſmall Garbs of Ry, which is firſt brought thither by her Husband, together with a great number of little Barrels, containing ſeveral ſorts of Grain, ſet up and down the Room, which perhaps will ſignify Fruitfullneſs in procreation. The next morning the Bridegroom goes to the Houſe of the Bride accompanied with the Prieſt who is to marry them, where they are kindly received by the Friends of the Bride, and invited to ſit down, and here they have 3 ſorts of Diſhes brought before them, which they nevertheleſs touch not. Here the Bridegroom is to tarry ſo long diſcourſing with the Friends of the Bride, till ſhe ſends a Servant to introduct him into her Chamber, where being come ſhe is brought in, ſtately apparrel'd, and ſet by his ſide, but he not ſuffered to look her in the Face, nor ſhe him, and when they cannot withhold their curioſity but offer to look aſide, as longing to ſee that dear Viſage, which ever after they may mutually do with more freedom than any other in the World, there is a Flag or Tablet of red Silk ſet between them, to hinder it. When they are ſet the Brides *Swacha* plates the Hair of the Bride, and ſets a Gold or Silver Coronet upon her Head, richly ſet with Precious ſtones and Gems, to which are fixed two long Pendants of Diamonds, or (if it be Perſons of a lower Calibre) of baſer ſtones, theſe hang down to their Breaſts. So ſoon as the Bride is dreſs't, the Bridegrooms *Swacha* likewiſe combs his head; upon which all the Women fall a dancing. After they have danc'd a little, there come in two young men with a Basket of White bread and a great Cheeſe upon a Barrow, covered with Sables, which is conſecrated by the Prieſt and ſent to the Church. When this Ceremonie is ended, they bring a great Silver Charger, and ſet it upon the Table, in which are laid ſome pieces of *Atlas*, and *Taf*, with ſeveral Square plates of Silver, as alſo a handfull of Hops, Barley and Oats, mixt together: upon that that the *Swacha* ariſes and covers the Face of the Bride, and ſtrows the mentioned things out of the Charger amongſt the Gueſts, when as thoſe that are minded may take up the pieces of Silver. When that is done the Parents of the Parties interchange the Rings of the young people.

When theſe Ceremonies are ended, the *Swacha* ſets the Bride in a Riding

MAR. 1669. Riding-ſledge which is richly accoutred and ſet out with Cloth of Gold, and Fringes ſuitable: The Horſe is alſo covered with coſtly Trappings and rich Furrs. Then follows the Bridegroom, accompanied with the Prieſt both on Horſe-back, and after them the Friends on both ſides. When they enter the Church the Bridegroom takes his Place which is covered with Taffataf, whither alſo the Bride is brought. When they are ſet together there are ſeveral Images of Saints ſet up before them, upon which the Prieſt pronounces a Bleſſing: and afterward taking the Bridegroom by the right hand, and the Bride by the left, asks, *Are you content to enter the ſtate of Matrimony together?* The Parties then anſwering, *Yea*, the Prieſt ſings the 128 Pſalm, which they likewiſe mutter out after him. This done the Prieſt ſets a Garland upon their Head, uttering theſe Words, *Increaſe and multiply, what GOD joyns together let no man ſeperate.* Then all the Friends light their Torches, and the Prieſt takes a Glaſs of Red Wine into his Hand, which he delivers over to the Bridegroom and Bride to drink off, then taking the empty Glaſs from them delivers it to the Bridegroom who throws it down and the Bride ſtamps it with her foot to powder, ſaying, *So may they fall before our feet, and be crushed to powder, who go about to ſet us at enmity together.* Upon that the Married Women ſtrow them with Hemp, wiſhing them Proſperity and a happy union. Theſe Ceremonies being ended they return home again after the ſame manner that they went to Church. So ſoon as they have entred the Houſe, the Bridegroom goes and takes his ſeat at the Table where he receives, and bids all his Gueſts welcom but the Bride is brought directly into her Chamber where the *Swacha* undreſſes her to the Shift and lays her down upon the bed, The Bride being thus laid ſends to call her Bridegroom by two of her Servants with Torches in their Hands. Immediately upon his entring the Chamber, ſhe jumps out of the Bed and puts on a Gown fur'd with Sables, and giving him the hand goes out with him, but her Servants in the mean time put out their Torches by running them into one of the litle Barrels [mentioned in Pag. 142] Thus hand in hand they go to the Table where all the Gueſts ſit. The firſt Diſh which is brought up is a roaſted Pullet, this the Bridegroom himſelf is to carve and throws ſome part thereof over his Shoulder which the Brides *Swacha* catches in a Napkin, and keeps for a Monument. When the Meal is done

done the Bridegroom takes his Bride by the hand and so leading her to her chamber they go to bed, upon which all are to go out of the Chamber, and the Musick which sits before the Window expecting Notice of it imediately fall a playing, and upon that a noise of Trumpetters begin to sound, and sometimes the Kettel-Drums to beat. After they have been about an hour in Bed the *Swachas* come and conduct them to the Bath, where they are both bathed and washed with Wine, Water and Metheglin, dulcified with odorous flowers and spices, and, as the custome is at *Moscou*, the Bride presents her Bridegroom with a Bathing shirt. After they have bathed they come and accompany their Guests, who all the time were merry at Table, in which Humors they continue sometimes a Week, or 10 days, before they depart to their respective Lodgings. MARC. 1669.

The foregoing Ceremonies are such as those of the best rank use, by which you may perceive more vanity than Reason in this Folk: However I think we have no great cause to hiss at them for their folly, since we have as many insignificant Rites amongst our selves, which are with them equally senceless and as plain puerility, as theirs may be esteemed by us.

But as for the Plebeians and Pesantry theirs is after a different manner. The day before the Marriage is to be solemnized, the Bridegroom sends a Kinsman of his own to the Brides House with new apparel, a Cap, a pair of boots, a Comb and a Box of painting and other materials for Rigging. The day following comes the Priest and gives the benediction: which done, he brings them a Looking-glass requiring them to look into it both at once. In the mean while the *Swachas* strow the Guests with Hops wishing that the Bride may be as fruitfull and increase her stock; as that *hopefull* Weed. After that comes another who presents the Bride with a Sable or Beaver-skin, withall wishing her so many Children as there are *Hairs* upon the Hide. These Ceremonies ended at home they go to Church, and are married. in manner as before.

After the Wedding is past, the Women keep at home for some time together, not daring to stirr out.

MAR. 1669.

CHAP. VI.

Divorcement among the Ruſſes *and the ſundry occaſions thereof. Their Superſtition about Cleanneſs and Uncleanneſs. Baths, and the uſe of the ſame. The Hardineſs and Patience of the* Ruſſes *in ſuffering the Extremities of Heat, or Coldneſs. Some ſtrange cuſtomes among the* Ruſſes. *Solemnities at the Burial of their Dead.*

SO much, kind Reader, may ſerve by way of account about their Marriages, as to what I have obſerved my ſelf, although I am ſenſible ſome have written otherwiſe and deſcribed theſe Solemnities much different to what I have found them, yet rather willing to ſee with my own eies than with anothers, ſo I thought fit likewiſe, rather to give you theſe few Memorials with my own pen than (as ſome Plagiaries of late have done) tranſcribe out of others.

Divorcement among the Ruſſes. If we regard the forementioned Manner of their procuring Wives, without any former ſight or converſation, Reaſon will inform us, that they muſt needs live diſcontented Lives, which oftentimes turn to Divorcement at laſt. Divorcements are with them very frequent and thoſe obtained upon very eaſy terms; for when either partie finds themſelves too weak at blows, and not able to repugn the other, 'tis only to ſhave and betake themſelves to a Cloyſter, whence they may never be brought out by any legal mean. The Man ſo going into a Cloyſter is capable of Holy Orders, after a certain Term of years, if he be accordingly qualified. They are alſo divorced when either Party is convict of Fornication, and the Offender confined to a Monaſtery. Barrenneſs is alſo the Occaſion of Divorcement, upon which the Wife becomes a Nun, and the Husband may marry again within ſix Weeks.

But thoſe who marry again after once Divorced are for ever after excluded the Church, yet may enter the Porch or Gallery, but if they be divorced a ſecond time and married a third, they are totally Excluded the Church and Congregation.

They have ſeveral ſuperſtitious Ceremonies concerning purity, as to the outward, and carry themſelves very ſtrictly according to the Traditions of the Church. They hold it not for ſo hainous a Sin

to

to perform the Works of Unchaſtity with a Woman, as to do it in preſence of an Image, or having their Croſs about them, for that they lay off upon ſuch Occaſions, and if it be in the Room where an Image hangs, they draw a Curtain before it, as if they were ſure that that Image was an Informer, and one that got Bread and Butter for telling School-tales. MARC. 1669.

They are very obſerving of their Duty in the great Faſt at which time if any man among them chance to ſleep, he is forbidden to communicate, during the Term of a year and 9 days. If it be a Prieſt he is ſuſpended from Office and Benefice for a whole year; but if a Proponent, he is rendred incapable of taking any ſacred Function upon him ſo long as he lives.

They hold it for a Crime unpardonable for a *Ruſſian* to marry with a Stranger, but to commit Adultery with a Heretic-Woman only Venial and pardonable in it's own nature, but if a Woman of that nation become Proſtitute to another of a different Opinion to their own, it is not accounted ſo hainous, by reaſon that the Offſpring may be educated in their Religion, and conſequently tends to the Increaſe of the Church, for they have a Maxim contrary to that of *S. Paul*, *Ne faciamus mala ut eveniant bona*, Let us not do Evil that Good may come of it.

Theſe external ſuperſtitions of purification are the main reaſon that every perſon that is of any Conſiderable Ability, has a Bathing-tub in his Houſe, which in *Turky* and *Perſia* are equally made uſe of for Purification and Health. They have alſo Common Baths in every Town and Village, whither both Men and Women, without any diſtinction have recourſe; running in and out naked, only ſome of the Women for Modeſty ſake have a few Bur-dock leaves about their middle, which are firſt dried and afterward laid to ſteep in Oil of Olives, which afterwards they rub their Bodies with, in the Sweating-tub. They can indure extremity of Heat and Cold to a Miracle, for I have ſeen them run out of the Water, which I could not ſuffer my finger in, and of a ſudden over Head and Ears in Snow, where they would lay a quarter or half an Hour and then into the Bath again, that remained ſcalding hot, which if one ſhould do who is not hardned to it from the very Cradle, he were ſure to leave his skin behind him. Beſides the ſeveral Inſtances I have already given you,

MARC. 1669. I have ſeen the Children walking over the Ice, without either Boots, Shoes or Stockings, and that in ſuch piercing cold Weather that we could not go out of Doors.

The *Dutch* Merchants that have their Reſidence at *Moſcou*, have alſo (conformable to the manner of the Countrey) their Baths, which they ſtrow with odoriferous Spices and Flowers, and make frequent uſe thereof. When they have bathed ſo long as they think good, they have a Retiring-room in which is a Sweating-tub or Stove, whither they go and rub themſelves.

The *Ruſſians* as they differ from all other Nations as well in Religion as in Habit, ſo they have ſeveral Cuſtomes, Geſtures and Actions proper ſolely to themſelves. Their Shirt they wear above their Breches and tie it above the Waſt with a Girdle, like their upper Garments; When they Whiſtle they do it through their Teeth, not with their lips, ſaying, that in ſo doing they abuſe their true ſhape in which GOD has formed them: When they are ſurprized either with Wonder, or a ſudden Danger, they do not throw back their Head, like the *Hollanders*, nor ſhrink up their Shoulders, as do the *Spaniards*, but throw their Head firſt upon one Shoulder, and then upon another, or perhaps turn it round, as a Fencer flouriſhes his Rapier, or an Enſign his Colours in token of Victory.

When they pray they do it not upon their knees as we do, thinking that GOD is diſpleaſed with ſuch an irregular poſture: and when they write they never make uſe of a Table, altho they have one at their elbow, but alwaies upon their knees; and what they write is altogether in Rolls, paſſing one ſheet to another as they write them. Fatneſs they hold for a prime token of Beauty, as alſo long fore head and eies for which they pull and draw as much as they can to correct nature, which in things of ſmaller moment they ſeem to abhor and deteſt, if a property of other People.

Ceremonies in Viſitation of their Sick. About the Sick and Burial of their Dead the *Ruſſes* have theſe following Cuſtomes. When any lies Sick, and by his Friends thought in danger of long Continuance or Death, they ſend for a Prieſt who adminiſters the Communion to him, he firſt confeſſing the moſt noted Sins he can remember that he has done in his life time, to the Prieſt alone, adding a Promiſe and Reſolution to live a pious and devout Life, if GOD grant him recovery. When he has communicated, they

they ſhave, anoint and put him in a Monks-hood, which they call the *Seraphic Weed*: After which they adminiſter no more Phyſic to him, but commend him to the Grace of GOD. Now if it happen that he recover, he is obliged to abandon Wife, Children and Eſtate for ever, and betake himſelf to a Monaſtery, where he is to ſpend the remainder of his days. *MARC. 1669.*

But if our Patient dy, then all the Neighbours and Friends come together to bewail the deceaſed asking the Corps, how he came to dy, and for what reaſon, for what defect or want, like thoſe of *Madagaſcar*, remembred in my firſt Voyage. I remember that having occaſion to viſit a Countreyman of mine upon a Munday morning I entred the Houſe, where the Maſter was dead and the Corps laid out, above a ſcore of old Women, were ſet round about him, and ſpeaking to him as if they expected ſome anſwer from him; but above all, his Wife began to howl and yell aloud, who in his life time wiſhed him a thouſand times in Hell, for he behaved himſelf very ſeverely towards her. *Oh*, quoth ſhe, *Timminni Do Shinca* [for that was his name] *my Deareſt, how haſt thou left me thus? What failing didſt thou diſcover in me? Did I ever neglect to paint my ſelf? Have I not brought forth a fair Iſſue? Hadſt not thou all things at Command? Metheglin I am ſure we had always in plenty, nay, and Brandy too. What then perſwaded thee to leave me deſolate and forlorn, Oh remember the diſconſolate ſtate of Widdow-hood and return to the merry World*, &c. Theſe, and many other fooliſh expreſſions by way of Interrogation, ſhe accoſted him with, which made me at firſt to think that he was not fully dead. So ſoon as the Party is departed they open the Windows, and ſet Baſons of Holy-water, together with ſeveral Diſhes of meat beſide the Body, to relieve his Wants on ſo long and tedious a Journey, as do the *Circas Tartars*; which ſeems to be the Reliques of Heatheniſm, not long ſince profeſſed in many parts of *Ruſſia*. Imediately upon his departure they ſend Brandy, and Beer, with other Liquors and Preſents to the Prieſt, who is to pray for his Soul. The Body they waſh from Head to foot, as doe the Jews, then winding it in a ſheet, put it into a Coffin which is hollowed out of a Tree, and ſo carried to Church, where they beſprinkle it with holy Water, and perfume it with Incenſe, which done they ſay Maſs, and with ſeveral Hymns commit it to the Ground. *Ceremonies and Queſtions propounded to the dead.*

But if a Perſon die without adminiſtration of the Extreme Unction,

MAR. 1669. be Murthered, or Frozen to death, or die by any unnatural or violent means, whether caſual, or thereto condemned to ſatisfy Juſtice, the Corps is not permitted to enter the Sanctuary, but carryed to a place to that end appointed, which they call *Zemiski Precaus*, where it is expoſed to public view, and if it be a perſon unknown, is to remain there 3 or 4 days to ſee if any will own the Body, which if none come to claim it is immediately carried to another Place without Town, which they call *Boghze Dome*, that is *Gods Houſe*, and there thrown into a great Pit, where ſometimes a Hundred or more Bodies lie on a Heap uncovered, till about Midſummer, at what time, the Prieſts go and cover them, with a few Rites and Ceremonies.

The Ceremonies which are uſed in ſome places in *Ruſſia* differ from others. About *Moſcou* the Corps is follow'd by a Train of Gentlewomen who are neareſt in Conſanguinity or Affinity, who with a great Noiſe and Howling bewail the early departure of their Friend, then preſently all are ſilent, that not one is ſo much as heard to whiſper, or give a Sigh, and then on a ſudden elevate their Voice and yell out like ſome of the more bruitiſh and ſavage *Irish*.

On each ſide the Herſe go the Prieſts, Chaplains and Monks, bearing Images, Torches, and a Thurible, or Incenſe-pan, which is all the while waved to and again, to expell Evil Ghoſts which they believe ſtill haunt the Body of the Deceaſed. After the Corps follow the Friends and Acquaintance, without any order, each carrying a Wax-tapour in the Hand. When they come to the Grave, the Coffin is opened and the Incenſe pan ſwing'd 3 times over the Corps in remembrance of the H. Trinity, and then the Image of that Saint which he in his Life time made choice of for his Patron, is thrown into the Coffin with him, upon which all his Relations come near and take their laſt view of him, kiſs the Coffin and go backward. When the Friends have ſo taken their leave the Prieſt delivers him a Letter ſuperſcribed to Saint *Nicholas*, containing a hearty recommendation of the Deceaſed. A copy of one of theſe came once to my hand which before I had Tranſcribed it out, was taken from me by a Prieſt being the Brother of the Gentleman who lent it me, for it is not lawfull for a *Ruſſian* himſelfe to know the Contents, much leſs for a Heretic. The Paraphraſe of the Fragment was after this Manner,

Great

Great and Powerful Saint,
Beloved of Men and Angels.

Our immaculat Brother, and Partaker of Mortality, *who leaves us in this World, more worthy than to dwell among ſt men below, deſires to be commended to thy Tuition, whom we heartily commit to thy Protection and Care. Receive him we intreat thee, Oh Wonderfully Great, and Powerfull Saint, and let him reſt with immortal and glorious* Angels. *Piety was his Joy, Shrift his Delight. Earth what he hated, and Heaven the Object of his love; prayers were his Exerciſe and*——

This fragment is all I can give you of the Letter, which as I told you was taken from me. The body being interred they return home, where they junket and drink till they forget their Sorrow. This feaſt dures ſometimes a Moneth or 40 days, according to the ability of the Perſon: among others it is not cuſtomary to make one long Feaſt at the Funeral, but an anniverſary Meal, and celebrate that ſame day every year in remembrance of the Deceaſed.

CHAP. VII.

The Religion and Church-Government of the Ruſſians. *The Patriarch and his Office. Of their Sacraments, &c.*

THE *Moſcovians* are profeſſedly Chriſtians, but tainted with many ſuperſtitious Ceremonies about Imagery and other Relicts of Gentiliſm; which the good Emperour *Baſilius* about the year 989. rooted out of his Empire, baptizing himſelf, and cauſing all his Subjects to do the like. They boaſt mainly of their Continuance and Conformity with the Primitive Church, which they ſay is ſtill the ſame in purity without the ſtains of Innovation, as indeed in many things it ſeems to be nearer than the Church of *Rome*, aſwell in matter of Faith as Government of the Church. *The Religion and Church-Government of the* Ruſſians.

The

MAR. 1669. The Church of *Moscovia* has like that of *Rome*, one supreme Head, who is the Patriarch. Under the Patriarch are 4 Metropolitans, 4 Arch-Bishops, besides many other Bishops, Abbots and the Inferior Clergy. The Patriarch is almost Sovereign in Spiritual Affairs, having an absolute and immediate power without any appendency on the Temporal Government unless it be in case of inducing Heresy, upon which he must Submit to a Synod, as in the year 1662, a General Council was called, and the Patriarch summoned to make his appearance; at what time he was impeached for Innovations, and indevouring to alienate the present condition of the Church and reform it's Government by diminishing Image-worship, which he held for litle better than Idolatry. After many days sitting that Council thought fit to confine him to his Mansion-House, and ordain the First Metropolitan in his room, who was then living when I was at *Moscou*. The Revenues of the Patriarch, as also of the Metropolitans, are very great, out of which they are obliged to levy and Maintain an Army of 15000 men, during the time of War.

The Habit of the Patriarch, and the Metropolitans differ but litle. The Patriarch has always a great Crosier born before him, or a litle one in his hand and sometimes both, this they call a *Posok*. Mitres they wear only upon Convocations or high Assemblies, and upon solemn Occasions. Abroad they are distinguished by a high Cap, flat at top like the *Switzers*, or Yeomen of the Guard. Next their Bodie they wear a Cassoc, and above that a long Gown or rather a Pall, which is born up by two Gentlemen. The Inferior Clergy and Priests wear a Cap but not so high as that of the Superiors. This Cap is given them when they are ordained by the Bishops, at what time they shave their Heads, and suffer it to grow no more, save in two litle tufts just above their ears.

There is a Law among them that whosoever beats one of those Clerks so, that his cap fall to the ground, he is liable to a very severe penalty (if I well remember to loose his hand) which nevertheless happens frequently in the *Cabac*: but to prevent the worst when a Layman is minded to beat one of those Mushrooms, he first takes off his Cap and then trounces him off so long as he will, which done he sets the Cap upon the right Block again.

The

The Clergy are not forbidden Marriage, nor none that serve at the Altar, but on the contrary are obliged to marry, and that only once, gathering that from the Saying of S. *Paul*. *A Bishop ought to be the Husband of one Wife*. Nor is it lawfull for him to marry a Widow. If a Priests wife come to die before him, he is not only injoyned by the Church to remain a Widdower, but also to leave the Altar, yet not wholly to lay down the Priestly Function, for he may sit in the Chore or Chauntry and assist at Mattins and Vespers, as also at Administration of the Sacraments, as far as it is done without the Verge of the Altar. For this reason the Priests are best matched, as usually making much of their Wives, and treating them more gently than the Laity generally do, lest by hard usage they should drive them into melancholy, and consequently send them too early out of the World, which sends them as suddenly from the Altar. MAR. 1669. *Of the Marriage of the Clergy.*

Baptism they hold forth as a Sacrament very necessary, for which reason they make as litle delay as may be between the Womb and the Font. If they fear the Child be weak they have it Baptized at home, but never in the same Room where it is born, for that they hold unclean. The Consponsors or God-fathers being come to the Church Porch, the Priest meets them and repeats the Benediction. The Godfathers deliver 9 Wax-candles to the Priest, which he places round about the Font afterwards turning about toward the East mutters out a Versicle or two, then taking the Incens-pan goes round about the Font, which done he sings a Psalm or Hymn, making a brief Oraizon, and after that demands the name of the Infant which is delivered him in writing. So soon as he has read the Billet, askes, whether the Child beleeves in the Sacred Trinity? and, Whether he utterly Forsake the Devil, &c. To which they confidently reply in the Affirmative. Then the Priest pronounces this Adjuration, *Get thee hence, thou unclean Spirit, and make way for the Holy Ghost*, Then he takes the child into his Arms, blowing three times in his Face, and making a cross upon his Head, dips it three times in Water, Saying, *I baptize thee in the Name of the* FATHER, *and of the* SON, *and of the* HOLY GHOST. Having thus plunged the Infant, he puts some Salt into it's mouth, anointing the Fore head, Breast and Hands with consecrated Oil, and then draws a clean white shirt over it's Body, which done he saith, *Now thou art cleansed from thy Sins*. Last *Of Baptism.*

MARC. 1669. of all he hangs a Cross about it's neck of Gold, Silver, Tin, or Ivory, with the Image of some Saint, to whose Patronage he is specially committed and commended, and so the Sum of this Sacrament is performed. The Water is thrown away into a Cave of the Earth, because it is impure. If any Person be so far besotted, as to become a Proselyte and embrace their Religion, he must renounce his former Baptism, and be rebaptized after their manner, first spitting 3 times over his shoulder in token of Abhorrency of his former Errors.

Their Communion, The Sacrament which we call *Cœna Domini*, or the *L. Supper* they hold forth likewise as necessary to Salvation, receiving it in both kinds, yet not as is usual among those of the Reformation, for they break the Bread into the Wine, which the Communicant takes with a spoon. This Sacrament is also administred to Children, and all under the Notion of Transubstantiation, altho not in so full a Sence as the *Romanists*. The Sick do likewise partake of this Sacrament, which is given them upon their Death-bed, as the Host in the Church of Rome.

Auricular Confession, *Confession* is also a Sacrament held forth by them, and is much after the manner of the Church of *Rome*, and are injoyned to Penance according to the Nature and Degree of the Sin, which they obey wondrous well, and if the Crime be very Hainous, they wash themselves at the *Epiphany*.

and Fasts. They have also their weekly and annual Fasts; Four times in the year happens the latter, in which they show themselves outwardly zealous, agreeable to the literal Injunction of the Church; but are at no time so loose and wanton as then, passing away the time in Drinking, Dancing, Gaming Whoreing, and what not? No time, nay all the time in the year round affoards not more news of Murther: and since the Main Fast happens in the Winter, there are many so far besotted that they are not able to find the way home, but dropping asleep by the way are so frozen to death; whence (if they escape the Wolf and Bear) they are carried to the *Zemski Precaus*, and from thence to the *Bogzi Dome*, of which we have already made mention.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

The Jurisdiction of the Czaar, *his Titles, Revenues and strict Justice.*

ALl *Russia* together with the several Kingdoms and Principalities is subject to one Sovereign Monarch, whom they call * *Czaar*. The name of the Emperour when I was there, was *Alexie Michailowitz Romanow*, that is, *Alexius, Son of Michael, Roman*; for so they use that Patronymic *Roman*, from *Ivan Basilowitz*, or *Joannes Basilides*, who was a *Roman* by descent, and of Imperial Lineage. The Arms of the Emperour are as follows. *MARC. 1669. Jurisdiction of the Czar.* * *From the Greek Word Kaisar, Cæsar.*

Sol, an Eagle displayed with 2 necks, *Saturn*, in chief a Mitre Imperial *Mars*, On the Nombril, on an Escutcheon *Jupiter*, the Chevalier *Saint George*, armed proper, and mounted on a Horse *Luna*, under his feet a Dragon *Venus*.

The *Czaar* is absolute Sovereign and Lord, conferring Dignities and Honours, Subordaining Ministers of State and Officers whether Civil or Military, Coining Money, raising and lessening the Value of the same. Making Peace and Proclaiming War at his own discretion, and in short whatsoever any King in the World can claim as Prerogative. His Title is as follows.

ALEXIUS Michailowitz Romanow, *by the grace of* GOD *Emperour of the* Greater, Less *and* White Russia, *Lord of* Moscou, Kief, Wolodimera *and* Novogorod, Czaar *of* Casan, Czar *of* Astrachan, Czar *of* Syberia, *Lord of* Pletskow, *Great Duke of* Smolensko, Tweer, Jugoria, Permia, Weatka, Bulgaria, &c. *Lord and Great Duke of* Novagarada *within the Low-Countreys of* Zernigou, Rhesan, Rostof, Jerislaw, Belooseria Udoria, Obdoria, Condinia, *and absolute Sovereign of the Northern parts as also of* Iveria, Cartalinia, Grasinia, Carbadinia, Kirkassia *and* Georgia, *and of many other Provinces and Dominions in the East, West and North, Hereditary Lord and Soveraign,*

MARC. 1669. Imperial Revenues.

As the Titles of the Prince are great, ſo his Revenues are conformable. The *Kabacks* or Taverns are altogether farmed through the Empire of the Emperour himſelf, whereof there are 3 at *Novogorod* which bring up yearly Ten Thouſand Gilders, and ſo all others according to proportion. The Impoſition upon Iron, Corn, Salt, Tar, Furs and other Commodities are very conſiderable. If ſo the Revenues of this Prince be Great, ſo likewiſe his Court is as ſumptuous, and Houſe-keeping very Royal, beſides the vaſt Charges in maintenance of the *Strelitzers*, who are exactly and duly paid.

Of their Juſtice.

Their Laws, as we have elſewhere ſaid, are very rigorous againſt Malefactors, and quite different from other Nations. The firſt and lighteſt is the *Battoki*, which is when the Patient is to lie upon his belly, then come two men, one ſitting down upon his Neck and the other upon his Leggs, who beat him till the Judge or Officer commands them to hold up. The *Knutten* is a Puniſhment of a higher degree, and ſuch as uſually thoſe that ſell Brandy, Metheglin or Tobacco without a ſpecial Licenſe from the *Czar*, are puniſhed with, and is after this manner: The Executioners Servant takes the patient and ſtrips him from the middle downwards, and takes him upon his back, which done the Executioner with a ſcourge of Thongs made of a raw Elks-hide dried gives him a certain number of ſtripes, according to a Ticket which is delivered him immediately before he takes the ſcourge in his hand. This puniſhment is exceeding ſevere, and yet not ſufficient to ſuppreſs continual ſmuckling, and ſelling by ſtealth, which the more they are puniſh'd and threatned, the more eager they are to do it. The Executioner and his Office are not there ſo contemptible as with us, for it is ſometimes purchaſed by the moſt wealthy Merchants in the Land. Other Crimes are puniſhed with Chapping off a Hand or a Foot, and ſometimes only a Finger according to the enormity of the crime. Falſe Coiners have liquid mettal poured down their Throats: and Raviſhment of Virgins [or as our Laws call it a *Rape*] is expiated by gelding of the Delinquant, of which if he recover well and good, but it is very rare that any does.

CHAP.

MARC. 1669.

CHAP. IX.

Celebration and Solemnity of Palm-Sunday. The Departure of the Author out of Moscou *to* Astrachan. *Heads and Officers. They set Sail. A heavy storm. Arrival at* Nisen-Novogorod; *Plenty of Provision at* Nisen. *A description of the famous River* Wolga. *Beginning of the* Cerem Tartars. *Their Customs and Nature, Their Idolatrie. Ceremonies about the Dead. Their Habit, Polygamy, &c.*

ON the 18th of April being Palm-Sunday was celebrated a great Feast, wherein was much Triumph and Joy manifested with Arches and Pageants, amongst which was our Savior his manner of riding to *Ierusalem*. This Solemnity was performed with an infinite number of People, and led by the Emperour himself in Person, attended with all the *Bojars* and the greatest personages about Court. The Patriarch sat upon a Horse apparelled all in white, representing the L. Jesus Christ. The *Czar* being supported by two *Bojars*, led the Horse by the Bridle, being richly apparreled, with an Imperial Diadem upon his Head. The Patriarch, as was said before, was arrayed with a long white Stole, with a Hierarchichal Infula or Mitre upon his Head, richly set with Pearls. In his right Hand was a Cross of Gold set with Diamonds and precious stones, with which he signed the Multitude that came thronging to him with great Reverence and Devotion. He sat cross over the Horse, which Horse was set out with splendid Trappings and richly Capparison'd, after the manner of an Ass. On each side the Patriarch went several Bishops; and the Superior Clergy, with white Surplices, Having Thuribles. The Host, the Chalice, the *Pax*, Books, Bells, Tapours and other things used at Mass, besides a great number of Flags. The Way from the palace to the Crescent was all laid with Red-cloath. Here it was where the Patriarch first took Horse: the Horse being there tied to a pale. After the Patriarch follow the *Bojars*, bearing a huge Tree, woven and wound with Silk and Ribbons, as also many sorts of Fruits thereto annexed. Herein sate several litle Children, with Apples, green Twigs and Branches. After all came the Mobile, strowing the way with Branches which they had in their Hands, crying out, *Hosanna Son of David, blessed is he that commeth in the name*

MAR. 1669. *of the Lord, Hoſanna in the Higheſt, &c.* When they were returned to the Creſcent, the Patriarch gave the Benediction to the Multitude and ſo the Proceſſion ended. In the Evening the Patriarch ſent the *Czar* 200 * *Roebels*, for his good ſervice in leading the Horſe. I alſo ſaw their Paſchal Solemnities, at what time they continually kiſs one another at meeting, ſaying, *Chriſt is riſen*, with one delivering a died Egg, and therefore at this time they have many Booths all over the Town where they have Eggs of all colours to ſell. Theſe Ceremonies are ſo univerſally obſerved, that none paſſes the ſtreet without giving and receiving of Eggs of what Condition or Degree ſoever they be. Towards the Evening, they entertain one another, every one in the beſt manner he can, as well Clergy as Laity, and now are all the Taphouſes, or *Kabacks* crouded with men, where they toſs off whole Bowls of Metheglin, Brandy and ſtrong Beer, till they fall together by the Ears.

* A piece of Money valuing about 9*s.* 6*d.*

Their Celebration of Eaſter

Departure from Moſcou to Aſtrachan.

On the 4 of *May*, we departed with a * *Strough* from *Moſcou*, which was laden with Ammunition and proviſion. We were 15 men in all who were ſent down with this Veſſel. We made quick paſſage down the River, for the next day we arrived at *Colomna*, which is 134 *Engliſh* Land-miles by Water, but thwart the Land about 50. This City is well fortified with a ſtrong Wall, and many Turrets. It is ſeated upon the *Moſqua*, having a long Wooden Bridge over that River.

* *A ſmall Veſſel almoſt like a Huy, about* 30 *Tuns burthen.*

Arrival at Colomna.

On the 6 *dito* we came into the River *Oka*, making a deep and broad ſtream where it unites with the *Moſqua*. Here we ſaw a very fair Village called *Dydenof*, by ſome *Gediwo*, and about the Evening we arrived at the Wharf where the Ship *Eagle* lay, having the Imperial Paludiments on her Stern. We were very kindly received by the Heer *Cornelius Roeckhoven* Coll: and Mr. *Lambert* the Maſter, who expreſſed great joy for our arrival. Beſides thoſe were other Officers preferred aboard the Ship, to wit Monſr. *Stark* Lieut. Coll. 2 Captains, a Chirurgeon a Jeweller, an Interpreter, and a Purſer. Their Pay was as follows,

The

The Collonel	100	Rix-dollars	*per* Moneth.
The Lieutenant Collonel	30		
The Captains	40		
The Chirurgeon	20		
The Interpreter	10		
The Purſer	10		
Captain *Butler*	160	Gilders	
The Maſter of the Ship	100		
The Mate	60		
The Carpenter	80		
Carpenters Mate	36		
Foremaſt-men, each	50		
My ſelf	57		

Our whole Company conſiſted in 20 *Dutch.*

On the 12 we ſet Sail from *Dydenof* which was the Wharf where the Ship *Eagle* was built, conducted by the Col. *Boekhoven* about 2 leagues downward. The ſame day in the Afternoon we came to a Town called *Nicholo*, where we found proviſion incredibly cheap. Here I bought ſome Wild-fowl in the Market about as big as Wild-gees, for a * *Kopeke* the Couple, and ſatisfyed my Chapman to the full. MARC. 1669.

* A coin about the value of a Penny.

On the 13 we came to *Omula*, which is a Village about 40 [*English*] Leagues from *Dydenof*. After two days Sailing we came to *Pereſlaf*, which is a ſmall City, rebuilt, as I have been told out of the Ruins of *Reſanski*, which formerly was a famous Town, ſurprized by the *Tartars*, demoliſhed, and the Inhabitants, removed to *Pereſlaf*.

On the 17 we came cloſe to *Reſanski* where we viewed the Ruins of the City, which teſtified the former Greatneſs and Strength of the Town. From hence we ſailed to the Eaſtern ſide of the River, where we ſaw many famous Houſes and ſtately Buildings, with Fair Orchards and Groves.

On the 18 we ſaw many goodly Towns and Religious Houſes, and at night arrived at *Novoſolki*, a Place ſolely belonging to the Arch-Biſhop. Here we bought proviſion, and all kinds of Refreſh-

ments

ments that the place affoarded, finding all things very cheap and good: and from hence we ſailed away paſſing *by Schilko*, *Tericho*, *Tinersho Slavada*, *Koponaw* and other fair Towns.

On the 22 we came to *Kaſſieme-gorod*, a beautifull litle City, and the Reſidence of Prince *Reskitski*. Our Captain and Maſter intended to viſit the ſaid Prince, and for that end came here to Anchor, but coming aſhoar underſtood that he was departed for *Moſcou*, with the old Princeſs his Mother. However they went to view the Palace, and were magnificently entertained by the ſteward, of whom after the Exchange of ſome Rarities on both ſides, by way of Preſents, they took their leaves. *Kaſieme-gorod* has been formerly a Hold of the *Tartars*, but the preſent Prince at the age of 12 years ſurrendred it up to the great Duke of *Moſcovy*, whom he as then obtained to be his Protector.

On the 23 we ſailed paſt many fair Villages, Churches, Monaſteries and other Houſes built for Religious uſes, coming the next morning to anchor before *Leshi*, which is a very great Town, but not walled.

On the 24 we came before *Moruma*, a Town inhabited partly by *Ruſſes* and partly by *Mordwin-Tartars* whoſe Countrey begins here, although both the City *Moruma* and the Circumjacient Land-ſhip is at preſent under ſubjection of his Majeſty of *Ruſſia*.

On the 27 we ſailed by *Prewas Palo* and ſome other leſſer Towns. Near this Place are two Rivers which vent themſelves into the *Wolga*, the one called *Morſna Reka* on the ſtarboard-, and the other *Kleſna* on the larboard-ſide in ſailing downward, which laſt comes from the City *Wolodomur*. The Bank on the one ſide is very high Land, and ſteep, yet above level and fair Land; but to the Northward the Bank is level with the Water, and the Land woody and deſert, nether inhabited nor tilled to any purpoſe.

On the 28 we ſailed paſt *Isbuilets*, and *Troitska*, dropping anchor before *Slowoda*.

A great Storm. On the 24 we ſet Sail and came that day before *Dudwina*, where we were forced to remain 4 days and 4 nights, by reaſon of the tempeſtuous weather.

The boiſtrous Winds and Rain ſomewhat abated we ſet ſail, and on the 3 of *Iune* came before *Noſunki*, and the 8 before the great City

City *Niſen Novogorod*, ſituate on an angle of the great River *Wolga*, which is there conjoined with the *Oka*. IUNE. 1669.

Niſen-gorod lies in the Latitude of 36 *degr.* and 28 *min.* under a wholſome climat, and in a fertile Countrey. It is well fortified with Walls, Bulwarks, Towers, Men and Ammunition of War. About 2 [*English*] miles without the City live more Inhabitants than within, being *Ruſſes* and *Tartars*, but in ſubjection to the great Duke. The *Germans* had formerly built two Churches here, one for the *Lutherans* and another for the *Calviniſts*, both which went to decay upon their leaving the Town. It is here very cheap living, and all things neceſſary for the ſuſtenance of Human Bodies may be procured at eaſy Rates. The Paſtures abound with Cattel the Villages with Poultry, the Woods with Veniſon, the Rivers with Fiſh, and the Land with Corn, Fruit, Roots and Plants. Butter we bought there for 10 *gl.* the 100 *lb.* [which is after the rate of 2^{d} *per* pound] and yet we eſteemed that the deareſt Purchaſe we bought there. We bought there a good ſort of Linnen for 2 *ſtivers* the Ell, which ſerved us well for ſhirting and other uſes aboard the Ship. And by reaſon of the Cheapneſs of Proviſion and all neceſſaries, we received here 6 Moneths pay: and becauſe that they had here an excellent Ropeyard, the Heads of our Company thought good to leave the Lieutenant *Schaek* with our chief Boatswain, to look after ſome Ropes which we had given order to be made, as alſo to fit us with new Anchors. *Niſen-gorod.*

On the 21 *dito* we put off from *Niſen* and left the *Wolga*. This is reputed one of the greateſt and longeſt Rivers in the whole World, taking it's beginning in the higheſt Mountains of *Nova-Zembla*, running paſt *Ieriſlaf*, or *Ieriſlaw*, *Tweer* and other eminent Cities, whence with many Windings and Turnings it runs through the Land till it come at *Aſtrachan*, where it divides it ſelf into ſeveral Heads like the *Nile*, and ſo looſes it ſelf into the *Caſpian* Sea, receiving by the way many great and navigable Rivers, and thoſe moſtly on the North-eaſt ſide: from whence by reaſon that the River receives it's Water, it is ſubject to riſing and falling, as at *Iune* it is at higheſt, and in *Iuly* begins again ſuddenly to decreaſe, inſomuch that it is in all places full of Banks and Sand-beds, as hereafter, in the purſuit of my Journal ſhall more particular and ample mention be made; whereas when it is increaſed to it's heighth, one may ſail over ſeveral *Deſcription of the River Wolga.*

JUNE. 1669. Iſlands. This ſaid River is in ſome places more than 3 [*English*] miles broad, and proving in other places very narrow makeing at each ſide of the River a Whirl-pool, which cannot be avoided without great difficulty. The courſe of this River from *Niſen* to *Caſan* is moſtly East and South-East; but from *Caſan* to *Aſtrachan* and ſo to the *Mare Hyrcanum*, or *Caſpian* Sea altogether South. On each ſide the River you have for the moſt part very good Land and many fair Towns, as I have already noted, whoſe Inhabitants are ſedulous in their Husbandry, and are well ſupplyed with the particular Products of all the ſeveral Landſhips adjacent on this noble River, as alſo with many ſorts of excellent Fiſh. In times paſt the *Wolga* was much incommodated by the *Coſaks* of *Don*, who being very ſtrong in ſmall ſhipping, would ſometimes, ſurprize, aſſail and take the *Ruſſian* Fiſhermen and *Strougs*.

On the 22 we paſſed by the Iſlands *Tlerinski* and *Subſinski*, but towards the Evening were fain to drop anchor, by reaſon of the many Sands and Banks.

On the 23 we weighed but found our Anchor faſt among the Roots of the Trees, which coſt us ſome pains to get clear. About mid-day we got the Iſland *Dioploy*, about 3 in the afternoon *Muſa*, and about the Evening *Kremonsky*, where we anchored.

On the 24 we proceeded forward and got *Parmino*, where we took in Proviſion, which we found very good and of a low Price. From hence we looſed, and ſailed by many pleaſant Iſlands, Towns, and an Excellent proſpect from Land, which was ſtored with Cattel, fruitful Dales, Woods, Meadows, Currents and whatſoever natural Delights that may content the heart of Man.

On the 29 *dito* we came to *VVaſili-gorod* a litle Town on the Weſt ſide of the *Wolga*, and becauſe it was here a level Countrey we tooke the heighth of the *Arctic* Pole, which we found 55 *degr.* and 50 *min.* above the Horizon. This ſaid Town was then without Gates or Walls, and is built moſtly of wood, ſave only Public Edifices, and Religious Houſes, which are there but few, ſince it has not been long in poſſeſſion and ſubject to the *Czar*, or great Duke of *Moſcovy*. On the South-ſide of *VVaſiligorod*, is a litle River called the *Soura*, which here guſhes out with a violent ruſhing and buzzing into the *VVolga*.

Above

Above *Waſiligorod* begins the Land of the *Ceremiſh Tartars* which extends it ſelf out as far as *Caſan*. Thoſe again are divided into two ſorts of People; The one ſort is called *Nagorni*, which are thoſe that inhabit the hilly Countrey, and the other *Lugowy* who dwell moſtly in the Valleys. The former follow altogether Paſturage, the latter Agriculture, for which they have a happy Land, bleſſed with a fertile Soil. The Inhabitants are a rude and barbarous People, utter ſtrangers to good Manners and Learning. They ſpeak for the moſt part the *Ruſſian* Language, but ſome places there are where they ſpeak *Tartarian*, and in other places they have a peculiar Tongue of their own. They are the moſt ſtupid Heathens that I have yet ſeen in all my 3 Voyages, have neither Sence nor light of a Divine Power. Houſes of Worſhip, and Prieſts, Reſurrection, Heaven and Hell are things they never heard of, nor nor will ever learn to know what they are. However I may not be ſo general but that I may except ſome, who have ſome light and knowledge of an immortal God, and ſuch an one as has the direction of all, but only rules them as a King upon Earth does his Subjects. They are further of Opinion that there are Devils or evil Spirits, whoſe power is limited and circumſcribed, and that they cannot do any miſchief ſave only in this Life, for theſe doubt much about the Reſurrection, and for this end they do Sacrifices to them as do the *Madagaſcars* that they ſhould do them no harm. They tell you of a ſtrange Water by the means whereof the Prince of the Devils comes in horrible and moſt ugly ſhapes, for which they dread, as Children do Bugbears they never ſaw. To that Immortal Deity and divine Eſſence they offer up all manner of Beaſts as Oxen, Horſes, and Sheep, which when they do, they take the Hide and ſtretch it out upon a Rack made on purpoſe, making thereby a Fire, over which they hang the Fleſh to boil, When it has ſeethed long enough, they take out a Bowl of the Pottage in the one hand, and a Bowl of Metheglin in the other, and throw them both upon the Hide, upon which it falls into the Fire, ſaying, *Accept, O God, this Offering at my Hands, and be pleaſed to hear my Praiers*; which Praiers do commonly import their own Health, or the increaſe of their Cattel. So that their main Opinion about that God, is only that he is a good-natur'd and benevolent Lord, and the Devil malevolent, which is all that may be gathered from them. Others I have ſeen who worſhip the Sun, JUNE. 1669.

JUNE. 1669. Fire, and Water. Ceremonies about the Dead I could never perceive any, ſave only that when any eminent Man among them comes to dy they make a Feaſt of Horſe-fleſh, at which all the neareſt Relations are preſent, and the Corps given to a ravenous Beaſt called *Briggachol*, which I have not elſewhere ſeen: That done they hang up his Veſtments upon a Tree in memory of him, as we do Eſcutcheons, and this was all I could learn of my ſelf, or from the Obſervations of others that had been longer and further within Land. Their Habit is as courſe as their Breeding, moſtly of Skins or a kind of Canvas. Their Upper-coat comes down only to the Thighs, and their Breeches and Stockings all one. Thoſe that are married ſhave their Heads, but whilſt ſingle they let their hair grow, but all in one Tuft, which they commonly ty up in a ball above their head, or plate it, as our Jockies do their Horſe-tails. The Women wear alſo courſe Garments having their faces muffled up to the eies: but more quaint is the Habit of a Young-woman ready to marry, who beſides other od accoutrements wears a piece of Wood, ſhaped like a horn directly upon her Fore-head, about an Ell in length, and at the ſmall end a litle Bell. Circumciſion they have not yet learn'd from the *Turks* or *Iews*, nor yet Baptiſm from the Chriſtians; but have ſome few Ceremonies about the naming of their Children, which is done when they are about half a year old. Polygamy is in uſe among them, and that without any order or regard to nearneſs in Blood, for it has been well known that the Father takes the Daughter and ſo procreates Iſſue, and the Son the Mother, after the manner of the *Cingaleezes* in *Ceylon*, where the Father about marrying his daughter out, bereaves her of her Virginity, ſaying, *Should I plant a Tree and not enjoy the Firſt-fruits my ſelf?*

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Ship ſet faſt upon a Foord. The great Utility of the Linden-tree. Some of the Company drowned. Fertility and excellent Soil of the Banks of the Wolga. *Arrival at* Caſan. Caſan *taken in by the* Ruſſes. *The* Caſan-Tartars *fight the* Ruſſes. *The* Ruſſian *Army flee.* Moſcou *taken in. The* Czar *becomes Tributary to the* Tartars. *The good Conduct and valour of the Governour of* Reſan, *who reſtores the* Czar *and the Empire to it's former Freedom.*

ON the 30 *dito* we ſet out again, and ſuddenly were run aground upon a Shallow place, where we were very hardly put to it to get off, and beſides our great Labour we loſt an Anchor and a Dragg. We were no ſooner got clear but we ran immediately upon another Bank, and ſo from one to another that we were almoſt out of hopes of ever coming through, for we ſaw danger on every ſide, and our Pilot very unskilfull of the River, which detarded our Voyage very much. IUNE. 1669.

The next day we gain'd the Deeps, and came before *Cuſmademianski* where we caſt anchor and provided our ſelves with Victualling and Refreſhment. This City is founded upon a riſing ground having on the one ſide high and ſteep Mountains, and on the other ſide a level Countrey. The Land round about as well the montanous as the flat affoard many Woods and Groves of * Linden, on Teile-tree. The Bark of this tree is good for many uſes, and therefore pilled and ſold by the Inhabitants, the Body they hollow, and make Tubs, Troughs, Pales and other Veſſels thereof: which is the only Traffic and Work I know of in uſe amongſt them.

* *The ſame, as I take it, which* Pliny *and other Naturaliſts call* Tilia *or* Φλοιὸς, *the inner Rind whereof they made Parchment or Paper of, as of the Shrub* Papyrus. *Of this more amply ſee* Pliny lib. 16. cap. 14.

On the firſt of *July* we ſailed by two Iſlands, to wit, *Turig* and *Maſtof*, and ran the ſhip aground, where we loſt another Anchor, Towards the Evening we came before *Makrity*.

On the 2d we ſet Sail, and came before *Sabakſar*, where ſome of our Ships-company went aſhoar, and took our Paſport and Credentials to ſhow the *Wayvode*, or Governour, who gave us a ſupply of Men and neceſſaries to help us forward to *Aſtrachan*. *Sabakſar* is one

JULY. 1669. of the neateſt Towns I had hitherto ſeen ſince we left *Moſcou*, being well built, fortified and ſince the uproar of the *Caſaks*, the Garriſon better ſupplied with men than before. Having diſpatched here we weighed anchor, and on the 3 of *ditto*, gain'd the Iſland *Coſin* where we were faſt again, but without much difficulty got clear. We ſailed that day paſt *Sundir*, a handſome litle Town, and dropp'd anchor before *Cokſchaga*: looſing thence we were fain to caſt out our Fore-anchor to hale over a Foord, which was 10 *Dutch* leagues long, and found work enough to bring the Veſſel over, however after much pains taken we gaind the Deep, without any damage to the Ship.

On the 4 we came paſt the Shallow places, and before *VVoloſka* were faſt again, where we were fain to caſt anchor and wind our ſelves off. At night we lay before *Swiatkhi*, which is a fortify'd Town, having many fair Churches and Monaſteries within walls.

On the 5 we weighed anchor and ſet Sail, having a brisk Gale, which in 3 hours time, or leſs brought us before the River *Caſanka*, from which River the City and Kingdom of *Caſan* have their name, here we came to anchor where ſome ſmall Shipping belonging to that place, aiming to enter the River, ran againſt our Bow and ſome fell overboard.

Here about is a very fair Countrey and as fertile as any that ever I have ſeen in all my Life. It is moſtly low arable and medow ground overflown once a year upon the ſwelling of the River *VVolga*. On the Banks of this ſaid River are variety of Fruit trees of many kinds, which grow in whole Groves together and wild, for a hundred *Dutch* Leagues, as Haſle-nuts, Cherries 3 or 4 ſeveral ſorts, Black, White and Red Currans, &c. That part of *Caſan* which lies moſt within Land formerly belonged to the *Tartars*, but the Inhabitants ſpeake the *Ruſſian* Language, which was firſt brought in when the Countrey was conquered by the *Ruſſes*, as ſhall be hereafter ſaid. They do not convert any man to ſlavery, nor make that their Traffic, as do the *Nagay* the *Crim-Calmuc*-and *Dageſtan-Tartars*, for if they had they might have ſold me when with other two of our Ships-company I was under their Hands, and that above 3 leagues within Land, where on the contrary we found them civil after their Manner, for they gave us Bread and Milk to eat.

On

On the 6th our Shallop was ſent up to *Caſan*, to acquaint the Deputy with our Arrival. JULY. 1669.

On the 8th the Deputy of *Caſan*, together with the Metropolitan came aboard, where they ſeemed to receive great ſatisfaction, having never ſeen the like before. The Common people came likewiſe flocking in great multitudes to ſee a floating Caſtle, and notwithſtanding all the aw of the Deputy and Provincial, we had much ado to keep them off, for they ſtrove to come aboard.

Caſan is a great City, and reaſonably ſtrong, but it's Walls and Towers of Wood, as almoſt all the *Ruſſian* Towns are. The Cittadel is walled with ſtone, and well provided of Ammunition and Men. The Town is ſituated upon a Hill, but in a Champan Countrey. The Cittadel is encompaſſed with the *Caſanka*, which renders the Water within inexhauſtible in time of Siege. The Traffic of this Place is very conſiderable, regarding the Countrey it lies in. It is frequented by the *Crim-Tartars*, who bring thither all manner of Merchandiſe their Land affoards, and not only the vendible Products of the Earth and Cattle, but as orderly their own Children, which they ſell at a low rate, a Boy or a Girl of 16 years of age, for the value of 20 Crowns a piece. The City *Caſan* is equally inhabited by *Ruſſians* and *Tartars* and governed by a Deputy, as we have already ſaid, but the Cittadel kept ſolely by *Ruſſes*, where no *Tartar* is to come upon pain of Death. There is beſides the Deputy (who is only as Preſident and ſupreme in Civil Matters) an extraordinary *VVaywode*, who is always as Superintendant in time of War, having the ſole Direction of Martial Affairs. *Deſcription of Caſan.*

The Countrey of *Caſan*, which has been formerly a Kingdom, is of a very wide extent; bounded on the North with *Syberia*, on the Eaſt with *Nagaya*, and on the South with the River *VVolga*. This Countrey was formerly very populous and able to bring a great Army to field, as in recorded of their famous Expeditions againſt the *Ruſſes*; but ſince depopulated, made waſt and ſubdued, by *Baſilius Ivanowitz*, who overcame theſe *Caſan-Tartars* in a very bloody Battail, and after that ſo notable a Conqueſt ſet a Vice-Roy. This *Vice-Roy*, although a *Caſan-Tartar*, was always more loyal to the *Czar*, than favourable to his own Countreymen; which occaſioned great murmurings and jealouſy, among the *Caſaneers*, that at laſt they called in the *Crim-*

Tartars

JULY. 1669. *Tartars* for their assistance, who were *Mahometans*. These made not much delay, but on a sudden raised a mighty Army, which incorporating with the Rebells gave the Vice-Roy battail, and gain'd the Field, and pursuing the success of the day invaded the Emperours Territories. The *Czaar* in the mean while being informed by Express that the Hostility kept the Field, had put the Forces under Conduct of the Vice-Roy to flight, and that they approached with a great Body, he levied as great an Army as he could do with so short warning, and ingaged with the *Tartars* in open Field. But the Hostility increasing more and more, what with their own Nation, and what with the Malecontents within the *Russian* Jurisdiction, were almost 15 to 3, and after a short but very hot Battel the Emperour was fain to flee and betake himself to *Novogorod*. The *Tartars* seeing themselves Masters of the Field, marched forward to *Moscou* which they attacqued, took in and plundered. However the Cittadel *Cremelena* held stoutly forth all the time, without making Propositals or Articles upon which they would seem willing to surrender it, till at last finding themselves not in a capacity to hold forth they gave it over, upon very honourable Conditions as to themselves, but disadvantageous Terms for the great Duke himself, and the City of *Moscou*. Shamefull was this Loss to the Emperour, and no less ground of Honour for the Victory to the Hostility, who now as it were in a moment had regained all their Freedoms which from time to time before they had lost. Right loath was the *Czar* to give his assent to the Conclusions of the Treaty, but was at last compelled to sign it with his own hand, partly for that his *Bojars* and Council pressed him to it, and partly upon his own considerations, how that his Countrey in all probability would in case he continued refractory be overrun, and he himself with all his Race be secluded from the Monarchy. The *Tartarians* had 2 Generals, Brethren and equall in command, whereof the elder called *Mendligeritz*, erected a Statue in *Moscou*, to which he obliged and injoyned the *Moscovians* to pay certain Homages. The younger called *Sapgeri* marched on for *Casan* where he had his Residence, thinking, that becaus it had formerly been a Soveraignty, and that the Footsteps and Reliques of a wasted Kingdom were still apparent, he might the better erect and rear a new Monarchy upon the Foundations of an old. *Mendligeritz* the

the elder marched with his Army towards *Rhesan*, well knowing that the great Power of that Province might check him, upon opportunity. So soon as he was set down before the Town, he signified the occasion of his coming, sent the Governour a Copy of the Articles signed by the *Czar*, demands the Town, and willed him to surrender. But the Governour (who was a Gentleman both of known Fame and Worth, in regard of his rare Conduct in several Battails at the Head of an Army) let him know, That all the Infidels and Barbarians in the world should not deterr him so far as to transgress his Duty, and Oath, since he himself had no such Intelligence from his Lord, the Great Duke, and till he had Assurance of what the *Tartarian* General had advised him about concerning such Articles, he would defend the Town and Cittadel. The General upon this Answer sent him the Original of the prementioned Articles, and so willed him to avoid Blood-shed: but the Governour detained the Messengers and kept the Schedule, resolving to stand out the Siege. Upon this the *Tartars* raised the Siege, and attempted to storm the City; but those within couragiously defended themselves, and plai'd of their Canon; together with an incessant shooting of Arrows, at the Enemy, that they were forced to retreat and remove the Siege to another side of the Town, where some disloyal *Russians* had acquainted them that the place was weakest and consequently the most easy to be storm'd: however finding no hopes of gaining the Town, the *Tartarian* General sent a Herauld to urge the Governour to resign the Papers, declaring himself thereupon willing to draw off his Forces; which the Governour refusing the General left the Town. Several Narratives were sent off to *Moscou*, which occasioned a general Joy, and incouraged the Townsmen to revolt, and unanimously fall upon the Garrison, who being incapable to make resistance were fain to submit and beg Quarter. The Statue of *Mendligeritz* was also pulled down and broke to pieces in detestation of his Tyranny. The *Czaar* immediately upon these news gathered all the Forces he could, which when drawn to field amounted to 25000 Men, and marched forward to *Casan*, where he gave the *Tartarians* Battail; and after a hot fight gain'd the Camp, the Enemy retiring into the Western Provinces of *Tartary*, shortly after the *Czar* died, without the performance of any honorable atchievment, save that during the time of his Reign. But

JULY. 1669.

MAR. 1669. *Ivan Baſilowitz*, ſon to the deceaſed Emperour, ſeeing the good footſteps of his Father, and perceiving a ſure foundation, Levies a new Army and recruits the Old with well experienc'd *Germans*; but having no truſty Perſon to whom he durſt commit the new Army as Commander in chief, he joyns the Forces, himſelf leading marches ſo in the Head to *Caſan*, which City when he had beſieged 8 weeks and loſt many men, fearing likewiſe that *Mendligeritz* might come to aſſiſt them he gave them Offers of Peace, which nevertheleſs the *Tartars* would not accept, expecting ſuccour from the Field-Army. *Ivan Baſilowitz* thought it high time either to take up the Siege or to ſtorm it on a ſudden; which laſt he reſolved upon and accordingly, ſet 70 *German* Pioneers at work, who did the work ſo effectually and without diſcovery of the Enemy within, that they had under-mined the Northeaſt Gate in the ſpace of 24 Hours or leſs, and thereupon blew it up which done the *Moſcovians* ſurprized them within and made themſelves Maſters both of the Town and Cittadel. The Townsmen obtained Quarter althoug the Great Duke had threatned the Contrary, for that they had twice rebelled againſt the Imperial Crown and of their own accord ſent ſuccour to the Enemy, when it was not in the leſt urged from them. The *Czar* being now Maſter of *Caſan* fortified it with a ſtrong Wall, Towers and Bulwarks. But now to our preſent Journal.

After the Deputy of *Caſan* had throughly viſited our Ship, and well entertained by our Officers aboard, he departed with the Metropolitan aſhoar, and entreated us all to come up to *Caſan*, which we did, and received a reciprocal kindneſs from him there. When we returned aboard the Mobile followed us with Muſic and Dancing a good part of the way.

On the 10th we received a good Quantity of Lead aboard, which we were to unload at *Aſtrachan*.

On the 13th I got permiſſion of the Officers to go up to *Caſan* to buy ſome Biſcake for my own uſe, which I had for a mean price, and having much more than I could uſe, I ſold it and got a conſiderable profit, as well of the Officers as the Foremaſt men, for we were to take care for our own Victualling.

CHAP.

MARC. 1669.

CHAP. XI.

Departure from Caſan. *The ſtrange manner of taking Fish. Cities demolished by* Tamerlan. *The Ship run faſt aground. The Salt-Pans, and manner of making Salt. Difficult Sailing in the* Wolga. *A New City built for defence againſt Robbers and Pyrates. The great abundance of Liquirice about* Aſtrachan, *The Land of the* Calmuc-Tartars.

ON the 17 *ditto* leaving *Caſan*, we ſet Sail and that morning were aground 2 ſeveral times, but without much difficulty got clear again. *Departure from Caſan.*

On the 18 we came cloſe to an Iſland called *Staritzo*, where we anchored, our Pilot went aſhoar to view the ſaid Iſland and coming about 3 furlongs within land found ſtones, of the ſhape and bigneſs of Lemmons which being broken had within the ſimilitude of a ſtar, but thoſe not all alike in Colour, for ſome were like Gold, others like Silver, and others of a Yellow and Tawny colour. This Iſland is ſituated in 45 *degr.* 31 *min.* being of it ſelf about 3 *Dutch* Leagues in length and 2 broad.

On the 19 we got the Iſland *Potenski* where we came to anchor expecting that a great ſtorm would come on.

Upon the 22 we ſailed paſt the *Buytma* which is a branch of the famous River *Lanca* being about 12 *Dutch* Leagues from *Caſan*. This ſame River has it's Riſe or Fountain about *Chambretoky* which lies to the North-eaſt of *Caſan*.

Here we met with a company of Fiſhermen of whom we bought ſome Bream, which they take in great Abundance, and after an od way, which if time had permitted us we would have learned.

On the 23 we came to a very pleaſant Coaſt where we went to aſhoar, and found there the Ruins of a great City which had been made waſt by *Tamarlan*. While we lay here it began to blow very hard, and the next day we were fain to keep at anchor. In the mean time I went with ſome of our Ships Company to the Hill *Arbuchin*, where we found the Ruins of another City, bearing one name with the ſaid Hill. In aſcending the Hill we found a great ſtone with this Inſcription in old *Ruſſian* Words and Letters, IF THOU WILT REMOVE, THOU SHALT NOT

JULY. 1669. LOSE THY PAINS. Some *Russians* had a mind to see what would come of it, and after long digging and much struggling at last got it turn'd over, but, instead of finding a Treasure, met with another Motto, which was, THOU ASS GO SHAKE THY EARS. This vexed them so that they rather willed to let it stand in that posture, than take the pains to set it as it was before, to deceive others.

The Land round about is very fair and withall of a fat Soil, yet not cultivated, for there are no Inhabitants, but the Relicts of several Towns and Villages, formerly depopulated by the famous *Tamerlan*.

On the 17 we sailed past the River and City of *Adrobe*, lying in the heighth of 54 *degr.* and 48 *min.* At the mouth of this River we were again set fast, and after much labour, and all the means we could imagine to be any way helpfull, we gave the Ship and Yacht both over for lost, but in the Evening it began to Thunder, and abundance of Rain fell, that the River began to swell, and so set us adrift again.

On the 29 we came before *Calmaka*, where were many Salt-pits and two new Towns. We found there several Pans where the Russes made their Salt, which they fetch out of great hollows and cavernal Rocks; this being boiled is sent up the *Wolga* in *Stroughs*, and so dispersed over the whole Countrey of *Moscovia*. These Salt-pits keep abundance of Men in imployment, and is no small profit to the Overseers.

On the 30th we set sail again, and after half an hours sailing ran aground upon a sand, where after much ado we gott off, but with the Loss of an Anchor and 80 fathom of our Cable.

The next day it began to storm very hard, wherefore we thought good to come to anchor, for the River was here about very perillous, and so we were fain to continue till the 4 of *August*.

On the 5th of *August* we came to *Morrakzy* where we saw abundance of Fishers, of whom we bought some *Cavear*, and Sturgeon, having as much of that Fish as 20 Men could eat for the value of 11 *stivers* [or one shilling *sterl.*] Here we were forced to tarry for the space of 24 Hours by reason of the hard Wind, lying near the Island *Kistowato*, where is a very shoaring or slanting strand on both sides, which makes the stream of the *Wolga* at that place very narrow and deep. Here we saw the River *Ussa* which encompassing *Samara* almost

A great Storm.

almost round, empties it self into the *Wolga*. On each side this River is a fair and pleasant Countrey so far as one can view: but we were informed by the *Russes* that it was there very dangerous to travail by reason of Robbers, and the vagabond *Cosaks*, who kept themselves in the Woods, whence they sometimes salley out in whole bands, and surprize Passengers. The *Cosaks* also haunt the River, having Boats which are made long and small, with which they row admirably swift. On one side of the *Ussa* are some Mountains and amongst those one of an incredible heighth called *Sariol Kurgan*, where they say an Emperor of the *Tartars* with 70 Kings ly buried, when they came up the *Wolga* with intent to invade *Russia*; which Mountain being bare and rocky, they say that the Soldiers carried up so much Earth and Mold as was sufficient. Some of those Mountains are woody and other some bare stone and cliffs. AUG. 1669.

On the 8th we sailed forward and came to *Samara*, which is so called from a certain River that runs through it; where it runs into the *VVolga*. The City is built four Square, and mostly of Wood; only the Churches and Cloysters are built of stone.

The day following we saw the Mountain *Cosak-krim*, so called from the *Cosaks* which were there beat by the *Moscovian* Army; having sadly molested all the Countrey, under the subjection of the *Czaar*, by a continual Plundering: but having at that time received such an overthrow could never since complete so great a Body, as might be any way obnoxious to the *Russians*. Behind *Samara* the Mountains are very high, but *Cosak-krim* surpasses all the rest for heighth. About the going down of the Sun we sailed past the Island *Pantzina* and the next morning found our selves, as far as *Sagenisko*.

On the 11 we sailed past the Island *Zagra*, where we met divers Fishers-boats and supplied our selves with fresh Fish. Here we had news that a great number of *Cosac-Rebells* were entred the Island *Satyry-Boggere*, at the mouth of the *VVolga*, on the *Caspian* Sea, and annoyed the River.

On the 12 we sailed by several Islands, namely *Sasnow*, *Ossino*, *Schipnamago Koltof*, and others not inhabited.

The next day we saw the Mountain *Smiowa*, which in their Language is as much as to say, a Snake, or Dragon, having it's name as I conjecture from its similitude of a Snake, rising up into hillocks

JULY. 1669. and falling down again into gaps like a ſerpent when he creeps. Although the *Ruſſes* as alſo the Inhabitants tell us a Fable of a famous Cavalier who went out to kill a monſtrous Animal like a Snake, that waſted all the Countrey round about, and devoured every day 50 Men for a Break-faſt. The Knight having killed the ſerpent it was metamorphoſed into a Rock which is now this Mountain.

The day following we came before *Saratof*, where we caſt anchor, This City lies in 52 *degr.* 12 *min.* in a valley upon a Branch of the *VVolga*, on the larboard ſide in ſailing down, and is only inhabited by a Military Officer and a Garriſon of Soldiers to free the River and Countrey of the *Coſacks* and *Calmuc-Tartars*, whoſe Countrey is bounded here. Theſe *Calmucks* are the moſt ougly and miſhapen People in the World, worſe favoured by far than the *Hotentots* or *Moors*, which are Angels in Compariſon of thoſe. Their Faces are broad and almoſt four ſquare, their noſes flat, their mouths reaching almoſt from one ear, to the other, their Eies long and ſmall, upon their Heads they wear a Quoif; the reſt of their Habit is ſufficiently denoted in the following Plate. They ſeldom go afoot but moſtly on Horſeback, as if they were Centaurs, for ſome of them do not only eat and drink but alſo ſleep upon their Horſes. Their only weapons is the Long-bow which they uſe with an admirable Dexterity. There is a continual enmity between thoſe and the *Nagayans*, for they perpetually ſteal one anothers Children and Cattel, which they bring to *Aſtrachan* to Market, for there they have 3 ſeveral market days, one for the *Ruſſians* themſelves, another for the *Nagayans*, and another for the *Calmuc-Tartars*, which 2 laſt-named may not come together, altho they be both *Mahometans*, and under the Juriſdiction of the great Duke. The *Calmuks* dwell not in Towns as other People do; but travail all over the Countrey, pitching their Tents where they find a fertile fat Soil, which when their Horſes, Camels, Cows and ſmall Cattel have eaten bare, they break up and march forward to find out ſome other place, as Hiſtorie records of the *Scythians*, who without diſpute were the ſame People. Their chief and choice Diet is Horſe-fleſh, which they eat raw after they have rode a litle upon it, thruſting it between the Sadle and the Horſe.

Upon the 15 of *Auguſt* we ſailed paſt 2 Iſlands, to wit, *Criuſna* and *Saponoufka*, as alſo by the Hill *Solottogory*, which is as much as to ſay

Gold-

Gold-hill, ſo called from a rich booty of Gold the *Tartarians* had once taken in a Caravan, which they divided among themſelves by cap-fulls. JUNE. 1669.

On the 16 *ditto* we came before the River *Ruſſan* on the left hand, right over againſt a round Hill called *Vrak-oſkarul*, from one *Vrak*, a *Tartarian* Prince who lies there buried. This Beck comes from the famous River * *Don*, upon which River thoſe that are called the *Don-Coſaks* have their being, which alſo is the Countrey and Reſidence of *Stenko Radzin*. In the year 1668 the *Ruſſes* had build a new City at the Mouth of the River *Ruſſan*, to give a check to the *Don-Coſacks*, who much annoyed the *VVolga* with their ſmall Boats, comming down the ſaid River dayly in great Troops, and committed many inſolencies: However it ſeems not much available, for they have deviſed a new mean to ſhun the Fort and come into the *VVolga* by drawing their Boats over land upon Wheels, which they do for 7 *Dutch* Leagues together, for the Countrey there is flat and even.

* *VVhich is alſo called* Tanais *and divides* Europe *from* Aſia, *its courſe is from* North *to* South, *See* Strabo lib. 2.

The next day it began to blow very hard for which reaſon we were fain to remain that day at anchor, and on the 18th to ſet ſail having a gentle Gale which brought us before the City *Czaritza*, which is as much to ſay *Cæſarea*, or rather *Empreſs*, lying on the Right hand at the foot of a Hill. The City is in it ſelf not great, but very ſtrong munited with 6 Ramparts, or Bulwarks, beſides other Fortifications. The Garriſon is well maintained with Recruits of *Strelitzers*, being a Place of great Truſt and Importance, eſpecially for that it lies upon the *Tartarian* Continent.

On the 19 we came before the Place where *Czareſ-gorod* of old had ſtood, by the Ruins thereof we could obſerve that City had been built of Brick. It was demoliſhed beſides many others by *Tamerlan* the Great. The ſtones have been of good uſe to thoſe of *Aſtrachan*, wherewith they built their Walls, Towers, Churches and Monaſteries.

On the 20 we haled over ſeveral Riffs and ſhallow Foords, and at laſt ran our ſelves aground upon a ſand, where we ſtuck 3 hours before we could yet clear. From this place where we were faſt all along the Banks to *Aſtrachan*, grows great plenty of Liquirice, but all the Land to the *Caſpian* Sea waſt, and not fitt for Tillage.

On the 21 we got the Iſland *VVeſaway*, which we left on the Starboard-ſide, and that Evening came before *Tzornogar*, or *Tzornojar*, being

Anno. 1669. being in regard of any requiſite occaſion in ſuch a place conſiderably ſtrong: it is environed with Palizados, and about an [*English*] mile without the Town. On each ſide are ſeveral Watch-houſes, with Towers from whence they can ſee the Enemy at a diſtance, the Countrey being level and not Woody. The firſt occaſion of the building of this City was ſaid to be from a party of 400 *Coſacks* which had ſpoiled a *Ruſſian* Caravan, intercepting it between the Land and the Boats, where the *Strelitzers* were, that were appointed to Convoy it, and by reaſon that the ſtream was ſo ſtrong that the Boats could not row againſt it, the ſaid Robbers made their eſcape with a very rich Booty. At that ſame time there was at *Tzornogar* a *Perſian* Ambaſſadour arrived with all his Moveables and a great Retinue, intending for *Moſcou*. The ſaid Ambaſſadour came aboard our Ship and received Preſents from our Officers, which although he willingly accepted, yet remunerated them with things of greater value and worth.

On the 22 we ſet ſail and ſaw the Mountain *Polowna* where the *Ruſſian* Fablers ſay the Moon goes every night to bed, becauſe that over that Hill is always a great miſt. About 2 in the afternoon we got the Iſland *Kitzier* in ſight and ſpeeded our courſe ſo that we gain'd the ſight of *Aſtrachan* before the Sun ſet.

The 24 before noon by the grace of the Everlaſting GOD we arrived at the long-wiſh'd-for *Aſtrachan*, where we for Joy fired all our Guns to the Aſtoniſhment of the Inhabitants, who had never ſeen a Ship of that Burthen and Force before. From the day of our Arrival here, we lay off in the ſtream till the firſt of *September* and then came up cloſe to the Kay with our Ship and Yacht, thanking the Almighty for his ſpecial Bounty, in delivering us through ſo many perils, and bringing us at laſt to our deſired Port.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Situation of Aſtrachan. *The Inhabitants. How* Aſtrachan *became ſubject to the Czaar. Strange manner of Tents, or Cottages. Proviſion very cheap and Brandy dear. A Deſart affoarding good Salt, and a ſtrange kind of Fruit. The Form and Nature of the* Nagayan Tartars. *Their Habit, manner of Life and Houſe-keeping. Their Trades and way of earning money, Horſeflesh, Mares-milk and Blood in great eſteem by them.*

Aug. 1669. *Situation of* Aſtrachan.

Aſtrachan lies upon the Dividing of *Europe* from *Aſia*, upon the Iſland *Delgoy*, in the Countrey of the *Nagayan Tartars*, where the Northern Pole is elevated 46 *degr.* and 22 *min.* above the Horizon, and is about 50 *Dutch* Leagues from the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcan* Sea. It is environed with a thick ſtone wall, and that time I was there furniſhed with 500 great Braſs Cannon, beſides a very ſtrong Garriſon, with Ammunition proportionable to defend it againſt the *Tartars* and *Coſaks*, who have often had a deſign to retake it. It gives a very noble proſpect from abroad, with it's many Towers and Lofty Piles of Buildings, as well what appertain to the Fortifications as to the Churches and Religious Houſes. It is a famous Town for Traffic, frequented not only by all the Regions of *Tartary* adjoyning to the *Caſpian* Sea, but alſo by *Perſians*, *Armenians* and *Indians*, who bring their Goods and Merchandiſes in a certain ſort of Shipping which they call *Boeſes*, being about 80 Tun burthen a piece. But theſe Veſſels cannot Sail by traverſe, but alwaies before the Wind. Of all the ſeveral kinds of Merchandiſe which thoſe of *Aſtrachan* deal in, Silk is the chief, ſo that this ſeems to be the ſole Magazin of that Comodity, whence it is re-exported up the *Wolga*, and conſequently through the whole *Ruſſian* Empire.

Aſtrachan has been formerly the Royal Seat of the *Nagayan Tartars* but making a League with the *Crim*-and *Caſan-Tartars* was a means to detrude the King, and bring the People under the Subjection of the Grand *Czaar* of *Moſcovia*, for according to the Tenure of their Alliance, each was obliged to aſſiſt other, whether upon offenſiv or defenſiv Occaſions: ſo that *Ivan Baſilowitz*, declaring war againſt thoſe of *Caſan*, they were aſſiſted by the *Nagayans*, who were beat in open field, and after both Armies defeated, ſeveral Holds belonging to

AUG. 1669. the *Caſans* were taken and demoliſhed. *Aſtrachan* at laſt it ſelf was beſieged and taken by ſtorm by the ſaid Great Duke, the *Tartarians* driven out, and peopled with *Ruſſians* and a ſtrong Garriſon of that Nation. *Aſtrachan*, when in poſſeſſion of the *Tartars*, was but a ſmall town in compariſon of what it now is, for the Father of the then Emperour when I was there had enlarged it by a 3d part, and called the Addition *Strelitza gorod*, that is the *Soldier-Town*, for it is moſtly inhabited by military perſons: and ſince that time it has been continually augmented with new buildings. The Cuſtoms and Duties beſides the Bartering of Commodities in this Citie is a conſiderable profit for the *Czaar*. The Air about *Aſtrachan* is very indifferent and tollerable as to it's Temperature, neither rendred unwholſom by the ſcorching heat of the Summer Solſtice, nor in any caſe inſufferable for the penetrating Froſts in the Winter, as if this place had the benefit of two Climats. Hence is the Soil alſo very fertile and the Countrey fructiferous beyond (I had almoſt ſaid) any other Countrey in either of the temperate Zones, if the People and Inhabitants had but two Advantages in cultivating it, which tend mainly to the Improvement and maintenance of Agriculture, that is, an aſſured conſtant Peace, and the Myſteries of Husbandry which we have in the Weſtermoſt Countreys of *Europe*. They have many and various kinds of ſelect Fruits, as Water-Lemmons, Oranges, Apples, Pears, Cherrys, Damzons, &c. The Vineyards are in a ſhort time very much improved, for before the year 1613 that Plantation was not known among them, till certain *Perſian* Merchants beſtowed a Vine upon a *German*, but a Proſelyt and Monk of the *Ruſſian* Church, which he planted in a Garden belonging to the Monaſtery: the ſame Vine thriving ſo well, cauſed divers great Merchants to do the like whoſe indeavours had in the ſpace of 3 years that ſucceſs, that they preſented the Emperour with 200 Pipes of Wine, and 50 Pipes of Brandy, upon which the ſaid Emperour gave them all the Encouragement he could to propagate that laudable beginning.

Air and Soil of Aſtrachan.

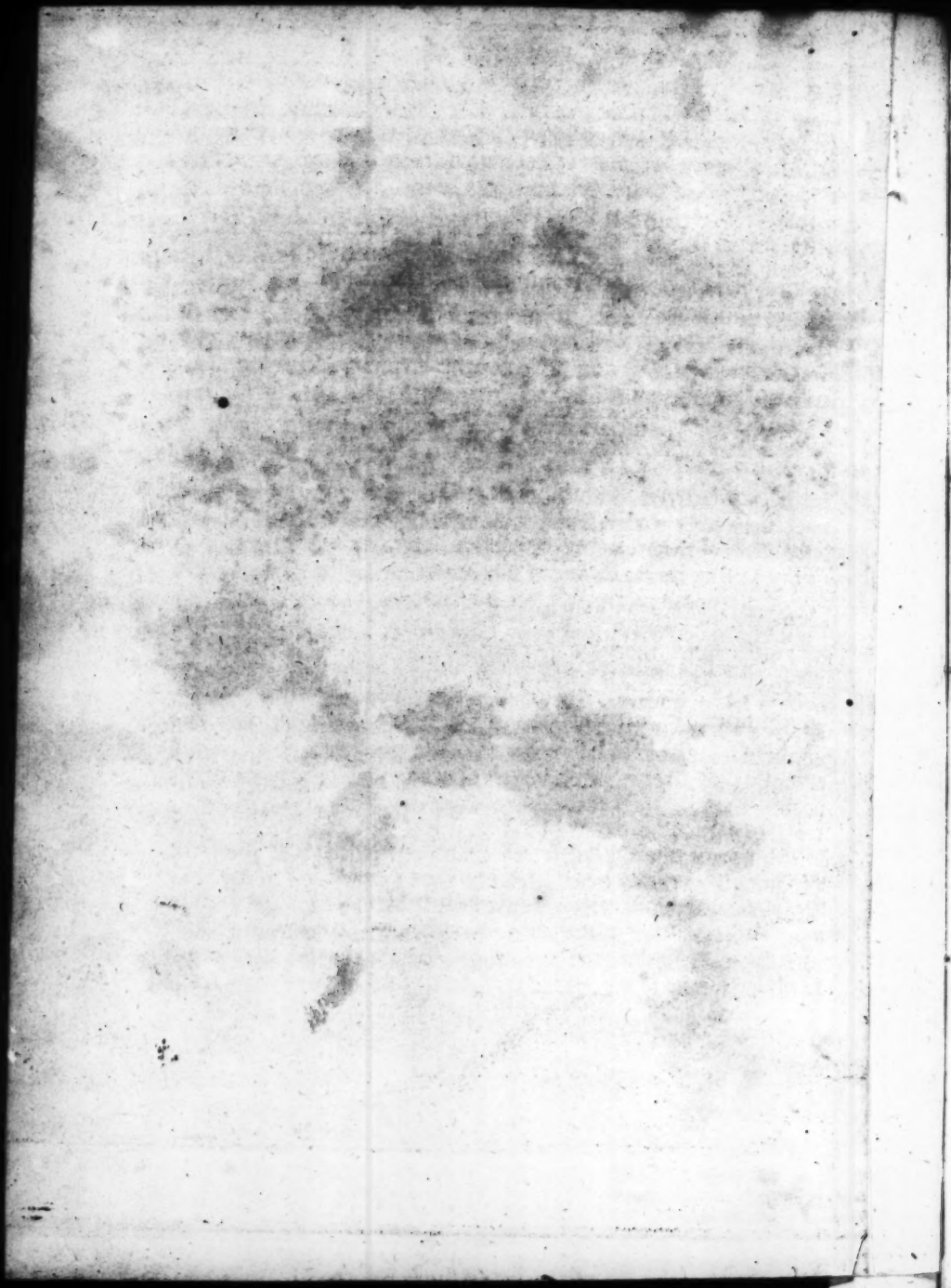
The *Nagayan-Tartars* who for the moſt part inhabit the Champan land about and near *Aſtrachan*, are not permitted to dwell in the City, nor may they fortify their villages with Walls or Towers: only by many Intreaties they have obtained a Grant of fencing in their Tents with Stakes and Palizados, to ſecure themſelves from the Aſſaults and




1. D' voorsdt:
2. Studtz Magasyn
3. Het Slodt
4 Toorn Staende Int slodt:
5 Twee Nieuwe Corcke.
6 Een Corck.
7 D' Poort Vande Hoste voorsdt:
8 D' Vshaudt:
9 D. Soute Bergen.
10 D' Revier De Wallge
11 Het Tartarise Leger
D' Beschermingh Vand



r De Heeligen: 12 't Schip d'Adelaer:
tarisß Leeger Onder. 13 d'Colmicke Aardt:
ermuyden Voor d'stadt. 14 d'Bootpaert:



and Inſolencies of Night-Robbers and the *Calmuc-Tartars*, who ſometimes ſurprize them at unawares, and carry away both Men and Cattel. They have no faſt Towns, or Cities, but uſe Tents, as their Anceſtors have ever done. Their Tents are built round, the Diameter of the fund being about 10 foot: theſe are twiſted with Reeds or Barks of Trees, and to defend them from the Rain covered with Felt. The Chimney is turned round with a Weather-cock; in the midle of the Tent they make the Fire, which is commonly of Cows-dung and ſmall Twigs dried together in the Sun about which they ſit, and as they are ready for a Nap drop down one after another. AUG. 1669.

Aſtrachan being almoſt on every ſide ſurrounded with ſuch a fruitfull Countrey, has good plenty of all ſorts of Fruit brought every day to Market; and thoſe very cheap. Melons I have bought 10 or 12 for the value of a penny and other fruits after a conformable Price. Fiſh and Fleſh they have in better plenty than any where elſe I know in the World. For the value of 3d I bought a huge Sturgeon, a Carp weighing 30 pounds, and 25 Herrings, greater and fatter than ever I have ſeen in *Holland*. Pearch, Pike, Bream and *Sandaks* are there ſo plentifully taken, that only poore people eat them, of which a family of 8 Perſons may have as much as will ſuffice them, for the value of 3 farthings. The fiſh *Sandach* is a great Rarity, and proper only to the *Wolga*, and ſuch Rivers as run into it: being about the bigneſs of a Haddock, and ſomething like it in taſt, but much more delicate and faſter, if taken about *November* and the 3 following Moneths. Their Beef and Mutton is exceeding good, ſold uſually for a Farthing the pound. All kinds of Water-Fowl are very plentiful and cheap, eſpecially a ſort of Wild-gees and thoſe we call Moſcovy-Ducks which the *Tartars* take with Hawks, and bring them in ſuch plenty to Market, that they may be had for a peny the dozen. The *Tartars* who live chiefly by Fiſhing and Fowling uſe alſo Hunting, and in ſeveral woody Iſlands about *Aſtrachan* take many Wild-ſwine which are fed with Accorns, that being known for the beſt maſt that is, for Hogs. Theſe they alſo bring to *Aſtrachan* which by reaſon that that Fleſh will take Salt well, they buy and uſe it aboard the ſhipping, that trade to and again in the *Caſpian* Sea, the more becauſe of it's cheapneſs for none but the *Moſcovians* and *Armenians* buy it, the *Perſians* and *Tartars* themſelves being moſtly *Mahometans*, and therefore not

Aug. 1669. permitted to eat it. To be brief, there is not that thing which may delight the Pallat, but may be had for a very mean and inconſiderable price, and at a far eaſier rate than the courſeſt Diet which neceſſitated people muſt be content with in the Weſt of *Europe*; and if any man of a mean Eſtate could deny himſelf that Society of his Relations and Acquaintance in which every one has more or leſs ſolace, and retire thither, he may live as contentedly there as the greateſt Lord, or richeſt Merchant in the World, who, as it were in taking Honey are frequently ſtung with the Bee, and in receiving Proſperity and Benefits from the right hand of Fortune, are as often buffeted with her left. However by way of exception I muſt mind you of one thing, that the *Ruſſians* are here at a great Loſs for Brandy, ſince the promulgation of a Late Edict, the tenure and purport whereof was, That no Brandy ſhould be diſtilled there for a certain term of Years: but upon what inſight it was that moved his Majeſty to order ſuch an Interdiction I know not; unleſs to prevent the *Strelitzers*, or Soldateſque, to forget themſelves ſo far as to let the *Tartars*, which ly on every ſide the City, to ſurprize them with a ſudden Invaſion: for Brandy is not only under a ſpecial Interdiction of being made there, but alſo the Importation prohibited to a certain Quantity, every year, which makes the *Ruſſians* the more to covet it, inſomuch that ſometimes they have drunk all the *Kabacks* and Brandy-cellars in *Aſtrachan* dry before 3 Moneths of 12 be about. At *Niſen-Novogorod* we bought a meaſure, holding about a Gallon for about 3 *ſh.* 2 *d. Sterl.* which here when at cheapeſt is ſold for 50 *ſh.*

Salt how gotten. On the Weſt ſide of the *Volga* is a great dry and waſt Heath called the *Step*, where they find abundance of good Salt, which is concreted in the Sun, and thrown up on Heaps like Ice. This Salt is digged out of the Hollows and Caves of Rocks, and proves a very rich Commodity, being exported aſwell up the *Volga* into all parts of *Moſcovia* and *Ruſſia*, as *Perſia*, *Armenia*, *Tartary* and other Countreys bordering upon the *Hyrcan* Sea. Every man is licenſ'd to fetch it that liſts, only allowing Two pence half-penny for 80 Pound, for duty to the Emperour.

A ſtrange kind of Fruit. In this Heath, or Wilderneſs, called the *Step* is a ſtrange kind of Fruit found, named *Baronez*, or *Barnitſch*, from the Word *Boran*, which is a Lamb in the *Ruſſian* Tongue becauſe of its form and ſimili-

tude,

tude, much reſembling a ſheep having Head, Feet and Tail, and what is more worthy of Note, a skin of white ſhining Hair and ſoft as Silk. This Skin is held in great eſteem by the *Tartars* and *Ruſſes*, and ſold for a good price, as I have paid my ſelf ſometimes 5 or 6 *Roebels* and doubled my money when I ſold it again. One of thoſe Skins is to be ſeen at the Houſe of Mr. *John Swammerdam*, in *Amſterdam*, a Gentleman famous for collection of the Rarities of Nature from every place of the World: but that of his he had from a Seaman that had been formerly a Slave in *China*, where coming into a Wood, found of this Fruit, and brought away as many Skins as made him a Coat. The Deſcription he gave of them, did very much agree with what the Inhabitants of *Aſtrachan* informed me of them. It grows upon a low Stalk about 2 foot and a half high, ſome higher, and is ſupported juſt at the Navel: the Head always hangs down as if it paſtured, or fed, of the Graſs, and when the Graſs decays it periſhes, but this I ever look'd upon as ridiculous, altho the Inhabitants aſſeverated to me by many Oaths, that they have often out of curioſity made experience of that, by cutting away the Graſs, upon which it inſtantly fades away. However what I might further add as to what they ſay of this Fruit, and what I my ſelf beleeve in the wonderfull Operations of a ſecret Sympathy in nature, I ſhall rather keep to my ſelf, than aver, or impoſe upon the Reader, what, I am ſenſible will be univerſally exploded for a Fable. Certain it is there is nothing which is more coveted by Wolves, than this, and the Inward parts of it are more congruous with the Anatomy of that Animal, than Mandrakes are with Men. AUG. 1669.

The *Nagayan* and *Crim-Tartars* are thick and corpulent, broad-fac'd, and litle-eied. The Eies of the Men are wrinkled like old Wives. Their Beard grows very ſlovenly, here and there a hair, and ſhave their Heads bare on the Crown; yet theſe are not altogether ſo ougly as the *Calmucs*. Their Habit is altogether as gentile as their Perſons are comely, their upper veſtment either of a very courſe ſtuff with every thred as fine as a Tobacco-pipe, or elſe of Sheepskins with the Wool-ſide outward, their Caps and Hoſe of the ſame colour, where they wear any, for they uſe as litle Rigging as they can. The Women like the *Calmuccers* wear a courſe linnen Coat and round Caps, bulging out like a Helmet. Their Firſtborn Children are generally

Aug. 1669. dedicated to ſome Saint, or other, in token whereof if it be a male, he wears a Ring in his right Ear, but if a Girl in her right Noſtril.

In the Summer ſeaſon they have no faſt place, but paſture over all the face of the Countrey as we have ſaid of the *Calmucs*. When they march they carry their Tents upon high Wagons made on purpoſe, and ſo take their Wives and Children with them, and drive their Cattel before them, their Moveables they ſet upon Camels, Horſes and ſometimes upon Kine. Thus they go up and down all the Summer; and when the Winter approaches pitch together about *Aſtrachan*, appearing like a great Army; where they can aſſiſt each other in time of need againſt the *Calmucks* their perpetual Enemies, who when the *Volga* freezes ſometimes aſſail them: and to the end that they may the better oppoſe their ſaid Enemies in ſuch caſe, the *Waywode*, or Governour of *Aſtrachan* provides them Arms, which at the breaking up of the Camp they are to redeliver, and for ſecurity ſend ſome of their chief Princes as a Pledge to *Aſtrachan*, where they are committed to the Cittadel; and upon their reſtoring of their Amunition are ſurrendred into their hands again.

The *Nagayans* follow the Fiſhing-trade, as alſo Fowling, Hunting and Paſturing of Cattel, and are reputed the beſt Herds-men in the world. Their Kine are generally great, their Sheep very fair and fat, having great Tails like the Rams in *Palæſtine*, ſome weighing 20 or 30 pound a piece, their noſes bending upwards, and their Ears hanging like a Spanial. Their Horſes are but ugly ſhaped, but very durable in running. They have alſo ſome Camels but not many. Their chief Diet is dried Fiſh which they uſe in ſtead of Bread. They have alſo a way of making bread of Rice, which they knead in Oil and Honey, and ſo bake it in Cakes. All kinds of Fleſh they eat, except Swine, holding Horſe-fleſh for the beſt. Their Drink is Water and Milk, eſteeming Mares-milk above all other. They profeſs the *Mahometan* Religion, and are of the *Perſian* ſect. The *Czaar* allows them Laws and Judges of their own. They are alſo Tribute-free, but in ſtead of Tribute are to bring ſeveral Thouſand men to field upon occaſion.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Diviſions and Limits of the Coſacks. *The Offſpring of* Stenko. *The Reaſon of his Revolting. The firſt beginning of his Inſolency. His treacherous Cruelty: The Governour of* Aſtrachan *makes preparation againſt him. He betakes himſelf to flight and reconciles himſelf with the* Czar. *The Incredible Riches and coſtly Attire of the* Coſacks. *The Perſon of* Stenko Radzin *deſcribed. The meeting and diſcourſe of the Author with* Stenko Radzin. *He keeps a* Perſian *Princeſs for his Concubine, which he throws with his own hand into the* Wolga. *His Punishment for Adultery.*

ON the 3 of *September* came ſeveral *Dutch* Officers aboard, who bad us welcom and invited us reſpectivly to their Houſes, where we went, and were kindly receiv'd and entertained. Juſt upon our Arrival here the *Ruſſian* Fleet was ſet out againſt the *Coſaks*. But before I treat any thing about that Expedition I ſhall give you a previous Narrative of an Uproar raiſed and headed by *Stenko Radzin*, and then the reſt in order. SEPT. 1669.

There are two Nations of the *Coſacks*, the *Saporoksky*, and the *Donsky*. The former of theſe were ſometime ſubjects to the *Polish* Crown, and keep themſelvs about the *Boriſthenes* and *Kioſ*, upon 50 Iſlands which are environed with that famous River. They call thoſe Iſlands in their own proper Tongue *Porog*, which is as much as to ſay Stairs, and therefore are called *Sa-porogsky*. Their work is to watch the Irruption of the *Tartars* or other Enemies upon the *Polish* Territories. They are called *Coſacks* from the *Slavonian* word *Coſa*, which is as much as to ſay a Spirit, by reaſon of their admirable celerity of Motion, being always ready at hand upon occaſion. The *Donski* or *Don-Coſaks* are thoſe who live upon the famous River *Tanais*, by the Natives called *Don*, and are properly under the Juriſdiction of the *Czar*, although more out of their free and voluntary diſpoſition; for they have been indowed with many Priviledges, as to have their own Princes, Judges and Laws, as alſo a General of their Armie whom they themſelves Elect. As alſo this Immunity that when a *Moſcovian* Slave runs away from his Lord, and betakes himſelf within their Territories, they are not obliged to deliver him up unleſs themſelvs liſt. Of this People laſt mentioned was *Stenko Radzin* the famous Rebell born, Two ſorts of Coſacks.

SEPT. 1669. born, who, as we have ſaid, ſo ſtoutly oppoſed the Emperour *Alexius Michailowitz.*

The firſt occaſion of this Revolt (as himſelf confeſſed) was to revenge his Brothers death, who was killed by an Eminent Perſonage, whoſe name was *Iurie Alexowitz Dolgeroeky* in the year 1665. The Brother of *Radzin* was at that time in the ſervice of the great Duke in the *Polish* Warrs, under the command of the before mentioned *Bojar, Iurie Alexowitz Dolgeroeky*, who commanded in chief: and when the Camp broke up to go into their Garriſons, the young *Radzin* deſired to be diſcharged with his Men, having done the Emperour very good ſervice in that laſt Expedition, and that then there was no more occaſion for their Aid: but the General refuſed to let them go, as not having any certain Intelligence that the Hoſtility were ſent to their Winter-quarters. The *Coſaks* were hereat greatly diſcontented, being Volunteers, and had deſerved yet greater Civilities than their Requeſt, or than ever they had received from the *Ruſſians*: they therefore marched off ſilently, led by their Collonel, brother to this ſaid *Stenko Radzin*, which was ſo badly reſented by the General, that he took the Collonel, and hanged him. This was the ſum and ground of his revolting, which prompted him not only to imploy his Weapons againſt the *Ruſſians*, but aſwell againſt the *Perſians.*

In the year 1667 he began to commit many Inſolencies and himſelf and all his crew betaking themſelves to the *VVolga*, where they took all the ſmall Shipping they met with, and plundered them, killed and threw over board all the Men, unleſs they would admitt themſelves into their Companie: They entred alſo all the Towns ſeated near the River, where they pillaged the Churches and Monaſteries. From hence he took his way directly for *Iaik*, which he took in and ſet a ſtrong Garriſon. From hence he marched toward the *Caſpian* Sea gathering vaſt multitudes of diſcontented Perſons, who came upon the noiſe of Rebellion from all parts. From the *Caſpian* Sea he went for the *VVolga* by the way committing many Inſolencies, plundering and ſinking all the ſmall Shipping, waſting and depopulating of Cities and Villages, and uſing the People very inhumanly if they would not reſolve to joyn in that Rebellion. From hence he went to the City *Terku*, and ſo onwards to the Bounds of *Perſia*, where he alſo ſadly moleſted the Subjects of that King, as well as thoſe of the

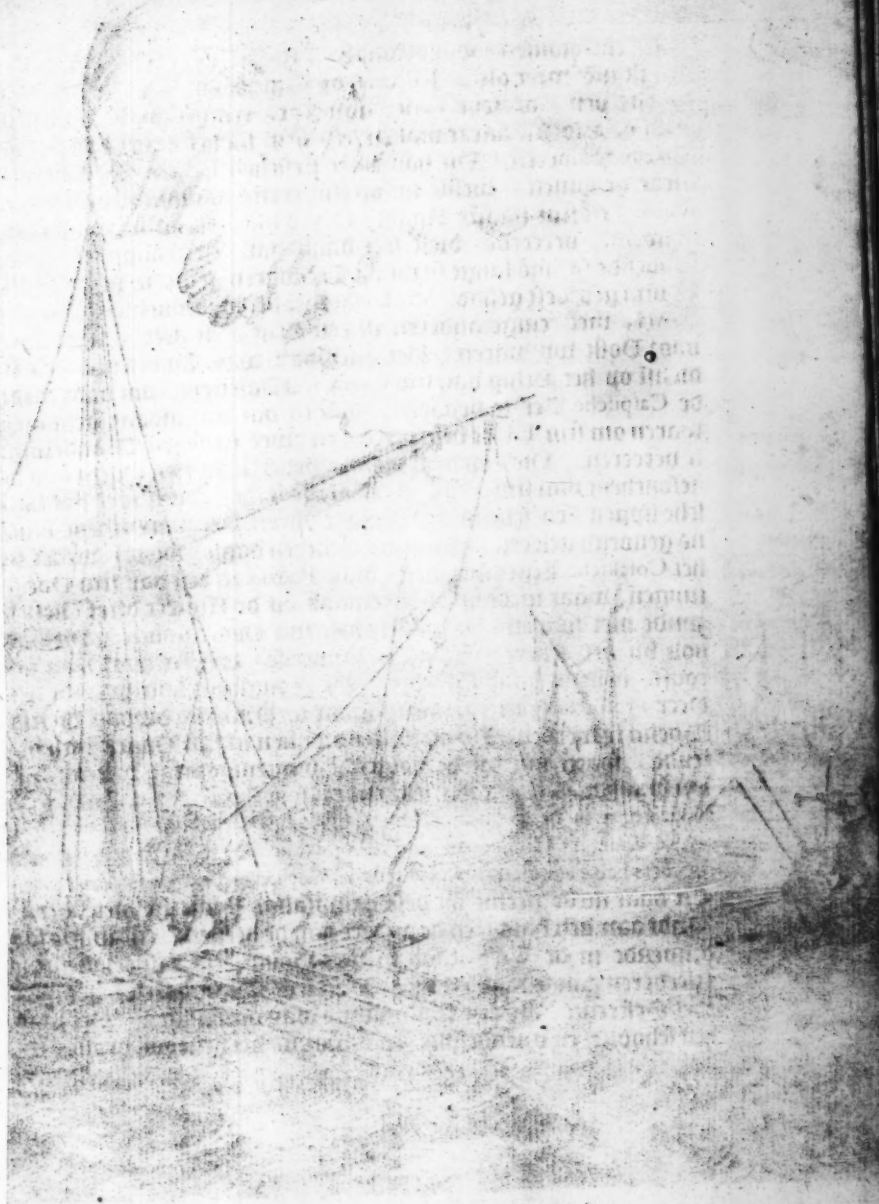
Czar.

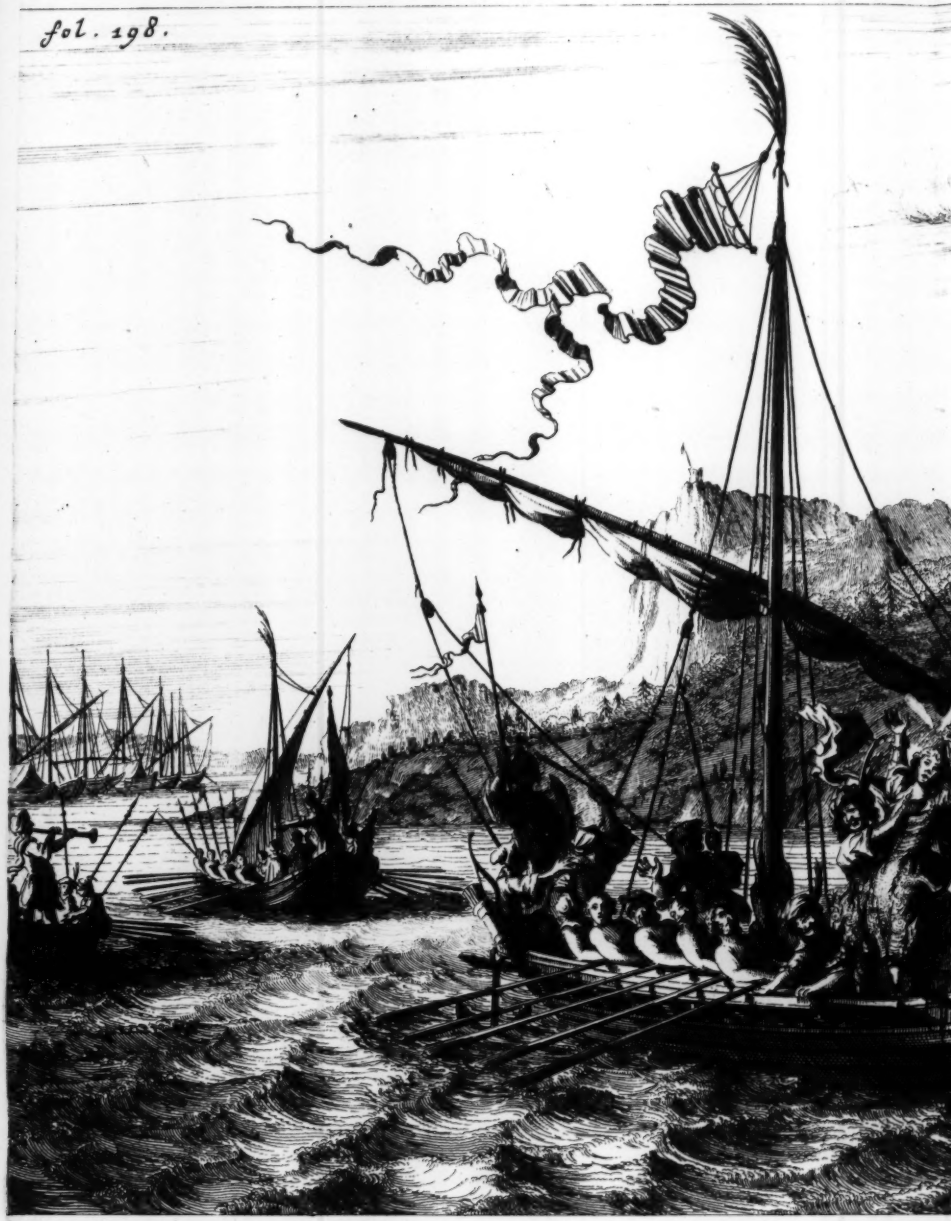
Czar. The Inhabitants of a ſmall *Perſian* City hearing of his approaching deſerted the Town and betook themſelves to the Hills and Mountains without the Town, where they though themſelves ſecure from his violent and tyrannical Actions. *Stenko Radzin* perceiving that, ſent out Emmiſſaries to ſee where they kept themſelves, with Inſtructions, to tell them that his End was not to do any harm to their Perſons or Eſtates; but only to buy Proviſion for his Money, and therefore willed them to return into the City. The Perſons who were ſent did their meſſage, and the credulous Citizens came down entred their Houſes, and ſet open their ſhops, of whom *Radzin* and his followers bought ſeveral Commodities and Neceſſaries paying them to the utmoſt farthing: but had given a token to his Men by ſetting of his Cap after an unuſual Manner, upon which they were all on a ſudden to fall upon the Towns-men and maſſacre them, which after a moſt barbarous Manner they did, ſparing neither Man, Woman, nor Child. AUG. 1669.

The *Waywode* of *Aſtrachan*, whoſe name was *Ivan Simonowitz Proſoroſki*, hearing how many places they had deſpoliated in the Countrey of the *Medes* and upon the Borders of *Perſia*, thought it high time to put himſelf in a Poſture of Defence, and ſuppreſs the growing Army of the Malecontents; he in order thereto cauſed all the Shipping as well Merchant-men as others to be put into an equippage, and diſpatches *Simeum Ivanowits Geboof*, who had then the third ſuffrage of *Aſtrachan*, to find out the *Coſacks-Rebells*, and give them battail. This Navy conſiſted of 36 *Stroegs*, and about 40000 Men. The Rebells had already 22 *Stroegs* with a proportionable number of Men, keeping themſelves about the Iſland *Satyry Boggere*, which lies about the Entrance of the *Wolga* into the *Caſpian* Sea, where they had ſet up a Watch-Houſe upon the Top of a high Hill, from whence they could view the whole Countrey round about, as alſo the *Caſpian* Sea and the *VVolga*. This Iſland lay very commodiouſly for their Ends being all along the Coaſt of a high ſolid Rock, and had only one way to enter it.

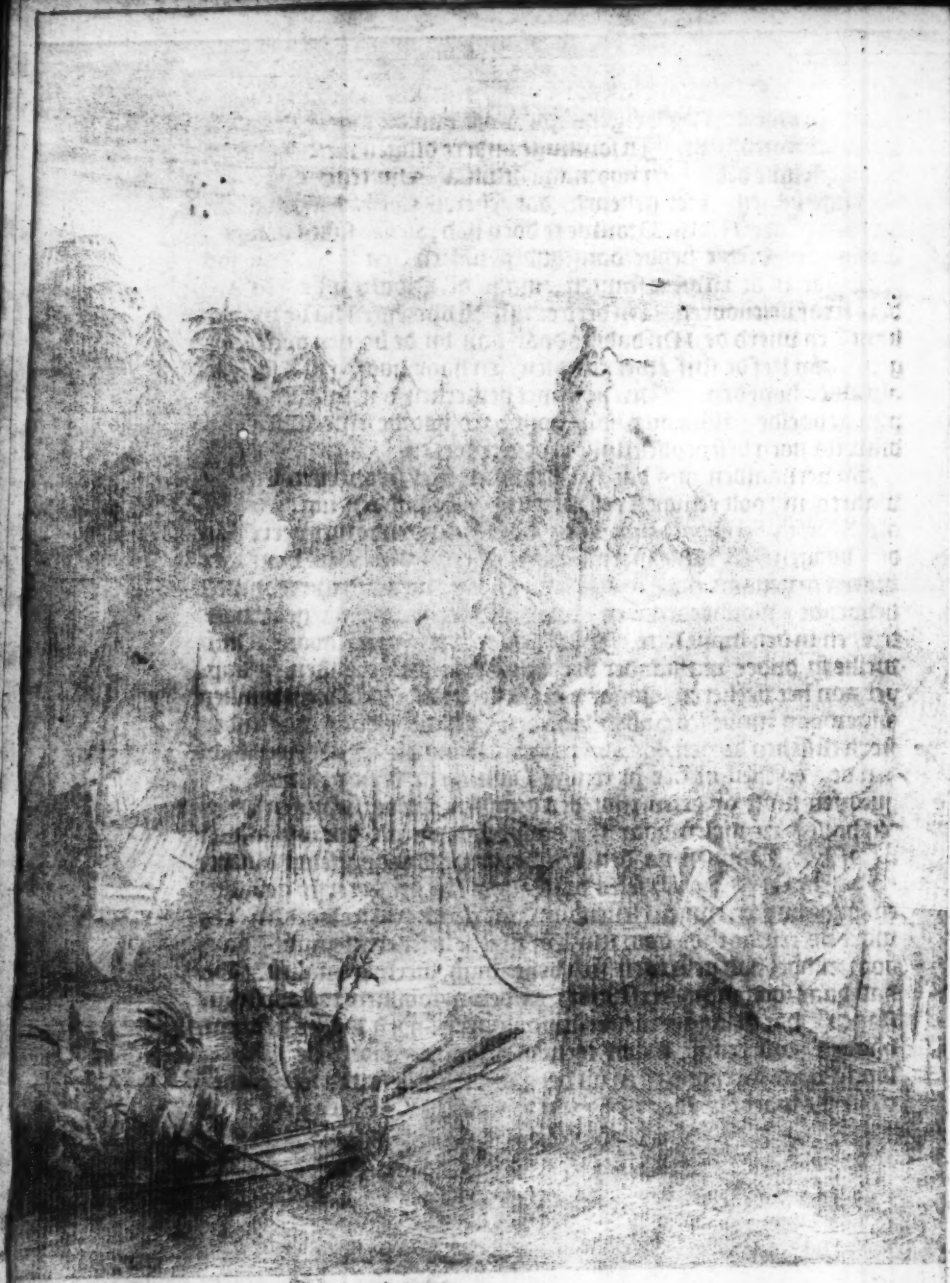
So ſoon as the *Coſacks* ſaw the *Aſtrachan* Fleet approach, they put off their Shipping, and betook themſelves to flight, ſo that that Expedition was in vain. Seeing now that the *Coſaks* kept themſelves together and would not come to open batttel, their were new

JUNE. 1669. Measures deliberated upon either by fair or foul means to suppress the Rebells. It was not long before the *Vvaywod Prosorofski* received Letters from the *Czaar*, with a Pardon for *Stenko Radzin* on condition he would submit to the Emperour, and for the future demean himself as a loyal subject. The subtle *Cosack* not expecting so gracious a tender, accepted of the Emperours Grace, being already by Hunger and other extremities brought to such a state, that he would of his own accord have requested it, for they were then put to a short allowance, and had taken a *Persian Boes* having some Horses aboard that were sent to the *Czaar*, from the King of *Persia* for a present, these they took, killed and used very sparingly, whence it may be gathered in what a mean condition they were. Having thus obtained an assurance of Pardon from the Emperour, they marched forward for *Astrachan*, where they were very kindly received, and congratulated by those of the Townsmen, every one of them appearing in the most splendid manner he could, for they had rifled many Gentlemens Houses where they found always Apparrel, Jewels and other Plunder for habit and Ornament. *Stenko Radzi* the Ringleader of that Rout, could not be distinguished from the rest, but by the Honour which was done him, being saluted by the name of *Batske*, Father; and certainly he was a father of many impious Sons. I have seen him several times upon the *Stroegs* and in the City; he is a brave man as to his person, and well proportioned in his limbs, tall and streight of Body, pock-pitted, but only so as did rather become than disfigure him, of a good conduct, but withall severe and cruel, as has been already instanced. The *Cosacks* who were his Followers came dayly into *Astrachan* where they sold their Booty which was very rich and costly. The Silk they sold for a 3^{d} of the currant value, which was bought up of the *Persian* and *Armenian* Merchants. I bought a Gold-chain of one of them which was almost a fathom long, and in joynts like a Bracelet, between each piece were precious stones: the price I gave for it was not fully 7 pound *sterl.* Shortly after their Arrival Captain *Butler* went to visit him, taking 2 bottles of Brandy along with him, which he thought might be an acceptable present, since they had been so long at Sea, and presented them to him and his Minion, whom the *Russians* called *Devils-whisker* by a Nick-name. When we came to his Tent; and desired admittance, he sent to know who









who we were; Anſwer was returned him that we were *Dutch*, and imployed in the ſervice of the *Czar*, upon a Ship in the *Caſpian* Sea. He forthwith gave order to a Gentleman to conduct us into his Tent where himſelf and ſome of his Council ſat, and cauſed us to ſit down, took our preſent in good part, and drank the Emperours health. Another time we went through the Camp where we ſaw him going aboard a Yacht to divertiſe himſelf upon the Water; with ſome of his Officers: he had with him a *Perſian* Princes which he had taken, together with her Brother. The Brother he preſented to the *Waywod* of *Aſtrachan*, but the Siſter he kept for his Concubine. Being now in the heighth of his Cups, and full of Frolicks, bragged of the many preſents he had given and received ſince his being reſtored to the Emperours favour, and on a ſudden brake out into thoſe Extravagant terms, ſpeaking to the *Wolga*: *VVell*, ſaid he, *thou art a noble River, and out of thee have I had ſo much Gold, Silver and many things of Value. Thou art the ſole Father and Mother of Fortune and advancement: but, unthankfull man that I am? I have never offered thee any thing: Well now, I am reſolved to manifeſt my gratitude.* With thoſe words he took her into his Arms and threw her into the *VVolga*, with all her rich Habit and Ornaments; her attire was of rich Cloth of Gold, richly ſet out with Pearls, Diamonds and other precious Stones. The Lady was of an angelical Countenance and amiable, of a ſtately carriage of Body, and withall excellently well qualified as to her Parts, being of a ſingular wit, and always pleaſing in her demeanor towards him, when he was in the heat of fury, and yet at laſt became the inſtance of his Cruelty. However there is no man ſo addicted to any one Vice but there are ever more ſome ſparks of vertue. His own outrages as to the ſin of Adultery he would allow himſelf, but would not indulge or diſpence with it in others. It happened that a certain Soldier of the *Coſacks* had been taken in the action with anothers wife: this being made known to *Stenko*, he cauſed them both to be inſtantly apprehended, and the man to be thrown into the River with great ſtones made faſt to his neck and heels: but for the Adultereſs he provided another puniſhment which was to erect a Pale on the Water ſide, and tying her by the feet cauſed her to be ſo drag'd along the Earth, and from the Tent to the Pale which was almoſt 2 [*English*] miles, and there hoiſed up, where ſhe hung 48 Hours before ſhe died, and yet nevertheleſs the great torment of

July. 1669.

JULY. 1669. which ſhe muſt needs be ſenſible, all that time ſhe never was heard to ſhriek or cry out.

Beſides the many Robberies and great inſolencies they had committed, as well within Land as in Sea-Towns in *Perſia*, as at *Niſabath*, *Scabaran*, *Mardore* and *Tackuſi* ſituated near the famous Hill *Barmach*, from hence they went to *Aſtrabath* and *Bachu* which they ſurprized took in, and plundered, committing many barbarous actions in maſſacring of the Inhabitants and ſetting the Houſes on fire. Here they found a great Quantity of Wine, which they divided among themſelves, and carouſed ſo long, till they were all beſotted and drunk, being about 6000 Men in all. In the mean while the *Perſians* had drawn down ſeveral Companies, and all on a ſudden fell on this Rout, and made ſuch a ſlaughter that the twelfth part, or litle more were left alive and *Stenko* himſelf 5 times in danger of being taken. The Remainder betook themſelves to the *Stroegs*. This ſo much weakened them that they were not in a capacity to do any conſiderable damage by land, the more by reaſon the *Perſians* watched their Coaſt with very great vigilancy; as did alſo the *Coſacks* and *Dageſtan Tartars*, ſo that they were conſtrained for ſome time together to keep off at Sea, and keep cloſe to Pyracy, where every one was well warned of them and conſequently ſo cautious that they got but very litle Booty. But finding that they could not long ſubſiſt they were forced to land at *Satyry Boggere* an Iſland (of which before) where they waited for what Providence would allott them.

CHAP.

June. 1669.

CHAP. XIV.

Stenko *returns back and is followed by many* Ruſſes, *but oppoſed by an Order from* Piſoforoski, *which* Stenko *diſobeys. He returns again with a greater Power. The* Waywode *of* Aſtrachan *ſends out a Fleet againſt him, which ſhamefully yields. The Officers murthered. A great Perplexity at* Aſtrachan, *Power and Aw of* Stenko. *His cruelty and Pride. His Legates are devoured of Dogs in* Perſia. Kumuskinka *ſurrendred by Treachery.*

Stenko Radzin whoſe implacable fury againſt ſome that had interpoſed themſelves to incite the Emperour againſt him, and to deprive him of his favour, would not ſuffer him to remain ſtill; but their bodies being now ſomewhat aſſwaged which before were ſwollen with drinking of ſalt Water, and their Vitals again revived with freſh Diet, which were almoſt ſpent with long faſting during the time of their extravagancies, they reſolved to go for *Don*, and to viſit their reſpective homes. *Radzin* gives them a ſhort warning to prepare for a March, and in order thereto gets all things in a readines himſelf.

Some diſcontented *Ruſſians* ſeeing the *Coſacks* ready to depart, they came and deſired to liſt themſelves under his Conduct, to which he readily aſſented, and by fair Promiſes drew abundance after him.

It happened ſometime before he deſigned to leave the Town that meeting with about 20 or more *Ruſſians* whom he could ſee by their countenance to be inclinable to follow him; theſe he fell in diſcourſe with, and liberally diſtributed a Bag of Gold among them, promiſing them that if they would follow him they ſhould fare no worſe than he. This was encouragement enough for them who didnot only liſt themſelves, but perſwaded alſo many of their Friends to take the like Courſe, and joyn their Fortunes, amongſt whom were divers that were in the Emperours Service.

The Governour of *Aſtrachan* coming to underſtand that ſeveral Perſons in the ſervice of the great Duke, his Maſter, had withdrawn and liſted themſelves among the Rebells, he ſent one *Wederos* a Captain of the *Strelitzers* to *Radzin*, with Inſtructions to demaund the *Ruſſians*, and to will him to ſend them back upon pain of the Emperours Diſfavour, which ſhould not be ſo eaſily accommodated as before, when perhaps he ſhould be compel'd to make ſatisfaction for

Aug. 1669. The former Crimes with the new. The Captain goes to fulfull his Order, and declares to *Radzin* the Reason of his comming, and his Message, who would not so much as allow him Audience; but when the Captain began to insist hard upon the remitting of the Men, *Radzin* was so inraged that he drew his sword and threatned Death, if he persisted any longer, and with that made towards him, but the Captain being a discreet Gentleman demeaned himself very fairly, when he saw him in such a Rage, so that he escaped that Danger, and all the vent of *Radzin's* fury melted away in these words, *How dare you*, said he, *make such an impudent Demand? shall I then betray my Friends who have out of a pure inclination to me ward deserted their neareſt Allies and Fortunes? and shall I be threatned with loss of Favour to boot? Prethee, go tell thy Master, that I equally value him and the Emperour, and let him know that I shall be with him ere he be aware, and reward him for this Protervity.* The Captain was fain to smother his thoughts, and contented himself with this Answer which he related to the Governour. The Governour hereupon assembles a Council, and consulted what to do; learning from the answer of *Radzin* that he intended to come down again, and so it happened; for within 3 days he began to march toward the *Wolga*, where he had 80 *Stroegs* and other Shipping provided, filled with Ammunition and Men, but did not at first any hostile feat. The *Waywod* of *Astrachan* called a Counsel the second time, where it was concluded that so long as *Radzin* did not do any attempt or violence upon any Town belonging to the Emperour, he should not oppose him till the whole Navy were come together.

About fourteen days after the whole Fleed arrived, consisting in a great Number of *Stroegs* with about 6000 *Strelitzers*, or Soldiers besides Powder, shot and Provision. No sooner was the Fleet arrived but *Radzin* by his Emmissaries had Intelligence of their whole aim imploying such persons therein as he thought lest suspected. He therefore intimates his mind to some of those in whom he could repose best confidence, to run away and oyn them to the Governours Forces under name and colour of Deserters. These speeded them away to the *Astrachan* Fleet and feigned themselves discontented with the abuses which they pretended to have suffered by *Radzin*, and were accepted in friendly manner by the adverse Party, who the rather did it for that they had hopes of a discovery and detection of *Radzins* Coun-

Councils. But ſo ſoon as they were under Sail and almoſt cloſe with the Enemy, the Villains on a ſudden and unanimouſly fell upon the Officers, and diſpatched them ſurrendring the reſt with the whole Fleet into the Hands of the *Coſacks*, *Radzin* having got ſo rich a prey without any difficulty or diſpute, inſtantly ordered his men two Moneths Pay in hand, with promiſe of free enjoyment of what they ſhould take by Plunder, beſides other Means of Encouragement. AUG. 1669. *The officers of the Aſtrachan Fleet murthered.*

The Governour was not a litle diſmay'd at theſe tidings, the more when he underſtood how the Commonalty murmured againſt him, and that *Radzin* was in general laudably ſpoke of, and that not only in *Aſtrachan* but aſwell in all the Towns round about that were under the ſubjection of the Emperour. The *Strelitzers* who had not in a long time received Pay, and hearing how *Radzin* had given his men 2 Moneths pay in hand found now occaſion to grow mutinous, and that ſo unanimouſly that the Government and Officers durſt not oppoſe them by any rigorous courſe or violent mean, but did all they could to perſwade them by fair words and promiſes. *The great perplexity at Aſtrachan.*

Radzin finding himſelf grow ſtronger and ſtronger, and that with the *Ruſſes* now under his command, he had about 16000 Men, he unſhip'd a part of the Men, and ſent ſome to *Czaritza*, and others to *Txarnojar* but he himſelf remaind upon the Fleet, where he was as much reſpected as a King, and had a ſoveraigne aw over the People. When he was drunk few of the Officers durſt appear in preſence, for it was very cuſtomary with him, for a ſmall offence to behead a Man, although the greateſt Minion or Favourite he had: The meaner ſort were in no danger, for thoſe were wont to flatter him, and upon a Wink would diſpatch their Officers, when he had taken any diſlike againſt them, and therefore willing to have them removed, and others in their place. Thus by giving ear to the Commons more than to the Officers he became more dreadfull and formidable for the ſole command and direction of the whole Army lay in himſelf. This beſides that gave the Rable ſuch encouragement that in the ſpace of 5 days after he had got the *Aſtrachan* Fleet, his Army was raiſed from 16000 to 27000 Men, being a mixt multitude of Peſants, Slaves *Tartars* and *Coſacks*, and men of reſtleſs minds from all Parts, being tickled with the thoughts of free enjoyment of Plunder. Theſe running to and again over the face of the Countrey, committed many Radzins Power and Aw. *His kruelty when drunk.*

SEPT. 1669.

many inhuman acts, and murthered the Gentry, who were fain to belake themſelves to *Aſtrachan* disguiſed in Slaves Apparrel. The Peſantry who indeed are very tyrannically dealt with throughout all the Emperours Dominions, here found an occaſion to be revenged of their Liege-Lords, and to ſhow their Man-hood brought the Heads of their Lords and threw them at the feet of a Provoſt or Executioner there to ordained, who gave them a reward for their Pains.

Radzin being arrived to this Pitch of Greatneſs was ſo puffed up as is he had conquered all the Empire; tis true he refuſed the Title of Emperour, ſaying, that hes purpuſe was not to rule as Lord and Soveraign but to live with them as a Brother to revenge that Tyranny and Oppreſſions which they had for ſo many gears, and their Progenitors for ſo many ages paſt ſuffered againſt all Reaſon and the Law of Nature. But on the other ſide, he mainly oppoſed the King of *Perſia*, and aſſumed the confidence to Diſpalck Ambaſſadours to that Court to whom he delivered Inſtructions, full of lofty-proud ſwelling Titles, and in his Compellation ſtyled the Sophy, *Brothen*. The Main and Sum of his Memorials and Inſtructions was. To urge the *Sophy* to enter into an Alliance with him, and to ſupply him with Ammunition of war for his Monye and what elſe he might have occaſion for. The ſaid Legates were ordered at firſt to inſiſt upon this by ſoft means, but in caſe of refuſal te menace the *Sophy*, and to let him underſtand that he, (the ſaid *Radzin*) had 200000 Men ready to invade his Territories, and that he would lake occaſion to viſit him when he leaſt dreamed on it, &c. So Soon as the King had underſtood their Inſtructions were to threaten him in caſe he refuſed to comply with *Readzins* Propoſals, he ſent for them and having an Executioner at hand made him forthwith chopp off their hiads with a Scimmatar, and commanded that their Rodies ſhould be throw to the Dogs which were kept in the Kennel on purpoſe, reſerving only one to acquaint their Maſter how kind a Receptian they had met with at the *Perſian* Court, and gave him a ſhort but ſharp Memorial for *Radzin*, threatning to come ere long and chaw thoſe Boars which had ſo depopulated the utmoſt Borders of his Dominions, at what time he would not throw him living but deat to the hungry Maſtirs. This *Coſack* Envoye glad to come of ſo well with Soul and

The Legates of Radzin *beheaded am their Bodies thrown to the Dogs.*

and Body inſeperate came only to deliver *Radzin* the Reſult of his unſuccesfull Ambaſſage; upon which the Rebel was ſo nettled that he commanded an Executioner to hew him into morſels for Ravens meat. APRIL 1670.

Radzins Paſſion being over he did all he could to increaſe his Fleet and Army, for which end he diſpatched ſeveral Emmiſſaries to allure the *Ruſſian* Soldateſque to deſert their ſervice, in divers Towns upon the *VVolga*, judging thoſe the fitteſt for his Turn, for that they were the beſt acquainted with the Intrigues of the *Ruſſian* Militia, and conſequently the more ſerviceable upon occaſion of attacquing any Town or Fort he deſign'd upon. Thus having accompliſhed his Ends with very good ſucceſs, he Muſters up his Forces, and ſends ſome of the *Strelitzers* to *Kamuſchinka*, who were to go under the Notion of Imperial command (for as yet they had no further Intelligence from *Moſcou*, ſince the Rebels left *Aſtrachan*) theſe then pretending to come from the *Czaar*, to adviſe the Governour how he ſhould behave himſelf, in caſe they attacqu'd the Town, were careſſed by the Military Officers, and conſequently ſo much confided in, that they found an opportunity to diſpatch the Governour and almoſt all the Officers of the Garriſon, having before hand created the Remaining party Members of Rebellion, and immediately fired a Gun, which was a Token to *Radzin* that he ſhould Approach and ſurprize the Town, which he did with expetible ſucceſs, and planted a Garriſon of *Coſacks*, removing the *Ruſſian Strelitzers* into the Navy.

CHAP. XV.

The Animoſities and Tumults in Aſtrachan. Stariza *taken in by the* Coſacks. *A Fleet ſent out againſt them. The* Coſacks *win* Tzarnojar. *The* Ruſſian *Fleet yields to the* Coſaks. *The great Inſolency and boldneſs of the Mobile of* Aſtrachan. *The valour of the* Waywod *or Governour. Adviſed to abſcond or abſent himſelf, which is put in practice.*

THeſe Tidings coming to *Aſtrachan*, was the occaſion of no ſmall murmurings and Jealouſies among the Townsmen, none know-

APRIL. 1670. ing who was friend and who was Enemy, or in whom they might rely on, or repoſe any truſt; inſomuch that many diſcontented perſons began to make Factions and breath Rebellion, though not ſo openly as that the Government could take advantage to ſuppreſs it. The *VVaywod Proſorofski* conſidering that the Commonalty were very much incenſed, and that ſome mutinous Enterprize was a hatching, he aſſembles the Lords and Council of *Aſtrachan*, to conſult with their Judgments what was beſt to be done in thoſe imminent Dangers and Juncture of Affairs, and what courſe they ſhould take to ſedate thoſe Animoſities and Heats, which ill-affected perſons indeavoured to raiſe and foment among the Towns-men and Plebeians; as alſo what manner of Defence to uſe againſt the approaching Enemy. As to the former they concluded, that there was no better way to remedy it, than to conduct themſelves warily in the latter, and firſt obſtruct the growing Power of the Rebells, which Perils being removed it might not then be doubted but that the Commons would be the better and ſooner pacified. Upon this Reſolution ſeveral worthy Gentlemen preſented their Service to go as private Soldiers upon that ſudden and urging Expedition, not daring any more to put the leſt Confidence in the *Strelitzers*.

On the 10 of *April* 1670 the *Bojar Petrofski* diſpatched 800 Horſe under the Conduct of Col. *Levonti Bogdanof*, whereof 400 were *Ruſſians*, the reſt *Nagayans*, to furniſh the City *Stariza*, (lying about 80 *German* miles from *Aſtrachan*) with Ammunition and neceſſary Proviſion, and to ſtrengthen that Place with thoſe Men, which lies upon the River *Don* or *Tanais*, where the *Coſacks* have their Reſidence. This River was of old ſuppoſed to run into the *VVolga*, as ſome Geographers have been pleaſed to write, but later experience has fairly contradicted that opinion, for their Boats which are no more than trunks of trees hollowed, they are fain to drag and trail a days Journey over Land before they find the *VVolga*, at the neareſt diſtance thoſe Rivers ly to each other, where when they are come they ty heavy Balks on each ſide to keep them above Water, and to give them a due ballance and poize in their floating.

Stariza taken in by the Coſacks. On the 28 came an Expreſs to *Aſtrachan* from Col. *Bogdanof*, with news that the *Coſacks* had already taken in *Stariza*, and had killed 1200 *Moſcovian Strelitzers*, who were but newly come thither before the Siege

Siege, this Relation was given the Collonel by a Captive *Coſack*. The *VVaywod* alſo got intelligence how that the *Field-Tartars* were in great diſcord among themſelves, and that their Factions were ſo far advanced, that they were become open Hoſtility, and their Power waſted by inteſtine ſtrife; upon which Collonel *Bogdanof* was marched on to *Czornojar*, which is an Imperial Town, about 50 *German* miles from *Aſtrachan*. The ſaid Captive *Coſack* was ſo tortured on the Rack, that the moſt hard-hearted *Ruſſians* then preſent had compaſſion of him, yet nothing could be forced from him but what he made voluntary confeſſion of, before he came to the Rack. APRIL 1670.

By this time the Emperour had got full intelligence of the Tumult of the *Coſacks*, and of *Radzins* purpoſe, together with his barbarous maſſacres already committed upon his Subjects, and that he continually depopulated his Countrey, he gave order to levy new Forces, in place of the Old, which were to be ſent upon this Expedition, as alſo as many *Stroegs* as could on a ſudden be put in Equippage, for which end the Deputies of the Towns upon the *Wolga* did their utmoſt to complete a Fleet of 40 Sail. Upon each *Stroeg* was only one great Gun, but other Ammunition as much as was neceſſary for ſo many men as the *Stroegh* was capable or fit to carry. Aboard the ſaid Fleet were 2600 *Ruſſian Strelitzers*, and 500 voluntiers of *Aſtratay* under the Conduct of *Simeum Ivanowitz Elbof* a *Kneez*, who was for the time being made Commander in chief. Theſe men were of the Regiment of *Ivan Ruſinski* a *Polander*, but baptized a *Ruſſian* Proſelyte, whoſe Lieutenant was one *James VVonderham*, *a Scottish* Gentleman. The other Commanders were Capt. *Paul Rudolph* a *German*. Capt. *Robert Heut* an *Engliſhman*, and *Nicholas Schaack* who was our Lieutenant, being made a Captain by the *Ruſſians*. Beſides two other *German* Lieutenants and two Enſigns of that Nation, who were alſo *Ruſſian* Proſelytes. The reſt were *Moſcovians* and *Polonians*.

On the 25 of *May* being Whitſunday, the Fleet left *Aſtrachan*, and the *Coſack* who was tortured almoſt to death hang'd up in their ſight. In the mean while the Citizens and Commons began to buzz and murmure againſt the Deputy and the Officers, and grew ſo bold that they reviled him when he rode through the Town, he not daring to ſuppreſs them for fear of a greater irruption of that rebellious Fire, which lay ſtill unſmothered, till he underſtood the ſucceſs of *Simeum*

MAY. 1670. *Ivanowitz*, whose happy arrival the Deputy and all peaceably minded persons earnestly longed for: the City being now in a very weak condition and low, since the Levying of those that were sent out with *Simeum Ivanowitz*, and consequently the Mobile the bolder. But on the 4 of *June*, by a Gentleman who had made his Escape, they had notice of the Affairs of *Tzornojar*, that on the same day that the *Knees Elboof* made his appearance the Town was taken in, and that the Governour and Officers were all massacred and their Bodies thrown into the River: and further, what was more deplorable, the Privat Soldatesque of *Knees Elboof* had murthered all their Officers in the Fleet, declared themselves for the *Cosacks*, and surrendred all the Shipping into the Hands of *Stenko Radzin* the grand Belweather, or Ringleader of the Rebells; altho immediately before their coming at *Tzornojar* they had unanimously sworn, to live and dy with their Leaders. The Report of these things, altho the Governour indeavored to smother as much as was possible, gave the Rabble greater Occasion to mutiny than they had before; yea, so far they were induced, that they publicly reproached the Superiority that they durst not look out of their doors, or windows, much less walk the streets to consult together of means to remedy the distemper of affairs, to defend themselves against the Hostility abroad, and to suppress intestin Jarrs at home, for it was no rare thing now to see the Rabble assemble togethers in heaps, and before the Doors of the Magistrates to cry out with infamous and bitter Railings, *Now, now, the times begin to alter, it will be our turn next to Lord it, you villains come out and show your selves to the World, &c.*

The Governour in the mean while lost no courage on his part, and the Gentry and Officers still continued under hopes of Assistance from the Field Army, and new succour and Recruits from *Moscou*. The Deputy therefore caused all the Ordnance to be visited and laden by the *German* Gunners, and gave orders to furnish themselves with necessary Ammunition. However we could very well remark, that were the Officers never so sedulous, they were never able both to defend themselves from such a Power without, and be secure for Mutiny within, of which many Reasons were given to the *Vaywode*, and he as often forewarned by divers prudent Persons. The *Vaywod Prosorofski* would willingly have had us in the Town-service, but being we

we were taken on for the Ships uſe, we judged it beſt to ſtay where we were, the more for that we knew the *Coſacks* were more ſevere againſt Forreign Auxiliaries, than the *Moſcovians* if once made Captives. JUNE. 1670.

In the mean while we heard continual News of the approaching of the *Coſacks*, to attacque *Aſtrachan*, which had it's inward ſtate been in all things conformable to the Muniments of that Town, they needed not fear 100000 undiſciplin'd men as are the *Coſacks*, for to ſay nothing of the Ramparts and Fortifications of the Walls, there lay about four hundred and ſixty great braſs Guns in the Battlements, beſides, thoſe of the Cittadel. Every day we expected new troubles, and commotions, inſomuch that we thought it not fit to ſtay there any longer, leſt we ſhould be maſſacred in the Uproar, but no one of us durſt ſpeak their minds, or be the firſt mover of ſuch means to ſave our lives, for that it might ſeem to ſtink too much of Rebellion, nor could we know how it might be reſented. However it came ſo far that Captain *Butler* began alſo to dread ſome ill might befall us if we did not conſult onr Safety betimes; he therefore upon a time called us all together, and uttered his mind in theſe, or the like words. *Gentlemen, I doubt not but that you are all ſenſible of the preſent danger which hangs over our Heads, and that there is not much hope left to hazard our Perſons any longer here, the Sum of what I have to ſay is briefly to adviſe and requeſt of you all to pack up what you have into the Shallop, and that we forthwith betake our ſelves to the* Perſian *Coaſt, and take what* GOD *in in his bountifull Providence is pleaſed to allott us.* He ordered us further to get all in a readineſs to be aboard before the Gates were ſhut, for that he was not reſolved to wait one quarter of an hour for any Perſon: in the mean while we made a quick diſpatch, and in a moment had got our beſt Goods aboard, and all what we thought worth our while to bring along. Our Captain adviſed us not to take 2 of our Company with us, *Brak* and *Trappen*, becauſe they had wives and children, and conſequently would both be a cumber for us, and uneaſineſs for themſelves on ſo dangerous a Voyage: but I having compaſſion with my neighbour *Brak*, I made him come aboard with his Wife and Child; but *Trappen* was not willing to leave *Aſtrachan*, unleſs he had been better furniſhed with Money than he was, or ſomething elſe in lieu thereof. We were 15 Men, beſides a Woman and a Child in the

JUNE. 1670. Shallop where we ſtill waited for the Captain and two other Perſons whoſe Goods we had with us in the Boat. After a long expectation we ſaw no Captain come, it growing late in the Evening, and our Men impatient of delay would needs thruſt off from the Wall, but *Lambert Helt* the Maſter reſtrained us all he could, ſaying, That it was what we could not anſwer, &c. Thus we ſtaid waiting till the Gates were to, ſtill expecting their coming, but midnight already come and no tidings of them we began to be in a hundred Fears: ſome were of Opinion that the Captain was gone in a *Knote* or ſome other ſmall Veſſel with the other two Gentlemen that were with him, or that he was taken and ſecured: others were jealous that the Wife of *Trappet* had betray'd us. Thus in great fear we lay all the time, not knowing what courſe to take, well knowing that if the *Ruſſes* had underſtood our Purpoſe, it would have coſt us our lives, nor had we dared to ſtay ſo long had not our Shallop lay on the other ſide of the Ship from the Town-ward, and therefore out of ſight: Nor could we be eaſily induced to beleeve that they would miſtruſt our venturing our lives in the Sea with ſuch a Boat. Thus we reſolved by the grace of GOD to thwart the *Caſpian* Meer and ſo for the *Perſian* Coaſt, and rather truſt to the divine Providence of Heaven, than confide in the uncertain Mercies of unreaſonable Men.

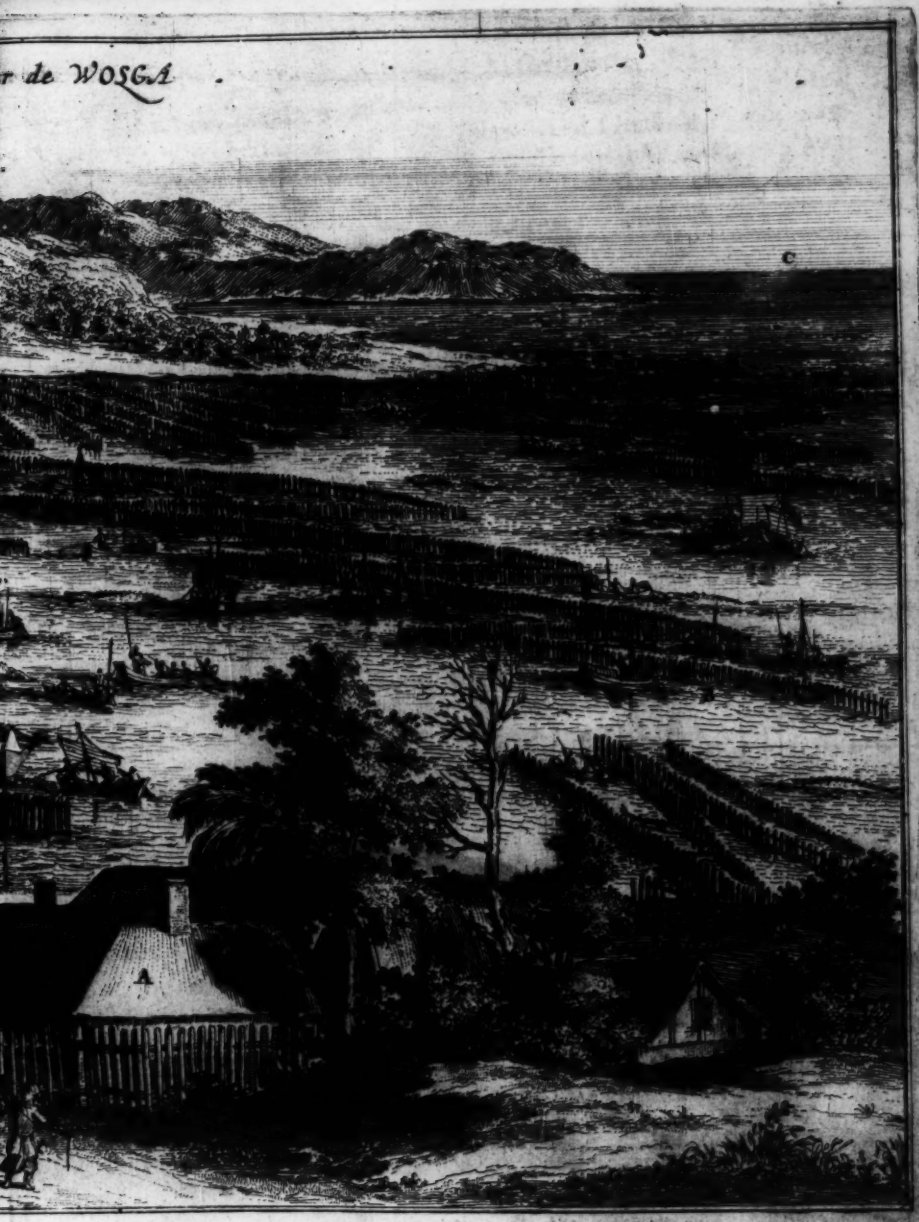
CHAP. XVI.

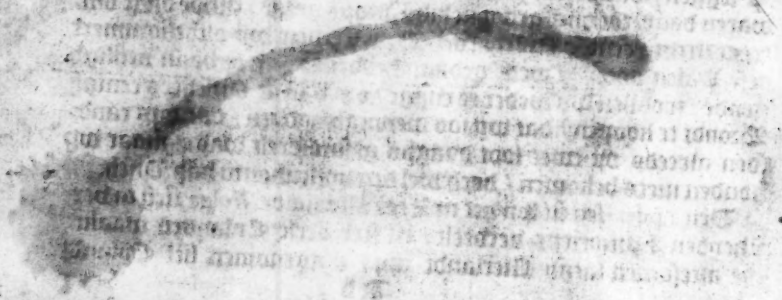
They fall down the Wolga, *and miſs their Courſe. Then touch at* Oetzjoege. *The ſtrange manner of fiſhing of the* Bieloege. *The great plenty of* Caveer. *They meet with great difficulty to gain the* Caſpian *Sea; which at laſt they get. A deſcription of the Iſland* Satyry Boggere, *Tall Reeds grow all along the Coaſt. A dreadfull Tempeſt. The Golden Bay. Their meeting with a* Tartarian *Bark. A deſcription of* Terki. *The Beginning of the* Circas-Tartars; *Their Perſons and Complexions deſcribed. Their Habit and Way of Living. Of their Women, their Habit, Humours and Inclinations. Their Idolatry.*

ON the 22 of *June* about midnight we put off and rowed down the River and ran into a Creek, which we ſtill took for the *Wolga*, till afterward we found the contrary. We ſaw here and there ſome Cottages of the *Nagayan-Tartars*, but had not the Courage to go and viſit


Steur vangst inde Rivier de Wo
A. Vaghe huysen aen weder syds des Wolga. B. Het Paal-werck. C. De Caspische Zee.

r de WOSGA





visit them lest we should be taken and sold for Slaves. The Countrey here about is very pleasant, mostly meadow ground, and plentifull of Camels, Dromedaries, Horses, Sheep and Goats, which wander to the belly in grass: There are also some small Woods in which we saw many wild Swine with their Pigs playing together and masting. Here we were in a great strait not knowing what to do, for we strayed from one Lake to another, and almost ready to eat one another up for vexation. In the mean while the Clouds began to rise, very thick at South-east which we thought did presage storm, as at last it broke out into a Thunder, wherefore we were forced to put in at a reedy Island, so long as the Weather continued so boystrous. When the storm was over and the Sky began to clear up, we betook our selves to the Water and directed our course to the Southward, where beating along the Coast we discovered a small *Cnoos*, or *Tartarian* Boat which came directly against us and asked whither we intended; we told them, For the *Caspian* Sea. They then again replied that we were far out of our way, and if we went but a litle further that we would be in danger of being taken by the *Crim-Tartars* and made Slaves. Hereupon some of our Company pray'd them that they would pilot us down to the mouth of the River, which they promised to do, and agreed with us for a Ducat. We took one of those *Tartars* aboard the Shallop, and kept company a while with the rest. After a few hours sailing we got *Oetsjoege*, which is the chief place where the Fish *Bilooge* is taken, whereof *Cavear* is made, being far greater than a Sturgeon, but of the same kind. The *Wolga* is here all laid in with Stakes, after the manner you see in the Plate, these Stakes are set in rows, wide at the Entrance so that they can drive in the Fish, which when once in they chace to the other end, where it runs up to a narrow angle, so that she can neither get forward, nor yet turn about, but is easily taken. When they have caught her they take out the Rows, which weighs ordinarily 300 or 400 *lb.* but the rest of the Fish they commonly throw away, although sometimes they pickle it, and send it to *Moscovy* where it is held in reasonable good esteem. The length of one of those *Biloeges* is from 26 to 30 foot if come to its full growth. *Cavear* is used all over *Russia* and *Moscovia* instead of Butter during their Lent, which as I have before remarked, comes 4 times a year, and is likewise sent into all parts of *Europe*, so that this Fishing is hard followed by the

JUNE 1770.

JUNE. 1670. the *Ruſſes* and *Tartars* who finding ſuch a good vent of their commodity make a conſiderable advantage of it: And ſo many are the Stake works here that a company of 15 or 20 Boats will take ſometimes 3 or 4 hundred Fiſh on a day, for no ſooner have they done at one place but they find chace in another.

When we were come to this Place, The *Tartars* would not convoy us any further, ſaying, *If you were but ſenſible of the difficult paſſage to get the Sea, you would keep you where you are; but*, added they, *if you do reſolve to go, when you are at* Oetsjoege *you may ſet your courſe directly for the Sea till you come at the Sea.* This we were forced to take in good part, and pay them for their pains. The money we conditioned for ſatisfied them very well, but at parting they told us, *that they were affraid we would not eaſily get through, whereas they knew no better but there was a ſtrong watch held on each ſide the* Wolga. This laſt ſtartled us not a little, however we reſolved unanimouſly hap hazard to venture through, let what would follow, adjudging it equally ſafe to run that peril, or to ſuffer the Calamities we were liable to, and had in ſome regard deſerved: and in that reſolution continued ſailing till we found the Stakes or Pale-work ſo cloſe in the Mouth of the River, that there was only a narrow Paſſage to go through. About the end of the ſaid paſſage we ſaw a Redoubt, which at a diſtance ſeemed to be very ſtrongly fortified, which mainly increaſed our fears, but greatly to our good luck we found no Watch but only a few Fiſhers, who had no Authority, or warrant to examin us, inſomuch that we ſteered boldly through; but conſidering our Bread was almoſt brought to an end, for we were brought to an Allowance of an ounce *per diem*, we therefore turned back and prayed the Fiſhermen to ſupply us for our Moneys; but they told us they had hardly enough to ſuffice themſelves, which very much diſheartned us, however they ſupplied us with Fiſh as much as we had need of to ſerve us over the *Caſpian* Meer.

On the 14 we ſet out and left the *Wolga*, which there leaves it ſelf divided into ſeveral ſtreams or Heads like the *Nile* (as before) making ſo many ſeveral Iſlands, which are low and full of Reeds, except only the Iſland *Satyri Boggore*, which is ſurrounded on every ſide with high Cliffs. Upon this Iſland we ſaw ſome Watch-houſes which *Stenko Radzin* (even now remembred) had cauſed to be built, to view the approachment of his Enemies. However it was not intended

his intent or deſign (in building of theſe Watch-houſes) only to be forewarned of any danger, but to prey upon the *Perſian* Merchant men, who were bound for *Aſtrachan*. From hence to the *Circas*-Mountains we often ſounded and found it never more, or ſeldom leſs than 12 foot Water. All along the Coaſt we ſaw abundance of Wild-geeſe Pelicans and other Fowl which now and then we beſtowed a litle powder upon. The ſtrand was all grown over with Reeds, which grow to an incredible heighth, and the Water there we found deeper than off at Sea, in ſomuch that it were very commodious, in a ſtorm for any ſmall veſſel to ſhelter themſelves, dropping anchor a litle without, for the Reeds break of the Winds and the impetuous beatings of the Water. In the afternoon towards the Evening it began to thunder and rain very hard, the Wind was very high at South and by Eaſt, and our Courſe lay South and by Weſt. The Water all the time beat over the Gunhil, and two men forced to heave out with their Backlers, though hardly to any purpoſe, for notwithſtanding all the pains they took the Shallop was ſtill full, the Tempeſt continuing ſo till 5 in the next morning, at what time it began to grow very calm and moderate, yet not ſo but that we were driven with a fine freſh Gale. The Water here is freſh and potable, and affoards all manner of Fiſh, that uſually breed in freſh Rivers, Pike, Carps, Breams, &c. Beſides Sturgeons, Seals and other creatures that will endure both. JUNE. 1670.

On the 15 we loſt the ſight of Land, and came about midday into the Bay *Kieſelarke*, which is otherwiſe called the *Golden Bay* the ſand whereof ſhines as fire, and is therefore by ſome called *Kiſelarſche Kolthoeh*, which is no other than *Golden Bay*. My curioſity was often to taſt the Water; ſometimes I found it laſt of Sulfur, ſometimes of Saltpeter, and ſometimes of an od bitter taſt, whence I collected that this came from the property of the Ground and bottom. The River *Kiſelar* is a Branch, or an Arm of the *Buſtro*, riſing about 8 *Dutch* Leagues above *Terki*, and runs paralel with the *VVolga* about 65 leagues, ſo disbanding its floods into the *Caſpian* Sea. But now we were in a more deſperate Condition than ever, partly for that our Shallop was ſo loaden that we were not a foot above Water, and on the other hand wanted bread, for we had not above 6 or 7 pound among all the Company. The Wind began to grow high and boyſtrous, and

JUNE. 1670. towards the Evening we had a very rough Sea, every billow riſing Mountains high, inſomuch that with continual pumping and laving we had much ado to keep the Shallop above Water, working ſome times 4 or 5 together, and by taking turns relieved thoſe that were wearry every hour with freſh men. The next morning we could ſee no land, but let all be left to the mercy of GOD.

On the 16 we had a ſtiff gale, and ſailed before the Wind, which furthered us ſo, that by noon we deſcried Land: and ſoon after got ſight of a *Dageſtan-Tartar's* Barque, which we made up to, but when we came near it, it was run upon a Bank, and deſerted of the Men, which upon our approaching them, jump'd over board. We perceiving that it was only for us that they left their Veſſel, called out to them, and willed them freely to return and that we meant no harm; upon which they came back, and we pray'd them to furniſh us with ſome bread for our Money, but they told us that they had not enough for their own Voyage however they gave us 6 litle Loaves, for which they would have no money, as alſo dried Pears and Plumbs which we thank fully received. This ſaid Bark was laden with Bales of Silk and bound for *Aſtrachan*, which when we underſtood we gave them a Caution, and told them that we verily beleeved that by that time *Aſtrachan* was in hand of the *Coſacks*, and conſequently we could not judge it ſafe for them to proceed on their Journey thither. They thanked us for our Advice, and directed their Courſe for *Terky*, that being alſo a good Market. We agreed among our ſelves to follow the like courſe, with intent, at leaſt, to ſupply our want of Proviſion, not knowing whether the Town was taken in by the *Coſacks*, or that it was ſtill under the Emperour. About 9 in the Evening we anchored before the Town, and immediately upon our anchorage ſaw 10 or 12 Soldiers come rowing towards us, but when they came nigh ſaw that we were well armed, offered not to do any violent Act, but only asked us, Who we were? and, From whence we came? We anſwered, That we were *Hollanders*, belonging to his Majeſties great Ship at *Aſtrachan*, and were come thither to ſound the Bay and Haven. *Ho! Ho!* ſaid they, *are you thoſe men? You muſt come before the Lord Deputy:* hereupon we made anſwer, *That it was then too late, but the next Morning betimes we would wait upon his Excellency.* With this anſwer they ſeem'd to be ſatisfied but we thought it not ſafe for us to tarry there long, but before

before creek of day we looſed, and ſet our courſe S. and by W. *Terky* is ſituate in 43 *degr.* and 27 *min.* about an [*English*] league from the ſtrand. It has been 3 times ſurveyed and laid out. The firſt time by the *Ruſſes* themſelves; the ſecond time by one *Cornelius Claaſz* a *Dutch* Ingenieur, about the year 1636, who alſo ſtrengthned the ſaid Town with Walls and Bulwarks after the modern way of Fortification: and in the year 1670 it was ſurvey'd and fortified anew by Colonel *Baily*, an *Engliſh* Gentleman, with huge ſtrong Bulwarks, and and a wide and deep Mote, encompaſſing it quite round. The City is ſeated in a Champan Countrey without either Wood or Hill ſo far as one can view. The River is alſo called *Terky* by the *Moſcovians*, but by the Inhabitants *Timenky*. The Banks lying upon the Sea are all grown over with Canes, and rough. *Terky* is a place of great Truſt, being the Kay or Barricado of the *Czars* Dominions, for it lies on the Frontiers of the Ruſſian Territories, and for that end has always a Garriſon of 2000 *Strelitzers*. JUNE. 1670. *A Deſcription of Terky.*

All the night it blew very hard, and in the morning we ſaw land on each ſide. The Iſland which lay on the Larboard ſide we called *Meynders* Iſland, becauſe he was the firſt that diſcovered it. We ſteered directly through the Iſlands, and when we were about 20 leagues within the Bay, we diſcovered high land, which we afterward knew to be the famous *Caucaſus* and *Ararat*, which alſo border and extend to the *Circas* Hills, and ſailing a litle further we found that we were near the Quick-ſands, ſo that we were fain to tack about, and bear up to the Channel, where coming we ſounded and found it 2 fathom, and a good ſandy ground. Being juſt got thorow the ſtraits or narrow Channel, we looked about and diſcovered a great Bark making up toward us with all the Sail they could; which afterwards we underſtood was ſent by order of the Governour of *Terki*, to purſue us, having 62 Soldiers, and all well armed aboard, with a charge from the Governour to give us no quarter, but to hack us in pieces, and to bring back the Shallop and Goods to *Terky*. We ſeeing them in a full purſuit thought it no time to dally, but laboured as hard as we could, till we got the Iſland *Sierlan* where we came to Anchor, and the Bark ſeemed to give over their chace.

On the 18 *ditto*, betimes in the morning we ſet Sail, and indeavoured to gain the High land, which before the Evening came, on

JUNE, 1670. we did putting in at a River, and were aſſured that we were not within the Juriſdiction of the *Czar*, which is bounded by the *Timenki*.

Bounds of the Circas Tartars. The *Circas* Dominion begins at the *Timenki*, and is bounded from *Nagaya* by the *Step*; and from the *Dageſtan-Tartars* by the River *Buſtro*. The Countrey is very fertile, producing good ſtore both of Fruit and Grain, and is alſo good Paſture-ground. The men are very corpulent and withall robuſt, have broad-faces but not ſquare like the *Calmucs*, or *Crims*; they are of a ſwarthy yellow complexion, and ſhave their Heads and Beards after a ſtrange manner: Croſs over the head they make a bare ſtroak, and yet let a tuft grow in the Crown, and on each ſide it hangs down in two great buſhes, which ſometimes they let hang looſe, and ſometimes plate. They wear gray Felt-coats with a mantle of the ſame, which is rough without; this they hang ſlovenly about the neck made faſt with a great button, that they can turn it which way they liſt, and make it ſerve for a Buckler againſt the Wind. They ſometimes wear Bonnets, made of cloath, which they fold into a ſquare figure, that they look like Jeſuits Caps when they wear them. They are a ſurly ill-natured people and blockiſh, not fit to converſe with, but yet more friendly than the *Calmucs*. They ſeldom appear abroad without their Horſes, upon which they ſeem as if they were planted. Their Arms are a kind of Muſquet, but the Long-bow is with them more in uſe, which they can handle with great dexterity.

Their Perſons, complexions, and Habits.

Their Women in regard of their complexion ſeem almoſt as if they were of another Nation, being in reality very fair and lovely, their skin as white as the faireſt people of *Europe*, and their countenance angelical; which I have often wondred at, when I compared them with the Men. They are alſo well proportioned in their Bodies and of a middle ſtature. Their Eiebrows are jet-black, as alſo their Hair which hangs down in ſeven or 8 curled locks on each ſide the Head. They cover not their Faces, like moſt of the Women in the bordedering Nations. Their Head-attire is a double black Hood, lined with Cotton and made faſt under the Chin: above that they wear a Velvet or ſattin Quoif, and are very nice in ſetting of it. The Widdows are diſtinguiſhed by wearing a Cows-bladder behind their head, full-blown, and covered over with Silk, or ſome fine Stuff, ſo that at a diſtance one would think that they had 2 Heads a piece. In Winter

the




Calmuckse Tartar



they wear Furs, but in Summer are ſo impatient of heat, that they only wear a looſe Shirt of red, green or blue, and that open from the Collar to the Navel. Thoſe of better faſhion do uſually wear two Coats and a pair of Drawers coming down to the Calf of the Legg, and ſometimes to the ancles. They are as curious in ſetting of their Breſts as the *Engliſh* or *French* Ladies, altho they never accuſtome themſelves to painting. They are very familiar and free in converſation and will not refuſe to let a ſtranger kiſs them: altho in preſence of their Husbands who are never jealous without reaſon. To confeſs the Truth I was very much careſſed by them, being often beckned at under colour of viewing my Habit, which to them ſeemed very ſtrange. To be brief their Women are as curious in their Accoutrements and adorning of the Body, as they are complete perſons by nature. They are very ambitious and emulating in ornaments, and are well trick'd up with Chains, Bracelets, Rings and other fine things, and thoſe both of Gold, Silver, Pearl, Coral, &c. which they become exceeding well. As I have already ſaid, they are very friendly and familiar with ſtrangers, as appeared by their community with us, when as ſome of our men began to tickle and play with them, which they took all in good part, but HE that offered to be bolder paid ſeverely for it. The Men, altho the *Alchoran* do diſpence with Polygamy, yet they reſt contented with one wife, whether becauſe they think it too chargeable, or otherwiſe unreaſonable I cannot affirm. They are Mahometans by profeſſion, but in reality meer Heathens; for although they ſpeak much of one only eternal God the Author of their being, and Adminiſtrator of the World, yet they deny him in their Idolatry and Devil-worſhip. They have neither Prieſts, Churches, nor Writ, but at certain times and places preſent themſelves with their Offerings. The greateſt day wherein they pay theſe Religious duties is on the Feſtival of St. *Elias* which happened on that very time when we were there, which we eſſayed to ſee ſolemnized, but were not permitted. All I could obſerve was only the Sacrificing of a Hee-goat, which after they had cut off his Genitals, offered the fore and boyled the hinder-part, which themſelves always eat, hanging the Hide upon a Stake, which is done with a few Ceremonies and Singing. Theſe Solemnities are alſo done as often as any of their Friends are deceaſed, whoſe corps they commit very

JUNE. 1670



they wear Furs, but in Summer are ſo impatient of heat, that they only wear a looſe Shirt of red, green or blue, and that open from the Collar to the Navel. Thoſe of better faſhion do uſually wear two Coats and a pair of Drawers coming down to the Calf of the Legg, and ſometimes to the ancles. They are as curious in ſetting of their Breſts as the *Engliſh* or *French* Ladies, altho they never accuſtome themſelves to painting. They are very familiar and free in converſation and will not refuſe to let a ſtranger kiſs them: altho in preſence of their Husbands who are never jealous without reaſon. To confeſs the Truth I was very much careſſed by them, being often beckned at under colour of viewing my Habit, which to them ſeemed very ſtrange. To be brief their Women are as curious in their Accoutrements and adorning of the Body, as they are complete perſons by nature. They are very ambitious and emulating in ornaments, and are well trick'd up with Chains, Bracelets, Rings and other fine things, and thoſe both of Gold, Silver, Pearl, Coral, &c. which they become exceeding well. As I have already ſaid, they are very friendly and familiar with ſtrangers, as appeared by their community with us, when as ſome of our men began to tickle and play with them, which they took all in good part, but HE that offered to be bolder paid ſeverely for it. The Men, altho the *Alchoran* do diſpence with Polygamy, yet they reſt contented with one wife, whether becauſe they think it too chargeable, or otherwiſe unreaſonable I cannot affirm. They are Mahometans by profeſſion, but in reality meer Heathens; for although they ſpeak much of one only eternal God the Author of their being, and Adminiſtrator of the World, yet they deny him in their Idolatry and Devil-worſhip. They have neither Prieſts, Churches, nor Writ, but at certain times and places preſent themſelves with their Offerings. The greateſt day wherein they pay theſe Religious duties is on the Feſtival of St. *Elias* which happened on that very time when we were there, which we eſſayed to ſee ſolemnized, but were not permitted. All I could obſerve was only the Sacrificing of a Hee-goat, which after they had cut off his Genitals, offered the ſore and boyled the hinder-part, which themſelves always eat, hanging the Hide upon a Stake, which is done with a few Ceremonies and Singing. Theſe Solemnities are alſo done as often as any of their Friends are deceaſed, whoſe corps they commit

JUNE. 1670

very

JUNE. 1670. very decently to the Earth but not without a great howling and a noiſe; thoſe alſo that follow him tear and mangle their Bodies after an unuſual manner.

CHAP. XVII.

They Author and his Company err in their Courſe. They meet with a Coſac-*Bark. A great Tempeſt. The Beginning and Limits of the* Dageſtan-Tartars; *Their Poſture or Frame of Body, Habit and Way of Living. They are great Plagiaries. The Barrenneſs of the* Dageſtan *Mountains. Another great Tempeſt. The Shallop run aſtrand and is ſpied by the* Tartars, *who plunder them. The ſtrange way of electing the* Dageſtan *Kings. They are aſſailed by another Company who ravish the Woman in preſence of her Husband, and convert them all to Slaves. The Author tortured to detect his Companions, which he manfully endures. They are brought before the* Oſmyn, *and chained.*

ON the 19 *ditto*, we ſet ſail and directed our courſe towards the Iſland *Tzetzien*, which we ſailed paſt, and had *Tzierlan* to the leeward; having very miſty weather all the while, which dured 24 hours or more.

The next morning it cleared up, and we got ſight of the high *Circa* Mountains, which we aimed at, if poſſible to come nearer the ſhoar, & ſo to coaſt it all along, after we had laboured and lay beating in the Wind about 3 or 4 hours we ſaw a long neck of Land, which we took for an Iſland, and indeavouring to ſail through a narrow paſſage we found our ſelves in a Quickſand, ſo that we were fain to tack about, having ſail'd the whole day in vain, and at the dawning of the day we came into the Channel which was a good ſandy ground and fit for Anchorage. Here we met with a Bark having about 60 or 70 Men on board, who called to us and prayed us to help them afloat, pretending they were aground, and faſt among the ſands, which ſome of our Company would have done, but the major part were for the Negative, and ſo overſway'd the reſt that were willing; for we ſaw the Veſſel jogg too and again very lightly, that we eaſily ſuſpected ſome bad deſign, as afterward it appeared, for when they ſaw us wind about, they made all the Sail they could and purſued us, till finding that we were very well armed they gave over their chace. The men aboard

aboard were *Coſacks*, and as we beleeved of *Radzins* Folk. JUNE. 1670.

Finding that they left us we conſulted which way to ſteer, and reſolved to let drive before the Wind. We ſounded and found 4 fathom, and came in a ſhort time cloſe by *Zierlan*, which we found to ly in 43 *degr.* 7 *min.* From hence we ſaw the famous *Ararat*, mounting his head far above the *Caucaſus*, which was nearer us. The Land of the Iſland *Zierlan* is all covered with ſhells, which ſeem to be waſh'd over, with high Floods and Inundations, whence I preſume none will Inhabit it. About evening we put off, and after an hours ſailing ſounded and found we had 6 fathom and a ſandy ground. When night came we were ſurprized with a great Tempeſt, and the Sea roſe mountains high, inſomuch that we expected every moment to go to bottom, and ſo we were thrown to and again on the tops of the billows. In the morning it began to clear up and the Winds abated ſomething, ſo that we made a litle ſail, and indeavoured to ſteer towards the High-lands on the *Circas* coaſt. After much labour in beating through the Waves, and danger of our lives we got that heighth. We ſailed by a *Tartarian* City Seated near the Water between two Hills, and by the way met with a *Moſcovian Boes* where the Men aboard had acquaintance with us, having lay with their Veſſel aboard our Ship at *Aſtrachan*. The ſaid Men invited us all to dinner, of Freſh Mutton and Rice, which they firſt parboiled, and afterward ſtewed with Butter, of which we made a hearty meal. After we had taken our leaves of them, we ſteered away by the Coaſt, and ſaw many pleaſant Valleys and a fruitfull Countrey. When the Evening came on, and we ſeeing it good weather reſolved that night to take our reſt, which we had not done for 3 nights together, and to that end dropped anchor.

On the 20 we came within 15 Leagues of *Derbent*, which is the land of the *Dageſtan Tartars*, who are ſo called for that they inhabit the hilly Countrey, the word *Dag* in their tongue ſignifying a Mountain. That part of the Countrey which lies toward the Sea is dry and heathy, but within land very fruitfull, as afterward to our ſorrow we found it. The men are very robuſt and able of Body, of a deep ſwarthy complexion, and terrible to look at. Their Habit is much at one with the *Circas-Tartars*. Their ſhoes are onely made of an Horſes hide undreſt and of one piece, drawn together above the foot with Thongs. Their

The Dageſtan-Tartars. Their Form, Habit and Way of living.

Arms

JUNE. 1670. Arms are only Bow Arrows and a Scimmatar, although ſome have alſo Spears and Launces: when they ride out, or go upon any expedition, they put themſelves in Harnaſs, to wit, a Helmet and a Target. They are great Men-ſtealers, not ſticking if they find opportunity to ſell their own Relations, or Children of their neareſt Friends which they bring to the *Turks* and *Perſians*. They are very bold, and not eaſily daunted at any forreign Power, truſting to the ſteep craggy and Mountains which are to others inacceſſible. They are *Mahometans* by profeſſion, but ſorry *Zealots* for their Religion. The Women feed and keep cattel, but their men go out a Robbing. Theſe Mountains are very barren and ſandy except where it is chalky.

The next day we weighed anchor and came before the *Tartarian* town *Boynak*, which when we had juſt paſſed by, it began to blow very hard, from the Sea ward, we having then about 16 fathom Water. In the mean time the Sea began to grow very rough and hollow that we were forced to run the Shallop immediately a ſtrand for fear of overturning; being then but 5 leagues from *Derbent*, which was the neareſt Land. Directly before the coaſt lay a long Rif or Bank and round about us was rocks, which we by the grace of GOD eſcaped, tho very narrowly; for indeavoring to get our ſelves afloat again we ran into a Circle of Rocks about 3 or 4 foot under Water, and had much labour to get clear. Having now wrought our ſelves out we gave our ſelves over to the mercy of Heaven, letting the Boat drive what way it would, till at laſt by a great Sea we were thrown upon the ſtrand, without either loſs of men or Goods, every man packing up what they thought fit to carry along with them. The Goods which belonged to Capt. *Butler* and Mr. *Termund* we buried in the Sand, thinking to ſend for them upon occaſion by the *Perſians*. But moſt unhappy proved this our landing here, for no ſooner were we come aſhoar but we were eſpied by the *Tartars*, who came and delved up the Goods we had ſo hidden, and carried it away upon their Horſes to a litle Village hard by, and brought the news of ſuch an accidental Booty to *Aly Sultan*, their Prince, who came on Horſe back with a guard of Troopers to ſeek us. Altho by day we hid our ſelves in the Woods, and by night went forward on our Journey.

Having remained one night in the Woods where we took our reſt, Our Company conſulted what was beſt to do, whether to march for-

forward on our journey or to tarry; It was adviſed by the major part to go, but I was rather deſirous to tarry 3 or 4 days longer, till the heat of the purſuit was over, that ſo thinking when the *Tartars* ſhould have ſought for us a while in vain, they would give us over for loſt. However they were very forward to be going, and rejected my Council. In the mean while *C. Brak* ſlept with his wife and child at a litle diſtance from us, and the reſt of the Company would that we ſhould leave them there, becauſe that the Woman and Child were but a cumber to us. So ſoon as I underſtood their intent was to leave them ſo, I inſiſted on the contrary, with words to this effect. *Pray Gentlemen remember your ſelves; to what end ſhould you do ſuch an unworthy act, and leave thoſe poor ſouls behind us who have neither Money nor means to ſubſiſt, and muſt in all apparency periſh in a ſtrange place? and then what guilt muſt we have upon our Conſciences? But know this if you indeed reſolve, to go and leav'em it is alſo my reſolution to cry out and make our Fates equal.* When they ſaw me ſo zealous and in a hot paſſion, they were contented to take them with us. I was the more concerned at it, for his Fathers ſake, who when we left our Native Countrey ſhow'd us all imaginable Friendſhip, and therefore indeared him the more to me. About half a day we marched with Muſkets and other heavy Armor upon our ſhoulders, beſides our baggage, along the ſides of the Mountains, till at laſt we came into a Valley where we were eſpied by a Company of Troopers, being about 15 or 16. Theſe made up towards us, and drove harder and harder, till coming near at hand, we began to conſult about the point of Safety, yet could not come to an unanimous Reſolution till it was too late: ſome were for Defence, others for yielding, which Advice was thought beſt, and approved on by the *major* part; for that we thought if the kind Heavens had given us the Field for that time, yet we were ſure that ſome muſt looſe their lives, and that they might in the mean time be ſeconded by another freſh Party, who when all was done would take the remainder and uſe us the more unkindly for our obſtinacy. We therefore upon their approachment freely ſurrendred our ſelves into their hands and implored their Mercy after the beſt manner, and with all the ſigns we could. When they had got us into their Power, they drove us into the Juriſdiction of the *Scemkals*, for we were then within the Confines of the *Oſmin*. When they had brought us

JUNE, 1670.

They ſurrender themſelves.

JUN. 1670. within their own limits, they allighted from their horſes and plundered us, yet not with that rigorous uſage we feared, for having ſtript us of our upper Garment they let us go, taking only what we had with us that was thought to be of any value. They took from me a Parcel of rich Silk, which I had bought of the Rebells at *Aſtrachan*, but my gold Chain which I had faſtened in the inſide of my Garter they did not find. When they had thus pillaged us, they directed us which way to go for our Safety.

Dageſtan is a Countrey ſubject to divers Princes and Lords who are independently Sovereign, but the moſt principal Provinces are *Scemkal* and *Oſmin*, already mentioned; and of thoſe two, the former is the more eminent, the Government whereof is not hereditary, but by lot, which is after this manner. The High-Prieſt firſt appoints a day of Election, to which ſeveral of the Princes, or *Myrſes* (as they term them) are aſſembled, theſe being ſet all in order round about him, he throws up a litle Apple, but whether of Gold, or Gilded, I cannot be poſitiv: upon this they all grabble to catch it, and he that getts it is choſen for their Prince, altho, he can favour any he has a mind to, by caſting it that way. Which may alſo ſerv for an Embleme to repreſent Elections in other places, where Policy ſeems to be more refined.

A ſtrange manner of electing a Prince.

They are aſſailed and plundered a ſecond time.

By that time we had travelled an hour, we were aware of another Troop of Horſe, greater than the former, who fell ſuddenly upon us, ſtripped us to the ſhirts, and raviſhed the wife of my Countreyman *Brak*, before our Eies, and left her naked. My ſhirt and Drawers which were left me I gave to the Woman, on whom I had more compaſſion than on my ſelf. Upon this deplorable accident we took our leaves of each other and departed, being naked and unfit to aſſiſt each other any more, going two or three in a company together. *Els Pietersſon* and Mr. *Tolk* chuſed to go with me, and by that time we had travailled 2, or 3 hours further we were ſet upon by another Company of Horſe, belonging to the *Oſmin*. Theſe took us, tied our hands behind our back, made us faſt to their Horſes Tails, and ſo to trot after them through Thiſtles and Thorns backwards, ſo that the Horſe men driving on apace ſometimes dragged us forward, for it was not poſſible that we ſhould keep pace with them. After they had brought us a good way, they untied me and binding

They take their leaves of each other and depart.

The Author and two more taken and made Slaves.

ding me fast to a Tree, shot me with their Arrows, which they had broken off and made stumped on purpose to urge me to discover the rest of our Company. But when they could not move me to detect them they continued shooting, that I often wished that they would have dispatched me, and rid me of that misery. The marks and pits remain still in my Body, as I have shown them to many hundreds since my arrival at home. These Torments I endured with incredible patience, not willing to detect my Countreymen, Torments, I say, that none without experience could be able to imagine how great. When they insisted hard that I should tell them which way they went, I told them that they went toward the Hilly Countrey, altho I was certain on the contrary for they had determined to go along the River, that they might have their shelter in the Woods. After they had used us so inhumanly and out of hopes of getting any thing from us, they took me and *Els Pietersz*, tied us legg to legg with a small Iron Chain, and so brought us up to the Prince *Osmin*, often threatning that they would tear us limb from limb, sustaining that Opinion of us that we were of *Stephen Radzin's* Company, and sent out as Emmissaries on his behalf, and therefore were resolved that his Insolencies should be lay to our charge. When I understood that their Opinion and Intentions were such, I was in a great consternation, not that I was affraid of Death (for that was what I chiefly longed for, at that time) but that we were liable to such a bad Censure, and could not explain our selves so well, as to satisfy them to the contrary: and besides all that to be kept alive and suffer so many Tortures as they threatned us, to detect what we were utterly ignorant of, and unable to satisfy them in. *1670.*

When we came to the Princes Palace, they led us thro the Guards that stood on each side with naked Scimmatars in their hands, these we expected to be our Executioners, to hew us in pieces, altho afterwards we understood it was the manner there, when captives are brought before the Prince. So soon as my Companion saw this woefull sight he turned his head about, and stared upon me with a very frightfull look, which I beleeve was the first time, and the occasion of a Frenzy, which he has been often since possessed with, and I beleeve (if he be alive) continues with him till this day. Being come before the Prince we threw our selves down at his feet, he thereupon

June. 1670. aſked us, *Whence we came, and to what end we were come thither?* We anſwered, Dutch, *and fled from* Aſtrachan, *to avoid the* Coſacks, *who upon our departure were about to lay ſiege to that City, and now come to implore your Highneſſes gracious Protection. All this I hear very well* (quoth the Prince) *but I am certain that you are your ſelves* Coſacs, *and of that Rout which not long ago depopulated my Country and made Havoc of my Subjects, and now the Villain, your Maſter having taken in* Aſtrachan *has ſent you as Spies and Exploratours to viſit my Towns.* Our reply was, *Sir, we know nothing of the Deſigns of the* Coſacs, *but ſerved as Marriners in a Ship, which ſome of our Countrey-men have built for the Emperour of* Moſcovia. When the Prince heard that, he was ſome what appeaſed, hearing us with more attention, and that we might the better be underſtood, he called for ſome *Ruſſian* Slaves, who aſſured him that we were no *Coſaks* but real *Dutch*, for that we had nothing of the *Coſac*-Dialect. Upon this the Prince turned about, and told us our Life was granted us. This news was very welcom to us, but had been more welcom if we had with one been ſet at liberty for we were chained ſeverally and ſent away to *Mahemet Sultan*, the Princes Son, whoſe Reſiding place was near mount *Ararath*.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Captives take their leave of each other. The great Orchard near Tzurbag. *Their Arrival at* Urwan. *Situation of Mount* Ararat. *An accidental meeting with ſome Carmelite Friars. The Author inſiſted upon to undertake a Cure of a Rupture, which with much perſwaſion, he promiſes to do. His aſcent up the Mountain* Ararat, *to the Hermites Cell who was his Patient, which he performs in 5 days time. He undertakes and Cures the Rupture. The Copy of an Atteſtation given him by the ſaid Hermite in barbarous Latin. His return down.*

ON the 21 *dito*, my Companion and I took our leaves of each other, but not without great ſadneſs, for ſo ſoon as we were brought out, and underſtood that we were to go two ſeveral ways, I obſerved Tears run down his cheeks, which alſo moved me to weep, for that we were out of hopes ever to ſee one anothers face again in this World, neither that our Wives or Friends ſhould ever hear from us

or

or that we ever were like to be redeemed by our Friends or Countrey men being in a remote Land. Having thus taken our last Farewell of each other, I was set upon a Mule, and committed to the Charge of some Slaves and Renegados, who were to bring me to the Court of Prince *Mahomet*, being about 3 [*Dutch*] miles from *Urwan*. JUNE. 1670.

About Evening we came to a Village called *Tzubag* seated upon a high Mountain, where we took up our lodging for that night. While we stayed here there came abundance of Women to see me, who wondred that I wore such long hair, for the Inhabitants of these Countreys (being *Mahometans*) always shave their Heads bare.

On the 22 betimes in the morning we set forward, and went through a great Grove of Fruit-trees, where we saw abundance of wild Swine masting of the shaken Fruit. These Fruit trees do not grow naturally of themselves here, for they have an Ordinance among them in that Countrey, That none, of whether Sex it be, shall marry, till they can prove that they have planted a Hundred Trees with their own Hands, so that they begin when they are Children to plant; which having been observed for some Ages, is the reason that this Wood is grown so wide. There are divers sorts of Fruits, as Apples, Pears, Cherries, Figgs, Almonds, Wallnuts and others, and that in such abundance that the hundreth part is not consumed or us'd, for none are prohibited to pluck and carry away. There is also very fair Medow and Arable Ground, the Fields full of Corn, affoarding many delicate and rich Plants, both for Kitchin use, and Medicinal. Cattel is there both good and plentifull, far surpassing ours in *Europe* for fatness, especially Kine & Sheep; Goats and Swine, both wild and tame, run together in innumerable Flocks, but incredible is the Plenty of Hens and Pidgeons which are brought in and sold for trifles.

On the 30th we arrived at *Urwan*, or *Erwan*, a City situated under Mount *Ararat*, in the Countrey of the *Medes*, about 65 Leagues from the *Caspian* Sea. The Town is not very wide, but sufficiently munited with strong walls of stone, being about the greatness of *Alcmaar* in *North-Holland*. There are in it some *Persian* Mosquees, and Churches, as also a Cloyster of *Carmelite* Friars. They use no kind of Commerce, or Merchandise, save that of Slaves, which the

JUNE. 1670. *Dageſtan Tartars* come to buy there, and are there ſo cheap that a luſty well-bodied youngman is ordinarily ſold for ten Crowns, as ſome of our Company were ſold for the ſame price. The City *Urma* is moſtly inhabited by the poorer ſort of *Armenians*; but Mount *Ararat*, by thoſe of the *Romiſh* Faith, and other Chriſtians.

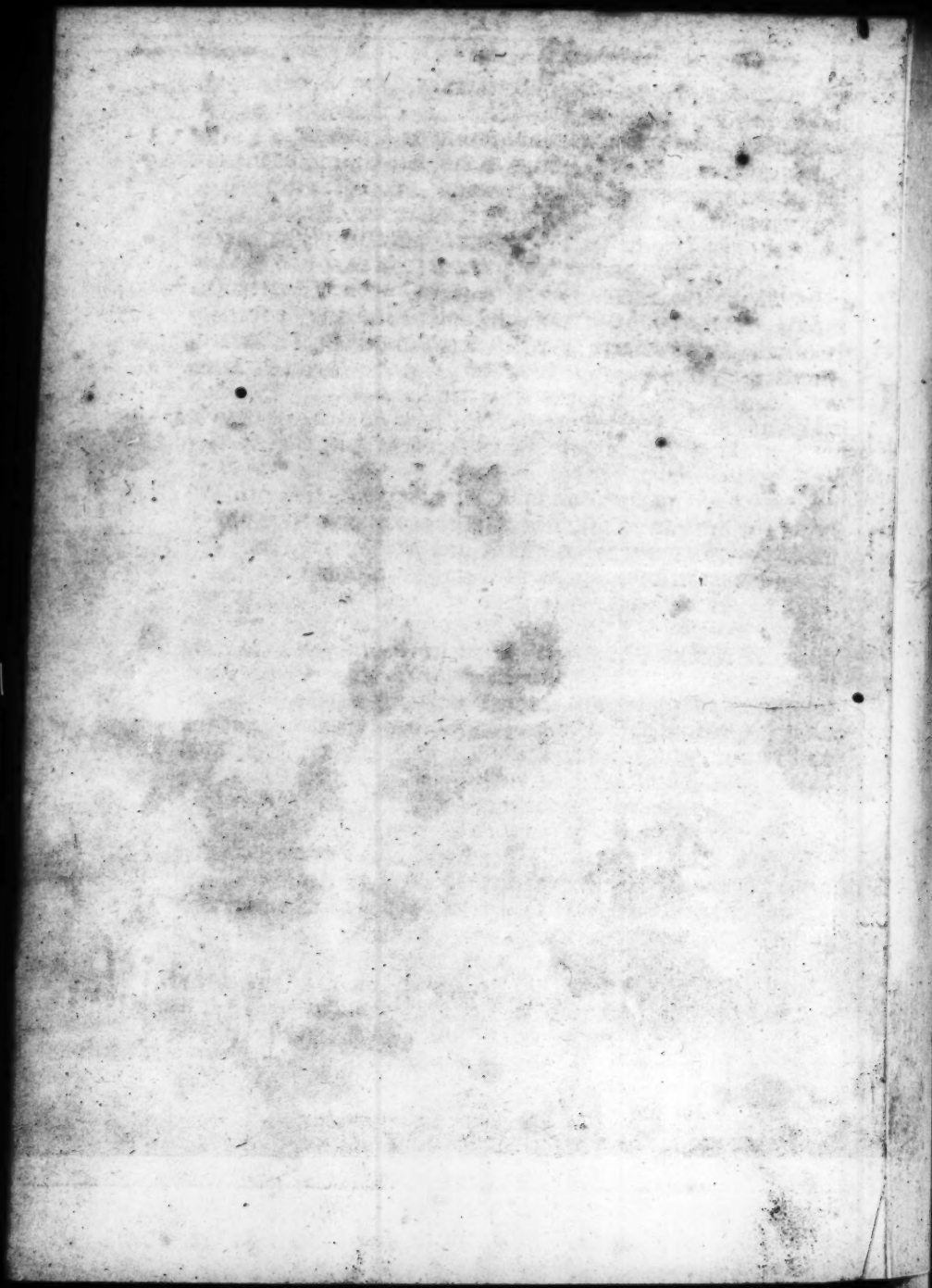
Mount *Ararat* is ſeated juſt in the parting of *Armenia* from *Media*, and is reckoned under the rank of the *Dageſtan* and *Caſpian* Mountains. The *Armenians* call it *Meſſina*, and the *Perſians* *Agri*: It is much higher than either *Caucaſus*, or the famous *Taurus*, or any other Mountain in all *Media*, *Armenia* or *Perſia*, ſo far as one can view. It is a blew, and dark-coloured Rock. I have found there a kind of a dark yellow Mineral, very ponderous, and ſparkling; but could never learn what mettal it would have produced if melted, nor that of a ſparkling Sand and Duſt, which I alſo found here, although I brought a proof of each, which I loſt, when we were taken at Sea by the *Engliſh* and plundered, as herafter ſhall be ſaid at large. This Mountain is for the moſt part barren, and without Earth, and what may be further ſaid by way of Deſcription, the Reader will find in the Relation of my Aſcent towards the Top of it.

My Maſters purpoſe was to ſell me here, but I could eaſily perceive, that they had no great mind to buy me. The ſame evening two Carmelite Friars came to me, and aſked, If I was not a Chirurgeon, or, if I had any Judgment that way? I replied, No: but not ſatisfied with the Anſwer I gave them, they applyed themſelves to my Patron, aſking him the ſame Queſtion; the one of them telling him, that a Friend of his had a Rupture, and if I could perform the Cure, they would give him 50 Crowns. My Maſter hearing ſuch a tinkling ſum of Money promiſed, preſs'd very hard upon me to undertake the Work, promiſing upon Condition that I effected the Cure, he would declare me *Free*. Hereat I was in a great ſtrait, on the one hand incited by the ſweet hopes of Freedom, and on the other daunted when I thought what a ſevere penalty I was liable to from the hands of thoſe cruel men, if I ſhould chance to miſcarry. However I took courage, and conſented to take the Patient in hand, truſting in the good Grace of GOD, and hoping for a lucky ſucceſs, which alſo would have come to paſs, by the death of one of us three. Thus I undertook the Journey, and was ſeven days before I came

to







the Hermites Cell, travailing every day 5 Miles, which were rec- IUL.
oned for a good days journey, the more, in regard that the higher 1672.
e came, the ſteeper we found the Hill. At every 5 Miles end we
ound a Hermitage, where we were ſupplyed with a Peaſant and
Aſs, to carry our Proviſion, and Wood for Fewel, becauſe
hat about the midle of the Mountain it is ſo extreme cold, that Ice
f half a nights freezing, will bear man and horſe. In our Journey
pwards, we paſſed through three ſorts of clouds. The firſt were
hick, miſty and dark. The ſecond were cold and like ſnow, al-
hough it was then perfect ſummer below in the Valleys, and ſo
arm that the Grapes were very early ripe. The third ſort were ſo
old, that we could hardly endure any longer, and thought verily
hat we ſhould have grown ſtiff, and not able to proceed on our Jour-
ey. But having now travailed 4 days, and had paſſed through the
ighest and coldeſt clouds, we found the Air very temperate and
olerable. On the 7 of that Moneth, we arrived at the Hermites
ouſe, which was hewen out of a Rock, the Weather being there
o moderate and gentle as man can imagine, or heart can wiſh; nei-
ther more hot than might very well be endured, nor yet more cold
than was expetible and congruous to humane conſtitution. The ſun
ellivened us with thwarting beams, which were again refracted,
with the refreſhing gales of Wind; the Wind correcting the Sun,
the Sun the Wind. The Hermite told me he had lived there 25 years,
and never had ſeen the weather any otherwiſe. But on the top of the
Hill, it was yet more calm, where as none can remember that
the Air there did ever change, or was ſubject either to Wind or Rain,
which is preſumed to be the reaſon that the Ark has endured ſo long
without being rotten.

Going into the Hermites Cell, I took a view of the Rupture,
which I ſaw was ſhut forth about the bulk of a henns-egg; and with
one aſked him, How long he had had it? he anſwered, A Moneth:
which gave me good encouragement, ſince I was ſure that the Fiſſure
was freſh, and therefore the Cure with greater facility to be effected.

Thus I undertook the work, and taking 200 freſh Hen-eggs I boy-
led them hard, and made thereof an Unguent. I made alſo a Truſs,
and anointed him 4 times a day with the Oyntment cauſing him to
ly ſtill for a fortnight together, which done I let him riſe up to ſee
how

Jul. 1670. how he was, and found that it was ſufficiently bettered: for the Rupture which he with his own hands had indeavoured to ſtop, by thruſting it in, and as often broke out, was now ſtay'd, and he told me that he could every day perceiv that it grew better. I gave him advice to keep himſelf a whole year in the Truſs, and continue anoynting himſelf after the manner I did my ſelf, which he alſo promiſed to obſerv. When I took my leav of him, he gave me a piece of hard wood, of a dark-red colour, with a Croſs, and a ſilver Chain which he wore about his neck, as alſo a Stone, which he told me he had taken from under the Ark; Theſe Relicts he adjured me to be very carefull of, ſaying the real value and eſteem thereof would be ſuch, that if ever I came to *Rome*, and beſtowed them on St. *Peters* Church that they would reward me with a Gift which ſhould ſerve me for a maintenance ſo long as I lived. The Wood and the Croſs I brought with me, but the ſtone, with ſome ſparkling Oar were taken from me when the *Engliſh* took our Ship. The Hermite was born at *Rome*, and of very good Parentage, his Father being one of the moſt eminent Citizens there, who upon his Death-bed charged his Son, To retire himſelf from the Society of Men and betake himſelf to the Mountain *Ararat*, there to ſpend his days in a Heremitical Life. The Son in obedience to this his Father's Will, took upon him this Journey and manner of Life, where he had then been 25 years, living there in great Tranquillity and with more contentment than he could do in the World of *Rome*. Beſides thoſe Relicts already mentioned he gave me a Teſtimonial in Writing, to evidence to the Curious my being there, which [*after a Monkiſh Elegancy*] runs thus:

The Heremites Atteſtation given to J. Struys.

POſtquam non potui intermittere ad petitionem Johannis Janſonii, *precabatur, ut Teſtimonium ipſi darem ſcriptum, quod ſuper-nominatus* Joannes Janſonius *fuerit apud me in monte Sancto* Ararath, *circiter triginta quinque miliarium ſurſum eundo; ubi prænominatus* Joannes *me ſanavit ab una magna ruptura; propterea ipſi maximas gratias ago, propter magnam diligentiam ſuam quam mihi præſtitit: & ipſi pro hâc benevolentia donavi unam Crucem quod fuit fruſtum ligni de vera* Archa Noe, *ubi in perſona intus fui, & illud de quo iſta crux eſt facta, pro-*

propriis meis manibus ab una camera ſcidi. Ubi ego Joanni Janſon- 1671.
perfectius veritatem narravi quommodo illa Archa *eſt facta.* 1670.
Super hoc ipſi lapidem etiam dedi, quem ipſemet manibus meis decerp-
ſi infra Archam, *ubi Archa quieſcit. Hoc omne fateor eſſe verum,*
tam verum, quam vere ego in iſta mea ſancta eremitica habitatione de
facto vivo.

Datum in monte *Ararat*, die 22 Iulii 1670.

DOMINICUS ALEXANDER, *Romanus.*

True it is the Autograph is but barbarous ſtuff, void of the true Latin Idiotiſms, yet we thought good to give it you as it is, rather than to put it in a ſtyle more proper, or give it a better elegancy. It may be thus verbally Paraphraſ'd:

Inaſmuch as *Iohn Iohnſon* [*Struys*] deſired me, I could not refuſe to give him a Teſtimonial, how that he the ſaid *I. I.* was with me upon the Holy mount *Ararat*, about 35 miles high, where the ſaid *Iohn* cured me of a grievous Rupture, and acknowledge my ſelf greatly obliged to him, for his Care and Diligence in the ſame. And further to manifeſt my thankfullneſs towards him, I have given him a Croſs, being of the wood of the real *Ark* of *Noah*, which I have cut out of a Chamber of the the ſaid *Ark* with my own hands, having been there perſonally my ſelf: as I have verbally demonſtrated to the ſaid *Iohn* I. after what manner the ſaid *Ark* is made. Beſides this I have given him a Stone, which with my own hand I have pulled from under the *Ark*, being a part of the Rock, whereon it is ſupported. All this I teſtify to be true, and ſo true as I live in this my holy Hermitage.

Dated at mount *Ararat* July 22 1670

DOMINICUS ALEXANDER, *Roman.*

JULY, 1670. The ſame day I took my leave of the Heremite, and ſet forward on my Journey to *Urwan* in the Valley, accompanied as before in my going up with an Aſs and his Driver: but the way I found more uneaſy to travail in coming down, eſpecially when we came in the cold clouds, where it was ſo ſlippery that I expected every moment to tumble head-long down. Coming ſtill lower we found it worſe, for it rained hard, which with the unevenneſs of the Rocks made our way very dangerous. At laſt after much labour I got down, and can well aſſure the Reader that their Opinion is not true, who ſuppoſe this Mount to be innacceſſible.

He takes his leave of the Heremite.

CHAP. XIX.

The Author put in Chains again: He is inſiſted upon to renounce the Chriſtian *Faith and become* Mahometan; *Divers means to that end put in practiſe by way of Trial. The great gain of warm Baths. The Author taken out of Chains. He is ſold to a* Perſian. *The Situation of the* Caſpian *Sea. Great Whirlpools in the Bay of* Gilan. *A diſcourſe about the Silk-trade. A further Deſcription of the* Caſpian *Sea, &c.*

SO ſoon as I was arrived at *Urwan* and entred the Houſe of my Patron *Mehemet*, he gave order to ſecure me with 2 Chains, for he feared that I would make my eſcape, by running into the *Turkiſh* Jurisdiction. One of theſe Chains was light and tolerable, but the other very maſſy and ponderous, inſomuch that to bear the Chain alone, might ſeem to be Slavery enough. This Condition brought me into a deep Melancholy, even to death, not only that I ſhould become a Slave, but that my Patrons Incredulity ſhould be the occaſion of ſuch Affliction to me, as alſo that he ſhould ſo much violate his Word, when having promiſed to let me go free again, on condition he received that money upon my effecting the Cure, which the Heremite cauſed to be honeſtly paid; for had I not truſted to that his promiſe, I ſhould have prevailed with the Heremite ſo far as to purchaſe my liberty, ſince the Slave-market is there very low. Beſides all this he continually wrought upon me to renounce Chriſtianity, with many fair Promiſes, as, that if I would be Circumciſed

he would give me, two of the faireſt Damoſels in the Countrey for Wives; but this his proffer I refuſed without making much ſtudy in framing of an Anſwer, deſiring him rather to ſevere my head from my body, than to urge me to what my Conſcience would not diſpence with: yet not ſatiſfied with this Reply, he perſiſted on, and told me that he would give me ſo many Acres of Ground, beſides Orchards and Slaves: yet all he could imagine to perſwade me to embrace the *Turkiſh* Faith, would not move me ſo much as to give him the leſt hopes: inſomuch that for that time he broke off without giving me any ſharp Language. Shortly after he ſent 2 fair Girls, who at firſt entrance ſaluted me very friendly, and beginning with a trifling diſcourſe, they proceeded on to more ſerious matters, and conſequently proffered themſelves to me as Wives, making uſe of a *Ruſſian* Slave to be their Interpreter: and to make their requeſt prove the more effectual, they began to ſtroak me, and play a hundred wanton tricks to allure me, which when I perceived, pray'd them to deſiſt and not to trouble me any longer, for it was againſt my Conſcience to violate the Laws of Chriſtianity, which forbid Polygamy, having already a Wife by whom I had two Children, and although I were in the moſt remote parts of the World, I ſhould not alienate my Love and Troth, by marrying of another ſo long as ſhe was alive. To this they made anſwer, That I ſhould never ſee either my own Countrey or Relations again, and that many thouſands would be glad of what was proffered me, and therefore willed me to accept of it, leſt I ſhould afterwards repent when it could not be revoked, &c. After they had uſed a few ſuch like Arguments they left me. Hardly were they got out but my Patron came in, who fell to work again with greater, and more ſpecious promiſes than before, as. That if I would become a *Muſulman* [or True Beleever] he would advance me to the Dignity of a Commander in the Guards. This perplexed me very much when I ſaw him ſo earneſt, thinking that if he could not get his will by fair means, he would proceed to rigour, and being abſolute Lord and Soveraign, as well of the Countrey, as of my Perſon, would force me to embrace the *Mahometan* Religion, however I had already ſtood out ſo much Torture, that being a litle hardned to it I feared it ſo much the leſs: but gave him a ſhort

1670.

July. 1670. Anſwer; to this Effect, *Sir, All the fair promiſes you have already, and that you may hereafter make ſhall not have that efficacy with me, as to make me renounce my Faith, for I had rather diſpatch my ſelf, than to imbrace Mahometanism.* He hearing me ſay ſo did not for that time preſs me much more.

On the 9th. *dito* I continued ſtill in Chains, at what time the young Damoſels that had been with me before, were ſent again, who, as they did the laſt time, endeavoured to perſwade me to turn *Mahometan*; neither did they deſiſt to uſe all manner of Allurements they could deviſe, to entice me to ly with them, for ſo they thought that if I had done that, I muſt either become Turk, or dy a miſerable Death; They further did what they could to put me in mind of my preſent miſery, and told me that I muſt never expect to enjoy any better than what I ſaw before my eies; and in the concluſion of all, told me that they wondred at the Folly and Vanity of the Chriſtians who were ſo ſtrictly tied to Monogamy, or only to marry one Wife, when as the *Mahometans* might have as many as they liſted, or thought themſelves capable to maintain.

My Maſter altho he was a Prince yet thought it no diſhonour to trade in Commerce: but the chief thing he had which brought him up the moſt Revenues, were the Baths which he kept; having ſom almoſt in every City, as well in his own Juriſdiction as in *Perſia* and other Countreys, whereof thoſe were the moſt conſiderable, at *Derbent*, at *Scamachy*, and at *Iſpahan*, which brought him in a vaſt ſum of Money yearly.

The reaſon why the Baths are there in ſuch eſteem, and ſo much frequented by perſons of all Ranks and Degrees, is not only their affected Cleanlineſs, in which they ſurpaſs all others: but as well thro Superſtition: for that after the uſe of their Wives, they are to bath, being till then reputed unclean, and may not enter the *Moſques:* and this both ſexes are injoyned to upon ſuch Caſes by the *Alcoran.* A man among them may not ly with his wife from Conception to her Delivery: which is probably inſtituted as a Precept in the *Alchoran* to make thoſe Countreys more populous; for ſo one Man is capable of generating many Children in one year. The Baths are frequented from Break of day to the Setting of the Sun. From morning till noon the Men bath, and from noon till night the Women, ſo taking it by Turns. On

On the 10th came my Patron to viſit me and asked me how I did, and if I had taken good Courage: I anſwered him that I had no great occaſion to thank him for my Welfare, ſince he did all he could to make me miſerable, and contrary to that Honeſty and Truth, which the *Turks* boaſted of, he had ſhown me an odd example: Withall telling him that he had little reaſon to chain me ſo faſt, and make my Slavery the greater when as he had promiſed me my Freedom, upon the receipt of the Money which was paid him. Upon this he ſeemed to be a little moved to compaſſion and commanded that the greater Chain ſhould be taken off: Now when I obſerved that my reaſoning had a litle prevalency with him I purſued on in my Argument, with theſe, or the like Words, *Sir, Is it not ſufficient that I am your Slave? Why then muſt I be kept in Chains, when as others have their liberty? If it be ſo that you fear I ſhould go from you, Know this, That you can not keep me longer than I liſt: for I can at once part with my Life and take leav of this miſerable Bondage, which if you perſiſt to uſe me ſo inhumanly I am reſolved to do.* This I could perceiv wrought in him no ſmall change, for he was naturally very covetous, and would have loſt the price of a Slave. Beſides that, it is a Maxim of their Law, that if any perſon do any way murther himſelf, the Houſe is to be accurſed and pulled down to the Ground. My Patron conſidering what the Iſſue of this might be, altho I had not the leſt thoughts to lay violent hands upon my ſelf. he therefore to prevent the worſt ſold me to one *Hadſy Mahomet Sala*, a *Perſian* for 15 *Abbas*, that was about 30 Shillings *ſterl.* which is but a ſmall ſum in compariſon to the ordinary Market price of *Argiers*, and other places in *Barbary*. My new Patron ſpoke the *Ruſſian* Tongue very well, by which means we came to underſtand one another the better: for he uſed me more kindly than the other, and would often bid me have courage, ſaying, he would go with me to *Iſpahan* where there were many *Engliſh*, *Dutch* and other *Europeans*, and probably thoſe that would buy me off his hands, and ſo ſet me at Liberty again, which gave me no ſmall encouragement to do my utmoſt to pleaſe him.

JUL. 1670.

Mr I. Struys ſold to a Perſian.

On the 12 *dito*, I went with my new Maſter to *Derbent*, and ſailed with him ſeveral times over the *Caſpian Sea:* his principal dealing

JULY. 1676. being in *Crap*, which with ſeveral other Roots uſed in Dying, grow there in great abundance. He had alſo a ſmall Bark of his own, wherein he tranſported his own Commodities: This ſaid Veſſel alwayes lay in a Bay about half a League from the City, and thither his Slaves alwaies brought the Wares; for about *Derbent* it is very rocky and unſafe for Veſſels to lie at Anchor, in caſe of Storm or tempeſtuous Weather. But in the ſaid Bay is very good anchorage, at 6, 7 and 8 Fathom Water, and a clay ground with Shells. The Coaſt from *Baynak* to *Maſanderan* is altogether ſandy, and here and there low land, where appear the Tops of the *Dageſtan* Hills: between thoſe two Coaſts it is all a long very good anchorage, there being many fair Roads able to receive Ships of a greater burthen than are uſually built for this Sea; there are alſo many fair Towns, built for the moſt part at the mouths of Rivers, and have many Veſſels and Shipping belonging to them, as well for Traffic and Tranſportation of Merchandizes, as for the Fiſhing trade: for this Sea is very plentiful of Fiſh, and brings up the King of *Perſia* an incredible ſum of Money yearly, receiving from ſome as Toll, and from others as Contribution. In the Bay of *Gilan* are 2 great Whirl-pools, for which the *Perſians* are very fearfull in ſailing from their own Coaſts to *Gilan*. The Water in theſe Whirpools is hurried about with an incredible violence and makes ſuch a noiſe, that if the Weather be ſtill, they may be heard at 5 or 6 leagues diſtant. It is my opinion that theſe are the Paſſages whereby this great Lake has a ſubterranean communication with the *Euxin*, or ſom other Sea, for it is well known that it receivs 84 huge Rivers, beſides the *Wolga*, which is reputed the 3d River of the World for greatneſs, and hither do all the Floods of the *Perſian* and *Tartarian* Rivers haſten, as it were to their Center, with an admirable celerity, ſo that when we ſailed we always made a calculation how far we would be carried off in thwarting the ſtream, and ſo bore up towards the Coaſt, as well for ſhortning our Courſe, as to avoid the Whirpools, where if any Veſſel be brought ſhe muſt inevitably periſh. The beſt and moſt commodious Shipping for this Sea, is a Flat-bottom, from 80 to a hundred Tuns.

Great Whirl-pools in the Bay of Gilan.

Upon a time it happened that my Maſter and I fell into a diſ-

diſcourſe about Trading and Commerce, making a paralel between their way of merchandizing and ours, where among other Words, I told him *That If I were once again at Liberty, I could make a good Advantage, and did not doubt but that in a short time I should return with a Ship full of* Hollands *Commodities*: upon which he asked me, *If I was ſo rich then?* I anſwered *No; But if I came ſafe into my own countrey ſome or other would intruſt me with a Cargo for thoſe parts, being now well acquainted with the Conveniency of the* Caſpian *Sea.* My Patron hearing, that thought that I might probably be ſom way inſtrumental to do him ſervice and that night diſcourſed ſom *Armenians* about me who dealt in Silk: upon which they deſired to ſee me. My Maſter having appointed them a day, I went along with him, where one of the moſt eminent asked me if I could ſpeak *Italian*, and if I was of *Amſterdam*, or if I knew ſuch a Merchant there? I anſwered him in *Italian*, That I was of *Amſterdam*, but did not know the Gentleman he named, yet was acquainted with ſeveral there who dealt in Silk. He then entred into a diſcourſe which was much after this manner: "That the only way to Trade with "*Holland*, was to bring over, Lead, Quickſilver, Cloth, Serges, "Says and all kinds of *Low-Countrey* Commodities and Manufa-"ctures, which would be very marketable at *Derbent*, *Scamachy* and "*Ardebil* and might produce good profit, ſo that all the Staple of "Silk might be brought to *Holland*. and, That all Goods whate-"ver might be more conveniently tranſported over the *Caſpian* Sea, "and ſo up the *Wolga*, bringing it down to *Archangel*, and ſo for "*Holland*: which would not prove ſo tedious by far, as to bring "it over Land to *Smyrna*, where by the way ſo much Danger "and ſo many Duties were met withall; and then from "*Smyrna* to run the Hazard of the *Barbary* Corſairs thro the *Medi-*"*terranean* and the *Spaniſh* Sea: beſides unreaſonable Duties that are "impoſed by the *Turks*, which probably the *Czar* of *Moſcovia* would "not ſet ſo high, to draw a Traffic of ſuch importance thro his Ju-"riſdiction, &c. That *Gilan*, *Scirwan* and other adjacent Provinces "bordering upon the *Caſpian* Sea, could deliver upwards of 50000 "Bales of Silk every year. *Bocharen* alſo affoards pretious Furrs and the "EaſtCountrey good plenty of Segrine-Leather, Saffron, Rhubarb "and other precious Druggs. This was the ſum of all the Diſcourſe

JULY, 1670.

we

Jul. 1670. we had for that time, but not much hopes were then given me of gaining my Freedom, by aſſiſting them in a Trade to *Europe*.

A further Deſcription of the Caſpian Sea. The *Caſpian* Sea may more properly be termed a Lake, were it not that its Greatneſs and Saltneſs gave it the name of the latter, for it is environed on every ſide with the Main Continent, and receives 85 great Rivers (as has been ſaid before) which nevertheleſs do not make it ſwell any higher upon extraordinary Rains and Tempeſt, which the more confirms what I have already mentioned about the two famous Whirlpools. What concerns the Breadth and Greatneſs of the *Caſpian* Sea, as alſo its' Scituation, Bays, Rivers, Creeks, Iſlands, Towns and their diſtance of Bearing, they are ſufficiently noted in the Card hereto annexed, which I have with great diligence compoſed, partly by my own experience and partly by the help of ſome *Armenian* Marriners, who were well acquainted herewith. Its length which is reckoned from *Wolga* to *Aſtrabath*, North and South is computed to be 129 Leagues, and from *Tarku* to the River *Jemla* which is accounted the Breadth, being Eaſt and Weſt, is about 60 Leagues For 6, 7, 8 and 9 Leagues from the Coaſt, the Water is ſomtime freſh and ſomtime brakkiſh, and from 12 to 50 fathom Anchor ground, but the Sea is within freſh and out of ſounding. It is alſo called the *Hyrcan* and the Salt Sea. It has many Boughts, Inlets, Creeks and Angles: the Bay of *Gilan* tends above 38 Leagues inwards, taking its beginning at the Cape of *Scabaran* and reaches to *Sengar Haſam*. This Sea is environed moſtly on the Eaſt and North with a ſandy and barren ground, having alſo many Quarries of Marble and Alabaſtre. On the Eaſt ſide of this Sea is a Noble River, not much inferior to the *Wolga*, which river parts the *Calmuc*-from the *Gwin-Tartars* but the Countrey on each ſide being inhabited with a wild People, uſing among themſelvs no kind of Traffie, and therefore unſafe for others to adventure themſelvs. My Maſter *Mahomet Sala* once ſailing paſt the mouth of this River, I preſſed him hard to ſail up to view the Conveniency and take an account of the Quality of the Countrey. But he told me, he had a greater eſteem for his Life, Ship and Goods, than to ſatisfy my curioſity about a buſineſs of ſo mean importance.

This Sea affoards great plenty of all kinds of Fiſh, and is farmed of the King of *Perſia* from *April* to *September*, for a vaſt ſum of Money

ney and that for a certain Diſtance from the Coaſt which is ſet off with Stakes, within which bounds none are to fiſh upon pain of Death, but without every one has the permiſſion to fiſh; yet without Fiſh is very rare except in ſome litle Shoals here, and there, and thoſe only at ſome Seaſons, which are uncertain. After the Farm is expired it is alſo free within the Stakes for every one to fiſh. Here is an incredible plenty of Salmon, as alſo Carps, Breams, Sturgeon and other Fiſh, held with us in great eſteem, and thoſe in general both larger and fatter than thoſe taken on the Coaſt of *Holland*, or any other Sea or Water in *Europe* that I know. Carps when come to their full growth are ſometimes above 4 foot long, but thoſe are not ſo delicate as when they are leſs: Here alſo many ſtrange Fiſhes by us unknown, and I beleev moſt of them proper only to this Sea. Amongſt thoſe ſtrange kinds is one, which by reaſon of the diſproportion of his Head with his Body our Countreyment at *Aſtrachan* call, **Dick kop** [*Thickpate*] But by the *Perſians*, *Nachay*, that is, *Devourer*. This Fiſh is of a more than ordinary ſtrength and ſomtimes will overturn a ſmall Boat with a ſtroak of his Tail. *Jul.* 1670.

CHAP. XX.

A Deſcription of Derbent: *it's Walls. The* Sultans *Court. Very old Ruins. Divers Watch-towers. Multiplicity of Sepulchrets without* Derbent. *Their Slave-Market. The Author ſold again. His Patron married with a* Polish *Woman and runs into Danger of his Life. The Intention of his Patroneſs in running away from her Husband and taking the Author with her. Two of Mr.* Struys*'s Companions come to* Derbent. *How they made their eſcape from the* Tartars. *The great Inclination of the Sultan of* Derbent *to the* Hollanders. *A Device put in practiſe to ſet one of the Authors' Companions at Liberty The Prince takes the Wife of* Brak *for his own.* Brak *makes his eſcape.*

Derbent the firſt City under the Juriſdiction of the King of *Perſia* on the *Caſpian* Sea, lies in 41 *degr.* 50 *min.* northerly Latitude. This City lies longwiſe Eaſt and Weſt from the Sea ſide to the Land, and is according to computation about 2 [*English*] miles long. One ſide thereof lies ſo near to the Sea that the Waves *Deſcription of* Derbent.

Jul. 1670. beat againſt the Walls, and in a Storm or tempeſtuous Weather the Surges riſe over the Walls. This is alſo reckoned as a Barrier againſt the Irruption of the *Tartars* and other Savages, being the only place on all that Coaſt for many miles together, where they can come aſhoar, for the Shoar is there naturally ſecured with a ſteep Bank and wholly inacceſſible. Wherefore this City is not improperly called *Derbent*, which in their Language imports as much as *The Kingdoms Key*, *Der* ſignifying a *Key*, and *Bent* a *Kingdom*, or *Countrey*: and ſo the City *Gammeron* on the *Indian* Coaſt is called *Bender*, which is the ſame Word with tranſpoſition of the Syllables, and a little variation of the Dialect.

This Town is very ſtrongly munited with a Stone-Wall, and as ſome ſay, was built by *Alexander the Great*, who had here his Reſidence for ſom time, althô there doth not any Building remain of his, ſave only the Wall on the South ſide, and the Fortreſs: but all the Fortifications on the North were built by the famous *Nauſchirwan*, King of the *Medes*; having no other Foundation than a ſolid Rock. The Walls both on the North and the South ſide are ſo broad that Horſes and Waggons may ride all along, and the Stones are of a hard rock, brought hither from a Hill not far diſtant from the Town, being all equally 6 foot Square. On the Wall of *Alexander* [for it ſtill bears his name] is an oblong Stone having an ancient Inſcription in old *Syriac* and *Arabic* Characters, which none now a days can read.

Derbent *how divided.* The City *Derbent* is divided into 3 parts, The uppermoſt Ward or Quarter, ſtands on a riſing Ground and has a Fortreſs furniſhed with Braſs-Cannon; and at that time when I was there and ſince the Uproar of the *Coſacs* it has bin Strengthned with a Garriſon of 1000, or 1200 Soldiers, and in this Quarter is the *Sultans* Court. The Midle Ward is inhabited by *Perſians*, but the Buildings go moſtly to decay. The Loweſt Ward is about 2000 paces long, but this part is only tilled and uſed for Gardens; and as they ſay has been heretofore inhabited by *Greeks*, bearing ſtill the name of *Schaher Iunan* or, *City* of the *Greeks*.

old *Ruins about* Derbent. Above *Derbent* appear the Ruins of a Wall which reached from thence to the *Necropont*, or *Euxin Sea*: which has been a work of an incredible Charge and Labour. In ſom places the ſaid Wall appears

appears very plain, and is about four Foot thick. Round about this City are also divers stone Redoubts, whereof Four are furnished with Ammunition and a Garrison of Soldiers suitable to the Occasion of the Times. In the Countrey round about are also the Ruins of many strong Castles, insomuch that it plainly appears in what esteem this Place has bin with the *Median* and *Persian* Monarchs in times past. Not far from this City are also som Watch-towers of Wood, which are raised exceeding high so that they can with ease descry the approachment of an Enemy in time of War. On that side of the Town which faces the Countrey are many Sepulchrets, or Tombs, som of an oblong form, and others semicircular, being in breadth about a mans length and hollowed, so that a Man may easily ly in them. In this great Sepulchre was in times past a famous Battel fought, between *Cassan* King of the *Medes*, and the *Dagestan Tartars*, where the former had a notable overthrow, with the loss of several Thousand men, and the principal Heros and Leaders were buried in those Tombs. Between this place and the Sea is also another Plat of Ground, environed with a high wall, wherein are 40 Tombs, under which are so many *Persian* and *Median* Princes interred and made sacred to Memory. Upon the Walls are several Flags pitched, and by each an old Man to beg an Alms of such as out of Devotion and a Religious Zeal come to visit this place, as it is throughout all *Persia* held very meritorious to visit the Sepulchres and Graves of the Deceased. This Superstition besides that of Bathing is all the Ceremonies and Rules which their Religion prescribes the Women, who receiv their Directions and are injoined by their Parents and Husbands what to do, being secluded out of the *Mosquees*.

Anno 1670.

Walck Towers about Derbent.

Within *Derbent* live no *Christians* but altogether *Mahometans*, except a few *Iews* who boast themselvs to be descended from the house of *Benjamin*: these commonly follow base and dishonorable Traffic, as buying of Prize-goods and Booty taken at Sea, which the *Dagestan Tartars* bring thither to market: The rest of the Inhabitants likewise trade in buying and selling of Slaves that being the main and almost only Merchandize they deal in, which they buy of the *Dagestan* Plagiaries and send all over *Persia*, making an incredible gain thereof. Those that are brought hither for Slaves are very unhappy, for they are no more looked upon than an unreasonable Animal or Bruit: and when

Great market for Slaves.

July. 1670. they are about buying, they pull of their Cloaths and grope them all over as if it were a Swine or a Calf. Beſides their low eſteem they have for Slaves as to their Perſons they are very unkind and void of Mercy, ſo that were it not for the Loſs of ſo much money very few of thoſe wretched caitiffs would die a natural Death; Thoſe people being by nature very prone to Anger, and beſides that too jealous to live upon Earth, thinking that if a Slave do but ſmile or caſt a friendly look toward one of their Wives that ſomething extraordinary muſt be in the caſe; althô I had never reaſon to complain of my Patron for any ſuch thing: but one that lived in the neighbourhood was much addicted to that inquietude and reſtleſs humour. The bed where I lay was upon the Top of the houſe for coolneſs ſake, and could very well ſee into my neighbours Court, or Garden, where his Wives walked and played together being undreſt. The man ſaw me ſeveral times and I him; but he not knowing how to prevent it, went and told my Maſter that I hurled Stones among his Wives, which was not true, for conſidering what circumſtances I was under and ſenſible of the Condition of a Slave in thoſe Places, it had been a Token of the greateſt imprudence in the World to hazard my ſelf ſo far as to offend ſuch men who were both void of Reaſon and had my Life in their hands. My Maſter told him he did not beleev that I would do any ſuch thing, *Well*, replies the other, *take your Slave away*, or, *I ſhall bring him down for you.* Upon this my Patron warned me to take heed of looking down any more, not knowing what might come of it. I was very curious to know what courſe the Infidel would take in hand, to fetch me down, and accordingly went down to the old Place, where I ſaw ſeveral long Hand-guns ready levelled and cock'd, laying out at the Window, which made me in all haſt to turn about and out of the way, but was no ſooner turned before I heard him fire, althô it did not the miſchief he hoped and expected. The Inhabitants, as was ſaid before, are in this place ſomthing curriſh-natured, but the *Perſians* in general do not uſe their Slaves ſo unkindly, as the *Turks*, which I could well obſerv the time I was on the Galleys, nor yet ſo inhumanly as they do at *Argiers*, *Tripoli*, *Tunis*, *Salee*, and other maritim Towns in *Barbary*, according to the univerſal report given by thoſe that fall into the hand of theſe cruel Men; for here when they do uſe them ſo hard, it is more to make them renounce their Faith and become

come *Mahometans*, than innate Cruelty. Moſt proud they are and lofty, boaſting in their honorable deſcent and Pedigrees from their ancient Nobility, famous in Hiſtory, and renowned from the Monarchy of the *Medes*. The Soldiery, which they call *Kiſil-baſſchen*, are very unruly, and take the leſt word that one can ſpeak for an affront, yea, ſuch is the aw they have gained of the People, that they dare not ſpeak without great reverence; ſure I am they have taught me ſilence, ſince they are accuſtomed to be the Interpreters of other Mens Words, and are as apt to miſconſtrue what is ſaid, whence conſequently they fall to blows. *JULY.* 1670.

On the 30th. of *Iuly* my Patron brought me again to Market, where he ſold me to one *Hadzi Biram Ali*, A very rich Merchant in Jewels. The ſame *Hadzi Biram* had 9 Wives, 5 at *Derbent*, and 4 at *Scamachy*. The Chief of theſe 9 was a *Poliſh* Gentlewoman by birth, and a Chriſtian, but her Father was an *Amſterdammer*, by name *John Fluſius*, who had a Command of Horſe under *Caſimire* K. of *Poland*, and married there a Gentlewoman of that Countrey by whom he had 4 Children. Upon a time, when theſe People lived in the Countrey, it happened that the *Tartars* made an irruption into *Poland*, and among many others carried away my ſaid Patroneſſe, being then a Damoſel of 12 years old, and ſold her for a Slave. She was a Gentlewoman of a very fair complexion, and a well proportioned Body at that time, for which reaſon alone (I ſuppoſe) my Patron bought her and made her his Wife, promoting her ſhortly after above the reſt. *The Author ſold again.*

It was my Maſters cuſtom to bath himſelf once a day in the Sea, which the Inhabitans of thoſe Parts do account very wholſom, and his cuſtom was alwaies to take me with him to hold his Horſe till he had don. It happened that one time he went a litle farther in than was uſual, and lighting accidentally in a Whirl-pool he was forcibly overturn'd and not able to recover himſelf. I ſeeing him then immerge made all the haſt I could to get him out: and coming to the Place could not get a ſight of him for it was as I ſuppoſed in a Quickſand: but at laſt, by accident I felt his head with my Foot, which I endeavored to take hold of with my hand, and at laſt got him out, brought him to the Land and lay him over a Stone, till abundance of water came guſhing out of his Mouth, but no appearance of Life was left in him, when I thought he was rid of the moſt part of the Water, I *His Patron in danger of his Life.*

JULY. 1670. ſet him upon the Horſe and got up my ſelf behind him, in the mean while he continued bleeding at the Noſe and Ears, and ſo weak that I had much ado to hold him upright upon the Horſe After he came home he was put to bed, which he kept for 14 days together before he recovered his Strength. It was no ſmall cauſe of Joy to me that things fell ſo well out, as that he lived to declare the true cauſe of this diſmal accident: whereas if he had died, 't would certainly have coſt me my Life, among thoſe bruitiſh, furious and unreaſonable People, eſpecially in conſideration of of the Condition I was in, not only a Stranger both to their Religion and Manners as well as their Countrey and Perſons, but likewiſe a Slave, for whoſe Death and Slaughter a man is no more accountable than for the ſlender Value and Market price; whilſt on the contrary it fell out that I got the Credit of ſaving his Life, and his Benevolence ever after for an act of ſuch merit, having run the jeopardy of my own Perſon. So much kindneſs he profeſſed for me, that he promiſed to take me with him to *Iſpahan*, where he ſaid he would beſtow me upon ſome of my own Nation.

This Motion liked me exceeding well, but my chief Patroness who ſpoke very good *Low-dutch* adviſed me to the Contrary, ſaying, *My Husband, your Lord, 'tis true goes for* Iſpahan, *but from thence he intends to go on a Pilgrimage to Meccha, and beſtow* 200000 *Gl. on the Sepulchre of Mahomet, for which Gift he and his Son* Hadzy Kan, *will be canonized and regiſtred among the Saints, for a perpetual memory of themſelvs and Honor of their Poſterity, and now you are not ſenſible what Danger hangs over your head in regard of your Religion.* This ſaid; ſhe told me if I would vow Silence ſhe would impart me a Secret, which perhaps would be of more importance than that, and without doubt I ſhould judge it more worthy of Acceptance. I promiſed her I would not detect her Council, be what it would; but for accepting it deſired her not to injoyn me till I had heard and well conſidered of it. To this ſhe replies. *See if you can prevail with your Patron to excuſe you on this Journey, or if you can counterfeit with Dexterity, feign your ſelf ſick: To which if he gives his aſſent, we will trip off together, after he has been a few weeks upon his Journey, and being you are well acquainted with the* Caſpian *Sea we, will take our Bark with us. I have means enough to Maintain us in any part of the World ſo long as we live.*

live, I have at preſent in my Cuſtody a Casket of Jewels worth 300000 *gild* JULY. *at leſt, beſides a ſum of* 10000 *Ducats in Gold. I prethee then let's not loſe* 1670. *this opportunity but away with our own Bark; and I hope that we ſhall in* 8 *or* 10 *days be in* Ruſſia, *from whence we can go forward to* Holland, *and if your Wife be not alive we ſhall marry, if not I ſhall ſeek up my Relations at* Amſterdam, *ſuppoſing my Fathers Brother may be ſtill alive.* To this I replyed, *Moſt gracious and worthy Madam, what you propoſe is very well, and what I could freely embrace and would willingly undertake to manage, But Madam, are you not ſenſible that* Aſtrachan *is at preſent under hands of the* Coſacs, *and the Caſpian Sea full of Pyrats, how then may we promiſe our ſelvs a ſafe Arrival in* Ruſſia? *Well*, quoth ſhe, *Do you think that* Aſtrachan *will be ſtill in tenure of the Rebells? no, without doubt, we ſhall ſpeedily hear that the* Czar *will come down with a great Army and deſtroy that Vermin.* &c, Hereupon ſhe ſhowed me an incredible Treaſure of *Diamonds*, *Emeralds*, *Rubies* and other Precious Stones.

Theſe Propoſals I muſt confeſs gave me work enough to ſtudy upon day night, and certainly had not *Aſtrachan* then bin in the hand of the *Coſacs* I had taken it upon me, not doubting, but to have good ſucceſs, being able enough to pilot a Veſſel from thence to the *Wolga*, for I was very well acquainted with the Coaſts, but becauſe of the before mentioned difficuly was fain to refuſe her offer. I could obſerve that the Lady was ſom way diſaffected to her huſband, which I preſumed was ſom certain Jealouſy; for my Patron had bought not long before 2 *Georgian* Girls for Slaves, the one of 11, and the other of 12 years old, with whom he lay by Turns, which was no ſmall trouble to his Wife, who was her ſelf not above 26 years of Age, and therefore very unwilling to be a Widdow with a living husband.

On the 22 came two of our Ships-company to *Derbent*, to wit, *Cornelius de Vries*, the Gunner, and *Peter Arentſz* of *Schevelingen*. Theſe had been taken in *Boynak*, near the *Scemkal*, and had betaken themſelvs to flight, being followed by ſome *Tartars* to the Gate of *Derbent*; where they were reſcued by a Soldier, who ſpoke the *Ruſſian* Tongue very well, which Soldier ſeeing them ſo hotly purſued, and the *Tartars* cloſe at their heels, interpoſed himſelf between them, and asked ours, Who they were? who repled, They were *Dutch*,

1670. *Dutch*, and had Letters for the *Sultan*. Whereupon the Soldier turning to the *Tartars* bade them ſee what they did, for that thoſe men had Letters for the *Sultan*: and ſo they got free from the *Tartars*, but were ſuddenly carried before the *Sultan*, who ſo ſoon as they were admitted asked them, What Countreymen they were? They anſwered *Hollanders*. Then he asked for the Letters which he was informed they had for him, upon which they fell down upon their knees humbly begging Forgiveneſs, ſaying, *That we have ſaid, how that we had Letters for the* Sultan, *Great and Mighty Prince, we cannot deny, for moſt true it is; but that was only an Invention to ſecure and releaſe our Perſons from the* Tartars, *that purſued us to within the* Perſian *Juriſdiction: Wherefore, Great Sir, vouchſafe to have Compaßion upon us, for we are thoſe very people that fled from* Aſtrachan *upon the approaching of the* Coſacs, *and have been unfortunately Stranded on the* Dageſtan *Coaſt, where we were plundered, beat and made Slaves by the Inhabitants, and ſince continued in miſerable Servitude under the* Scemkal, *and therefore have made bold to ſeek Protection under your Highneſs.* They told him moreover how that they had been 3 days and 2 nights by the Way; Travelling only by night and hiding themſelvs by day, leſt they ſhould be detected, and retaken, as they had ſurely been at the Gate, if the Soldier had not ſhown them ſuch a Favour. The *Sultan* freely pardoned them and ſent them to a Houſe where he had ordered they ſhould have abode and maintenance, till they were otherwiſe provided; for this Prince, has ever been favourable to our Nation. But theſe two fearing that their Living ſo would coſt them too dear, and that one time or another they muſt pay for all, they removed into a *Carwanſera*, for ſo they call an Inn or Tavern, where they took no care for Diet, being well ſupplied by the continual concourſe of people that came thither, as well *Indians* as *Perſians*. The *Sultan* alſo promiſed to write to the King about the Redemption of the reſt of the Captiv Slaves, and as much as in him lay to further the ſame. Certain it is he did as kindly for our Countrey men as might be expected from him, when as the Brother of the *Scemkal* came to demand them as Fugitivs, and he refuſed to let them go, for that they were now in *Derbent*, and that the King had underſtood how unkindly they had dealt with thoſe that were his Allies, and with thoſe with whom

whom his Subjects had a great correſpondence, as to matter of Commerce: Inſomuch that *Aly*, the *Tartar*, returned without obtaining what he came for, and the Slaves they had ſtill were for this reaſon more ſeverely uſed than before, and kept with more ſtrictneſs, ſince by that they were ſenſible, that if they could but make their eſcape to *Derbent* they were protected. JUL. 1670.

So ſoon as I underſtood that *P. Arents* and *De Vries* were arrived at *Derbent* I pray'd my Patron to let me go to viſit them, which he granted. So ſoon as I came to them, I begun to enquire of their manner of Eſcaping, and of their preſent Condidition, which they related from the beginning to the end of all. My Patron was alſo curious to ſee them and came himſelf in perſon: Upon which I did bethink my ſelf of a Stratagem to redeem my Companion *Els Pieterſz*, who was ſtill at *Boynak*. I told my Maſter then that I had ſtill a Son in the Hands of Prince *Oſmin*, and looking towards the Gunner I gave him a wink with the Eie, that he ſhould aſſert it, which when my Patron asked him he did: he therefore ſent to redeem him with intention to keep us both, but the Party ſent, who was a *Ruſſian* and a *Renegado*, brought us news that he was gone within Land, which ſadly troubled me: For, had I got him to *Derbent* I could have brought him to *Iſpahan* where there was more apparency and likelyhood of obtaining Liberty than among the obſcure *Tartars*.

Meanwhile I went dayly to viſit the Gunner and *Peter Arentſz*, and once finding them very heartleſs and Melancholic I did all I could to comfort them. *How*, ſaid I, *can you be ſo ſad being free, and I who am a Slave ſtill keep a good heart? Be not ſo dejected, for the* Perſians *will ſom time or other take you with their* Caravans *to* Iſpahan, *and ſo you may get to* Gameron, *and thence be tranſported for the* Indies, *by which means you will be brought home*, &c. They told me alſo that the reſt of the Company were at liberty and without Chains, that they had alſo reſolved to flee together, but judged themſelvs aſwell unſafe at *Derbent*, which they had intended for their *Aſylum*, ſaying, That they ſhould come thither ſoon enough, when they ſhould be ſold at the Slave-Market; and certainly they were not much over-burthened, for the greateſt Task they had was only to hew wood for Fewel and other uſes in the Princes Houſe: and if my companion

July. 1670. and I had but had the ſame opportunity they had to be unchain'd we ſhould not have dallied long about a Reſolution, whether to ſtay or betake our ſelvs to flight, for it was not above 12 [*English* [miles from *Derbent*. We often contrived to break or file the Chain in ſunder, but the Links were ſo maſſy that we durſt not attempt leſt we ſhould not perform it at one time. They were alſo taken by the *Dageſtan-Tartars*, which are reputed the more mercifull, but we by the *Calmucs*, the one being under the *Oſmin* and the other under the *Scemkal*. *C. Brak* was ſold by the *Scemkal* for three years, after the expiration of which time his *Patron* was to have him again: His Wife whom the Prince had raviſhed, was alſo taken from him and made uſe by the ſaid Prince for a Concubine, being attired in Princely Habit, and had much favour ſhown her. *Brak* therefore intending to make his eſcape, intimated his Deſign to his Wife; who would by no means aſſent to the matter, becauſe of her Child, and told him further that if he did offer to go that ſhe would detect the matter to the Prince. To this he replied, that inaſmuch as ſhe was taken from him they were never like to come together again, and that he probably for that reaſon ſhould be carried farther within Land, where he ſhould be out of all hopes of ever being redeemed; whereas on the contrary if ever he came to *Derbent* that there he ſhould not only himſelf be free, but alſo ſeek a mean to get her redeemed, yet all this was but in vain, for ſhe would not hear of it; inſomuch that he was fain to run away without her knowledge; but what then became of him, and whether he was retaken by ſome others, or is dead, I could never yet be ſo happy as to know. As to his Flight, we were well aſſured, for his Patron ſent to us at *Derbent* to enquire after him, but had a very unwelcom Anſwer: and the *Sultan*, to hearing that ſuch a Perſon was come to ſeek for them, gave order to apprehend him, and ſo continued him Captiv till he proved that he only came to ſeek one that he had bought for ready Money, and was not of Intention to meddle with any body elſe; upon which the *Sultan*, ordered him enlargement.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

JULY. 1670.

The great difficulty of getting Wood without Derbent. *The Author and his company aſſailed by Robbers two ſeveral times. The kind nature of his Patron. They travel to* Scamachy. *The Hill* Barmach. *The Pit of* Naphtha. *Arrival at* Scamachy. *A Deſcription of that City. A great Earth-quake at* Scamachy. *Abundance of men misfortunately killed. The Author meets with 2 Franciſcan Friars: A rehearſal of ſome part of their Diſcourſe: their Zeal to get him out of the Service of a* Mahometan. *Advice given him by his Patron. He comes firſt into the Service of the* Polish *Ambaſſadour.*

ON the 29 were ſent out about 50 Slaves together with ſome other free perſons to hew Wood in the Countrey, amongſt which my Patron ſent me alſo. We took our way over the Mountains, having with us two Carts, with 5 Oxen, 2 Aſſes and a Horſe, we had alſo ſeveral Renegados with us. All the Company went into the Wood, and fell to work leaving me alone to look to the Carts and Proviſion. After they had been about 3 hours at work, I eſpied a Troop of about 300 Men coming towards us, and thinking by the haſt they made towards us, that they were Robbers, I therefore called out to them in the Wood, to give them Notice that they might keep together. When I ſaw them come within Bow-ſhot of me I ran away as faſt as I could drive, which they ſeeing me, ſent a Shaft or two, but they did not hit me. Having entred the Wood I met our Company coming out, who at firſt ſtoutly reſiſted, but finding that the Robbers fell on with a greater violence, and exceeded us both for Arms and Number of Men, they thought good to retreat with as much haſt as they could. We left here 12 dead, amongſt which was a *Polish* Renegado; beſides theſe that were killed we had 20 wounded, and loſt all our Baggage, with Carts, Oxen, Aſſes, &c. and were fain to return ſo home. For this reaſon is it very perillous to hew wood or to paſs thoſe mountains upon any other Occaſion, being the Rendevouz of the *Banditti* and *Tartars*, who notwithſtanding all the Indeavours which the King doth, by ſending of Troops down to expell them, cannot be driven out, for-

1671. 1670. when they perceiv that any Forces are ſent out againſt them, they run into Caves and holes in the Hills and Woods: They are alſo very well diſciplin'd and as well arm'd, the greateſt part thereof conſiſting in deſerting Soldiers. And by reaſon thoſe of *Derbent* muſt have all their Fewel and Timber from this Place, and the work put upon the Slaves, it happens that every year a great number of thoſe miſerable ſort of men are either diſpatched or wounded.

The next day I was ſent up into the Countrey to a place where my Patron kept his Cattle, which I was to look after and drive them up and down where I found the beſt Paſturage. When the Sun was gon down and I driving the Cattle to their Houſe, I met 3 Robbers, who took three Cows away with them, and tied my hands behind my back, ſo drawing me along; yet it was not long before we met with 8 Gentlemen of *Derbent*, ſom whereof knew me, being frequently at my Maſters houſe. Theſe therefore releaſed me and retook the Beaſts, ſo that I came ſafe home: for which kindneſs my Maſter gave them a Preſent, I ſuppoſe, of more value than what I was ſold for to him. Unſpeakable was the kindneſs of my Patron that he had for me, for althô my Work was a litle ſervile and Slaviſh, yet my Bed and Table was Lordly; and whatſoever I did whether well or ill, he always took it in good part, and would after that time, never ſuffer me to go abroad to do any work, ſaying, that he beleeved that I was born under ſom malevolent Planet. To be brief I found my daily Taſk ſo eaſy, and my uſage ſo comfortable, that were it not for the name of a Slave and that to a *Mahometan*, I could not have lived better abroad in any Place of the World, having litle or no care upon my head.

The Author taken and carried away by Robbers.

Their Journey to Scamachy.

About this time my Patron made preparation to take a Journey for *Scamachy*, there to repair his Houſes which were thrown down with an Earth-quake in the year 1667. On the firſt of *September* we were ready and ſet forward with a *Caravan* of 1800 Horſes, and a great number of Camels, Dromedaries, Aſſes and other Beaſts of Carriage, having in Company ſeveral Thouſands of Men. The firſt day we paſſed over three Rivers, to wit *Kurgani*, *Koſtar*, and *Sambur*; whereof the ſecond is the greateſt, running thrô the Mountains of *Elbur*. This River divides it ſelf into 5 branches, or arms, broad but ſhallow, and runs over a ſtony Ground. The next day

we

we travailed 8 [*Dutch*] miles further and came to *Kuttep* a large village, where we took our reſt for that night. By the way we ſaw a goodly Tomb erected to the memory of a *Perſian* Saint, The Inhabitants of this Town and the Countrey about it are called *Padar* in their Language. They are much addicted to ſtealth and Robbery, ſo that we were fain to keep a narrow watch over them the time we lay in the Town, which was not above 8 hours. Their Houſes are but little, built ſquare and covered on the Top with Earth, not exceeding 6 or 7 foot high above ground, but are as deep below, as they are high. SEPT. 1670.

On the 3 of the ſame moneth we ſet forward and travailed through many great villages, amongſt which was a very fair one called *Niſabath*, or *Nayſabath*, which I gueſs lies about 41 *degr.* and a *quart.* It is ſeated in a very pleaſant Countrey of *Old Media*, now called *Surwan*, or *Schirwan*. This is the Place where ſom time agon the *Holſteyn* Ambaſſadours ſuffered Shipwrack. At night we ſet down at *Maſkar*, being a Town without Walls, or any other Fortification but ſeems to have bin in times paſt a place of truſt, as well from its Situation, as the Ruins of the Walls and Bulwarks which yet appear. By the way we ſaw abundance of Robbers in the Woods, but they knowing us to be too ſtrong would not adventure the Attempt.

On the 4 we broke up, and that day came to *Scabaran* a little City, where the whiteſt and beſt Rice in all *Perſia* is brought to market, and grows in the Countrey round about. It is alſo in ſuch plenty that the Hundred weight is ſold for 13 *Ochbas*, [*being about 4 Shil. 2 Pence* Sterl. or a halfpenny *per Pound.*] The Walls of this City are now demoliſhed ſo that it is no more than an open village. The only Remarkable I found here was the Ruins of the Ovens, wherein they averr *Alexander the Great* had Bread baked for his Army.

On the 5th. we came to the mountain *Par*---- or *Barmach*, which lies cloſe to the Sea, and is very famous for it's many veins of * *Naphte*. The word *Barmach* is an Appellativ word and betokens in their Language a Finger, ſo called from it's ſimilitude to a Finger pointing out. Above at Top it is very cold, and has ſnow on the North ſide all the year long: at top there grows ſom graſs but not much, and that

* *Which is alſo called* Median *Oil or* Babilonish Bitumen, *of the nature of Marl, which when once ſet on fire, will burn more vigorouſly if water be powred upon it, but is quenched with Earth, Duſt, or any other thing that is dry. This oil is very good to preſerv any metal from Ruſt; and as* Ammianus *ſaith, the Perſians were wont to aboint their ſhafts therewith.*

SEPT. 1670. that all hung with Icecicles. On this Hill appear the Ruins of ſom Watch-Towers, and below have been ſeveral Fortlets to check the *Tartars*, and ſecure the *Medians* from the Invaſion of the *Scythian* Robbers. Amidſt thoſe Ruins, is a huge deep Pit digged and laid in with ſtone. *Naphta*, otherwiſe called *Petroleum* or * *Petrelaum* is an Oil coming naturally out of the veins of the Rock, which veins do run thro the whole ſtones, as in Marble. There are 40 Pits digged as Receptacles to hold the ſaid Oil, being convey'd thither by ſeveral Pipes, or Conduits; But there are three of thoſe whence it naturally flows or ſprings, where you may ſee it buble up like boiling pitch. Of this Oil there be two ſorts; the one tending to a brown or black, which has a very ſtrong ſmell, but the other which is white is of a lovely ſmell when freſh, and held in far more eſteem than the other.

* Perhaps from the Greek words Ἔλαιον Oil, & Πέτρα a Rock.

On the 6 *dito* we ſet forward again, and went over very high Hills, coming at night to *Bachal* a village ſeated in a low but fruitfull Valley. Here grows much Rice, and that very good, it being a marſhy Ground, where that Grain likes beſt; Barley alſo grows there in good plenty. The Inhabitants have an excellent way of making Cakes, the main ſtuff thereof being Honey and Oil: whereof for the rareneſs and novelties ſake my Maſter bought certain to uſe on our Journey.

On the 7 *dito* we left *Bachal*, and after a good Days Journey came into *Cothany*, which is a very pleaſant Place: and here we took up our Lodging. This Village lies in a low Valley which is full of Woods of Haſles and other ſmall Trees, in which Woods are the greateſt plenty of Hares that ever I have ſeen in all my Life.

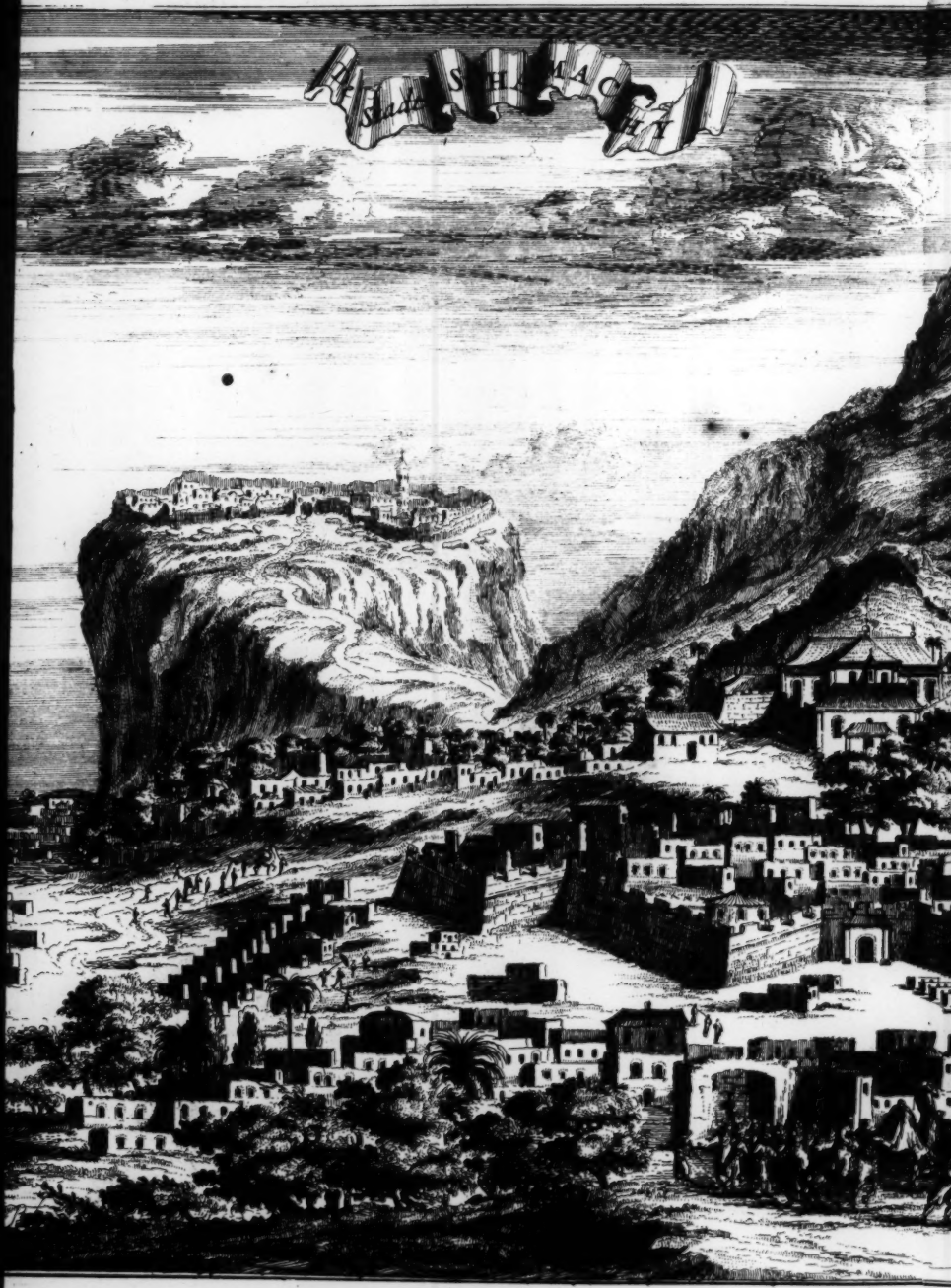
On the 8 *dito* we arrived at the famous *Scamachy*, called alſo *Sumahi*, and *Samachy*. It is a very famous Mart, and lies in 40 *degr.* 30 *min.* In the Province of *Schirwan*, or *Media*. It is handſomly ſeated in a Vally, ſo that one cannot ſee it till he be within Cannon Shot of the Town. The diſtance between *Derbent* and *Scamachy* is computed a Weeks Journey, excluding Sunday, to wit, following the High-way which is crooked and Winding, for by reaſon of Hills and Rivers they are fain to travel far about, or otherwiſe one might go it in 2 days: there is alſo another way which Paſſengers take when they go not with the *Caravan*; the Caravan would alſo go that way, but

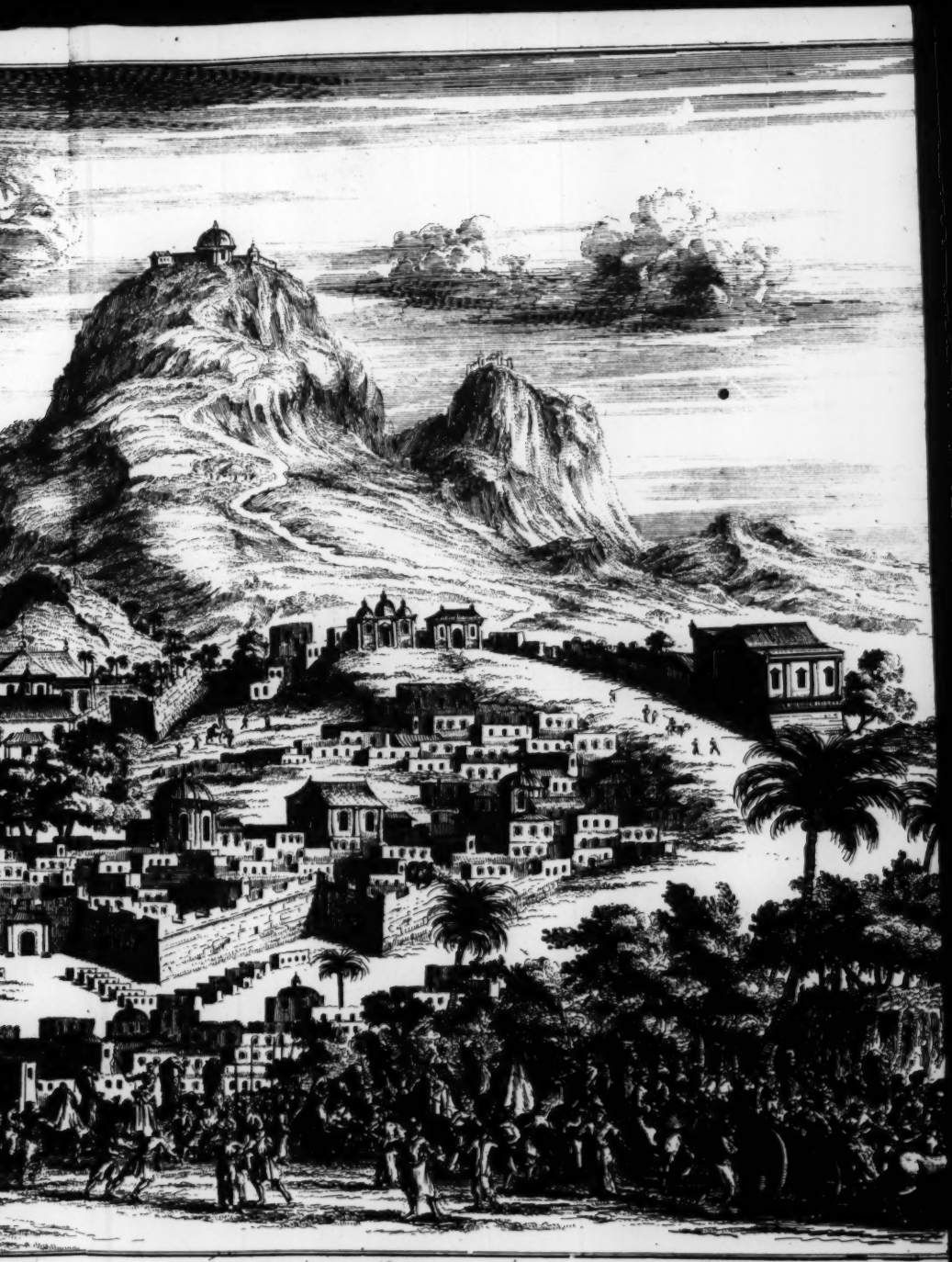
but the Tolls about the Mountains of *Lahatz* are very great, and oftentimes long a clearing, ſo that they rather chuſe to go the other way. In former times this was a Town of ſome conſideration as to matter of ſtrength; but in the Wars of *Abas*, the *Scach*, or King of *Perſia* againſt the *Turks*, it was by him diſmantled and made an open village, which was ever by him a Maxim of Military Policy, by reaſon the Turks were wont to retire into fortified Places under pretext of Refuge, and after a few Moneths proving ſtrong and numerous would ſurrender up the Town to their own Nation in time of War, or upon an Uproar: ſo that all the Walls toward the South were demoliſhed and only thoſe on the North-ſide left ſtanding, which will not much avail upon ſuch ſudden Occaſions. 1671. 1670. Scamachy deſcribed.

The Northern Quarter is far leſs than the Southern, and the Mote ſo ſhallow together with the mean condition of the Walls, that one may enter in as they pleaſe in many Places, notwithſtanding their due ſhutting of the Gates, that are in number 5. The ſtreets are all thrô the Town very narrow and the Buildings low, made up of Clay, Planks and Twigs daubed over. In the South-quarter is a ſpacious Market-place which they call a *Bogan*, having round about it ſeveral rich Shops in Galleries and Piazzas, wherein are ſeen many rich Merchandizes and Manufactories, as Silks, Cottons, Furrs, Cloth of Gold and Silver, Tapeſtry, &c. Near this place are alſo two great Warehouſes having ſeveral Portics or Alleys, where all Merchants-ſtrangers buy and ſell ſeveral ſorts of Merchandizes. The one of theſe is called *Scach Carwanſera*, or, the Emperours Lodgings, whither *Ruſſians* for the moſt part have recourſe, and barter their Tin, Copper, Sables and other Commodities: the other is called *Leſgi Carwanſera*, *i. e.* The *Tartars* Lodgings; and hither repair moſtly the *Dageſtan* and other *Tartars*, whoſe Trade conſiſts chiefly in Men and Children, ſtole either from their own Nation or the *Ruſſians*, as alſo in Horſes: hither alſo repair many Jews who deal moſtly in Bedding and Cottons. This Town upon my arrival there was altogether new built, althô about 3 years before it lay on heaps. This place is very ſubject to Earth quakes and in the ſpace of one year were 3 great ones, but that in the year 1667 was the greateſt that has been known or heard of in any Age. It continued for the ſpace of 3 moneths, but not with that terror and vio-

SEPT. 1670. violence it had at the beginning for when this Earth-quake made it's firſt overture, all the Towers, Churches [or *Moſquees*] Walls and greateſt Buildings were overthrown, and that with ſuch ſuddenneſs that they reckoned above 80000 men were loſt, beſides Women and Children not yet come to maturity, nor yet was the Earth-quake ſo raging at *Scamachy*, but alſo all the Countrey round about, where vaſt Mountains were removed, and whole Villages thrown into the clefts of Rocks and cloſed again. We alſo ſaw a place where ſeveral Towns and Mountains had been ſunk, not very far from *Scamachy*, where only appeared the tops of ſome of thoſe Hills. The High ways neare the Town were alſo ſo chink'd and crack'd that the *Caravans* muſt go many times far about. Day and night continued this Earth-quake thatthe Inhabitants thought the World would be diſſolved.

Being now arrived at *Schamachy*, I was ſet to work at the Building of my Patrons houſes, about which I was cloſely imployed from the 8th *September* to the 28th *October*. In the mean while I received a meſſage from 2 Friars of the Society, or Order of *St. Francis*, where being come they aſked me if I could ſpeak *Italian*; I told them I could not ſpeak it with its due Property and Elegancy, but could make a ſhift to underſtand and expreſs my mind. They aſked me then, From whence I came? and, if I was a Chriſtian? I told them that I was a *Hollander*, They then, if I was a *Lutheran*? I ſaid No, but of the true Catholic and Apoſtolic Church; and with that began to give an account of my Faith as what my Opinion was about the Divine Eſſence, the Holy Trinity, the Incarnation of our Lord, the Sacred Scriptures, Everlaſting Life, &c. To which they made no objection, as if they did approv of my Confeſſion for good conformity with theirs, but charged me to perſevere a true beleever in the Lord *Ieſus*, and not give way to the many allurements I muſt expect from thoſe of the *Mahometan* Faith to become a Proſelyte in the Sect of that foul Impoſtor. When they had out of their great Zeal admoniſhed me a litle, they began to enquire of me how I came into Slavery; I told them all the whole paſſage from the Beginning to the End; for which they ſhow'd themſelvs much concern'd, and promiſed me, if I were willing, they would indeavour to get me into the Hands of a Chriſtian, and conſequently that they would intreat the *Poliſh* Am-


ALGIERS



Ambaſſadour to buy me of my Patron. This gave a delicate ſound in my Ear, being the only thing I deſired to hear of; and coming home began to ſupplicate my Maſter that he would vouchſafe to ſell me into the Hands of the *Poliſh* Ambaſſadour, at which he ſeem'd to be a litle altered, and ſaid, John, *conſider with your ſelf the nature of your requeſt: have you found ſuch hard uſage the time you have been with me? Why then would you go from me? Go rather with me to* Iſpahan, *where, ſince you have once ſaved my life and in all things elſe proved faithfull, I will beſtow you upon ſom of your own Nation without Redemption Money: or any thing elſe in ſtead of you, where you ſhall be aſſuredly free.* But I ſtill remembred the words of my Patroneſs *Altine*, and had no great ſtomach to go for *Iſpahan* with him: However with many thanks declined his Offer, praying him rather if he had the Kindneſs for me he profeſſed, that he would pleaſe to let me have my requeſt herein; for I longed mainly to be among Chriſtians. *Well*, ſaid he, *ſince you will go, you ſhall, but be aſſured you ſhall not find better uſage than you have here, althô it were with a Chriſtian*, [*forſooth*]. *As for this* Bochdan *the* Poliſh *Miniſter, he is not ſo good a Chriſtian as you think, but a light vain* Georgian, *whom the King of* Poland *has diſpatched to the* Sophy, *to treat about a War with the* Turks, *but ſuch is his deportment here, and remiſſineſs in the Affairs of the King his Maſter, that he will in all probability be called in queſtion about it.* All this did not a whit daunt me from my Reſolution, for I gave him a certain allowance as to the Character he had given him; or, althô he had been ſuch a Perſon there was more hopes of my coming home thrô *Moſcovia*, ſooner than thrô *India*, and ſo from *Batavia*. This *Bochdan* as I have been ſince informed had formerly a Command of Horſe under the King of *Poland*, and was ſo well acquainted with the Humor of the King, that he was imploy'd on this Ambaſſage, but much envy'd by the *Polanders*. The next day I was ſold and delivered up to the Ambaſſador for 150 *Abas*, being the ſum *Hadſy Biram* had paid for me to the Prince. Upon my taking leav of my Maſter, he wiſhed me happineſs, and withone told me that he was ſenſible the King of *Poland* had Money enough to redeem a Chriſtian, otherwiſe he would have taken nothing for me. SEPT. 1670.

And now was none more happy than my ſelf in imagination, not thinking otherwiſe than ſuddenly to have my Freedom. On the 1 of *November* I was ſent for by the Ambaſſadour, where being

SEPT. 1670. introduced into the Parlor, he ſpeedily bad me ſit down, and fell to aſking many Queſtions about my Nation, and my coming to be a Slave. I told him all from the Beginning to the End. He then called for a Bowl of Wine, and bade me drink. Whilſt I ſat there, were two young *Georgian* Girls brought to the Door, who being ſtole by the *Dageſtan Tartars*, of handſom Bodies, and tolerable Beauties as alſo the Ambaſſadours own Countrey Women he had compaſſion of them and bought them for the value of 100 Crowns. Theſe he kept for Warming Pans, and would upon Occaſion, when he made any Feaſt, cauſe them to dance: nor did they much ſeem to be concern'd at the loſs of thoſe heavy burthens called Maidenheads, altho the Art is to know where they firſt got rid of 'em.

CHAP. XXII.

The Hatred and Churliſhneſs of the Ambaſſadour againſt the Poliſh *Gentry. A* Poliſh *Gentleman murthered in his bed. The pitiful caſe and condition of the* Polanders, *who were in the Retinue of the Legate. The Ambaſſadours Greedineſs. He indeavours to turn* Mahometan, *The Authors intention to make his eſcape. Captain* Butler *and others of his old acquaintance come to* Scamachi, *where they do what they can for the Captivs. The Ambaſſadors Brother goes for* Iſpahan, *where he deſires to be admitted as a* Mahometan; *but is not received*, William *the Maſters Mate of the Ship* Eagle *comes to* Scamachi. *A great Earth-quake. Conſecration of Water among the* Armenian *Chriſtians. A great concourſe of People, and remarkable Ceremonies.*

ON the 2 of *November* came the Siſter of the Ambaſſador, and his Brother with a great Retinue and Pomp: their Reception was with an Extravagant Banquet, which dured ſeveral days. So long as this Junketting laſted, was ſuch Gluttony, Drunkneſs and Prodigality, yea ſuch beaſtlineſs ſhown, that I almoſt abhorred the name of a Chriſtian, when on the other ſide I ſaw the *Mahometans* point at them, who are themſelvs very abſtemious and temperate. Yet this only was to gratify the *Georgians* and *Perſians*, for he demeaned himſelf very churliſhly towards the *Poliſh* Gentry who were ſent to grace his Perſon as a Retinue. Scarce were they ever admitted into his preſence, and beſides that pinched in their allowance

as

as well in Diet as Habit, and at laſt having ſpent the Money they brought with them out of *Poland*, were reduced to ſuch poverty, that they went up and down like Beggars, being aſhamed to com into honeſt Company? for beſides their coſtly Attire which he always kept locked up, he would not allow them a ſufficiency of Linnen to keep them clean. If any offered to complain he threatned to ſell them for Slaves, which tended to the great detriment of thoſe his Domeſtics, and Diſhonour of the King and Crown of *Poland*. This bred in the *Poliſh* Gentry ſuch diſſaffection that they reſolved oftentimes to have revenge; but as thoſe who know themſelvs conſcious of ſuch ill demeanor are ever in fear of their Perſons, ſo he who knew himſelf guilty of ſuch wicked doings, had always a certain number of his own Nation to ſecure and guard him. However they once finding opportunity, and being already com to the very Cataſtroph of Patience, began to hew him with their Scymiters and Axes, as he ſhould go out of his Dining-Room, where they chopt and mangled him ſo that he lay for dead upon the Floor, in the Portic, having received 17 grievous Wounds, and loſt three Fingers of his Right hand: yet by the great diligence and ſkill of his Chirurgeon who was then at hand, he was reſtored to his former Health and Sanity. This outrage as it could not but ingender bad blood, ſo it rendred the Ambaſſadour much more deſpightfull than before, and that very night to be revenged, ſent a *Georgian* Soldier to *Paniegros*, a *Poliſh* Gentleman, who was as Aſſiſtent in this Ambaſſage, and equally impowered to treat with the Miniſters of State at the *Perſian* Court, and therefore reckoned by the other as an obſtruction in the Promotion of his Intereſt, as well as his being ready to repreſent the Occaſion of theſe Tumults to the King, in ſuch manner as might tend to his diſadvantage: yet it ought to be underſtood of this Gentleman, that he neither gave incouragement, nor knew any thing of that extravagant Action. The *Georgian* having obtained entrance, ran to his Bed-ſide and there moſt inhumanly murthered him whilſt aſleep. This *Paniegros* was a Gentleman of a brave conduct, and withall of a meek temper, having purchaſed the Love even of thoſe that ſeemed to be his Lot-enemies for his prudent and civil deportment, He had lived for ſom years together at *Amſterdam*, and ſpoke very good *Nether-dutch*. The reſt of the *Poliſh* Na-

NOV. 1670.

The Ambaſſador hacked almoſt to death.

Paniegros, a Poliſh Gentleman murthered on his bed.

Nov. 1670. tion, were taken and secured, som whereof were fast in Chains. Nor with this did the Ambassador hold up, but dayly revenged himself of the *Poles*, which he used as Slaves; and the more to over aw them listed several *Georgians*-Soldiers to guard his Body. The Prince of *Scamachy* now sensible of the Differences and sad disorder of affairs, took upon himself the Office of a Mediator and adjousted the matter so well, that the imprisoned Parties were set again at liberty: yet were no better used than before as to their Sus-and Maintenance, whereas one Man might easily eat the Allowance he gave for 8. He on the Contrary continued a Junketting with those of his own Nation, that an Ox a day would not have been too much, if it were not for varietie and change of Diet. He bought 13 Kine which he sent out into the Field, and set me to look after them, but finding my self at a loss for Victuals, I assumed the liberty to tell his Excellency *that he must please to send me somthing to eat in the Field.* His answer was: *If you will have any thing, steal a cow from the* Persians, *and help your self so.* But that Commission I took occasion to let alone, being sensible that my masters Order would not excuse me. Thus I suffered more hunger than in all my life, and lore against my will intimated the matter to my former Patron *Hadsi Biram*, who gave me this reply, *I told you of it before-hand, what a villain that* Georgian *is, That he was but a Christian in show, and far too base to be a Musulman.* And certainly the Gentleman had good reason on his side: for this Ambassadour well knowing what Beer was brewed for him at the Court in *Warsaw*, dispatches his Brother to the King at *Ispahan*, to supplicate that they might both be circumcised, pretending that now knowing better things than he had hitherto don, therefore could not have Peace or Rest in Conscience, but continual Horror and Inquietude, if he were not admitted as a member in *Mahometanism*. But they had such ample and clear Information at Court of his Life and Behaviour, that they easily perceiv'd upon what account he did it, and consequently declined his Request. Shortly after he also received a Mandate from *Ispahan* to depart immediatly for *Poland*, which was acceptable news for the *Polish* Gentry, hoping at once to be rid of that Slavery and Misery they suffered. After my old Patron had discoursed me a litle about this affair, took his leav of me, saying, John, *I am very sorry for your condition, pr'ythee therefore com twice a day*

The Prince of Scamachi makes peace.

a day to my house and eat, or at what time you are hungry. I shall give my wife order, upon my Absense to give you Victuals. The sweetest music, I must confess, I heard in *Persia*; and certainly he who was a *Mahometan*, surpassed my *Georgian* Master far in Charity, who had rather feed Doggs he kept for his pleasure, than Christian-strangers, althô his own Domestics. NOV. 1670.

'Tis true this Offer was very acceptable, but all my fear was, that *Hadsi* would not tarry long at *Scamachy*, so that I should again be at a loss, and therefore I determined with my self to run away; as then I met with an opportunity to go for *Smyrna* with a great *Caravan*, which was a preparing and almost ready to set forward. I had already bespoke my self to go with an *Armenian* who was to set forward 6 days before the general Departure with the great *Caravan*, but what reason I met with to the contrary shall be shortly told.

Novemb. 4. I went out of the Town to see if I could speak with an Ambassadour who was dispatched from *Ispahan* to *Moscou*, and to request of him to represent our Condition to the *Czar*, but I could not get to speech of him. He had with him 4 Tygres and Leopards for a present to the Great Duke.

On the 11 to my great Astonishment and Joy I saw our Captain *Butler*, together with *Cornelius* the Gunner, *J. van Termund*, *Christian Brand*, *Lewis Fabritius* and *Peter Arentsz* coming into *Scamachy*; upon which in all hast I ran to bid them welcom and salute them, althô the Captain showed himself much displeased at us, for that we (as he alleadged) went away without his leav and order, and not waiting for him: to which I replied, *Captain you cannot forget what your Order was, That we should not stay so much as a quarter of an hour for any one, after the Gates were shut, but if any transgression of your Order must be imputed to us, it must be this that we stay'd till midnight for you, and not hearing any thing of you, we concluded that you were either killed in the Tumult, or had made your escape som other way; we then not holding it safe for us to make any longer delay, thought it more prudence to put off than to stay till it was day light*, &c. With these and other reasons I gave him he seemed to be satisfied, and promised to do all that lay in his power to procure our Redemption, as from that time forward he laboured very much to do. And this was the reason, that my intended Journey for *Smyrna*, was not undertaken thinking this to be a more hope-

Nov. 1670. full and a more ſecure way to get free: for this happened juſt the ſame day I had purpoſed to ſet forward with the *Armenian*, and ſo after 2 or 3 days Journey to wait for the great *Caravan*. Our Captain applies himſelf to the *Chan* of *Scamachy* to intercede for the Captivs, but all he could do might not avail, for there was no Audience lent him, It ſeemed as if the *Sultan* of *Derbent* had hardned his temper, for in preſence of the *Dutch* and others that had taken the Mediation upon them; whereas on the contrary they had ever been good Friends with the *Calmuc* & *Oſmin*, frequently ſending and receiving mutual Preſents from each other.

When the Captain ſaw there was no hopes to procure our Redemption at *Scamachy*, he purpoſes to go for *Iſpahan*, and addreſs himſelf to the King; the more for that the Commiſſioners of the *Eaſt India* Company might aſſiſt him. He therefore took up ſeveral *Abas* of an *Armenian*, for which he muſt have pay'd 25 *per Cent* more at *Iſpahan*: he left *I. van Termund* at *Scamachy* for ſecurity.

On the 18 *Chriſtian Brand* by the interceſſion of *I. van Termund*, was taken to board in the *Poliſh* Ambaſſadors Houſe, giving good ſecurity for the ſame at *Scamachy*.

Mean while the Brother of the ſaid Ambaſſador went a ſecond time to Court, for to get the conſent of the *Scach* in changing of his Religion, but the reſult was as unwelcom to him as the former, with an expreſs order to depart immediatly for *Poland*, and to give a reaſon of his delay. This news as it was very unacceptable to him, for that he was ſenſible how affairs would be repreſented at *Warſaw*, there being a Courier diſpatched off from the *Scach* to the K. of *Poland*; ſo was it alſo very welcom and acceptable news for the oppreſſed Gentlemen in his Retinue. Nor did this outwardly appear at the *Perſian* Court, for upon ſuch occaſions they never acquaint any Forreign Miniſter with any diſlike, but intimate it by their own at the Court from whence they are ſent in ſuch Quality, whence they expect Satisfaction. This when *Bochdan* underſtood he ſtudied all means to avoid going back to *Warſaw*, and aſked me if I thought that the *Eaſt India* Company, or their Directors there, would conſent to let him imbarque there for *Holland*? My reply was that I did not beleev it would be granted, and told him ſeveral Precedents for it, as alſo the improbability of the thing ſince their Intereſt was ſo great

great in Commerce with *Persia*; as that they would not do any thing to quit it: However if he would go clandestinly and occasion a Rumor as if he were gone for *Moscou*, or som where in *Tartary*, he might imbarque himself as a privat Person. This I said in hopes to come that way home my self. Yet he was various in his Intentions, somtimes taking a resolution to go for *Smyrna*, and somtimes for *Constantinople*, or elsewhere. However during the time he was at *Scamachy*, he Lorded it so bravely, that the *Chan* durst not check him in any extravagancy he committed: for it seems that the said *Chan* had taken up a considerable Sum of the Ambassador upon Interest and not being able to pay was fain to rest contented. But the Ambassador willing to get in his Money and the *Chan* not in a Capacity to pay it upon demand, the Ambassador sent his Brother to *Ispahan* to make complaint to the *Schach*, which when the *Chan* had understood, sent a Post after him, who intreated him to return back, upon promise of Payment, and full Solution both of Stock and Interest. Nov. 1670.

On the 21 came a *Persian* to *Scamachy* with *William Barentsz Klopper* our Chief-Mate, who had been taken by the *Tartars* and severely used all the time. The said *Persian* offered him to the *Polish* Ambassador who on the 30th bought him. The *Scemkal* had first sold him to a *Persian* of *Bachu* for 150 *Abas*. This new Patron set him to keep Cattle, in a Pasture, between *Derbent* and *Scamachy*, where upon our Journey to *Scamachy* I saw, but knew him not. He had a very churlish fellow to his Patron, and therefore attempting several times to run away was still caught again, and beat most severely: and now being redeemed came unexpectedly out of the Frying Pan into the Fire.

Upon the first day of *January* 1671, on which day we usually in our own Countrey wish one another Happiness: we were aware of a mighty and most dreadfull Earth-quake, which had in a moment laid some hundreds of Houses in Rubbish; most terrible was it to see so many Souls swallowed up in the Earth alive and as lamentable to see some crush'd to pieces and others half dead, some so fast closed up between Walls that they could not be got out. And others wanting their Legs, Arms and other Members, nor was there any but sustained some loss one way or other. When it ceased every one hoped that all was done, but the next day at night the Earth began

Nov. 1670. began again to tremble and ſhake, inſomuch that all was in a conſternation, but none ſuſtained any conſiderable loſs that I could hear of.

Ceremonies uſed by the Chriſtians in Conſecration of Water.

Upon the 6 *dito*, it froſe very hard inſomuch that the River was to. Upon this were the Ceremonies of the Conſecration of Water ſolemnized by the *Armenian* Chriſtians, in preſence of the *Chan*, his Son, our Ambaſſador, the *Poſtanick*, or an *Armenian* Courier, who was diſpatched for *Moſcou*, and then at *Scamachy*, all the *Perſian* Nobility and *Armenian* Chriſtians from all Villages round about, and from afar in the Countrey, who came with Croſſes, Flags and Bells, ſinging Hymns all the way till they came over the *Puley Ambery* (a Bridge ſo called) where they ſate down. On the morning very early the Biſhop came out with great Pomp and ſung Maſs, after which an Oration was made ſuiting the Day, being Epiphany, which he performed with great Zeal and Pains. After that was a Feaſt which they call *Chalſe Schuran*, or *Dipping of the Croſs*.

Theſe Ceremonies were performed as follows: On each ſide the River were placed the *Chans* Guards, and all the Soldiery, to prevent any Tumult or abuſe of the *Armenians*, who pay dear enough for the ſame. After the *Chan* had taken his place in a Tent expreſſly provided for that Prince, and the Watch ſet in good order, the Biſhop went to beg permiſſion, before which obtained he dare not begin. So ſoon as the Token was given, ſome of the *Armenians* ran naked into the Water, and cut up the Ice with Bills; the Biſhop all the while continues reading and the Common people ſing. After this they begin to play upon Bels and Cymbals, then the Biſhop ſtepping ſoftly to the River ſide, pours in Oyl and Water. Then he took a litle Silver Croſs, ſet with Diamonds and other precious Stones, which he dipt 3 times in the Water. This done he took a ſtaff [or Croſier] and ſtretched it ſeveral ways over the River, pronouncing ſeveral Benedictions. Immediately upon this all the People ran together, and ſtrove who ſhould be firſt at the River to drink and waſh their Faces. This was obſervantly don of all ſorts of People, young and old, Men and Women. Laſt of all ſeveral youths uncloathed themſelvs, jumped into the River and ſwam to and again, diving ſeveral times together, as if it had been in the midſt of Summer. The Biſhop departing homewards, was accompanied

panied with ſeveral Damoſels playing upon Inſtruments and ſinging all the way before him. On the other part there were ſeveral *Perſian* Whores and Proſtitutes who came to ſeek their Game, ſinging and dancing after a very laſcivious faſhion. In ſhort it concluded as the *Orgia* or *Bacchanalia* in the time of Gentiliſm, which were celebrated by the *Thyades*, or Prieſts of *Bacchus*, with the *Perſians*, who made uſe of this ſeaſon as a Fair, whither repaired many Juglers, Pedlers, Stage-players, & other Vagabonds; but the *Armenians*, did not either in Eating or Drinking exceed the Limits of Moderation. JAN. 1671.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Ambaſſadours Siſter goes to Tafflis, *and with her the* Poliſh *Chirurgeon. The Corps of an* Indian *burn'd with a Chriſtian ſhe-ſlave. The Woman having taken in a Potion to provoke ſleep, is alſo caſt into the furnace. Two Men murthered at* Scamachi, *and a tumult thereupon. Strange Ceremonies about the Dead. The* Chans *ſon is preſented with a* Kolotan, *or* Robe of Favour, *and one of the Kings Wives. A man ſtruck dead with ſtaves. A fearful Earth-quake. The* Chan *alſo receives a* Robe of Favour, *and a Wife. Pompous Solemnities at the delivery of the ſame. He receives the Princeſs. New Tidings from* Ruſſia. *The Ambaſſador commanded by the King of* Perſia *to return for* Poland; *who makes his excuſe. The miſerable Eſtate of the* Poliſh *Gentry. Theft committed in the Ambaſſadors Palace. A man tortured that was innocent. The* Poliſh *Chirurgeon fortunatly married at* Tafflis. *Another Corps of an* Indian *burned with a living Woman. The great kindneſs of* Hadſy Biram *to the Author. His bad entertainment with the Ambaſſador.*

ON the 9th. departed the Siſter of *Bochdan* the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador for *Tafflis* with 7 Camels and conducted with ſom *Georgian* Soldiers. The City *Tafflis* is diſtant from *Scamachy*, about 8 Leagues. The next day her Brother, with the Ambaſſadors Chirurgeon called *Adam* departed alſo. This Chirurgeon was a *Polonian* by Birth, and had been ſent for by the Prince of *Tafflis*, who intreated the Ambaſſador to let him come; promiſing him a ſufficient Salary, beſides, his Diet, Appartments at Court, 4 Slaves of whether ſex he liked, and to provide him a Wife of his own chuſing and Religion, the Prince being himſelf a *Roman* Catholic. The Chirurgeon with whom I was very intimate would often conſult the Mat-

Jan. 1671. ter with me, and aſk what advice I could give him. I alwaies council'd him, "Not to neglect ſuch a golden Opportunity, telling "him further what he had to expect if he ſhould continue with "ſuch a Varlet as *Bochdan* was, who was both greedy and ingrate-"full for the beſt ſervice any one could do him, althô it were ſupere-"rogatory. That if the Ambaſſadour ſhould return for *Poland*, as "'t was a matter very dubious, he would ſtill be *in ſtatu quo*, and "muſt if he ſtay'd here never hope for any advancement by him who "was becom loathſom to the worſt of men. He thanked me for my advice, and reſolved to do as I had council'd him; and ſoon after departed, as is ſaid. Right ſorry I was when he left us, being ever kind to me and other Slaves, althô I was by duty injoyn'd to wiſh and rejoyce at his Welfare, for his extraordinary Civilities. The Prince of *Taſſlis* began firſt to be taken with him upon his noble cure performed on the Ambaſſador, when he was ſtruck down by the *Poles*, as was ſaid before.

The Corps of a rich Indian burned with a Woman Slave.

On the 15 died at *Scamachy*, one *Tzouke* a very rich *Indian*, whoſe Corps his Brother after their manner deſired to burn, which by a very long and importunate interceſſion of the Prince was granted, he paying for the ſame about 1300 Crowns. The *Indian* having obtained this Grant the next day bought a Chriſtian Woman, which he burned with the Corps. The Bodie and the Woman were carried together without into the Field where they had made up a great Staple of Wood and a place within for the Corps. The *Indian* Prieſts gave the Woman a Potion to provoke ſleep and then ſet her upon an Engine like a Crane or Whip, made on purpoſe letting her ſo fall into the Fire. In the mean time the *Bonzi* poured a great Veſſel of Turpentine Oil upon the Wood and ſo ſet it on fire, and then gave the Engine a turn, upon which the Woman fell into the fire. 'Tis true the Woman ſeemed by vertue of that Potion to be fallen into a *Cataphor*, or Dead-ſleep, yet I heard her ſhriek out ſeveral times till the Drums, Pipes, Trumpets and other Wind-Muſic began to play, which was ſo loud and altiſonant, that I could not hear any longer, althô I got a place near the Pile which was erected for theſe Ceremonies. Such practiſe was alſo in uſe among the Idolaters of *Paleſtina*, who offered their Children to *Moloch*. When the Fire had conſumed all, the Aſhes were thrown into the River.

The Prieſts give the Woman a Potion and with an Engine throw her into the Fire.

On

On the 21 was a great noiſe in Town about 2 Men that were murthered, and the Homicides unknown. The Widows, Children and Friends of the Partys murthered brought the Dead Bodies to the Gates of the Princes Palace as demanding Juſtice, and Puniſhment for the Delinquency. About two hours they ſat by the Bodies with their Heads, and Right Arms bare, as a token that thoſe were their Allies and Friends, and kiſſed the Corpſes ſeveral times for they repute thoſe that are ſo murthered indiſputably Saints in Heaven. Hither flocked alſo Women from all parts and Countreys round about, eſteeming it a work of merit. The Perſons murthered were but ordinary People, and Citizens of the meaneſt ſort, ſo that the *Chan*, did not uſe much diligence in hunting out the Malefactors, for without Money Juſtice is rarely don. After the Corps had laid here about 2 hours, as was ſaid, they were by Order of the *Chan* carried away upon Barrows and interred in the Field, with ſom few Ceremonies. Every night were ſet up ſeveral Torches, and by day went Hundreds of Women to perform the uſual Solemnities and ſuperſtitious Rites at their Tombs. The Ceremonies are as vain as fooliſh which they do about the Dead; at their firſt coming there they bow down three times at the Grave, and as often kiſs it, adorning the Place round about with Flags of ſeveral Colours which they make faſt to ſticks. *Jan.* 1670. *Two Men murthered.*

On the 27 was a general Exultation expreſſed at *Scamachy*, with Beating of Drums, Sounding of Trumpets and variety of Wind-Muſic, for that the *Chans* Son had a *Robe of Favour* beſtowed upon him, and one of the Kings Wives; which were ſent him for a Preſent as a Mark of Loyalty: and indeed the latter is never don but upon the ſcore of an exceeding high Favour; and altho they have the names of the *Kings Wives*, yet it moſtly happens that they are pure Virgins, it being a thing impoſſible that he ſhould make uſe of ſo many as are dayly brought to him from all parts of his wide Dominions, which are alwaies the moſt ſelect Beauties; however the Grandees of *Perſia*, are leſs contented when they find them Maids, than otherwiſe, and for that reaſon do as duly conceal it, as others who find the contrary on privat Occaſions; *For*, ſay they, *'tis a Greater Honour to fiſh in the Kings Pond, than in one of their own:* Nor are the Women altogether ſad at ſuch diſpoſals, ſince they live, as

FEB. 1671. it were, in the State of Widdow-hood for ſom years together, the number of them being ſo great.

A fellow Can'd to Death. On the 1 of *Febr.* was a Man beat to death with Canes by order of the *Chan*, none underſtanding the reaſon why. The Execution was don by the Domeſtics of the Palace, for they have no Ordinary Executioner: Theſe tied him Hand & Foot, which don, they fell a caning him with Sticks, or Ciplins, having a great knot at the End: no member was ſpared in his whole, for having threſhed him a while on his Back, they began with his Sides, and afterward his Belly, Thighs, Leggs, Arms, &c. which kind of Death muſt needs be a greater Torment than Breaking upon the Wheel, which we hold too cruel and inhuman, althô in uſe in moſt Countreys in *Europe*.

Another great Earthquake at Scamachy. The ſame day towards night we had another formidable Earthquake, and out of the Caves was heard a moſt hideous roaring and yelling before it began, ſo that none durſt ſleep or come near any houſe; however it laſted not very long, but ceaſed with the deſtruction of a few Houſes, which were buried in their Rubbiſh.

The Chan ſends for to receive ſome noble Preſents. The next day came an Expreſs to *Scamachi* from the Court at *Iſpahan*, with Inſtructions for the *Chan* to com to Court, and as he and many more beleeved to ſuffer the direfull effects of the Kings diſpleſure; yet the Courier privatly aſſured him on the contrary, as that it was to receiv ſom Royal Preſent. Betimes in the morning on the next day the *Chan* ſet out for *Kallikkleſihan*, which is a Pleaſant Dwelling belonging to the King, and about half a [*Dutch*] league diſtant from *Scamachy*, being accompanied with his own Son, the *Calenter*, all the Nobility and Courtiers, as alſo our Lord, the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, and the *Poſtanic* of *Armenia*. The *Chan* himſelf was mounted on a ſtately *Arabian* Horſe, richly Cappariſon'd, the Mounchet or Saddle-Cloth richly embroydered and ſet with Pearls and Precious Stones; the Chaplets, Bitts, and Buckles were of pure and ſolid Gold, and all the reſt of the Accoutrements ſuitably rich and ſplendid. The young Prince was equally well mounted with his Father, on a Horſe beſpread with very rich Trappings, and a noble Harnaſs. The reſt of the Retinue likewiſe appear'd with as much Pomp and Statelineſs, every one agreeable to his Quality. After this Cavalcade follow a great Train of Citizens, every one in

in his beſt Garb. When he came near the place he ſent out an Uſher to acquaint the Envoyé with his coming, who then went out to meet him, ſending a Gentleman before him with the Robe, himſelf following after leading a ſtately Horſe, on which the Lady was mounted which the King had ſent him, guarded with a Circle of Noblemen all mounted on horſeback, and a gallant Troop of Cavalry, armed with long Carbines, Bows and Arrows. So ſoon as the *Chan* ſaw them approach, he allighted from his Horſe, as did alſo the young Prince his Son, and all the Retinue, walking ſoftly on foot till they came cloſe together, at what time the Envoye [or *Wakenutz*] reached forth his hand and delivered the *Chan* a Box of Gold, which he received with demonſtration of reſpect and in humble manner after the *Perſian* faſhion. This don, he delivered him the Robe, which the *Chan* received with ſom Ceremonies cuſtomary among the Grandees, and forthwith drew it on. Laſt of all the Envoyé brought up the Bride as ſhe ſat on Horſeback and delivered her to the *Chan*, who very reverently bowed, laying one hand on his breaſt and the other on the Bridle, cloſe by the Bitts: upon which the Lady held forth her Hand, which the *Chan* kiſſed, and ſo mounting on his Horſe cloſed up with her, and taking leav of the Envoyé rode away, preſenting the Envoye with ſom Gifts, which he ſent back to *Kalikleſthan*. By the way they were met with innumerable companies of People from all parts, who came as nigh as they well durſt or were permitted to ſee the Bride, who was as richly attired as could be expected of a Princeſs; but after the *Perſian* cuſtome her Face covered, ſo that one could not ſee whether ſhe was fair, or otherwiſe. Before they came at *Scamachy*, the *Chan* allighted, as alſo the Lady, who was ſet in a Chair of State and ſo carried by certain Perſons thereto appointed into the Town, the *Chan* going on the one ſide and his Son on the other, In the mean while the Kettle-drums beat, & the Trumpets ſounded that the Mountains eccho'd, and all the People ſhouted with continual exclamations for Joy; for it is alwaies the manner with the Kings of *Perſia*, to conceal the meſſage, to all, ſave him who has the Inſtructions, who either remunerates them with ſuch Gifts as the King is pleaſed to ſend, or elſe to bring their Head along with him; ſo that a Prince ſo ſent for takes his leav of all his Friends and Relations, before he ſets forward to know the Kings

FEBR. 1674.

FEB. 1671. Pleſure at the Hands of his Legate: for the Errand is diſpatched with ſuch ſpeed that they have not time to diſpoſe or conſult affairs. Theſe extreme Meſures create great Loyalty and Obedience in the Greateſt Officiated Perſonages; who are carefull to pleaſe and fearfull to diſpleaſe their Soveraign Lord: neither is it one of the leſt Machines to bring vaſt Sums and an inexhauſtible Treſure into the Kings Coffers, for they æmulate who ſhould bring the greateſt and moſt acceptable Preſents: as alſo to ſuch as they underſtand to be the chief Minions and Favorites in Court.

The *Chan* having entred the City apparrelled in his Robe, which was of Cloth of Gold, he was ſaluted with the Ordnance, and ſeveral Volleys of ſmall Shot; The People alſo of all degrees and ranks continued playing and junketting the greateſt part of the night.

New Intelligence from Ruſſia. On the 3 *dito*, *Lewis Fabritius* rode poſt to *Derbent* in order to his Journey for *Moſcou*, upon the firſt good and certain news he could have from *Ruſſia:* for there was a ſtrong report that the *Czar* had a great Army in Camp and having beat the Rebells in open Field was ready to lay ſiege to *Aſtrachan*; as alſo that one of a high Command and next to *Radzin*, was taken and put to a ſhamefull and ignominihus Death.

A Conflict between a Poliſh Gentleman and a Renegado. On the 10 *dito* one *Slabitsky* a *Poliſh* Gentleman, went to Court, where he caſually met with the *Chans* Trumpeter, who was a *Polander*, and a Renegado, where reprehending the Trumpeter for renouncing the Chriſtian Faith, and becoming a Proſelyte in *Perſia*, he grated a little too hard upon the Renegado's Conſcience, ſo that he after a few hot words drew his Scymiter and ran upon the Gentleman, who was not remiſs in doing the like; yet having bad ſucceſs in his aim, the Renegado hack'd and wounded him ſo, that his Life was deſpaired of.

The Ambaſſadour receives a Mandat to depart. On the 18 came an Expreſs to my Patron, the *Poliſh* Envoyé, from the Court at *Iſpahan*, with the ſame Mandate, that he ſhould forthwith go for *Poland:* But he excuſed himſelf, alleadging that the *Caſpian* Sea, was full of *Coſac* Pyrates, and that the *Tartar* Countreys were alſo very unſafe, ſince he muſt go thrô the *Oſmins* Territories, who had more than once badly intreated the *Poliſh* Miniſters, who were to paſs that way: Theſe were indeed likely, but not the real reaſons why he deferred his Repatriation, but, as was ſaid before,

fore, the danger he was in, of looſing his Head when called in queſtion about his ill deportment in *Perſia*. The Gentlemen in his Retinue finding this Procraſtination of his Journey to *Warſaw* did but increaſe their Miſery, were almoſt in deſpair, willing rather to beg all the way home, or get into ſervice with the *Caravans*. Amonſt the reſt one *Pable Witsky*, a youth of 19 years of Age, departs for *Smyrna* with the *Caravan*. This young Gentleman having ſhown us more than ordinary favour, I thought my ſelf obliged to do what lay in my Power to retaliate his kindneſs, and therefore gave him Letters to the *Dutch* Conſul at *Smyrna* and to ſome eminent Merchants of our Nation, deſiring if he ſhould chance to be neceſſitated or at a loſs for Money they would pleaſe to aſſiſt him, he having upon his departure no more than 20 Crowns. I gave them alſo a full Demonſtration of what he had done for the *Dutch* Slaves, as alſo an account of his Worth in reſpect of his Race and Deſcent, he being of one of the nobleſt Families in the Countrey, and was able to remitt what they thought good to diſburſe for him. FEB. 1671.

On the 19 *dito* were 6 Silver Plates ſtollen out of our Maſters Houſe which put all into a diſorder, he being ſo paſſionate that nought could appeaſe him; and ſuſpecting one Man for the Theft, he cauſed him to be tortured in the preſence of all the Family, althô he was innocent as to the Fact. Firſt he was beat with ſticks on the ſoles of his Feet which he nevertheleſs manfully ſtood out: when this was done they held his Feet cloſe to the Fire, which made him yell and roar out, that the Hair of my Head ſtood on end; and in as much as he could not any longer endure the Torment, he confeſſed what he was not guilty of, as afterwards appeared; althô when he was taken away he denied all: and thus the poor man meerly becauſe he was a *Pole* ſo uſed that he could neither ſtand nor go, nor was allowed a ſufficient care to reſtore him to his former Sanity, nor had any thing by way of ſatisfaction, as an acknowledgment of a wrong.

About this time came news from *Tefflis* about the Chirurgeon who had done that operation on the Ambaſſador, how that the Prince having underſtood that he was arrived ſent for him, and after many Careſſes and in order to his Promiſe, ſent for one of the moſt eminent Merchants in the City, who had one only Daughter. The

Prince

FEB. 1671. Prince then makes the Overture, telling him that young Gentleman was one with whom he had intruſted his Life, and aſked if he would give him his Daughter in Marriage. The Merchant was at firſt ſurpriſed, hardly ready enough to give conſent that a ſtranger he had never heard of in his Life ſhould have his only Daughter; and yet durſt not well deny him, for thoſe Princes rule with an Arbitrary Power; and althô out of ſome ſhow of Courteſy they ſeem to requeſt a thing of their Subjects, yet when occaſion ſervs they command at their diſcretion: nor dare the Subject either murmure or oppoſe them in the leaſt, for fear of parting with their ſweet Lives, and loſs of Eſtate which is taken from their Poſterity. The Father gives conſent but thought her too young for the nuptial Bed, ſhe not exceeding 12 years of Age, and therefore pray'd the Marriage might be put off till ſhe was 2 years elder; however the Contract was ſigned in preſence of the Prince, with Condition that ſhe came to die without Iſſue that her Eſtate ſhould devolve upon him. In fine he was there in very great reputation and gave the Merchant reaſon to be well ſatisfied with his Perſon; who ſhow'd him all Poſſible Favour and Friendſhip.

On the 26 *dito* our Patron, the Ambaſſadour, got intelligence of the Party that had ſtole his Plate, being diſcovered by a Goldſmith that had bought it; for Notice was given to all the Goldſmiths in *Scamachy*, that if any one bought it, he ſhould have his Money again, and a Reward to boot. Yet this Delinquent had more favour ſhown him than the Party who was put to the torment before, thô innocent of the Fact; for this received only a few blows on the Foot, and was declared free. He was a *Polander*, not in ſervice of the Ambaſſador, but only a Paraſite who frequented the Houſe.

On the firſt of *March* was another *Indian* Corps burned with a Live-Woman, after the ſame manner as was ſaid before; only the Wood was poured over with *Naphte*, in place of Turpentine Oil.

On the 2 *dito*, *Hadſy Biram* my former Maſter ſent for me to come to him, where he intimated how that he intended ſo ſoon as he poſſibly could to go for *Iſpahan*, and aſked me if I would go with him. I anſwered, *Sir, I would be glad that I might be ſo happy, but the greateſt difficulty will be to eſcape out of the Hands of my Patron: for at firſt he would hardly truſt me over the Threſhold without one to watch me, but in time gave*

me

me my Liberty to go where I would: yet finding me for his bad uſage deſirous to be out of his hands, watches me more narrowly than he did at firſt. Upon this he expreſſed how ſorry he was that he had ſold me to the Ambaſſador, as indeed for my own part I had great reaſon to be: whereas by the firſt I had plenty of all that was neceſſary and was without any Overſight, but with the laſt ſuffered perpetually Hunger, Railing & Blows, and forced to lie all Winter on the hard and cold Floor without any Coverlet to keep me from cold, ſo that it was an evident token of GODS Goodneſs that I came off with health and ſoundneſs of Body. All the Winter long I was not permitted to come in the Kitchin, much leſs at the Stove, ſo that I had no way to warm my ſelf, unleſs when I found ſom pieces of wood among the Rubbiſh which I lay together and made a Fire of; but what was worſt I durſt not for my life complain, however with the approachment of the acceptable Summer ſeaſon I was eaſ'd of that one hardſhip. MAR. 1671.

CHAP. XXIV.

The manner of Celebrating New-years day among the Perſians. *Advice from* Boynak: *from* Derbent. *Fire-balls fall from the Sky. Five Hundred beautiful* Damoſels *ſought up for the* Scach, *or* Sophy *of* Perſia. *A quaint mean by which a Merchant ſaves his Daughter. The Author writes to* Smyrna. *A Chieftain of the* Coſaks *brought into* Scamachy; *and is compelled to carry 3 of his Companions Heads in a Bag to* Iſpahan, *where he is upon promiſe of detecting ſomthing of weight ſet at Liberty. A* Perſian *murthered by a drunken* Georgian. *The murtherer executed by the Brother of the murthered Party. A Horrible Self murther committed by ſeveral Perſons at a Wedding. A great Feaſt celebrated in memory of* Hoſſeyn, *the 3d Son of* Ali. *A terrible Earth-quake. The* Chans *Son dies and is interred.*

ON the 10 of *March* being the Vernal *Æquinoctial* begins their Year. This day is celebrated with Shooting, Playing, Feaſting and Muſic. The Solemnity began with the Firing of two great Guns, and ſeveral Volleys of Muſkets and leſſer Fire-arms. All the night they playd upon Trumpets, Cornets, Flutes and other Wind-muſic, beſides 15 Kettle-drums. This day the *Perſians* call *Naurus*, and wiſh one another a happy New year, as is cuſtomary among us on the 1 of *Ianuary*. The *Chan* as alſo all the Nobles and Citizens *Celebration of New-years day.*

MART. 1671. kept open Table for ſeveral days together, whilſt nothing was talked of but Viſits and Banquets. My Patron profeſſing Chriſtianity was excuſed from theſe Expences, holding out, that he being a Chriſtian could not ſafely maintain *Mahometan* Superſtition. This was a happy time for our Gentlemen, who now with Authority went a mumping among the *Perſians*, nor did I think it good to dine with Duke *Humphrey*, ſo long as I had ſuch an honeſt *Hadſi Biram* to addreſs my ſelf to, whither I went and was very kindly entertained.

On the 21 we received a Letter from one of our Company, who was a Slave in *Scemkal*, althô there was no name ſet to it, at which we wondred; yet did beleeve it was *Anthony Munſter* the Diamond-cutter. The Contents was, "That he underſtood how that there were 2 "*Dutch* Chirurgeons at *Scamachy*, whom he intreated to redeem "him, and he would order the Money to be paid at *Moſcou*. The Letter was delivered to us by order of the *Chan*, but we had not the Power to do any thing for him; yet underſtood not long after, that the ſaid *Munſter* was carried to *Iſpahan* as Captiv, or Slave.

On the 25 we got a Letter from *Meyndert Meyndertſz* one of our Company, which was directed to my Patron *Bochdan*: the Contents thereof being much at one with the former; yet he gave no other account of his faſt Reſidence, than that he was a Slave and lived not far from *Derbent*, where being a Smith by his Trade he made Weapons for his Maſter. He was afterwards bought by a *Perſian* of *Bacchu*, and ſince redeemed by *I. van Termund*.

The next day happened a Fray between 2 *Georgians*, the Ambaſſadors Countreymen, who hacked and hewed ſo long with their Scymiters till they had hardly a free hand-breadth in their Bodies that was not wounded, nor could our Ambaſſadour part them, notwithſtanding all the means he could uſe, whereas every one has the Freedom to right himſelf in ſuch caſes.

On the 31 at night we had another great Earthquake, accompanied with fearfull Flaſhes of Lightning and Thunder: On this day was alſo ſeen at *Scamachy* and other places in *Perſia* huge Balls of Fire, which ſeemed to be hurl'd down from Heaven, with ſuch Force as if the Bands of the World would be diſſolved: this being the moſt dreadful ſight that ever I have ſeen in my life. The Flame thereof was blewiſh like Sulphur when it burns.

The

The next day we got Tidings by way of *Terky*, that *Aſtrachan* was retaken by the Great Dukes Forces, and, that ſeveral Thouſands of the Rebells were executed; but hearing thoſe news ſo often related and afterwards found them to be but falſe Rumors, ſuppoſed to be diſperſed by ſome Perſons whoſe Intereſt had dependence thereon, we could not ſo eaſily be induced to take this upon Credit, and therefore, acquieſced in the Indifferency of the matter till we had a Confirmation. MAR. 1671. *News from Aſtrachan.*

On the 2 of *April* came an Order from *Iſpahan*, to make a General Muſter of Girls, from 2 years of Age upward, out of which the Beauties ſelect were to be choſen out for the King of *Perſia*. This Muſter paſſed throughout the whole Kingdom, not reſpecting either Nation or Religion. The Commiſſioners had Order from the King, to complete the number of 500 of the beſt featured, complexioned and ſhaped Virgins that were to be found in all the whole Muſter. The manner of it is thus; Some time before, the King iſſues a Mandate, which is publiſhed thrô every Province of his Realm and Dominions, That all the young Maids from 2 to 17 years [*if there be any of that age*] ſhall be drawn up to their reſpectiv Metropolitans, or Chief Towns (as theſe in *Media*, were brought to *Scamachy*) where the Kings Commiſſioners ſhall make choice on the Kings behalf. This Mandate is duly and with all reverence obey'd by the Parents of ſuch Children, who, if they have but one Child are obliged upon pain of Death to bring her to the Place appointed, where the ſaid Commiſſioners are to view and cenſure them if they be worthy to be culled out for the Kings uſe. Deplorable it was to ſee the dejected Countenance of the Parents, who brought their Children where they muſt take their laſt leavs of them, never thinking to ſee them again; and as remarkable it was to conſider the various tempers. and differing humors of the People, whereas ſom who having a great love and eſteem for their Children, would attire them in the ouglieſt Garb, and uſe what Arts they could to make them ſeem deformed and miſhapen; whilſt on the contrary others thinking it a Honour, and being either overburthened with their Children, or void of that tenderneſs, which by nature all are injoyned to have over their Iſſue, would uſe every mean they could conceiv to render them handſom, and ſpend their utmoſt mite for Orna- *An Order to levy 500 Wenſor the Scach.*

APRIL. 1671. ments to add a Grace to their corporal qualifications, that ſo they might be rendered as an Emphaſis among the reſt.

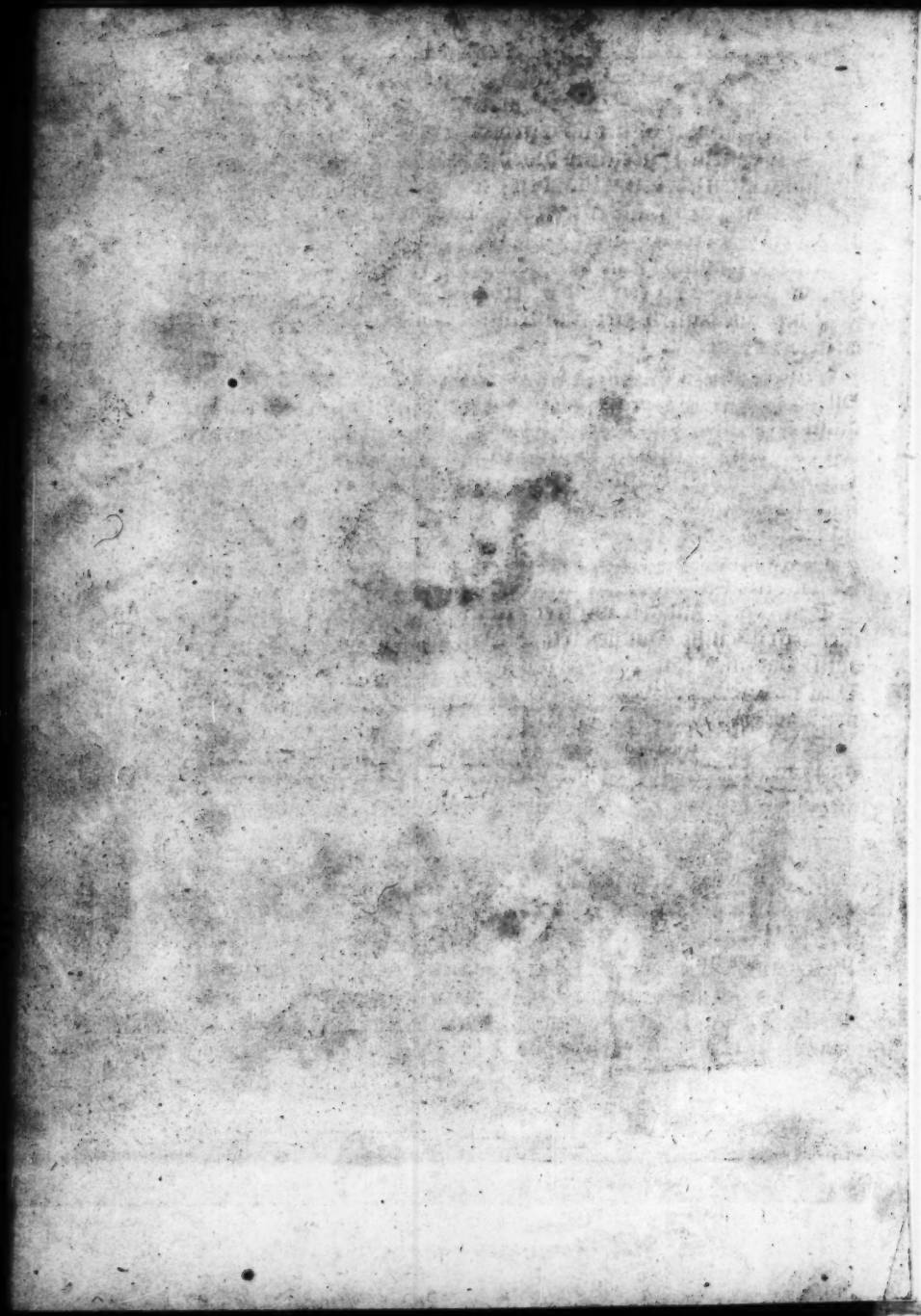
A Merchant looſes his Daughter to find her.

When this Muſter was certified and publiſhed, which is but a ſhort warning, I knew a very rich Merchant whoſe greateſt ſolace and imaginary happineſs was in one onely Daughter, who was already marriageable, and courted by a young Gentleman of no ſlender Fortune; but the Father whether he thought her a Match, in regard of her Dowry, Beauty, Wit and other Accompliſhments, fitter for a greater Perſonage, or that the youth had ſom Property which he the ſaid Merchant took diſlike at, I cannot determine; yet certainly he courted her long before he could gain the will and conſent of the old Man, which till theſe Summons came he quite deſpaired of. But no ſooner did the old Gentleman hear of the Mandate but he ſent for the Youth, and not only gave him his Daughter for his Bride but made him in Poſt-haſt to bed with her, that ſo he might juramentally declare ſhe was no Virgin. The Youngman did not deſire many Moneths to deliberate the buſineſs, but ſuddenly accepted of his Offer, and ſo anticipated the King. Yet this did not altogether excuſe them, for it was not ſo univerſally known but that ſom Pick-thank Neighbour thinking that the Gentleman concealed his Daughter to eſcape the Cenſure, went and informed the Commiſſioners, that ſuch a Virgin was not brought to the Teſt, being a great Beauty and well bodied. The Commiſſioners immediatly ſend out a Privat Summons to the Old Gentleman to bring his Daughter into the *Chans* Antichambre where they held the Rendez-vous; the Old Gentleman makes his Appearance with his Son in Law and Daughter, together with ſom Perſons of Quality to make uſe of in caſe Evidence were required where being come, he preſents his Daughter, and pray'd them to take his Son too, for he was the Perſon that had her Maiden-head, which was the only thing the King deſired; In fine he declared the matter ſo circumſtantially that ſhe was diſmiſsd.

When the laſt Muſter is made, thoſe that are elected are ſet in Boxes, made not much unlike a Sedan, and carried on Camels, every Camel carrying two, which hang on each ſide like Higlers Baſkets: and the Morning appointed for their Departure they ſound a Trumpet, upon which all the Caravan comes together in order to their ſetting







ſetting forth, appearing like a mighty Army. Thoſe that are com to maturity are ſhut up alone; and ſuch as are litle have Nurſes appointed to attend them. APRIL 1671.

All this while I ſaw little hopes of ever enjoying my Freedom, ſo that I began to deſpair of Redemption. After I had conſulted all means, I concluded it my beſt way to diſpatch Letters to ſom of my own Nation, and accordingly ſent one to the *Dutch* Conſul at *Smyrna*, and another to the Sieur *Molives* at *Leghorn*, humbly entreating them to ſend them forward for *Holland*, with one acquainting them that I was in Slavery at *Scamachy*, and could not ſend any Letter with ſafety and conveniency thrô *Moſcovia*, which was the reaſon of my being ſo importunate, as to direct them that way.

On the 9th. we had very tempeſtuous Weather, high and impetuous Winds, mixed with Thunder and Lightning, ſo that all ſhaked again. On this day went all the Woman to the Sepulchers of their deceaſed Friends, to perform the cuſtomary Rites.

The next day was a great Feſtival, or Holy-day among them, which was ſolemnized with Beating of Kettle-drums, ſound of Trumpets, and Playing on all ſorts of loud Wind-Muſic.

On the 11th. was one of *Radzins* chief Officers brought into *Scamachy*, being with 3 more of the *Coſac* Commanders ſent upon an Ambaſſage to *Boulat* a Prince of the *Circas-Tartars*, to deſire his Aſſiſtance of ſom Auxiliaries, promiſing not only to ſpare his Subjects, but alſo to give him a conſiderable Reward. The Prince having underſtood the ſum of their Inſtructions, cauſed immediatly Three of thoſe to be beheaded, and their Bodies to be thrown to the Eagles and Ravens. The Heads he cauſed to be embalmed and put in a Bag, which he compelled the Fourth to carry to *Iſpahan* and preſent the King. His one Hand and his Neck was nailed to a Wooden Collar made like a [Y] with 2 Branches, between which his Head was ſupported, ſo that he continually looked upwards. This *Coſac*, or rather Renegado, for he was a *Ruſs* born, I knew very well at *Aſtrachan*. He was mounted on a bay Horſe, and attired in a Garment of yellow Silk, and notwithſtanding the unexpected ſevere Uſage he met with did not ſeem by his Countenance to be at all concerned.

The Coſac gets his Enlargement.

When he was brought into *Iſpahan*, was put into cloſe Priſon and loaden with maſſy Fetters and Manicles, but ſhortly after got his enlarge-

May. 1671. enlargement promiſing to impart ſom weighty and important affair to the King.

I have already made mention, how that about 2 years before, *Radzin* had diſpatched 7 Ambaſſadors to the Court at *Iſpahan*, deſiring a Supply of Men and Ammunition, as alſo to enter into a League with the King: but by reaſon the *Coſacs* had plundered *Aſtrabath*, *Ferrebath* and *Lenkeran*, and committed many inſolent Outrages within his Majeſties Territories, and that *Radzin* was not by any acknowledged as a Soveraign Prince, his Ambaſſadors found a very unkind Reception at Court, and meeting with ſome menacing Sentences in their Inſtructions, the King cauſed their Heads to be ſevered from their Bodies, reſerving only one to bring back the Tidings, who was upon his delivery of the Meſſage ordered by *Radzin* himſelf to be chop'd into Gobbets, as may be read more at large in *Pag.* 192, 193. So that I held it ſtrange that *Stephen Radzin* would aſſume the freedom to ſend any more Legates, without other Ground of Hope, that they ſhould have better ſucceſs than the former had.

A Perſian Saint murthered.

On the 25 was a *Perſian* of reputed Sanctity murthered by a *Georgian* after a very baſe degenerate manner. The Murtherer was forthwith apprehended and brought before the Prince, where he was accuſed of the Fact, and conſequently delivered to the neareſt Allies of the Patient to uſe at their diſcretion, as is cuſtomary in *Perſia*; for rarely it happens that either the King, Prince, Deputie or the Civil Magiſtracy take notice of ſuch delinquencies, but turn over the Malefactor to the aggrieved Parties, who if they be Poor oftentimes ſell their Vengeance for Money, after which the Law is ſilent: but here the Delinquent had not that Fortune, for, the Brother of the Murthered Party had neither Poverty nor Mercy, but ſo ſoon as permiſſion was granted him, he cauſed two Men to hold him down till he had ſtabbed him with the ſame Weapon, ſaying, *Get thee hence, thou drunken Dog, to the Devil to whom thou belongeſt*; for the *Georgian* was a drunken Fellow, and executed in the ſame fit of Drunkneſs wherein he had ſo far miſtaken himſelf, ſo that the Murther, Complaint and Execution were all done in the ſpace of three Hours.

A Tragical Paſſage at a wedding.

On the 3 of *May* fell out a dolefull Tragedy at a Wedding, where when all the Company were in the middeſt of their mirth, and the Bride-

Bridegroom in a gay and jolly humour was ſuddenly ſtruck at the Heart, as if he had taken in ſomthing that was a vigorous and ſpeedy poyſon, and immediately fell down and died in the arms of his Bride. Immediatly upon this all was in a lamentable caſe: The Bridegrooms Mother was ſo impatient and concern'd that ſhe took a Knife and ript up her own Belly, that all her Bowels guſhed out, and ſhe fell to the Ground. The Siſter ſeeing this, ran out of Doors as one diſtracted, tearing her Hair and rending her Fleſh, that many wondred to think how a young Woman of that tenderneſs could ſo mangle and abuſe her Body, and at laſt ran up to the top of a ſteep Rock, whence ſhe threw her ſelf precipitantly: ſo that this fair Morning had a foul Evening, and theſe Nuptial Solemnities which began with a Comedy, concluded with a deep Tragœdy. MAY 1674

On the 9th. was a ſolemn Proceſſion made at *Scamachy* which is yearly celebrated in Memory of St. *Hoſſeyn* the ſecond Son of *Aly*, and the Grand Expounder of the *Alcoran*, who was ſtoned to death, or, as ſom aſcertain ſhot with Darts or Arrows. This Feaſt they call *Aſſchur*, which in their Language ſignifies *Ten*, for that *Hoſſeyn* when he went from *Medina* to *Kufa* was 10 days purſued by his Enemies, ſo that this Feaſt continues 10 days. This *Hoſſeyn* as I ſaid before was the youngeſt Son of the great *Aly*, for whoſe death they ſeem very ſorrowfull. About the Beginning of this Feaſt thoſe that are able apparel themſelvs in Blew, which is their Mourning, as Black is with us. During theſe 10 days they never ſhave their Hair, nor take any Raſour in their Hands, whereas at other times they make uſe of it every day. They hold alſo a very ſtrict Faſt drinking nothing but Water, and all the time howl and make a very mournfull noiſe, breathing out many fearfull curſes againſt the Murtherer, beating themſelvs continually and with that earneſtneſs till they grow black and blew. The Boys and Men run continually about the ſtreets with Flags and Daſſels, raging and bawling as if they were either drunk, or beſides themſelvs, ever crying out *O Hoſſeyn, Hoſſeyn!* Others ſit at the Threſholds and in the Galleries of the *Meſquits*, or Churches, inceſſantly crying, *O Hoſſeyn, Hoſſeyn! O Hoſſeyn, Hoſſeyn!* Before every door, and at every Window were planted many Torches, and not a Houſe how poor ſoever it was in all *Scamachy*, without a great Number of Torches and wax candles ſet all in Rows, which a

MAY. 1674. which gave a wonderfull ſhow. No leſs worthy of ſight was the Proceſſion, which was performed with many Ceremonies; and ſuch was my curioſitie that notwithſtanding all the Thumps I got, I ſtill crowded in among them to ſee all I could. Firſt of all appeared the *Chatib*, or High-prieſt, accompanied with a long rout of Inferior Clergy; The *Chatib*, or *Mufti*, himſelf was attired in a long blew Robe, with a white Torſe, or Wreath about his Head, and ſo were all the reſt of the Clergy attired after the ſame manner, yet different in Pomp and ſtatelyneſs according to their ſeveral degrees and advancement. The *Chatib* had in his hand an *Arabian* Book, out of which he read the Memorials of the Saint with an exceeding loud voice; which ended he was ſilent for a little while, and then again began all the Prieſts to ſing with a ſtrange melody or rather howling, for it was but a confuſed Harmony, ever crying out *O Hoſſeyn! O Hoſſeyn! Hoſſeyn!* In ſhort a third part of what I heard was *Hoßeyn*. After theſe followed all the Great Perſonages; and next to them 2 Great Pageants of form, ſquare, each with a pompous Canopy, theſe were ſupported and born by a certain number of Men, on the one was the Repreſentation of the Prophet being ſignified by a Perſon who had taken in a Potion which made him to ſleep for 48 hours together, lying upon a Bier. Round about the [ſuppoſed] Corps ſate 6 little Boys, who had the Art of weeping *ad unguem*. Above the Canopy ſtood two Towers very pompous and coſtly, and out of the one a Youth put forth his Head weeping aloud and dolefully cried out *Hoßeyn, Hoßeyn! O Hoßeyn, Hoſſeyn!* On each ſide the Pageant ran ſeveral young Men all naked, ſave only about the Middle, having anointed themſelvs with Flower and black *Naphtha*, that they looked more like Satyrs than Men: in their Hands they had Truncheons, wherewith they threatned (*quaſi verò*) to baſtonado the Murtherer: Others there were who carried in each hand a Flint or ſom hard ſtone, which they ſmote together, ſtill howling and weeping aloud, that had it not appeared otherwiſe by their wanton Actions when any She-ſlave came near them I ſhould have taken all for real and unfeigned ſorrow. All this while they jumped and twiſted themſelvs into many poſtures; the Air ſtill Ecchoing with *Hoſſeyn, Hoſſeyn.* Beſides theſe were 6 luſty Men of robuſt Bodies having each a naked Scymiter in the hand, and bare-headed: theſe danced after a very od manner making

making various Figures, and always at turning made an effectual Exerciſe of their Weapons, in ſuch manner that the Blood which came guſhing out of the Wounds on their Heads ran down their Shoulders with ſuch ſtreams, that no part of their Bodies was free of Blood; and to thoſe Champions was imputed a great meſure of Sanctity, for that they had voluntarily ſhed their Blood for the ſake of the great *Hoſſeyn*. In one of their Heads (as I afterwards could deſcry) were more than 20 Wounds. MAY. 1671.

After this follow'd the ſecond Pageant which was carried by the like number of Men. Above it had a Coffin, upon which was a green Turbant, and round about it were alſo 6 young Men, each one with an *Alchoran* in his Hand, wherein they continually read. After this Pageant there followed another ſmall one, on which was carried a Veſſell, not much unlike a Bathing-Tub, full of Blood, wherein ſat two Children, nothing appearing ſave only their Heads [perhaps to repreſent the 2 Sons of that reputed Martyr] This was carried with a ſtrange noiſe of vocal Muſic, but to me ſeemingly void of Rule and Judgement. Laſt of all came another ſmall Pageant, with a fair blew Silk Covering, and thereon ſate a Youngman who read all the way in a great Book. After theſe Pageants, or Brancards, followed 4 Noble-men, each leading a horſe of State, richly cappariſon'd: The Saddles being of Gold, and beſet with Precious Stones. On the far-ſide had each Horſe a *Damaskin* Scymiter, and on the near-ſide a Shield. On each Saddle was a Turbant, adorned with variety of Gems and unſpeakably rich. This Solemnity was concluded with a grand Retinu of Citizens, who ſeemingly ſurpaſſed all the reſt in Devotion. When the Pageants were come before the Door of the Deputy they ſtood ſtill: and the Deputy accompanied with all the Nobles about the Court, rode out to hear the *Chatyb* [or Sermon] that the Prieſt before mentioned, according to the cuſtom, was to preach, which he did with ſuch Zeal, as that the *Chan* [or Deputy] with all that heard him could not refrain from weeping. Moſt of the Sermon was a collaudatory Rehearſal of the Sanctity and Noble Acts of *Hoſſeyn*, together with a Hiſtorical recitation of his Martyrdom. When the *Chatyb* was concluded there came an Image of Straw mounted upon an Aſs, armed with Bow and Arrows: this Figure was to repreſent the Murtherer, who as he rode thrô the Preas, every

MAY. 1671. one contemptuouſly ſpit upon him, and curſed him with the moſt bitter Curſings of Hell, Miſery, and what elſe they could imagin, for the violent Hands he had laid upon ſo holy a man.

Another Earth-quake. On the 16 was another Earth-quake which for ſome time raged ſo, that the Ambaſſadors pallace was ſhaken, and all the Diſhes and what elſe was looſe fell; beſides ſeveral Houſes that were near us were hurled down.

A man beat to Death. On the 17 another Man was Caned to Death by 6 of the *Chans* Domeſtics: and on the ſame day died the *Chans* Son, being a Child of 6 moneths old, and buried the next day after, with great pomp and ſtation. The Body was not put in a Coffin, but carried open (after the *Perſian* manner) upon a Bier, by ſome of the greateſt Perſonages, ſome of them going on each ſide, ſupporting a Cerulean Canopy: for Blew with them, as Black with us, is the Mourning Colour. The *Chan* himſelf followed the Bier, and next to him his Son, being about 15 years of Age: after thoſe the Noble Perſonages and Courtiers, according to their rank and degree. When they were come to the Sepulchre, the Body was ſet down before the Door of the Chappel, or Oratory, where the Nobility diſtributed Alms to the Poor, beſtowing alſo very liberally certain pieces of Gold upon the Prieſts thereby injoyning them to pour out their Prayers for the Soul of the Departed, and to have him in perpetual Remembrance. This don the Body was carried inward, and laid in a new Grave, upon which was a fair Tomb or Monument of white Marble, with admirable curious Foliage, and other Ornaments of Sculpture. The Prieſts received the Body to interr it with many Ceremonies and Bowing. When all was cloſed the *Chan* drew near to kiſs the Tomb, as alſo his Son, and the reſt of the Nobility, and ſo after their former rank and order returned back to the Palace.

Death and Funeral of one of the Chans Children.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

MAY. 1671.

News from Aſtrachan. *A* Perſian *Woman and Adultereſs taken in the Fact. A Young Gentleman caned to death by Order of the Prince and complaint of his Father. Another put to the ſame death. One of the Authors Companions goes for* Iſpahan, *Hailſtones as big as Eggs. The Author and a* Venetian *entertained in an* Armenian *Monaſtery. A Woman taken in Adultery, for which ſhe is ſurrendred up to the Will and Power of her Husband, who fleas her alive, nails up her Skin upon the Wall, and throws out her Carcaſe into the ſtreet. The great Jealouſie of the Perſians. The male Children about the Court gelded. The great Slave market at* Scamachy. *The unnatural cuſtom of the* Geor- Georgians, *The Ambaſſadour receives a Charge to depart.*

ON the 19 *dito* we had very tempeſtuous Weather, with fearful Flaſhes of Lightning and Thunder, that I thought the World would be diſſolved, for it was more dreadfull than either my Tongue or Pen is ſufficient to expreſs, nor did I ever ſee the like in all my Life. And the ſame day we got Tidings from *Aſtrachan*, that the City was of a certainty taken in by the Great Duke, that the Army of the *Coſacs* was beat in open Field, and *Stephen Radzin*, the grand Belwether taken alive. The Succeſs of the Day next to the Power of the Almighty was aſcribed to the *German* and *Dutch* Forces, for which good ſervice they received conſiderable Favours from the *Czar*, and were beyond the *Ruſsians* themſelvs remunerated with ſeveral Tokens of Gratitude.

Tempeſtuous Weather.

News from Aſtrachan.

On the 20 was a great Wreſtling Match, of 6 expert Wreſtlers being ſtrangers, who quitted themſelvs in the Game with an admirable Dexterity, doing many noble Exerciſes in preſence of ſeveral Hundred Spectators, who could not behold them but with great Wonder. When they had performed all, they went about with a Porceline Diſh to deſire Money by way of reward.

On the 21 were two of the Ambaſſadors Gentlemen taken into Cuſtody, and put into fetters by the *Perſians*, for that they had lay with a *Mahometan* Woman. The Woman her ſelf was ſhortly after brought and delivered to the Ambaſſador, to deal with her according to his Diſcretion; and if he liked to hew her into Gobbets, ſuch bein the Deſire of her Husband, who declared himſelf willing to acquieſce

MAY. 1671. in what was done. But the Ambaſſadour who had been ſo long at the Academy of *Venus*, was ſuch an expert Proficient that he could ſay his Leſſon with out book as well as his Domeſtics, take'em one for one: and in ſhort had ſuch compaſſion on her that he ſent her away a free Remiſſionary, but not without reconciling her to her Husband. Soon after the Gentlemen alſo got inlargement.

On the 22 a Youngman (according to Sentence paſſed upon him) was beat to death with Sticks, being to paſs thrô the Town and at the Corner of every Street to receiv a certain number of Blows, till at laſt he dropped down dead. This was mainly occaſioned upon the requeſt of his unnatural and mercileſs Father, who was an eminent Gentleman, and Inhabitant of *Scamachy*. The Crime for which he was accuſed was a kind of Satyr, or a Paſquil, which he had written and ſent to the Governour: the main purport whereof was in theſe Words. *How comes it that your Lordſh. grows ſuch a great Saint all on a ſudden? Who has poſſeſſed your mind to alter thoſe long continued Cuſtoms of the* Perſians? *And do you not know what Dishonour it is to all the* Muſulmans *and the whole Kingdom in general? Or are you indeed becom a Chriſtian?* &c. This Innovation he meant, was an Interdiction which the *Chan* or Governour, had iſſued 3 days after the Proceſſion, That none ſhould hew and cut (as was their Cuſtom) with Swords in the Streets, like as we have ſpoke more amply in the Feaſt of *Aly*. The Father, ſom ſaid, durſt not but make complaint, leſt it ſhould have been imputed to himſelf as Miſpriſion, it being well known by others that it was his Son who ſent the Libel. But it may be obſerved that thoſe who would put the affair in that Poſture, were either prejudic'd or byaſſed Perſons. But others who were indifferent looked upon it as an Example of Unmercifulneſs and Ambition, where he only did it for Hopes of Favour from the *Chan*, which he eſteemed a Purchaſe equivalent to his ſons Life. The next day was another Man beat to Death, by 7 of the *Chans* Domeſtics before the Gates of the Palace, but for what I could not learn.

A Narrativ from Ruſſia. Upon the 26 we got another Narrativ, which confirmed the former News from *Aſtrachan*, as alſo, how that *Radzin* was carried to *Moſcou*. In the mean while Mr. *van Termund* makes preparation to go for *Iſpahan*, and with all diligence makes up a Company, to the end that he might travel more ſecure, there being then a great rumor of many In-

Inſolencies perpetrated by the Wood-rangers: and on the 29 ſet forward, taking with him *Peter Arentſz* of *Schevelingen*, one of our Ships-Company, and a *Poliſh* Jew, who had been taken by the *Scemkal-Tartars* and made his Eſcape. JUNE, 1671.

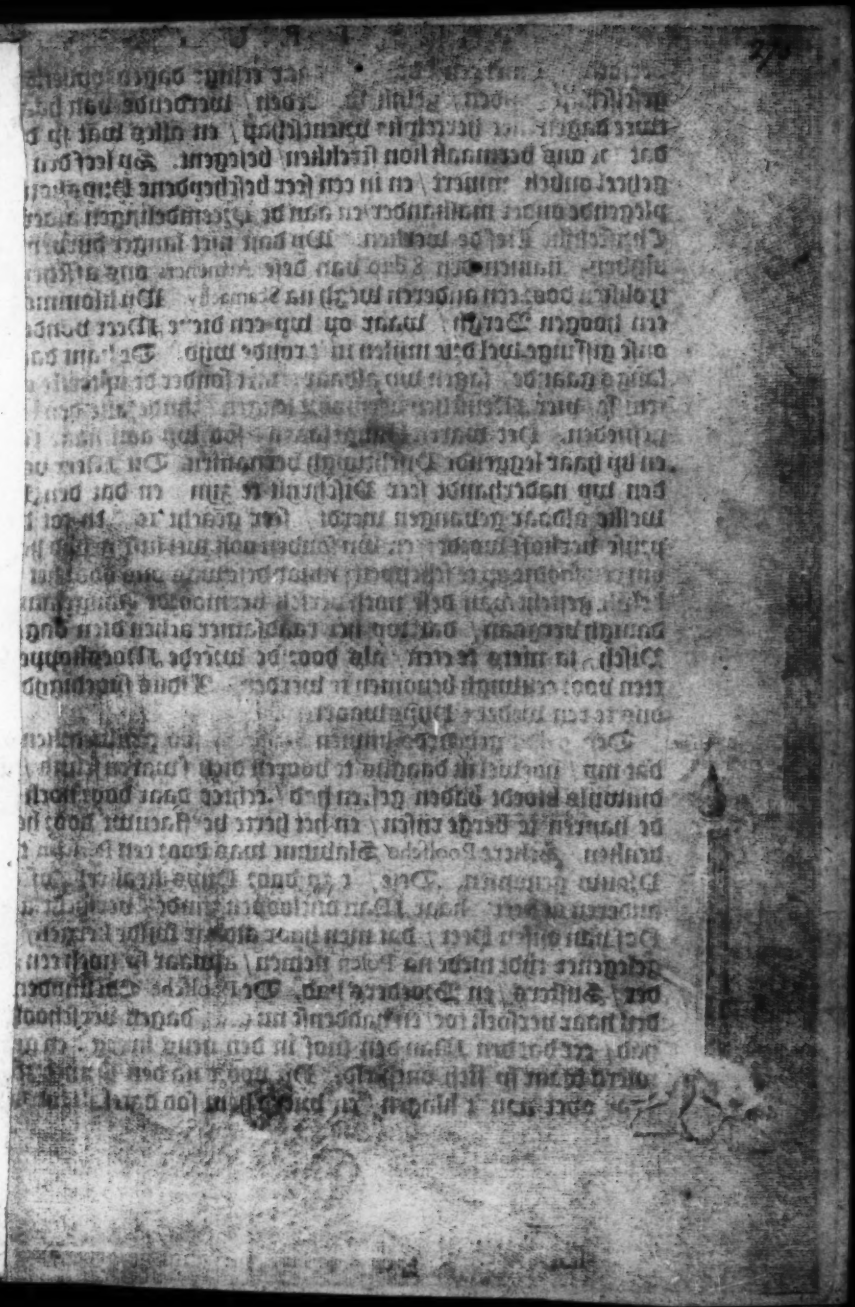
On the 30 aroſe a moſt hideous Tempeſt of Wind, Thunder, Hail and Lightning; which continued for two days together after which all was very calm and ſtill and the air very ſerene. The Hail did much damage to the Fruit, every Hailſtone being of an unuſual bigneſs, ſom as large as the Egg of a Hen or Turky. *Great Storms and Hail.*

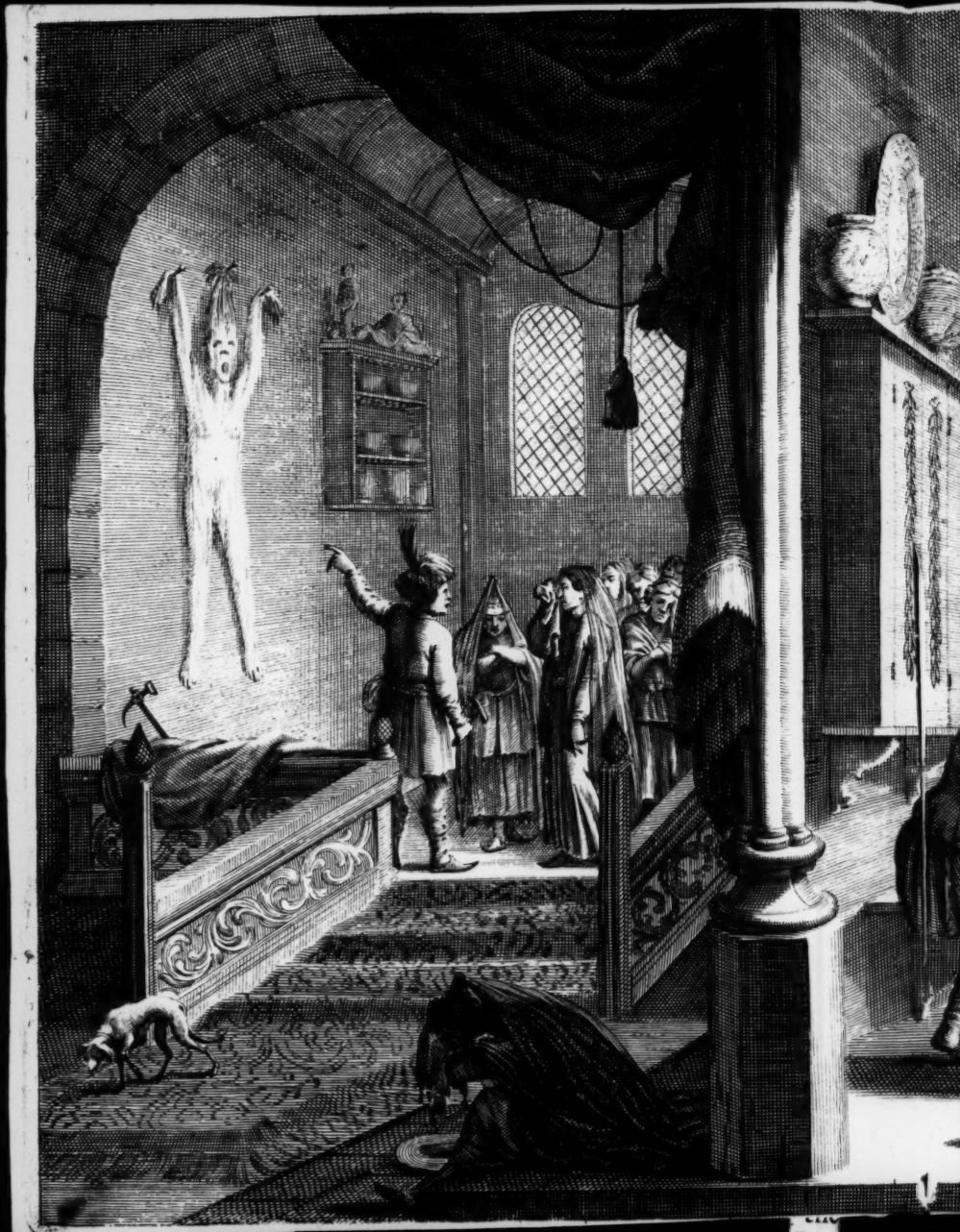
On the 6 of *June* I went with a *Venetian* (who had bin a Slave in *Turky* and run away) about 15 Miles within Land, where we found an *Armenian* Friary. The Monaſtics received and treated us very kindly, when they underſtood that we were Chriſtians, and in Slavery to the *Mahometans*. They intreated us to tell them all the paſſages we had met with abroad, which the *Venetian* firſt did, and afterwards deſiring me to do the like, I related all in brief, which they took great delight to hear, eſpecially about the taking in of *Aſtrachan*. They deſired us further to tarry with them for ſom time, which we promiſed to do, and accordingly ſtay'd there two nights. All the time they careſſed us with all kindneſs imaginable, neither ſparing for Victuals nor good Drink: profeſſing themſelvs ſorry that our condition would not allow them the happineſs of a longer enjoyment of our Company. Their manner of Life was very ſingle, without any Incumbrance of the *Mahometans*, their Hous-holding regular and gentile, and the Men among themſelvs mutually loving one another, and ſociable with ſtrangers, very charitable to all that were in neceſſity, of what Opinion or Faith ſoever they were. Right loath we were to leav them, but not daring to ſtay any longer, we took our leavs of them, thanking them for their kindneſs and civility they had ſhown us. In taking our way to *Scamachy*, we were fain to climb over ſome Hills, and one great Mountain flat at Top, upon which was a Lake, according to our gueſſing, 3 miles in Circuit. Going along the ſhore to our great amazement we found four Bodies of Men that had but newly been murthered, having their throats cut, we ſuppoſed them to be Anglers, ſeeing Fiſhing Canes and other Implements about them. However, we thinking it for two reaſons unſafe for us to ſtay there any longer, made all the haſt we could to get out

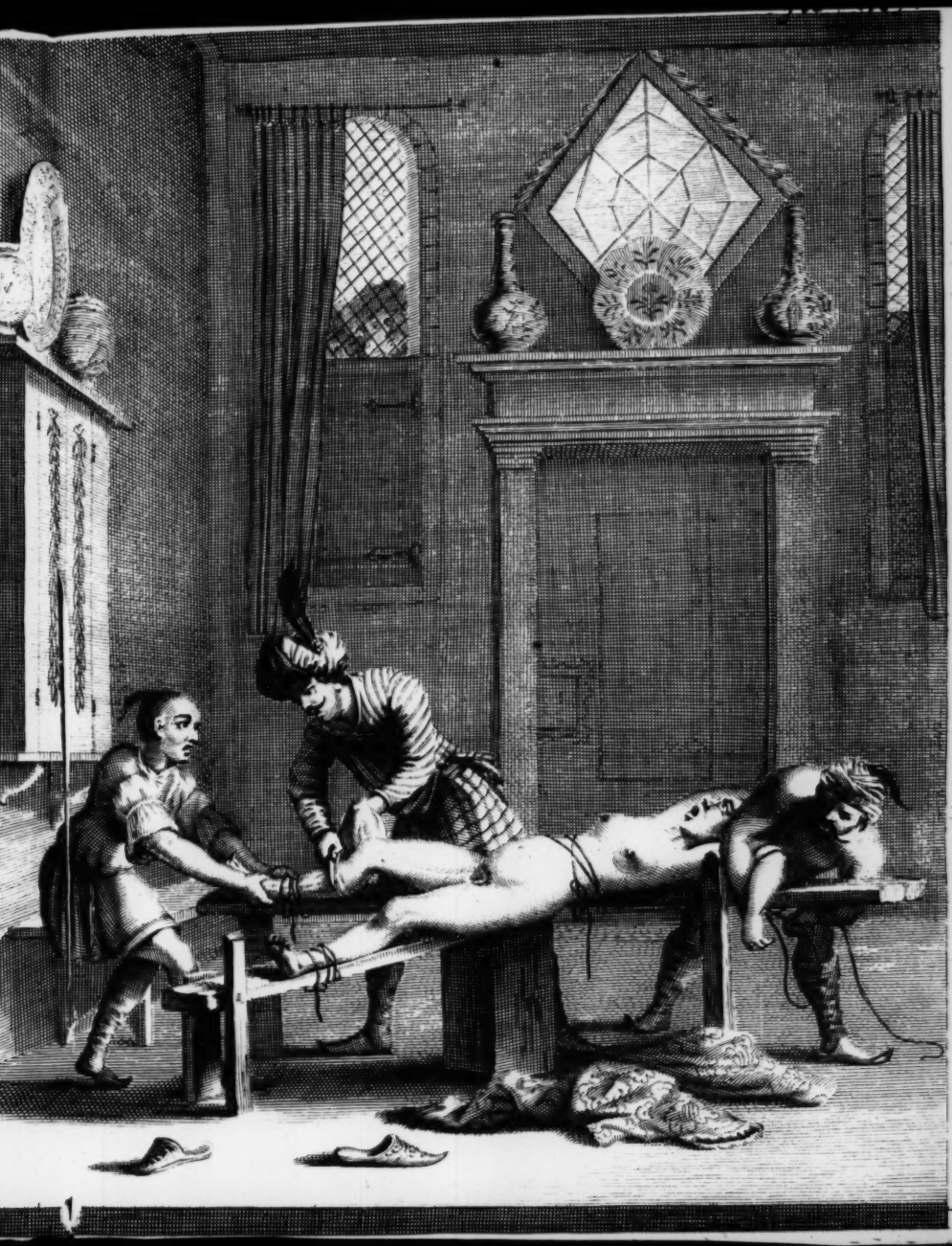
JUNE. 1671. of the way. This Lake as we afterwards underſtood was very plentifull of many kinds of delicate Fiſh, which are ſold very dear and highly eſteemed of abroad throughout all that part of the Countrey, and indeed it was once our thoughts to make a Trial if we could take any thing, till meeting with theſe new murthered Perſons, we chuſed rather to let the Fiſh remain in their Element, than by the probable conſequence to pay too great a price for our ſport.

On the 9 happened a very Tragical paſſage at *Scamachy*, which, notwithſtanding the horrible ſpectacle I had ſeen the Day before, made my Heart beat withrn my Breaſt, as it did many times after that, when it came into my mind. A *Poliſh* Woman and a Slave was taken by a *Perſian* for his Wife. Whether ſhe had ſom private Quarrel with him, or that ſhe was conſcious of ſom misbehaviour to him I cannot determine, however ſhe came to my Patron the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, firſt making a large Demonſtration of her State, and of her Friends and Family in *Poland*, ſhe requeſted that my Lord would vouchſafe her his Protection, till ſuch time as ſhe could meet with an opportunity to convey her ſelf clandeſtinly home into her own Countrey. My Lord, at the earneſt intreaty of ſom Domeſtics who were his Minions, aſſented: but after ſhe had ſo privily held her ſelf about the ſpace of 14 days, her Husband got Intelligence by ſom Pick-thank or other, where ſhe was, applies himſelf immediatly to Court, where (after a litle ſoliciting) he gets an Order to fetch her out, and uſe her as ſeemed good to him. But conſidering that the Domeſtics of my Lord were too numerous and a little unruly, he durſt not attempt to make the demand, but went back again to Court deſiring Aſſiſtance upon which the Prince ſent ſom of his Officers, who when our People ſaw that they were com in a warrantable way, durſt not oppoſe them, nor had they any conveniency to put her out of the way, ſo that ſhe was forthwith delivered into the hand of her Huſband. The Man having as was ſaid permiſſion to puniſh her at his own Diſcretion had already provided a Wooden Croſs, upon which, with the help of his Servants, he bound her faſt, being mother naked, and with his own hands flea'd her whilſt yet living. I ſtood my ſelf all the while at the Door with a great Company of Men, Women and Children, and heard her cry out moſt bitterly. Yet none thought that his cruelty was of ſo high a nature till we ſaw the

Car-







Ch
Ca
afte
of
wit
W
saw
by
con
bad
the
of
wh
son
go
Fa
cov
stit
Ch
Sla
not
the
the
me
wh
Pa
gre
in
is
bec
qu
son
cha
hav
to
per
the
ar-

Carcaſe, thrown out into the ſtreet where it lay an hour or two, and afterwards by his order was dragged into the Fields, to be devoured of the Eagles, and other Birds of prey: but he not ſatisfied herewith took the Skin and nailed it upon the Wall for a Monument and Warning to his other Wives, which were 12 in number, who never ſaw it but trembled, as indeed I my ſelf did, ſo often as I went by the Houſe, or paſſed by that way. It is a plain Proverb, not ſo common as true, *The Old Woman had not ſought her Daughter in the Oven, had ſhe never bin there her ſelf:* and ſo the Men in *Perſia*, or at leſt about theſe Parts, being generally prone to Venery, and without the bounds of Continency, harbour and ſuſtain an ill Opinion of their Wives, whom they will have to be chaſt and loyal. This Jealouſy is the reaſon that few who covet a good name and would be reputed honeſt go with any part of their bodies uncovered, ſave only their Eies, their Face being muffled up in Silks or Cotton. Thoſe who go with uncovered Heads, are ſuch as we commonly call Gameſters, and proſtitute. So ſoon as any one comes in a doors, the Woman runs into a Chamber and locks her ſelf up that ſhe may not be ſeen, althô the Slaves have often the Opportunity to violate their Maſters Couch notwithſtanding all the Indeavours they uſe to ſuppreſs them. But the King and the Great ones of the Realm prevent that by gelding their Slaves; which they doe very effectually, but Modeſty forbids me to make further mention of the Manner. They do it commonly when they are young, buying Children that are ſtollen from their Parents, and are therefore in regard of their bringing up, held in greater value than others, as alſo becauſe that there is hardly one in three that both live and like. The price which is ſet upon them is one reaſon why ordinary Perſons have them not, and another is becauſe that if they thrive they grow very fat and lazy, and conſequently unfit to do any ſervice they have occaſion for. And by reaſon that Women-Slaves are ſomewhat rare among them, the Merchants and Citizens Wives are moſtly attended by Men, who if they have a ſprightly and airy way and Carriage, are ſomtimes admitted to enjoy thoſe illicit Pleaſures, which in proceſs of time they recompence with the loſs of their Lives.

June. 1671.

The Ieaſouſy of the Perſians.

Eunuchs.

It happened once that my Patron received a ſudden Meſſage from the Prince to com to Court; upon which he gave me Order to ſaddle his

JUL. 1671. his beſt Horſe: now the Saddle which he ordered me to ſet on being richly ſet with Pearls and Precious ſtones, he kept it alwaies, in the Chamber where his Plate was, ſo that I muſt paſs through three Chambers to fetch it, but opening the Door of the ſecond Room I found my Patroneſs ſtanding naked in the Bath, upon which being in a great amazement, and fearful that this raſh Action might be repreſented to my Maſter, who might make me pay for my Peeping, in all haſt I retreated and offered to run out again, which ſhe ſeeing, cried out, *Ho! ho! don't run away, go thrô and fullfil your Lords Commands.* This ſhe ſaid with a ſmiling Countenance, which cured me of the Palſie, that the ſight of her had already ſtruck me into.

The Ambaſſadors Brother goes to Iſpahan. On the 10th. the Ambaſſadors Brother departed for *Iſpahan*, to make complaint againſt the *Chan*, about the Money that the Ambaſſadour had upon Intereſt and diſburſed for him, which he could not get in.

The great Slave-Fair. On the 11th. of *July* is a great Fair at *Scamachy*, upon which day above 500 Slaves were brought to Market, that being their main Traffiic. Of theſe Slaves are of all ſorts of People, Men, Women, Children, Chriſtians and Pagans, *Polonians*, *Ruſſians*, *Georgians* and *Circas-Tartars*. The *Poles* & *Ruſſes* are commonly ſtole by the *Dageſtan-Tartars*, as alſo the *Circaſſes* which are Heathens, for according to the Voice of the *Alchoran* no *Mahometan* [or *Muſulman*] may be made a Slave, which mainly tends to the Propagation of *Turciſm*. On the contrary the *Circas-Tartars* in revenge do ſteal the *Dageſtans* and ſell them to the *Ruſſians*. And ſo the *Tartars*, althô ſeemingly many Nations, yet doubtleſs of old one People, live in conſtant jarrs and private Hoſtility, who if they had but Diſcretion and Conduct anſwerable to their Power, were in a capacity to ſubdue both *Ruſs*---and *Perſia*. But as for the *Georgians* they are generally ſuch as are ſold by their own inhuman Parents, and in that out do both *Turk* and Pagan who will not make ſale, of ſuch as are of their own Opinion or Nation, much leſs their own Children, which is a thing ſo beſides Nature, that the moſt ſavage Beaſts do abhor it, and will as ſoon part with their Life as with their Young. This Fair, which, as I have ſaid, conſiſts moſt in the Sale of ſtollen Booty is a great advantage to *Derbent* and *Scamachy*, which of late years ſeem to flouriſh mainly, and for this reaſon is frequented by many Merchants, where they ordi-

ordinarily find all things at an available price. The Slaves being brought to Market, the Buyer goes about and ſeeing one he likes, the firſt thing he does is to look him in the mouth, as we do Horſes, cauſes him to be ſtript, and feels him all over, but eſpecially his Wriſts and Muſcles, thence collecting what ſtrength he is of, and what ſervice he is able to do him. If the Buyer intend to imploy him about Meſſages, he cauſes him to run out 10 or 12 Paces, others make them to ſtand in all Poſtures, and ſo value them according to their Age, ſoundneſs of Body and ſtrength. If the Buyer chance to find any reaſonable fault, failing, or blemiſh in his Slave within the ſpace of 3 daies, he may return him to the ſeller and receive the value again; and this advantage has the Buyer alſo in moſt other things, or if I am not miſtaken in all ſave damageable Commodities. *Anno* 1671. *Slaves how bought and tried.*

On the 12 the *Calenter* who is next to the *Chan* in Power and Office came to our Ambaſſador with an Order from the *Scuch*, to bid him make preparation for his Journey, and in all haſt to depart. But the Ambaſſador returned him his wonted reply: "That he was at pre- "ſent deſtitute of Money, and not able to undertake the Journey, "unleſs the *Chan* would pay him what he was owing him, upon "the receipt of which he would immediatly go, without more or "further delay. *The Poliſh Ambaſſador receivs another Order to depart.*

CHAP. XXVI.

A dreadfull Tempeſt. Great Balls of Fire fall upon the Earth. A moſt fearful Deluge, whereby Houſes, Men and abundance of Cattel are carried away. The Chan *receivs another* Robe of Favour. *The Offerings of the* Banjans, *for the Fowl and Fiſh. The Religious Exerciſe of the* Perſian *Women. The Author's Diſcourſe with the* Chan. *The Author meets with one of the* Tartars *who had made him Slave. He gets out of the ſervice of the* Poliſh *Ambaſſador. The great Bounty and Kindneſs of his Patron* Hadzi Biram, *and of* Aline *his Patroneſs. One of his Company, made free.*

ON the 13 was a violent ſtorm, with Thunder and Lightning which very much endamaged the Ambaſſadours Houſe, and took away the Roof of many other Houſes round about. The Air was as if it had been all Fire, and a Sulphury flame, and ſomtime *A great Storm.*

Jul. 1671. were ſeen great balls like burning Brimſtone falling down. About 8 in the Evening I ſaw a great maſſy lump of Fire, which made the Earth ſhake again when it fell, and ſo burſt all to pieces. Formidable, I thought, were the great Ordnance in the *Dardanelli* when they were diſcharged, being reputed the greateſt in the World: But there was as much difference between this and them, as there is between a Mountain and a Mole-Hill. About 2 hours after fell down 6 more, which were as big as Hogs-heads, theſe conſumed and waſted a great part of the ground where they light. This Tempeſt continued about 48 hours; after which followed a very calm ſeaſon.

On the 15 we had news from *Ardebil*, how that *Monſr. Termund* with *P. Arentſz* his ſervant were arrived there ſafe and well, altho not without ſom difficulty by the way, meeting with ſome Robbers, but the *Konjack* telling them that he was ſent to the *Schach* on an Expreſs, they let him go without further trouble.

A great Deluge. The next day fell abundance of Rain, that all the whole Face of the Countrey round about *Scamachy* lay under Water, and the ſtreams coming from the Mountains brought down huge Pieces of Rocks and Stones which came down into the Town and carried away ſeveral Houſes with them, as alſo many People who were on every ſide environed with the Floods that they could not help themſelves. This Tempeſt concluded with fearful Thunder-claps and Lightning, as if the laſt day were com.

Many people drowned. On the 17 the *Chan* had a *Robe of Favour* ſent him from the King. The Envoyé who brought it being arrived at the Kings Houſe without the City ſent notice and acquainted the *Chan* with his coming, who according to the Cuſtom ſet his Houſe in order and took leav of his Friends, fearing that this was upon a ſharper Errand than the laſt, the more I ſuppoſe, becauſe my Patrons Brother had been at *Iſpahan* to acquaint the King, that his Brother, the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador had ſuch a ſum of Money due to him from the *Chan*, and could not for the want thereof undertake his Journey for *Warſaw*. The *Chan* makes preparation to go and know the Kings Pleaſure, being mounted on a ſtately *Arabian* Horſe, and followed with a great Retinu of Nobility and Courtiers, all well mounted, as before. So ſoon as he was com there the Envoyé fulfills his Commiſſion and delivers the Robe, after the ſame manner & with the ſame Ceremonies

monies as were before mentioned: and having taken his leave of the Courier returned into the City with variety of Wind-Muſic, Kettle-drums and Trumpets. *Aug.* 1671.

On the 18 of *Auguſt* we had a great Earth-quake which raged a long time together, in which many Dwelling Houſes, Stables and Barns without the Walls on the Eaſt-ſide of the Town were thrown down, and abundance of Men cruſh'd to pieces. When the Earth-quake was paſt, it began to rain very hard, and blew extremely. The ſame day I had occaſion to go without the Walls where walking a little towards the Fields I ſaw about 100 *Benians* performing Sacrifices to the Fowls and Fiſh. They lay upon their knees and ſtrowed Rice and Beans upon the Land and in the River. Theſe *Indians* will never kill any living Creature, not ſo much as Lice, which althô they take yet ſet them down in ſom place or other to paſture, and let them ſhift for themſelvs. When they ſee any Perſon go out a Birding with a Fowling-piece, Ginns, or other Implements they will give him Money to go home again; or, if they perceiv any one about to ſhoot they will be ſure to ſpoil his Game, by chacing away the Fowl, inſomuch, that if the Party be a Choleric man, they are in danger of their Lives. The like they doe with the Fiſh, when they ſee any com to Angle, and trouble the water. When they are about to make water, or eaſe themſelvs they alwaies look about them if there be no Vermin or any thing that hath life upon the Ground, which if there be, they remove it away very carefully, leſt they ſhould do it harm. During the time of theſe Feſtival Days, which happens 8 times a year, they will burn no Candle, Tapour, or Torch; leſt Muskettos, and other Inſects that fly about the Flame ſhould ſinge their Wings. They have alſo offered the *Chan* a conſiderable ſum of Money that no Beaſt ſhould be ſlain during the time of theſe Feaſts, but the *Chan* would not liſten to any ſuch thing. Theſe people are alſo very ſuperſtitious in many other things, and withall ſtrict and zealous. They will not uſe either Diſh or any other Veſſel belonging to ſuch as are not of their own Sect, yet will ſuffer others to make uſe of theirs. They abſtain from Fleſh, and Fiſh, and whatſoever had, or may have life, inſomuch that they are as ſhy of an Egg as of the Bird that lays it. They are very ſubtle in Traffic, and in that are ſaid to ſurpaſs not only the other *Indians*, but all other Nations.

Superſtition of the Banjans.

Ave. 1671. On the 26 was a great Holiday among the *Perſians*, when as all the Women went to perform their Solemnities at the Graves of their deceaſed Friends and Allies upon the Mountains, where they frequently beat their Heads, Kiſſed the Tombs and other Ceremonies more, which are all the Religious Duties their Women are injoyned to, that I could obſerve: for they never go to the *Moſquees*, or Churches, nor ever do they pray at home, but leav all to the Piety of the Men, who go to prayer 3 times a day, and there appear very devout, to wit at Morning, at Noon and at Night, invoking the Aſſiſtance of the Angels. At their firſt Entrance into the *Moſquite*, they utter theſe words, *This I do in the Name of the Almighty GOD:* which ſaid they utter ſom ſhort Prayer, that they have by form preſcribed, directing it to certain Angels, that they would vouchſafe to chace away the Devil, that he may not incommodate them in their Prayer. When they have made their Addreſs to the Angels, they then apply themſelvs to GOD, in theſe words: *Praiſed be GOD, the Lord of the Laſt Judgement. Thou O Heavenly GOD haſt power to help us, wherefore we adore thee. Help us to find and continue on the right Way, not on the Way where ſinners commit ſins, but on that Way where no Error is.* Amen.

The next day being the 27 I preſented *Hadzi Biram* my former Patron with the Model of a Ship and a Galley which coſt me about 3 Moneths Labour. On the Ship were 40 Guns, and 10 on the Galley, with 42 Oars, both being complete, as to Maſts, Sails Rigging, Anchors, &c. *Hadzi* accepted of it kindly, and forthwith preſented it to the Prince as a great Rarity. The Prince was greatly taken with it, and asked *Hadzi Biram*, whether I was at *Scamachi*, which underſtanding deſired to ſee me; upon which my Patron ſent a Slave to fetch me. I had hopes that this might work out my Redemption and bring me into Favour, went without much delay to give Attendance, where being admitted and come within preſence I bowed after the *Perſian* manner, with my Hand upon my Breaſt. The Prince, ſeeing me ſtand at a diſtance, bad me com near, which I did. Then he fell to asking me ſom Queſtions as to my Countrey, and the Occaſion of my coming thither, which I anſwered. Then he asked me if ſuch Ships ever ingaged in Battel, one againſt another? To which I replyed, That 2 Fleets being between 2

and

and 300 Sail of the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, encountered each other, continually firing their Guns, and then proceeded to Boarding, Sinking, Burning, or Blowing up. He then asked me, why thoſe two Nations profeſſing one Faith and Religion made War upon each other. I anſwered him, that it was for no other reaſon than the *Mahometans* made War againſt each other, and thoſe two mighty Potentates the *Schach* of *Perſia*, and the *Ottoman* Emperour, profeſſing one and the ſame Faith in ſubſtance. The Prince turning about to *Hadzi Biram*, told him that what I ſaid was juſtly true. Upon this came in ſom Great Perſonage, and giving me the Beck, a Token that I muſt withdraw, I went away as much a Slave as I came in. AUG. 1671.

On the 28 was a great Silver Goblet ſtole out of our Houſe, but there was ſuch a narrow ſcrutiny that the Thief was immediatly found out, and after ſeveral blows on the Foot with a Staff, was put in Fetters. He was a *Georgian*, and the Ambaſſadors Townsman.

On the 31 I took a melancholic Walk through the Town, and immediatly had a Reſcontre with one of the *Tartars* that took us and made us Slaves, he being the very Man that tied me to his Horſes Tail, dragging me backwards thrô Thorns and Brambles ſtone-naked. I had no ſooner ſeen him but my Blood began to boil in my Veins, and my heart beat, ſtill ſtudying what way to be avenged of the Villain. I dogged him ſo far till I found a convenient place, and having a good Truncheon in my Hand, with a knot at the end, as the *Perſians* commonly carry about with them, with which I lent him ſuch a Dandy-flute on the Fore-head, that he tumbled down like an Ox, upon which not willing to loſe my Labour I pumme'ld ſo about the Chaps, that Blood came guſhing out at his Noſe and Ears; and well it was that I had not my Knife about me, for if I had, I ſhould ſurely have ſent him to ſalute his Grandfather: yet my fear was that I had already ſent him on that Errand, for he lay as dead upon the Ground, which I obſerving, and dreading the conſequence, made all the haſt I could to get away: However being ſeen by ſom *Perſians*, who it ſeems had bin Spectators all this while at a diſtance, one of them caught me by the Arm and with a ſurly look, asked me, ſaying, *What is your meaning, Friend? d'ee intend to murther a Man at noon-day upon the Street? Hold, hold, you are not to go ſo, you muſt be anſwerable to the Governour for this Inſolency.* But to ſatisfy them, I made

Anno 1671. anſwer, *That he was a* Dageſtan *Plagiary or*, *Manſtealer*, *and took me being a Free Perſon to ſell me as a Slave*; and with one told them, how inhumanly and with what cruelty he had uſed me: I told them alſo that I was a Domeſtic of the *Poliſh* Ambaſſadour: Hearing this they let me go: but coming at the Corner of the Street I met with 10 or 12 of his Company, all *Tartars*, who no ſooner underſtood what was done but they ran all over the Town to ſeek me, and perceiving my ſelf environed on every ſide I ran into a Tobacco houſe under pretext of ſmoking a Pipe, paying my uſual Penny: and here I lurk'd till I thought the Coaſt was clear, and ſo ran home. But it was not long before I heard a whole Troop of *Tartars* at the Gate, who were the ſame that followed me, bringing the ſilly Miſcreant along with them, all bloody and plaiſtered with Kennel-dirt, to ſhow him to my Lord. The Ambaſſadour underſtanding what was the Matter, called me to him, and hearing all the whole Paſſage, ſaid to me, *Get you gone, you Loggerhead, why did you not ſtrike home? then we had not had this clutter at the Door. Hence, hence, I ſay, and do your buſineſs better the next time when it comes to your turn, go turn me this Rabble from the Door.* A hard Taſk upon my Word, yet coming below, all the Gentlemen and Servants waited there, longing to hear what reſult I had, and underſtanding, what the Ambaſſadours Pleaſure was, they reſolved unanimouſly to furniſh themſelvs with Truncheons and Clubs, and fall upon them on a ſudden, which we did and threſh'd them manfully back and ſides, for we were 2 to one: The poor *Dageſtan* that wanted full Satisfaction got a handſom ſhare in the Fray, and was ſo throughly baſted with Oil of Canes that he who at the firſt coming to the Door, pretended that he could not go, or ſtand, was ſo well anointed that he knew how to cut a Caper as well as his Companions. Which I alſo ſaid to a Gentleman that told it to my Lord. He laughed heartily, ſaying, *I proteſt this* Hollander *is an excellent Surgeon.*

The Time drew on when all the Caravans fitted and made preparation for *Iſpahan*, which I greatly longed for. And to loſe no Opportunity that would make for it, I addreſſed my ſelf to my Patron humbly begging that I might have my Liberty, which at laſt he aſſented to, on Condition I would be accountable to him for the 150 *Abas*, which he told me he paid for me, refuſing to give it me without. However he let me know privately by a third Perſon, that

if I was desirous to be free that I should give him a certain Present, which was named. Finding now that I had such means of gaining my sweet Freedom, I applied my self to Monsr. *L. Fabritius*, of whom I got so much Money as I thought would serv my Turn. With this Money I bought a good *Persian* Horse; but coming to present it, he had no liking to it, so that I was fain to buy another, which I thought might please him better; yet this he fancied no better than the former, so that I was fain to look out for another. The *Persian* [Jockey] show'd me another, and a stately *Arabian* Gelding, for which I was fain to give a greater Sum. As for the other two the Seller took them again for the same Money, for that is an Established Rule in *Persia*, that when ever a Man buys any such Merchandise, to wit, Slaves, or Cattel, he may return it in 3 days, if it be not for his Turn. This satisfied my Patron very well and upon my delivering it, told me I might go when I saw conveniency. *October* 1671. *The Author obtains his Freedom.*

On the 29th. of *October* I went about to take my leav of all my Friends and Benefactors. The many great Favours that were shown me from *Hadzi Biram* my former Patron, and the great Civility of his Lady obliged me above the rest to perform that piece of Duty and manifest my thankfulness to them for their Bounty. When I came there I found my Patroness *Altina* at home, the rest being all gone to bath as they do every day. My Patron himself was also abroad about his Affairs. My Patroness upon my coming in bad me welcom, having understood the reason of the Visit: and seeing me stand at a distance, bad me sit down, saying, her Husband would com home at Noon. Entring into som earnest discourse, she asked me what my Master, the Ambass. had given me for the service I had don him, *Nothing at all, Madam*, said I, *but my liberty to famish, which I must certainly have don, if I had not been supplyed by your bountiful Goodness, to whom I have made bold to have recourse, so often that I was asnamed. Well*, replies the good Gentlewoman, *has he given you nothing, as a Corrolary for your Faithfullness? I shall do it my self, upon condition you tell it to no person whatsoever*; and with that fetched me a costly Jewel, and several pieces of Money, which far outvalued the Price I was sold for. After a little discourse she desired me to stay at *Scamachy*, and so renewed what she had propounded to me at *Derbent*, to wit, that we should go together for *Moscovia*, and so for *Holland*; but I weigh-

OCTOB. 1671. I weighing the danger of the *Coſacs*, who ſtill moleſted the *Caſpian* Sea, durſt not reſolv thereupon, but deſired her to put that out of her mind. She perceiving me not at all flexible to imbrace her Propoſals, grew on a ſudden very Heartleſs and dejected, and with a deep ſigh ſaid, *Well, I find my ſelf in deſpair of ever coming into Chriſtendom, yet the Will of GOD be don: and ſeeing you are reſolved to go for* Iſpahan *you would do well to take your Journey with my Husband, who intends if the ſeaſon prove good to ſet forward to morrow, very early.* Incredible was my Joy to hear the news, that my Patron was to take the Journey ſo ſuddenly, who had an entire and unfeigned Love for me, as I have already ſhown. About 2 hours after my coming thither came my Patron himſelf, who underſtanding by my Patroneſs that I was com to take my laſt leav of him, bade me ſit down, and after a friendly welcom told me if I would go along with him to *Iſpahan*, he would bear my Charges. I accepted of his kind Offer, with all telling him, how that I was aſhamed of the freedom I had aſſumed to my ſelf in being a continual burthen and Charge to him: but ſince it was an intention of his to heap yet greater favours upon me, I pray'd him to admitt 2 more of my Countreymen into our Company, to wit, *L. Fabritius* and *Chriſtian Brandt*, who were redeemed by the *Eaſt-India* Company, upon the Interceſſion of Monſr. *Termund*, they bearing their own Charges: He made anſwer, John, *for your ſake it ſhall be don althô there were Twenty of 'em.* When all was in a readineſs I went to give my Patroneſs the laſt Adieu, and obſerved that Tears ſtood in her Eies. *William B. Klopper* I would fain have had along with us, but he judged it better to ſtay with the *Poliſh* Legate, thinking to come that way, and thrô *Moſcovia* ſooner home, than by the *Indies*, the more becauſe he found himſelf unſound of Body, and very unfit to undertake ſo great a Journey, and after that ſo long a Voyage, and paſs the Line twice; thus with Tears we took our Leavs of each other, with order that who ſoever did firſt arrive at home ſhould give an account of the laſt Condition he left the reſt in. The ſame day that we left *Scamachi* I met with *Meyndert Meyndertſz*, who, as was ſaid in *Pag.* 258, being a Smith by his Trade, made Knives and Swords for his Patron at *Bachu*, and had continued ſo long in Slavery, this Place being the moſt noted in all the Countrey for Steel and Iron work, as *Neurenburg* in *Germany*, or *Sheffield* in *England*. His Maſter had

had tried all means poſſible both by Promiſes and Threats, to make him renounce *Chriſtianity* and imbrace *Mahometaniſm.* He was alſo redeemed at the Charges of the *Eaſt India* Company, and deſigned for *Gammeron* by way of *Iſpahan*, but he being not altogether provided for the Journey we could not get him along with us in the ſame *Caravan.* Oct. 1671.

CHAP. XXVII.

Their departure out of Scamachi. *The Countrey about* Kaſily *deſcribed and the manner of living of the Inhabitants. A Deſcription of the River* Araxes. *The Heath of* Mokan, *whither all the* Banditti *and Mutinous Perſons have recourſe. Abundance of Tortoiſes near* Balharu. *The Poverty, yet contented Life of the People and Inhabitants there about. The Author ſet upon by Robbers. The* Carravan *Aſſailed and Plundered. A famous ſtone Bridge. The ſepulchre of* Zeyde Tzeybrail. *Arrival at* Ardebil. *The Situation of that Town. The bitter Cold. Great and raging Whirl-winds. Extraordinary good Wheat. The great Toll and Duty paid for Sheep. Seven and Fifty Towns within the Juriſdiction of* Ardebil. *A Deſcription of the City, of it's Streets, and of the Street of* Strumpets, *who are Poeteſſes and ordained to compoſe Hymns of Praiſe to the name of the Great* Aly. *Free Places within the City. The Markets and Shops. Sumptuous* Mezids *and Chappels.*

ON the 30 *dito*, by Gods good Conduct we ſet forward, with the whole *Caravan*, which conſiſted of 2000 Men, or upwards, and about 1000 Camels and Horſes of Carriage. My Maſter alſo had 20 Horſes of his own in particular loaden with Cheſtnuts, for a Preſent to the King of *Perſia*, for one having any Matter, or Affair at Court never appears before either the *Scach*, or any ſubordinat Prince, empty handed. Our way was over very high and ſteep hills: amongſt which we found the Sepulchre of a great *Perſian* Saint called *Pyr Mardechan*, being at the foot of the Mountains of *Faherlu.* The Countrey here about lies waſte and deſart, there being neither Inhabitant, nor Proviſion to be had by the way, ſo that we made all the haſt we could to get the *Carawanſera.* This hard travailing was not very unwelcom to us, becauſe that the weather was cold, altho ſom of the Horſes being heavy loaden and tired were left behind. About the Evening we came to *Kaſily* where we took up our nights

Oct. 1671. lodging. The Countrey round about *Caſiy* is altogether barren and dry, except here and there ſome good paſturage, ſo that the manner of Living with the Inhabitants is like that of the *Tartars*, moving to and again over the face of the Countrey with their Wives, Children, Utenſils, Cattel, and what elſe they have, and when they ſet down pitch their Tents all in Rows, which they call *Oſtak*. During our travailing thrô this Countrey we could get litle elſe but Milk to refreſh our ſelves: however my Patron out of his Bounty would not ſuffer me to want for any thing, but imparted to me what he had as well Victuals to eat, as Wine to drink, which ſerved me for a good Breaſt-plate againſt the Cold.

Having ſtaid one night at *Kaſiy*, we ſet forward and about 8 a clock the next evening came to a fair Village called *Tzawaar*, or *Tzawat*, as ſome call it, which is ſo much as to ſay, a Thorow-fare; becauſe that here is the Paſſage which brings over the grand River *Araxes*, and here every one is to ſhow his Paſport, out of fear that ſome *Turks* ſhould ſlip over with the *Caravan*, of whom the *Perſian* is alwaies jealous, and are conſtrained to take ſharp notice of every particular Perſon. At this place is a long Bridge made of Keels, and thwarted with maſſy Planks, that are faſtned together with great Bolts and Chains, which for better ſecurity is guarded with a good number of Soldiery. When we were tranſported over the ſaid River, we took our Nights-reſt in the Open-fields.

A Deſcription of the River Araxes. The River *Araxes* takes its head about the high Mountains between *Schirwan* and *Mokan* behind Mount *Ararat*, running North-eaſt till it finds the River *Kur*, or *Cyrus*, where it diſgorgeth it ſelf, about 39 *degr.* 54 *min.* Northerly latitude, where theſe two Rivers are incorporated. *Kur*, as it is vulgarly called, riſes in the Mountains of *Georgia*, or *Gurgiſtan*. *Araxes* is reckoned to be one of the ſwifteſt Rivers in all *Aſia*, very deep and good Water. *Araxes* alſo receives ſeveral other noble Rivers, to wit, *Caraſu*, *Senki*, and *Kerni Arpa*; About the Mouth of *Caraſu* it is at the deepeſt, but about a league from *Ordabath* it makes a horriſonant roaring and amoſt hideous murmur, where it receives the floods of the famous *Mochan*, which River, as well as the *Araxes*, abounds with various kinds of Fiſh. The Banks which in moſt Places mount very high, are all grown ore with the ſhrub *Glizyrrhiza*, a kind of Liquirice, as alſo Liquirice of the com-

mon

mon kind, but far thicker than either the *Spaniſh*, *German*, or that which is brought from *Moſcovia*, for I have ſeen ſom of it that was thicker than my Arm. NOV. 1671.

On the 3 of *November* we travailed 5 leagues over the Heath of *Mochan*, and ſaw by the way many Hurdles and Boors Cottages, but durſt not call at any to provide our ſelvs with Refreſhments, being ſenſible of the perils, for hither are all thoſe ſent to Exile whom the *Scach* thinks good to baniſh, and hither reſort all the Mutineers; ſo that theſe like the *Banditti* in the *Alps*, render the way very unſafe and incommodous to travel, ſomtimes ſurprizing and aſſailing the *Caravans*, when they find themſelvs of Force enough, or the *Caravan* too weak to withſtand'em.

On the 4th. *dito*, we ſet forward, and in the way found the River *Baltharu*, which for Greatneſs gives place to all the before named; but, for the Multitudes of Tortoiſes that are taken here about, no leſs famous nor inferiour to any other in all the ſurface of the Countrey. All along the Banks we ſaw holes and caves which thoſe Animals had made in the Sand, the ſhoar appearing like a Coney-borrough. Theſe Caves have their mouth or entrance alwaies to the Southward, where they lay their Eggs. On the Countrey through which this River ſoftly glides we ſaw ſeveral Cottages or Tents, as we did the day before, but found the Inhabitants harmleſs and very poor, yet merry and jocund, the Children were ſtark naked, and the Men and Woman had hardly cloaths enough to cover their middle. They received us in very friendly manner according to their ability, bringing us Milk for our ſelvs, and Provender for the Camels and Horſes, which they ſold at a very mean and inconſiderable Price, conſidering under what neceſſity we were then. This day we travailed 6 [*Dutch*] Leagues. *Multitudes of Tortoiſes about Baltharu.*

On the 5 we travailed about as far as we did the day before, but were fain to take up our Lodging under the great Canopy of Heaven, ſetting down with the whole *Caravan*, near ſom Water-pitts, where we found good paſturage for the Beaſts, conſidering the ſeaſon of the year.

The next day we found an end of the Heath *Mokan*, and had High-land to travail over, as the Mountains of *Bethzyrvan*, or *Bethzyrum*. This day we croſſed a ſmall River (if I well remember) 12 times, having a crooked or ſerpentine Courſe, which the Merchants

Nov. 1671. of *Scamachy* for their Conveniency, had promiſed a conſiderable Sum of Money to ſom Ingenieurs to to make ſtreight, yet by reaſon of many intervening Hills, and thoſe moſtly of a hard rock could not be effected. At night we got the Village *Schechmurat*, where my Patron ſent me out to fetch ſom Spring-Water: but being about half an [*Engliſh*] mile without the Town was aſſail'd by 3 Robbers, who ſuddenly came running out upon me, having their Eies fixed my Armor; ſo that in all probability, that which I had for my Defence would have been my Death, if ſom belonging to the *Caravan* and ſent upon the ſame Errand, had not com in time to aſſiſt me; for I was almoſt out of breath with defending my ſelf, having my Back againſt the Ruins of an old Wall, which ſeemed to be the Relicts of ſom Watch-Tower. One of the 3 I had wounded very ſore on the Arm, but the other two breaking in proved too ſtrong for me: yet when they ſay the reſt com in and cloſe up with them, thought it better to make uſe of their Heels than their Hands.

On the 7th. we travailed over very hilly and montanous Ground, encamping that night in a Valley, which was waſt, and deſtitute of Inhabitants.

On the 8th. we came to a very fair and commodious *Caravanſera*, built at the Charges of the *Indian* Traders, for the conveniency of their *Caravans*: Here we intended to remain over night, but beginning to take our Reſt, were alarm'd upon a ſudden aſſault of a great Troop of Robbers, who fell upon the *Caravan* on every ſide, and plundered all they came at, that was of any value and portable; and altho we had timely notice to defend our ſelvs, yet they had got a conſiderable Booty, and made their eſcape without the loſs of any Perſon or the leſt damage. We therefore fearing that the incouragement and ſucceſs they had met with might embolden them to make up a ſtronger Troop, and conſequently our tarrying there might be very unſafe, it was unanimouſly concluded that we ſhould break up, and being fair Weather, purſue our Journey by travailing the night, as we did, and about 12 a clock came to *Tzanle*, which is a beautiful Town, but not fortified, where it was thought fit that we ſhould ſtay till the next morning: *Tzanle* is a Paradiſe in regard of it's pleaſant Situation; round about which is nothing to be ſeen, but Orchards, Gardens and Houſes of Recreation. Here we ſupplied our ſelvs with

with all neceſſarys & refreſhments, which we had for a very mean price. *Nov.* 1671.

On the 9th we found very bad travailing way and with great Difficulty, went over the Mountains of *Trizetlu*, out of which Mountains ariſeth the River *Caraſu*, and after it has encompaſſed many Mountains glides with a ſoft and gentle ſtream thrô the Valleys, till it finds the great *Araxes*, into which it diſgorgeth it's ſelf with an incredible noiſe. Near the Village *Samian* is a very famous Bridge, all of Stone, computed to be 450 Foot long, and withall very broad. This Bridge we paſſed over, and towards night came to *Trabedar* a Village ſeated in a pleaſant Landſhip, where we took up our Nights-lodging, but not our Nights-reſt, for we were horribly tormented with Fleas and Lice, that being (as in *Scotland*) the Countrey-Plague, which I preſume comes from the Heat of the Cows-dung, that the Inhabitants dry and ſtow up in their Houſes, to uſe for Fewel. *A famous ſtone Bridge.* *Lice and Fleas.*

The next day we broke up, and went thrô the Town *Kelchera*, which is about half an hours walking from *Ardebil*, where is the noble *Mauſoleum*, or Sepulchre of *Zide Tzaybrail*, the Father of *Sceih Sephy*. This *Tzaybrail* was in his life time a man of a mean and ſlender Fortune, as well in Subſtance as Parts, but *Sedredin* his Grandchild willing to make him coëqual with his Father in the Calender, cauſed all his Bones to be gathered together and brought to this Shrine, which was erected to his perpetual Memory. The ſame *Sedredin*, alſo built that moſt ſumptuous *Meſchaich*, or Sepulchre within *Ardebil*, for *Sceih Sephy* his Father. Certainly thoſe Bones of his Grandfather muſt have bin very emphatical and notedly eminent above all the Boors and Peſants Bones that had lay there a hundred years, that could now, almoſt reduced to Duſt, be diſtinguiſhed from the reſt: otherwiſe, thrice happy were his Neighbours who had kept him company ſo long a time, for it was hard if ſome Joynt or other was not canonized with the Anatomy of this Holy *Tzerbail*. However the *Perſians* very devoutly pay their Devotions at this ſacred Tomb, without much reſpect to the Matter. But in what manner thoſe Bones appear I could not ſee, althô I was ſhorn after the *Perſian* faſhion, and in my converſation with *Hadſi Byram* my *quondam* Maſter, uſed more like a Companion than a Servant, much leſs as a Slave, and was in general looked upon

Nov. 1671. upon as an upright *Muſulman*. After we had reſted a litle at *Kelcheran*, we marched forward, and about 2 in the Afternoon came to *Ardebil*, where my Maſter *Hadſi Byram* took up his Lodging in a Street called *Kumbalum*, being a very fair and well-provided Inn.

Arrival at Ardebil.

Ardebil, called alſo *Ardevil*, lies in 38 *degr.* and 50 *min.* in the Countrey of *Adrilegizan*, being ſeated in a round Plain, or Valley, environed on each ſide with very high Mountains, the greateſt whereof is called *Zebelahu*, and much talked of in *Perſia* for its height. Thoſe Mountains, as they told me, which ly to the Weſtward, are all the Summer covered with Snow; but on the other ſide, thoſe that lie toward the Countrey of *Kielan*, the Air is more moderate and not altogether ſo cold. And by reaſon that theſe cold ſeaſons do not come gradually as when the Winter Solſtice approaches, but caſually, and all on a ſudden ſo that there is no ordinal Viciſſitude, nor can be any faſt Calculation made, it renders the Place very unhealthy, eſpecially to Strangers, who are not uſed to ſuch ſudden Changes. However, I would not be ſo far miſconſtr'd, as to ſignify that there is no ſenſible difference between the Summer and Winter, for the Courſe of the Sun makes a noted alteration, and yet the Summer Colds ſeemingly more penetrating than thoſe in the Winter, for Now the Body is ſhut, and Then it is open, at what time they hold it more dangerous, but in the Approachment of the Winter more tolerable and better to be endured. My Patron told me that ſom years before he took this Journey about *April*, taking with him 4 Slaves., whereof 3 were Strangers and unnacuſtomed to the aforeſaid Changes, died in this Place, but the other which had been brought up there abouts, ail'd nothing at all.

Strange Whirl-winds.

But above all this are the Whirl-winds which come every day about noon very remarkable, being as conſtant as the Suns comming to South, or as the Tides that are regulated according to the Courſe of the Moon. This ſaid Wind alwaies riſes at 12 a clock, and continues ſomwhat more than an hour, during which time it is not ſafe to hold either Eies or Mouth open, by reaſon of the Sand, which is hurried about with that Violence and Thickneſs that the Air is darkned; that very much annoy the Inhabitants, who are not only fain to keep within Doors all the while it continues, but muſt take care to cover all that may be damnify'd, and make every thing faſt, which is light or apt to be carried away, and beſides that 3 or four times a year bear away

away all the ſand and duſt which lies about the Houſes. By reaſon of this Cold, no Oranges, Lemmons, nor the Uſefull Vine will take or like there, only Apples and Pears they have, which were but juſt ripe when we were there, and as they ſay have no Bloſſoms till *May* or *June*: but without the Mountains it is very warm; and affoards good Plenty of the aboveſaid Fruits. The arable Ground here is very fertile, except where it is ſuffocated with the Sand that the Whirl-winds bring about, and Wheat is both good and cheap, for having order from my Patron to buy ſom Bread, I had 12 Loavs, weighing each 4 pounds, for the Value of an [*English*] Shilling, and that very white and good Bread. In this part of the Countrey is alſo very good Paſturage, which is no ſmall Profit to the *Schach*, or King, who has impoſed a Toll of Four pence half penny for every Sheep, great and ſmall, that paſſes the Bridge which by reaſon of the vaſt Flocks and great Inclination of the People to bring up Cattel brings up yearly an incredible ſum of Money. At that time when I was there, were Commiſſioners appointed by the King himſelf, althô 2 years before it was farmed out, and the King coming to underſtand what large Profits ſuperabounded to the Farmers, thought good to bring that Remnant into his own Coffers, as a Corolary. One of thoſe ſaid Comiſſioners, being an old Acquaintance of my Patron, told him that when they turned over the Accounts they had found Toll taken for above 700000 Sheep, between *March* and *September*, which amounts to more then 26000 *lb. Sterl.* which is conſiderable for the bare paſſage only; but far greater is the Toll which is impoſed on every Sheep that is ſold. Within the Juriſdiction of *Ardebil* lie 57 Villages and Hamlets, and thoſe ſo cloſe together, that the Town is eaſily ſupplied with plenty of Lactuaries, or what elſe the Land affoards.

Nov. 1674.

Good Wheat and Bread.

A great Toll impoſed upon Sheep.

Ardebil is a very great Town, but not cloſe built, for every eminent Houſe has a Garden or Orchard behind it. At this day it lies without Walls, Trenches and other Muniments. It is watered with one ſmall Rivulet, which they call *Baluchlu*, taking its firſt ſpring from the Mountains of *Scamaſchu*, about 6 miles to the Southward of *Ardebil*. Before the Town it divides its ſelf into two Channels, the one running into the Town, and ſo forward till it finds the *Caraſu*. This River is

ſom-

Nov. 1671. ſomtimes very ſmall, eſpecially in the Summer, but about *March* and *April* when it ordinarily rains very hard, with the Snow and concurrency of the Water that ſettles off from the Mountains, ſwells to an incredible bigneſs. and overruns the Banks, ſo that againſt this time they uſually make a Catarract, or Dam, which diverts it from the Town, and upon negligence, or want of due Repair of the ſame, the Town is in danger of being loſt, as in the time of *Schach Abas* the great the Dam being not ſufficient, the Waters came with that ſuddenneſs from the Mountains, that it made an irruption and waſhed away a great part of the Town, the Houſes being moſtly built of Clay and a ſort of Brick. In this unexpected Innundation they record many Men and Cattle to have been carried away with the violence of the Floods. In *Ardebil* are 5 Capital Streets, to wit, *Derwanſche*, *Tabar*, *Niardowan*, *Kumbolan* and *Keſerkuſte*: all theſe were very ſtately and broad, being planted with rows of Aſh, Teil-or Linden-Trees which is very pleaſant and cool in hot weather. Beſides theſe 5 great Streets, are alſo many fair ones, but narrower and not beplanted with Trees, whereof the chief are, *Bander chan*, *Kamankar*, *Degme Daglir*, and *Urſumi Mahele*, famous (or to ſay more properly, infamous) for Whores, who have here their Reſidence, and ply all over the Town, and in the *Caravanſeras*, and are reckoned as a Corporation or Gild. Theſe are all Poëteſſes by Occupation, ſom Compoſing Elogies and Hymns in the Praiſe of *Ali* and *Hoſſeyn*, others do make Encomiums, ſetting out the Noble Deeds of the *Scach*, and others dance naked before the *Chan*. &c. Theſe of all that ever I have ſeen in my Life are the moſt impudent, and ſenſual, for they perceiving me to be a Stranger, peſter'd me as I went along the Streets, and gave me work enough to keep their Hands out of my Codpiece. Moreover ſo ſenſual and beaſtly have I obſerved them to be by their Converſation with young-men, who are not ſhie, or in the leſt aſhamed althô at noon day in the middle of the Street, that I ſhould not willingly uſe that immodeſty to relate all I have ſeen. There are alſo ſeveral Squares and Plains with Piazzas and Galleries round about, in and under which are very rich ſhops.

The Place of Refuge. They have alſo a Place of Refuge whither Malefactors betake themſelvs, at the Entrance whereof is an Oratory or Chappel, in which lies interred the Body of a reputed Saint. But the Delinquent fearing himſelf unſafe can eaſily gain the great Sanctuary of *Sceeh Sephys Meſcaich*

of

or Sepulchre whence the King himſelf ſhould want the Heart to fetch him out by force. Coming from this *Maydan* or Sanctuary, you com to the *Baſar*, or great Market-plain. On this Plain is reared a very magnificent and ſumptuous Building, four ſquare, in which, as in our Exchanges, are ſold all manner of coſtly Wares and rich Merchandizes, as Cloth of Gold and Silver, Jewels, Precious Stones, Tapeſtry, Silks, &c. This Place they call the *Kayſery*. Behind this you find three Streets, almoſt arched over, in which there are many Shops ſtored with Wares of leſs value. The *Caravanſeras*, or Inns, of *Ardebil* are very numerous, and thoſe frequented each with a diſtinct ſort of People, as *Turks*, *Tartarians* and *Indians*, who ſojourn to and again, upon the account of Merchandiſe. In *Ardebil* are many fair *Metzids*, or Temples, whereof one they call *Adine* ſurpaſſes all the reſt, being founded upon the Top of a Hill in the middle of the Town, and beſides that graced with a pompous Tower, which outbraves all the reſt in the City, rearing its Top aloft to an exceeding great Height. This Temple is thought worthy only to be viſited on Fridays, which according to the Inſtitution of *Mahomet* is their Sabbath; and from hence it has it's name. Before this Temple is a Fountain brought by an Aqueduct from a Place about 5 [*Engliſh*] miles without the City, at the Charges of *Muhamed Riſa* the *Rochtaf*, or Chancellor of *Perſia*. The deſign thereof is that every one willing to viſit the Holy Sepulchre muſt firſt waſh himſelf there. NOV. 1671. *The Market and Maydan.*

CHAP. XXVIII.

Hadzi Byram *goes to perform his Religious Duties at the Sepulchre of* Zeyde Tzebraïl. *The Author begs of his Lord, that he may be Spectator of the Ceremonies, which at laſt after many intreaties is granted. A Deſcription of that noble* Mauſoleum. *Famous Baths in* Ardebil. *The Sulphurous Baths whither the Author accompanies his Patron. The manner of uſing thoſe Baths. The ſtupendious and ſumptuous Sepulchre of* Scach Sephy *deſcribed. The great Zeal and Devotion of* Hadzi Byram. *The Oratory, or Houſe of Prayer, where (as they ſay)* Schach Sephy *prayed and faſted for* 40 *Days together without Intermiſſion, uſing only a Cup of Water every day. Doors covered with Plates of Gold by* Schach Abas. *The Library and Repoſitory of the Utenſils for the Kings Table. The Garden or Yard where the* Perſian *Kings lie interred. The names of the* 12 *Kings*

Nov. 1671. *that lie there buried. The Revenues belonging to this* Meſar, *or ſepulchre. Som faſt Revenues.* Ardebil *a famous Mart.*

UPon the 13 my Patron *Hadzi Byram*, who was a very zealous devout *Mahometan*, went to perform his Devotion at the H. Sepulchre of *Zide Tzaybrail*, in *Kelcheran*, having firſt well provided himſelf with Faſting and the Bath. I pray'd him alſo that he would pleaſe to take me with him, but he poſitivly refuſed, ſave of this Anſwer he gave me, John, *if you will indeed becom a* Muſulman *I am freer you ſhould go, than ſtay behind, but it is not lawful to bring a* Chriſtian *thither to pollute that moſt Holy ſpot of Ground. O Sir*, replied I, *why cannot I waſh my ſelf as clean as a* Muſulman? *and why ſhould it be thought that I pollute the Place, ſince I leav nothing at all behind me but what I find there?* All this would not prevail with him, but rather ſeemed to incite him to anger, ſo that being unwilling to purchaſe his diſpleſure to pamper my ſelf with ſuch an unprofitable curioſity, I thought fit for that time to deſiſt. But the next morning finding him in a pleaſant humor I renewed my requeſt and he aſſented, thô conditionally, as, Firſt, to keep ſilence all the time, ſince I was not perfect in the Dialect, and ſo might com to be diſcovered; Secondly, not to ſtare any Perſon fully in the Face; and Thirdly, to act for Changeling in caſe any Body came to queſtion me, Fools and Madmen being with them reputed Holies, for they are of Opinion that all men have an equal underſtanding, and that thoſe, who are either Mad or Fooliſh imploy the reſt of their Senſes in a Divine and Celeſtial Contemplation, or Converſe with Angels.

A Deſcription of the Sepulchre of Zide Tzaybril.

The Grave or Tomb ſtood in the midſt of a ſpacious Court, and built round; above all was a round Tower, which was covered with Blew and Green Stone glazed, which made a moſt gorgeous ſhow. It was raized high, ſo that we muſt aſcend 10 ſteps before we enter. Being com to the Threſhold my Patron made there certain Prayers, that don he gave the Sign that he would be in, upon which one of the *Haſiſans*, or Waiters came out, who demanded of him his Sable and Boots, and of me my Truncheon, which he ſhut up in a litle Chamber: my Patron then having given him a piece of money in the Hand, and ſo we both went in bare-foot. The Floor was all laid with Tapeſtry, the Roof and Walls were painted Blew, illuſtrated

here

here and there with Flowers of Gold, which made it look with a great ſplendor; the Glaſs in the Windows was of divers colours like as in old Chriſtian Churches, and I preſume don by the ſame Art, which ſom will needs ſay is loſt. On the ſides were ſeveral litle Chambers and Appartments, which alwaies ſtand open. Here ſit ſeveral Doctors, who are to inſtruct Youth in the *Alchoran*, as alſo to read and to ſing, that ſo they may be fit to ſerve in that holy Function, and adminiſter at the ſacred Tomb. Here and there were ſeveral Chairs whereon lay ſom pieces of the *Alchoran*. In the Middle of all ſtood the ſaid Tomb, being about a Mans height raiſed above ground, 6 Foot long, and proportionably broad. It was of pure Gold and laid in with Flowers and Foliage of Silver, which was very artificially don. Above the Tomb under a Canopy of Blew Silk hung 4 Lamps, 2 of Gold, and 2 of Silver, which every night are lighted by certain Attendants which they call *Tziracht ſchikan*. When my Patron approached to the Grave the Waiters took off the Covering, which was of green Velvet, upon which after he had mumpled over certain Prayers bowed himſelf, puſhed with his head againſt the Tomb, kiſſed it, and ſo ſtepping backwards, was met at the door by one of the *Haſiſans* who gave him the Benediction, and ſo diſmiſſed him. When he was com to the *Caravanſera*, concluded this Devotion with a ſumptuous and an Epicurean Banquet, with Drinking, Dancing and Whoring, ſo that it may eaſily be perceived that the extreme and furtheſt Hope they have, who are the greateſt Zelots in *Turciſm* is only for libidinous Enjoyments, and to obtain their fill of voluptuous Pleſures and ſenſual Delights in the World to com, as by an implicit Faith they are induced to beleeve. Nov. 1671.

In *Ardebil* are many excellent Hot-baths, which bring in no ſmall profit to the Owners; my Maſter alſo made frequent uſe of the ſame, as well out of a ſuperſtitious Zeal, as for conſervation of Health. But about 3 [*Dutch*] miles without *Ardebil* are certain Hot wells, proceeding from a ſulphurous quality of the Earth; Theſe are exceeding hot, and may not be touched; ſo that round about are ſeveral Baths and Fountains which are tempered with the hot water being convey'd thither in Pipes and Conduits. Theſe Baths ſo tempered are reputed very good againſt the Itch, Biles, and other external Grievances and Sores, and as ſom have found uſefull againſt in-

Nov. 1671. ternal Diſtempers, as was adviſed my Patron by a Doctor at *Scamachy* to make uſe of it for a weakneſs in his joints.

On the 16 my Maſter ſet out to go to theſe Baths and asked me to go with him, bidding me take a Horſe, ſo that I was as well mounted as he himſelf: he took with him 3 Slaves with an Aſs to carry clean Linnen, Meat, and Wine, with other Refreſhments. A little before we came at thoſe Wells, we ſmelled a ſtrong ſmell of Brimſtone, and heard the Water bubble up and boil. We ſaw alſo ſmoke and vapours that roſe in many places from the Water, which made me very faint. The chiefeſt of thoſe Wells is called *Grandauſch*, but this my Maſter thought not fit for him to uſe, but went to another called *Serdebe*, which nevertheleſs is reputed the beſt Water, and was therefore roofed over with a ſtately Arch, at the Charges of the Grand Chancelor *Tzulpharachan*. Among the Slaves that my Patron had was an old *Greek*, for whom he had a great kindneſs, and uſed him more like a Brother than a Servant. So ſoon as he was uncloathed this *Greek* rubbed his Body with a Towel, till he was all over red, then he ſtepped into the Bath, where for ſome time he ſat to the neck in Water, and then coming out dried himſelf, took a draught of very ſtrong Wine, and away again into the Bath, which having done 2 or 3 times together he clothed himſelf and rode away to a *Caravanſera*, where the Day before he had beſpoke a warm Bed, in which he lay him down and ſtayd over night. The next day betimes in the Morning we rode back to *Ardebil*, where he kept his Bed for ſom days following.

Deſcription of the famous ſepulchre of Scach Sephy *at* Ardebil.

On the 20th I went with my Patron to ſee the moſt noble Sepulchre of *Schach Sephy*. My ſaid Patron alſo prepared himſelf for this, as he did to viſit the other at *Kelcheran*, by Faſting and Prayer. This famous *Mauſoleum* erected to the memory of *Scach Sephy*, and now the Burying Place of other *Perſian* Kings lies near the *Maydan*. Before this pompous Sepulchre ſtands a fair Gate of rich Marble, in which is ſhown an Admirable Skill in Architecture. Within this Port or Gate hang two Maſſy Silver Chains athwart each other like Feſtons: thoſe they ſay were beſtowed on this Place by the *Chan* of *Meggura*, for a Monument of his Zeal. Having entred this Gate we came into a fair and ſpacious Court all paved with ſquare Stones and poliſhed Porphyr; round about on each ſide were Arches, as Piazzas, under which

which were ſhops of all ſorts of Haberdaſhery Wares and Toys. NOV. 1671.
After this we went thrô another Gate far more beautifull than the former, and within this was a fair Garden, and indeed one of the faireſt I had hitherto ſeen; It was planted with all manner of Flowers and Herbs that might delight the Eie and Noſe, and all kinds of delicious Fruits to ſerve the Palat. Every Man has his freedôm to walk and recreate himſelf, but upon a very ſtrict penalty not to pluck either Flower or Fruit. I was told how that 5 years before my being there, a drunken *Perſian* had hewn down a great bough with his Scymiter, but being taken was immediatly beheaded with the ſame Weapon. In this Gate hung alſo another great Silver Chain, which was given by the *Chan* of *Kentzay*. Here they demanded our Weapons, which being delivered, my Patron went forward to another Gate, which entring he fell down and kiſſed the Threſhold, withall charging me not to touch it with my Feet, leſt I ſhould pollute that which many thought worthy a long Pilgrimage to com and kiſs: he told me alſo that it was a favour greater than ordinary, that I being a blind ignorant Chriſtian and an Infidel ſhould be admitted to pry into ſo glorious a Sanctuary. I was heartily content to obey his Will, rather than to deny my Curioſity, and followed him cloſe at the Heels, leſt coming into ſom Labrynth I ſhould looſe my Life by the Loſs of my Maſter. The next Place we came into was a ſtately Gallery, or rather an Antichamber, arched croſs wiſe, and neatly plaiſtered. On the right hand as I went in was a great Silver Cock which ran with Water that was conveyed thither by leaden Pipes from a fair Fountain about 4 [*Engliſh*] miles without Town. Right over againſt this is another Apartment paved with green and blew glazed ſtones: and on the Floor was ſpread a very rich Carpet: in the middle ſtood two huge Silver Candleſticks about 8 or 9 Foot high; round about were Seats as in our Chores, wherein ſat ſeveral Prieſts all in white Stoles, who ſung all the time, keeping good Harmony, and at the End of every Verſicle bowed all alike, one to another. This Place is called *Tzichillachane*, the Chappel or Oratory of the King; ſo called by reaſon of the 40 days, which the *Perſians* affirm that *Scach Sephy* ſpent here at one time, in Faſting and Prayer, not uſing any thing all that time, ſave only a Cup of Water once a day. Leaving this place we went into another Gate where a Silver Chain hung,

Nov. 1671. that was preſented by *Aly Chan*. The Parlour, or Hall into which we now came was all paved and laid in with a ſplecked Stone; The Building its ſelf was round, like a Theatre; the Doors were laid over with Silver Plates and had two great Silver Rings like Wreaths or Torſes. At the Entrance lay a coſtly and large Carpet, where we were to pull off our Boots, without which, none is admitted to go in, no not the King himſelf, who ſomtimes to be a Precedent and Example of Zeal, pulls off his Boots at the firſt Gate, but that, it ſeems, is held to be a Work of Supererogation. From hence we went to another Magnificent Hall, thrô a Gallery, the Pavement whereof was covered with rich Tapeſtry. The Doors of this ſaid Hall were covered with Plates of Gold, which was don at the Charges of the *Schach Abas*, who had made a vow to do it, in caſe he returned home with Triumph, when he went on an Expedition againſt the *Uſbeques* in *Choraſan*, as he did, and vanquiſhed the Rebels. This Hall is not ſo ſpacious as beautifull by far, the Roof being no more than 48 Foot long, and 30 broad. In the middle hung ſeveral Gold and Silver Lamps and on each ſide ſate 12 Prieſts, each having a low Stool before him on which lay ſo many Parchment Books, containing ſeveral Legends of the *Alchoran*, which they read and ſung by Turns. Leaving this Place we went into another which was ſeparated and environed with Silver Rails, and had 3 Aſcents or Steps to go up of ſolid Silver. This is the laſt and chief Oratory, or Houſe of Prayer, where our Patron pray'd with very great Zeal. From hence we aſcended into another Place, which was one Step higher, and ſeparated with maſſy Grate-work all of pure Gold and wreathed, behind this was the Tomb of *Schach Sephy*, which was of fair Marble, being about 3 Foot high, 9 Foot long and 4 broad. It was covered with a Carpet of Crimſon Velvet, richly embroidered and laid in with precious Stones. Above hung ſeveral Lamps, and on each ſide 2 huge Candleſticks, all of ſolid Gold: theſe are lighted every Evening and burn all the Night long. The Door of this Place is opened for no Secular or Temporal Perſon or Perſonage, nor for the King himſelf. Near this Tomb we ſaw alſo the Tombs of *Schach Iſmaël*, of *Sephys*, and of ſom Queens, all which were only ſupplyed with Curtains, and void of curious Work and Ornament. Leaving the Sepulchre we went out at a door on the Right Hand, that led into the Library which

which was very ſpacious, yet without any Pillar. Here are kept all the Ancient Records of *Perſia*, with abundance of Manuſcripts in the *Chaldean*, *Perſian*, *Arabic* and *Syrian* Tongues, the Books were piled up one above another and moſt of them adorned with Gold and Silver; whence I concluded that they were more for ſhow, than for dayly uſe and recourſe. In this ſaid Library were ſeveral leſs Appartments, where were many Porceline Diſhes, Cups and other Utenſils, for the Kitchin and Table, which are uſed when the King or any other great Perſonage comes to Eat there, whereas they ſay it is not conſiſtent with the Humility they profeſs, to be ſerved in Gold or Silver: the more becauſe that the great *Schach Sephy* himſelf did eat altogether out of Wooden Diſhes. From hence we went out and came into the Kitchin, the Doors whereof were covered with Silver Leavs by the aforeſaid *Schach Abas*, and the Room within very neat and handſom. The Cooks were all the time very ſtill and quiet, as if it were ſom Religious Duty they were about, and each one according to his Office had a place allotted him, to wit, thoſe that roaſted and thoſe that boiled, baked, fried, ſtewed, &c. each by themſelvs. The Cauldrons were ſet faſt in the Walls, and the Water they uſed was brought ſom Miles by an Aqueduct, and let in by Silver Cocks. In this Kitchin is provided Victuals for more than a Thouſand People, one day with another, to wit, Prieſts, Pilgrims, and other Poor People which have here their Maintenance. They eat three times a day, at 6 in the Morning, at 10 before, and 3 in the afternoon. The two firſt Meals were given by *Schach Sephy*, and the laſt at the Charges of the preſent King. Before the Meals do begin, they beat 2 Kettle-drums, which they ſay their great Prophet Mahomet made uſe of when he was in the Camp, and were brought from *Medina* by *Schach Sedredin*. They have not much variety in their Diet, and uſe moſtly Rice and Mutton, which is diſtributed very liberally to all the Appendents, who ſeldom com ſhort but leav of their Commons. Nov. 1671.

Coming out of this famous Kitchin, we went into a large Court where were interred 12 *Perſian* Kings, to wit,

1 *Schach Sephy*, the Son of *Tzaybraïl*.
2 ------ *Sedredin* the Son of *Sephy*.
3 ------ *Tzinid* the Son of *Sedredin*.

4. Sul-

NOV. 1671.

4 *Sultan Aider* the Son of *Tzinid*. Whoſe Skin the *Turks* dre
over his Head, whilſt alive.
5 *Schach Ayder*, the Second.
6 ----- *Iſmaël*, the Son of *Aider*.
7 ----- *Tamas*, the Son of *Iſmaël*.
8 ----- *Iſmaël* the Second, Son of *Tamas*.
9 ----- *Muhamed Choddabende*, Brother of *Iſmaël*.
10 ----- *Iſmaël Myrſa*,
11 ----- *Hemſe Myrſa*, } Sons of *Choddabende*.
12 ----- *Abas*.

This noble *Mauſoleum* or Place of Sepulture was erected by a ve famous Architect of *Medina*, with whom *Schach Sedredin* covenate to build it. The *Perſians* ſay that he had the Model out of Heave Above the Door ſtand theſe words in their manner of Rhymin which jingles better than in *Engliſh*: *Whoſoever is of a pure Heart him enter in and pray to GOD, ſo ſhall his Sins undoubtedly be pardoned.* The fi Part which the ſaid *Sedredin* had built was very magnificent a ſtately, but that which was added to it by *Tzinid* appears far mo ſplendid, both in regard of the curious Architecture, in which A ſeems to ſport, and in the Conveniency, and Proſpect from afar.

Revenues of the Sepulchre.

The Revenues of this Sepulchre are very great, what with t large Gifts which were given by the famous *Sedredin* at the Inaug ration thereof, and what by the Ample Donations that have be liberally beſtowed by other Kings and Princes from time to time ſin it's firſt Foundation, not only of the *Perſians* themſelvs, but al of *Indians*, *Tartars* and others that are of the Sect of *Aly*: which commonly don upon Sickneſs, Expedition of War, Dangero Journeys, and the like, upon which they make Vows to beauti this Holy Structure with ſome ſignal Ornament, or put ſomthi into the Treſury. There are alſo other Revenues accrewing to th Place, bequeathed by Teſtament, as if it were Remitted by Bills Exchange to the Souls of the Departed, for they reckon, that ſuc Gifts will redound to the welfar of their Souls. Nor do ſuch Don tions ſolely conſiſt in Money, but in Cattle, Utenſils, Moveables a Merchandiſe. The Cattle ſo beſtowed is committed to Herdsm for that end imployed, and improved, except ſuch as is fit for Slaug ter, other Things are ſold and the Money thrown into the Treſur

T

The Pilgrims that Offer any thing here, be it more or leſs have a Maniple of Conſecrated Anniſe given them, together with a Certificat, that they have viſited and offered at this Holy Place. This Ticket or Schedule they call *Syaretname*, which is kept and ſhown by the Party, upon Occaſion, who is thereby capable to ſerve the King in certain Offices ſuitable to the Value of what he offered: althô the Commiſſioners ſomtimes willing to favour any indigent Perſon, have the Opportunity to raiſe their Fortunes by granting them ſuch a Billet, or ſetting a greater Value upon upon the Offering; ſo that there is Cheating as well in thoſe Sacred Functions, as in Temporal Negotiations. Nov. 1671.

The faſt Revenues of this *Meſchair* that are ſettled in the Town of *Ardevil*, is the Rent of 200 Dwelling Houſes, 9 *Hamans*, or Hot-baths, 8 *Caravanſeras*, the *Maydan*, with all the Buildings and Shops round about; as alſo the *Kayſery*, or Exchange, 100 Shops in the *Baſar*. The Toll and Impoſitions of all Merchandiſes whatever. Of the 57 Villages that are within the Juriſdiction of *Ardebil*, 33 accrew to this Sanctuary, and 5 in the Province of *Serab*. In the City *Tabris* it hath 100 Dwelling-Houſes, and the like number of the moſt eminent Shops in all the Town, and 2 Villages within the Juriſdiction of the ſame. In *Caſwin* are ſeveral *Caravanſeras* and Baths, as alſo in *Kilan*, *Aſtarath*, and *Mokan*, beſides many other Revenues that are ſettled upon it in divers Provinces, which could I have given an account of, would fall too tedious, and tire the Patience of my Reader; ſo that it's probable that this incredible Treaſure, which from time to time is accumulated, upon this (reputed) Sanctuary muſt needs exceed the Royal Treſury it ſelf, and has alwaies more ready Money gathered ſo from a ſuperſtitious Zeal, than the King is able to levy and paralel with all the Impoſitions within his Realm and Dominions. *The faſt Revenues of the Sepulchre.*

Beſides this famous and moſt pompous Royal Sepulchre, *Ardebil* flouriſhes mainly in Traffic and Merchandiſe, for hither throng all the Traders of *Giſlan*, *Georgia*, *Kurdiſtan* and other Countreys; Beſides the Profit that the Citizens do receive from the continual concourſe of ſtrangers and Pilgrims from Places both near and remote. It is alſo a great Thorow-fare from the Northern Regions to *Iſpahan* and receivs a conſiderable Benefit of *Cariyans* and Paſſengers, who com-

Nov. 1671. commonly ſtay here ſom time. Twice a week is their Market, at what time abundance of Peſants com to Town, uſing Oxen and Kine in ſtead of Sumpter-horſes to carry their Goods. Laſtly this City is very famous in regard of its Antiquity, being in times paſt the Royal Seat of *Perſia*, as it was before the Warrs of *Alexander* of *Macedon*; who had here his Reſidence, as they averr and prove by many undeniable Tokens, beſides the Language of their Records, which if we may take upon Credit [as why not] do ſufficiently teſtifie it.

CHAP. XXIX.

The Author taken for a Perſian, *which gave him occaſion to ſee all that was worthy of remark. The* Caravan *leavs* Ardebil, *and goes over the famous Mountain* Taurus. *The Head of the River* Kiſſiloleyn. *Bad and uneaſy Travelling by reaſon of ſteep Rocks. Perils of Robbers. Arrival at* Sultanie. Keydar Pey. Amber, *a wonderfull high Mountain.* Sultanie *it's Situation, and by whom built.* Emarath, *the Noble Palace of King* Choddabende. *The Temple of* Schach Iſmaël. *The preſent decaying State of* Sultany. *The Author ſhorn and habituated after the* Perſian *Manner. Pleaſant Dales and Valleys. Arrival at* Caſ-vin. *The Situation of that Place. The Court of* Schach Tamas. *The Place of Convention or Exchange of Whores. The Common Place of Sepulture and* Metzid *of* Szach Beſſade, *the Son of* Hoſſeyn, *by which the Perſians ſwear. The Offering of a Camel.*

FOurteen Days we ſtaid in *Ardebil*, during which time I had leiſure to ſee what was worthy of Remark, and Opportunity beſides, being apparrel'd like a *Perſian* ſo that none diſtruſted me to be a *Muſulman*, but allowed me acceſs over all. When theſe 14 days were expired, the *Caravan* made preparation to break up, and purſue the Journey for *Iſpahan*, for which end many freſh Camels and Horſes were taken in. When the *Caravan* was ready, we obſerved that the Company was conſiderably increaſed with new Paſſengers and Merchants.

On the 25 by ſound of Trumpet all was warned to joyn themſelvs with the *Caravan*, that intended for *Iſpahan*; and accordingly left *Ardebil* and came to *Buſun* which lies about 14 Miles from *Ardebil*, where we ſtaid that night.

The day following we broke up, and had that day a very rocky and uneaſy

uneasy Way, insomuch that most, or all, allighted from their Horses and Camels and went afoot. By the way we met several Troops of Robbers, who probably had understood what a Prey and Purchase we had, yet finding the *Caravan* so very numerous durst not assail us. At night we came to *Sengoa* a beautifull Village, where we had very good Wine, and made our selvs merry, but not to excess, for that is in general odious to the *Persians*. Here I saw the best Beauties and most comly Faces that I have seen in all *Persia*: their Women seem to have a greater Liberty than in most places, where they do not only go covered abroad, but are also denied the converse with Men; for here they go bare with their Face, and are very familiar with those of the Masculine Gender, and if I be not mistaken were too familiar with some, who within a few daies after began to scratch their Heads, and this is the first time I knew that the *Persian* Women understood *French*. In sum, our Company enjoy'd themselvs here so contentedly and well, that som of 'em thought the Sun had mistaken himself and was risen an hour too soon. NOV. 1674.

The day following leaving *Sengoa*, we had high and rocky way, but towards the Evening came into a most sweet and pleasant Dale or Plain, through which a River glided very swiftly. This Valley was very pleasant, and notwithstanding the season, appeared as if it were in *May*. This River is called *Kisilosefyn*, having a very fair Stone Bridge over it, over which we passed and pitched on the South side, in the open Field, for there were no Houses to be seen.

On the 28th. we broke up and went over the famous *Taurus*, being a very rough and dangerous way, insomuch that all the Company were fain to allight and lead their Camels and Horses, till we came into a Valley where we took our Rest for an Hour, or two. This Valley is very deep and a Nest of Robbers and Vagabonds, who find many lurking Places to hide themselvs in, out of which they assail and surprise Travailers, if they think themselvs strong enough: but we, as was said before, being increased to a considerable Number knew our selvs sufficiently out of peril. Out of this Valley ariseth the River *Kysilosefyn*, which running very swiftly and beating thorow the Rocks makes a very hideous Murmur, so that one cannot hear another speak: thus receiving as it were inlargement runs through the Champain Countrey of *Kilan*, and thence is hurried with an admirable

Nov. 1673. mirable celerity into the *Caſpian* Lake, into which it empties it ſelf. On the Banks of this River is a Village bearing the ſame name, where is a fair Stone Bridge of 9 Arches, or Bows. All along the Way ſide grow great plenty of Almond, Cypreſs and other Trees, which ſerved us all the way in ſtead of *Paraſols*: but when we were come over the River found the Way very bad, being forced to clamber over Rocks, the Path being ſo narrow that only one Camel at once could go on it. On each ſide were many great Clefts and deep Caves, which with the rattling of the Horſes feet made a dreadfull and horrid Eccho; and being come to a place which was the fulleſt of thoſe Caverns, all the Company gave a Shout, which with an Eccho reſounded from one Place to another, that it ſeemed as if there had been 10 or 12 Troops of Men in ſo many ſeveral Places calling to one another. On this way it happened that a Camel broke the Leathers wherewith his Pack was faſtened to the Crutchet or Saddle, being juſt at the Brink of a wide and deep Pit, where no Bottom could be ſeen. It coſt the Slaves who attended him much labour to ſave him, and were in ſtruggling once in great hazard themſelvs of tumbling down, Camel and all, yet at laſt, with loſs of the Pack which in ſpite of all they could do fell down, they got clear. The Pack was very rich, and the loſs thereof ſo concerning to the Merchant, that if others had not hindred him he had thrown the Slaves after it, for their Negligence. This ill way much detarded us on this Days Journey, for we were more than 5 Hours in travailing one Mile. Being got over this bad way we found a Village where it was deſigned that we ſhould take our nights reſt; The name of the Town was *Keynze*, being very poor and not in a Condition to ſupply us with ſuch Neceſſaries as we deſired for our Money.

On the 29 we broke up, and had that day very good way, coming at night to the village *Hortzimur*, where we were very ill at eaſe being cold Weather and the Place not able to ſupply us with Houſe-room.

The next day leaving *Hortzimur* we travailed thrô a very dry and barren Heath, meeting by the way with ſom Robbers, who being but few in number durſt not make any attempt upon us: However night coming upon us here, we were fain to ſet down on the Heath, and for fear of Robbers forced to watch all night, but were ſo benummed with cold that we many times wiſhed for break of day.

On

On the first of the next Moneth we came into a litle City called *Senkan*, which is reputed the best Refreshing place between *Derbent* and *Ispahan*, there being plenty of Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Melons, divers sorts of huge Grapes and many other Fruits then out of season. Veal and Mutton was here very cheap, as also Bread. Thus finding Provision here very cheap, we bought what we thought necessary. As for the City it self there is not much worthy of Remark about it, save onely a very fair and beautifull *Metzid*. It is situated in a Plain, and a flat Ground, but near the Town very barren and dry. It has been formerly a great Emporium, and flourished more than 4 Centuries of years in Traffic and Commerce with the circumjacent Countreys, but since it was demolished by the great *Tamerlan*, is so run to decay, that it is out of Hopes, ever to arrive to it's pristin State. NOV. 1671.

On the 2 of *Decemb.* we set forward and came in good time to *Sultanie*, a City lying in 36 *degr.* and 30 *min.* Northerly Latitude. It is situated between two rows of very steep Mountains, and toward the West we saw the Mountain *Keydar Peyamber*, whose lofty top seems to support the Heavens, this being, next to *Ararat*, the highest Mountain I have ever seen. The City *Sultany* affoards a most noble Prospect from abroad, by reason of her many lofty Piles, magnificent Churches, high Towers, Pyramids, Obelisks and Cylinders which still remain, notwithstanding the furious Irruption of the savage *Tartars* under conduct of the valiant *Tamerlan*, who with many other Towns, laid this level with the Ground, save the great and stupendious Fabrics, even now remembred, which when one is within Town, look like a set of Nine-pins, or the Stones on *Salisbury* Plain: so that this which was reputed one of the Royal Cities is meaner than most villages. It was built by *Sultan Choddabende* a very rich and potent Prince, who besides many famous Conquests in *Persia* and *Usbec*, subdued the greatest part of *Turky*, and many *Indian* Kingdoms and Provinces, som of which still remain under the subjection of the *Schach* of *Persia*. This City he called *Sultanie* from the * Honorary Title of *Sultan*, for so the Kings of *Persia* who are now called *Schach* were of old entitled, as also at present the *Ottoman* Emperour. Notwithstanding the abovesaid devastation of this City appear yet many signal Monuments of it's former Glory; amongst which is the splen-

* As Cæsarea from Cæsar.

DEC. 1671. did Court and Palace of the great *Choddabende*, called, The *Emarah*. This was fortified on each ſide with ſtrong Walls and ſeveral great Bulwarks, altogether built of huge ſquare Stones of 3 Foot Diameter: it had alſo 4 high Towers, but ſtrong and of neat Workmanſhip. Within is a very noble Sepulchre built by Sultan *Choddabende* himſelf, who lay here interred, but the too great Piety of his Succeſſor would not ſuffer his Bones to reſt, but removed them to the *Meſchaich* of *Ardebil*. In entring this Sepulchre one muſt paſs thrô three very high Gates all made of *Indian* Steel, very neatly poliſhed, and as ſmooth as Glaſs, this being the ſame Mettal of which the *Damaſkin*, or *Ardebil* Scymiters are made, and is preferred before any other Steel that is uſed. That Gate which leads out to the *Maydan* (as the *Perſians* would perſwade themſelvs and us) cannot be opened by any Force, but when one prays to GOD; for the ſake of his Servant *Aly*, that it may open, it opens of it's ſelf. The Building is very high, contracting its ſelf at top into the manner of a Tower, and within is ſet with white and blew Tiles of Porceline. Above, where it begins to draw its ſelf into the form of a Tower, is a Partition of Steel Barrs, which makes a handſom Chore. In this Partition or Quire I ſaw many Books, written in *Arabic* Characters, ſome whereof were above 30 Inches long, I opened one of them and found an interlineary change of Gold and Black lines, like the Rubrics in the *Roman* Breviaries, Liturgies and Maſs books. Behind the Altar is the Tomb where *Sultan Muhamed Choddabende* lay interred but parted from the Body of the Chore with great and maſſy Barrs of *Indian* Steel, which the *Perſians* ſay was all of one piece, no place appearing where it might ſeem to be well'd, or ſet together, and that it was ſeven years a making in *India*. In this ſaid *Emarath* are 20 pieces of Braſs Ordnance, every Carridge having 4 wheels a piece, and the Balls lying by them of white Marble, theſe are made (forſooth) for defence of the H. Sepulchre. The Tower above is 8 ſquare, and on each ſide a Gallery, and upon each Gallery a ſmall Turret going up with Winding-ſtairs. Before this Temple is a Fountain, the curious Work whereof ſhows the great ſkill and dexterity of the Workman that ordained it: it receives its Water by an Aqueduct from the *Kendar*: and behind the *Emarath* is a very pleaſant Garden, with Walks and Rows of divers ſorts of Trees.

Besides this illustrious Pile of *Sultan Choodabende* is another built by *Schach Ismael* the first. This is also to be ascended by stairs. Within are seen many fair Pillars and Arches upon which the Roof leans, and the inside of the Walls is all laid with white and blew Tiles of Porcelaine. Right before the Door within the first Court stands a fair Pyramid of a reasonable Height. There is also a very fair Pleasure-garden adjoyning to this Palace. Not far from thence is also a fair Arch, but somthing dilapidated resting upon 2 Columns, or Obelisks, 162 Foot * high. About an [*English*] Mile and a half without Town are to be seen the Relicts of a Gate, which they say was built by *Sultan Choodabende*, whence it appears that the Extent of this City has been very great, altho, as was said is now not very great, nor much frequented by Trading People, subsisting mostly by the *Caravans*, after which they long as greedily as a Landlord for Quarter day.

DEC. 1671. *The Temple of Ismael Sukan.*

* *Which is just 13 Foot lower than the Monumument lately erected near London Bridge, in memory of the sad Conflagration in the year 1666.*

Five days we tarried in *Sultanie* to rest, having almost tired our Camels and Horses, which by that time were again in a travailing Condition: During our aboad here I was shorn after the *Persian* fashion, and could pass Muster for a *Muselman*, and with more freedom visit what was worthy of remark and by them reputed sacred; being thereto perswaded by my Companion who was a *Russ*, called *Ferrath*, and that I might not be bewray'd by my speech, he bad me counterfeit my self dumb, and when occasion serv'd to make signs, he taking upon him to interpret for me, which at once both secured me from Affronts, and gave me the occasion to see their Sanctuaries, which was refused many *Georgians*, notwithstanding considerable Sums they had proffered to see the Sepulchres.

The Author shorn after the Persian manner.

On the 7th. we set out and came at night to *Syllebek* where we took up our Nights-lodging, having this day very good way and with all pleasant, for on each side were fair Meadows, Pasture and Cornfields, and by the way many neat villages with Orchards, Gardens and Summer-Houses: which made the Time seem short and the Journey no way tedious.

Leaving *Syllebek* we came the next day at night to *Choramdeky* which for it's many Gardens seems to be a Paradise. It is also watered with a good River which glides thro the Town, and by a Serpentine course thro the Fields round about the City renders the Earth more fertile and of a very good soil, insomuch that this is one of the

Charamdeki.

most

Dec. 1671. most delightfull places we had hitherto ſeen. The People confo mable to the place they inhabit gave us great Satisfaction, and we very ſociable and friendly to converſe withall.

Caſwin deſcribed. On the Ninth we ſet forward again, and came at night to t City *Caſwin*, which is a Town of no ſmall repute. It is ſituated in *degr.* 15 *min.* Northerly Latitude, lying in the Countrey of *Er* upon a level, but dry and ſandy ground, having on the Weſt t Mountains of *Elwind* which reach as far as *Babylon*, or *Bagdet*, as is now called. This City is about 6 *Engliſh* Miles in circuit, and h bin formerly the Reſidence of the King and Court of *Perſia*: bu ſince the ſame was tranſlated to *Iſpahan*, it has continually run to d cay, and dayly looſes it's glory. The Walls and Fortifications whic ſeem to have bin very ſtrong, lie buried in their Rubbiſh and unr paired, for that this City lies far within the *Perſian* Dominions an dreads not any ſudden Irruption as thoſe that lie on the Confines a ever fearfull of, and therefore either without any Fortifications at al to the end they may not prove a Check, if once inveſted and take in by the Enemy, or elſe ſo ſtrongly munited that they may reſi a durable Siege: and another reaſon why the City *Caſwin* fears n Forreign Invaſion is the Strength of the Inhabitants, who are ſ numerous that upon occaſion they can make up a mighty Army. Th Houſes are, as moſt other Towns in *Perſia*, moſtly built of Bric which is only hardned in the Sun: ſo that without they appear wi no Statelyneſs or Magnificency, but within neatly painted with Com partments and Foliage. The Streets are not paved as in other Place ſo that when it is windy they are not paſſable, for the Duſt that fli about, which beſides the aptneſs it has to hurt ones Eies, is no ſma annoyance to thoſe who are apparreled in a gay Garb.

The Palace of Schach Tamas. In this City *Schach Tamas* kept his Court as alſo his Son *Iſmaël* who built that Magnificent Palace before the *Maydan*, which ſti remains as a laſting monument of that puiſſant Monarch, and th Footſteps of a glorious Court, which, had not the Unthankfullne of the Inhabitants been ſo great, might have been there till this Da The Gates are very high and ſtately, the Roof and Walls within ar all laid with Tiles of Porceline, and ſome of them embelliſhed wit Flowers of Gold, which are annealed or burned in, as the *Chineezes* do from whom I preſume they have that Art. Within the Chamber

an

and the ſeveral Appartments are divers curious carved works altogether Foliage, Flowers and the like. Right over againſt this Palace is a fair Garden or Paradiſe, almoſt 2 [*Engliſh*] Miles in circuit, planted with many Fruit-trees as Citrons, Pomegranats, Apples, Pears, Peaches, Apricocks, &c. And on the outſide round about pleaſant Walks of Cedars and Cypreſs trees. In this City are 2 *Maydans*. On the one ſtands a Magnificent Hall, full of Shops, wherein are to be ſold Jewels and many other things of value. Near this Exchange is a place where they deal altogether in Living Jewels, which are there to be had at as mean a Price as a Lurcher or Shock upon the Dog-market at *Amſterdam*; theſe being ſuch Jewels as we commonly call Girls of the Game, Miſſes, or Cracks, and I know not what canting names they have now a days for ſuch unnatural and ſenſual Proſtitutes: The *Perſians* call them *Cabbaha*. About Sun-ſet theſe are all brought out and ſet in a row by an old Woman they call *Delal* who officiates as a Broker. Behind theſe young Females ſtand a parcel of old Women who have by them a Bolſter, a Quilt, a Coverlet, and a litle Lanthern in the Hand, all Implements for the purpoſe. Now ſo ſoon as any one coms to view the Merchandiſe, theſe old Punks light the Candle, unvail the Face, and ſo going from one to another till he finds one he likes and then ſtrikes a Bargain; which done one of the old Women follows him with the Moveables on her Shoulder whitherſoever he pleaſes, and all with as litle ſhametaſtneſs as if it were the moſt honourable Merchandiſe in the World. DEC. 1671. *The Exchange of Whorers.*

On the Eaſt ſide of the City is the Common place of Sepulture: where alſo lies interred the Body of *Schach Beſade*, the Son of *Hoſſeyn*. By whoſe Tomb the *Perſians* ſwear, holding it for a moſt ſacred Oath, and conſequently very hainous to violate: and when one deſires another to aſſeverate a matter will aſk him, *If he dare ſwear by the Holy Grave*. In *Caſwin* are 50 Churches which ſtand open every day, and are frequented by thoſe that go to pray, but the great *Metzid*, or Temple, which they call *Tzame*, is open one day in Four, when there is alwaies a great Convent. They have alſo many Baths in *Caſwin*, which are frequented from morning to night.

On the 9th *dito* was their *Eaſter* at *Caſwin*, which they call *Bairam*, or *Biram del Carban*, which is only a commemoration of *Abrahams* Offering, who as they ſay would have offered up his Son *Iſhmael*, *The Feaſt of Bairam.*

DEC. 1671. from whom they ſay *Mahomet* is deſcended by a direct line: alledging that it was not *Iſaac*, as the Chriſtians and *Jews* beleev; and further that it was not a Ram that was offered in his ſtead, but a She-camel. Wherefore they alwaies lead a Camel thrô the ſtreets for 3 daies together before this Feaſt, adorning it with Garlands of Leavs and Flowers, if there be any to be had, and on the Feſtival ſlay it, with many Ceremonies. Firſt comes the *Mulla*, who is one ſkill'd in the Law, and reads certain Paſſages out of the *Alchoran*, when he is ſilent they play upon Trumpets, Flutes and Drums. In the mean while the Common-People run and crowd in to the Camel, to get ſom of the Hair, every one pulling as much as he can, which is kept for Relicts, and reputed good for Women in Childbed who cannot eaſily be delivered; inſomuch that the Beaſt is almoſt bare before he com to be Offered. When they have led him 3 days about Town he is brought out of the City to a place thereto appointed, where all the greateſt Perſonages are preſent and immediately make a Ring. The Beaſt being brought in, one of the moſt eminent Perſons runs him thrô with a Spear, upon which all the People run with Hatchets, Bills, and Knives ſtriving every one to get a piece, which they carry home, ſom boyling it, and others preſerving it till the year after, reckoning it a certain and ſure token of Happineſs to that Houſe, where there is but a ſmal Morſel of this Camel. Thoſe who are ſlow or impotent muſt be content with the Entrails, Skin, and Blood, which they gather up ſo clean, that nothing of it appears upon the Place where the Sacrifice is done. The whole night continues this Feaſt with Muſic, Drinking and Banquetting.

CHAP. XXX.

Departure from Calwin. *Arrival at* Saba, *and an account of the Condition of that Town. The Earth red and barren by the Curſe of* Mahomet. *They arrive at* Kom, *with a Deſcription of that Place. Melons of a very fragrant and lovely ſmell. A ſtrange kind of Cucumbers.* Khom *the Staple for Weapons. The People addicted to Thievery. The Author's combat with a* Greek *Renegado. Departure out of Khom. Arrival at* Kaſchan. *Its Situation. The People, and their way of Living and Negotiation. Noble* Carawanſeras, *or Houſes of Entertainment. Many Gold- and Silk-Cloth Weevers. A ſort of great and venemous Scor-*

pion

pion and a kind of fell Spider's, which are a powerfull Poyſon, with the ſtrange manner of Cure for the ſame. Their Arrival at Natens. *A Faulcon fights and conquers an Eagle.*

EIght days long ſtayd we in *Caſwin* and departed thence on the 17 of *December* coming at night to the Village *Membere*, where all the Houſes are built round, ſo that at a diſtance they appeared like ſo many Pigeon-Cotes. The Town its ſelf is well ſtored with Neceſſaries, and affoarded us what we had occaſion for. DEC. 1671.

On the 18 we came to the Village *Areſeng*, which is ſituated in a very pleaſant Countrey and withall fertile, affoarding good ſtore of Fruit, as Pomegranats, Oranges, Lemmons and other Summer Fruits then out of ſeaſon. Here we thought good to take up our Nights Lodging.

On the 19 we betook our ſelvs to our Journey, and that day travailed about 24 [*Engliſh*] Miles, over a high, but level way, coming towards night to the great *Caravanſera* called *Choſkeru*. This is a very commodious and large Inn, built altogether of ſquare ſtones, within is a ſpacious Court where was a Fountain of very good Water: the Rooms and Appartments were no leſs commodious. On the Walls I found ſeveral *Dutch*, *Poliſh* and *Ruſſian* Names, and alſo wrote my own.

On the 20 we had a very pleaſant days Journey through a delightfull Landſhip; very cloſe inhabited and full of Villages and Hamlets coming at night to a *Caravanſera*, where we took up our Lodging for that night, and the next day ſet forward for *Saba*, which is a City lying in 34 *degr.* and 56 *min.* in a plain Field having on the Weſt the Mountains of *Elivend*, which for their exceeding height th may be ſeen many Miles diſtant. *Saba* is far leſs than *Caſwin*, but is munited with a Brick Wall, which Bricks are not burned, as ours, but only hardned with the Sun. Within the City is nothing worthy of remark, but all lies waſt and foul. *Arrival at* Saba.

They drive no Trade here than what is uſually don in Villages and mean Market Towns, to wit, Wheat and Barley, which is both plentifull, and to be had at a low price, Fruits, as Pomegranats, Oranges, Lemmons, Grapes and other ſorts which grow aſwell within as without the Town. There is a place not far from *Saba*, where the

DEC. 1671. Ground is red and barren, which, the *Perſians* ſay, was by reaſon that *Omar Zaad* within whoſe Juriſdiction this Place was, had murthered their Holy *Hoſſeyn*, and for this reaſon it was curſed by *Mahomet* for his Poſterities ſake, that it ſhould never bring forth either Herb, or Tree, nor that any Vegetable ſhould like or thrive being tranſplanted. On the Southeaſt ſide of the Town grows abundance of Tobacco, but not cultivated or planted, which is no ſmall profit to the Inhabitants.

On the 24. we departed from *Saba*, and at night ſet down at the *Carawanſera Schach Ferabath*. It was now good travailing by reaſon of the Cold which in this hot Climate is very acceptable, being not far from the Torrid Zone; where in the Summer time beſides the ſcorching heat of the Sun, the Ground is ſo hot that it brings all the Skin off ones Feet, the ways being altogether dry and ſandy, which alſo caſts a reflection of the Sun upon ones Face, as if it came out of a Furnace, whence many are ſtifled with the Heat.

Arrival at Khom. On the 25 we came to the City *Khom*, and took up our Lodging in a *Carawanſera* near to the great *Maydan*. This ſeems to be a City of an ancient ſtanding, and is at preſent very large, but by the Ruins of a Wall a conſiderable diſtance from the Town it appears that it has bin anciently much larger than now it is. It lies in 34 *degr.* 17 *min.* Northerly Latitude, and is ſituate on a level flat Ground having on the right hand the Mountains of *Elivend* whence iſſue two Rivers which run thrô this City, firſt uniting themſelvs a litle above the Town. In the Winter they lay a Bridge over it, but in the Summer it is ſome times dry. Near this Bridge ſtands a litle Chappel, wherein they ſay the Siſter of one *Iman Riſa*, who was one of the moſt eminent Succeſſors of *Mahomet* lies interred. The *Perſians* have alſo a ſpecial veneration for this Female Saint, and make long Pilgrimages to kiſs her Tomb. However the City *Khom* has many fair and ſpacious Streets, with many Piazzas and Galleries, to defend from Sun and Rain. They have alſo great plenty of Fruit, as at *Saba*, as alſo Cotton and Tobacco, which grows here in no leſs plenty than at *Saba* aforeſaid. Beſides the many rare Fruits and Plants they have, there is an excellent ſort of Melons, having the outward form and colour of an Orange, and is oftentimes taken for one, but being cut up appears within as another Melon. Theſe they commonly carry in the Hand for the delicate flavour,

flavour, but have no very acceptable or delicious Taſt. They have DEC. 1671.
alſo an odd kind of Cucumber about 18 or 20 Inches long but ſmall, which they pickle much after the manner we do ours, and uſe'em for Sauce. They have alſo the common ſort of Melons which we commonly call Muſk-millions, that far ſurpaſs ours for Delicacy. *Khom* is a place very conſiderable in regard of Traffic this being eminent for Swords, Knives, Armorers and Cutlers Works. Some of our Company bought here Scymiter Blades, for which they paid to the value of 20 Crowns a piece, yet were not thoſe of the beſt ſort. The Steel they have from *Niris* near *Iſpahan* where are ſeveral Mines. Beſides the Smiths work their chief Manufactory is Potts, there being many Fullers, who are eſteemed the beſt in *Perſia* and their work preferred before Porceline, which is tranſmitted all over the Countrey. The Inhabitants are ſociable and friendly enough to converſe withall when you have not much to looſe, but we were warned to look well about us, for they ſay that they are brought into the World with their Fiſt doubled. My Patron loſt here 2 new Scymiters he had lately bought, and I a Tobacco box. Six days long ſtay'd the *Caravan* here, during which time there was much Merchandiſe negotiated. Here I was cruelly peſtered with a *Greek* Renegado, who continually rail'd upon me, crying, *You faithleſs Dog, you Infidel*, &c. The Fellow had ſo often affronted me with theſe and the like Words that I was no longer able to endure him, but finding an opportunity I graſp'd him by the Collar, and troune'd him luſtily off with my Fiſt, and at laſt getting him down I pummeld him back and ſides, ſaying, *You varlet, now you ſhall find the Fiſt of a Man, and not the Paw of a Dog*. He ſeeing himſelf unable to get up again, drew out his Knife which he indeavored to run into my Belly, but I obſerving got it wreſted out of his Hands, althô not without a litle ſlaſh, or two, on the Palm of my Hand: with which I gave him an Excellent Croſs in the Cheek that he looked like St. *Agnes* of *Monte Sante*, withall telling him that althô he was a *Muſulman* I would give him a Chriſtian Token. With this he began to howl out, and I ſeeing the Coaſt clear thought good to get out of the way betimes, being fain to abſcond till ſuch times as the *Caravan* was to ſet forward, which was 24 Hours after.

On the 1 of *January* we left *Khom*, and came that night to *Cara-*

JAN. 1672. *wanſera Koſmabath* where we ſet down. That night it began to freez harder than is uſual in thoſe Countreys, but was by day very fair and lovly weather.

The next day we got the Village *Senſen*, lying about 5 *Dutch* Miles diſtant from *Kaſchan* where on the 3 day of *January* we arrived towards the Evening, taking up our Quarters at a very noble and commodious *Carawanſera*, ſeeming rather a Palace than an Inn.

Situation of Kaſchan, &c. *Kaſchan* lies in 33 *degr.* 51 *min.* It is built long wiſe and points East and Weſt, being munited with ſtrong Walls and round Redoubts after the old manner of Fortification, on the South ſide of the Town is a place where they exerciſe the Spear in Tilt and Tournament where are alſo ſeveral Pillars ſet up for Butts, or Marks to ſhoot at. On the other ſide of the Town are ſeveral Royal Gardens and Summer Houſes, and amongſt the reſt one of a ſtately Fabric, having a Thouſand Windows. *Kaſchan* is at this day the moſt populous and eminent Marts in all *Perſia*; having alſo a very famous *Baſar* and *Maydan* with Piazzas and ſtately Galleries, wherein are many rich Shops. It is the ſtaple for the moſt part of the Silk ſtuffs that are made in *Perſia*. They have alſo many that work in Velvets and Sattins but not altogether ſo good as thoſe in *Europe*; ſo that the King has ſent often to *Venice* expreſly for Workmen to come and reſide there, which nevertheleſs he cannot accompliſh. The *Carawanſeras* which are here very numerous do ſurpaſs all others that ever I have ſeen elſewhere: that where we took up our Quarters being more like a Palace than an Inn as I have ſaid before, having 65 ſpacious Rooms, beſides many Conveniences which others want. Below it was all Arched and made into ſtable uſe, and above with Galleries to entertain the common ſort of People. Hither reſort many *Indian* and other Merchants, coming very far and bringing with them many rich Wares and precious Commodities. There are abundance of Looms for Cloth of Gold and Silver, as alſo many that make Tapeſtry, and no leſs is the number of Idle Perſons, who ſwarm hither from all Parts, and like Drones are maintained by the ſedulous Labours of thoſe that take Pains, and here have I ſeen more Beggars than ever I have ſeen in any Town in all my Travels. As for the Countrey of *Kaſchan*, it is very fertile and of an excellent Soil, producing vaſt Quantities of Wine, Fruit, Corn and is very rich of Cattel, inſomuch that it is very cheap living there.

But

But this is alſo concomitated with other Annoyances, to wit, the Extreme Heat of the Climat, and the Multitudes of Scorpions which haunt the Town, thoſe being both great and dangerous, yet both in ſhape and colour differing from thoſe in *Italy*. The Inhabitants for fear of that venemous Animal dare not ly upon the Floor, as in other Places, where they only throw a Quilt upon the Tapeſtry, but have high Couches hanging from the Roofs of the Rooms, like Hammocks: and althô this Creature be very venemous and many are ſtung by it, yet few die, they having found out a ready Medicin againſt it, which is made of the Filings of Copper tempered with Vinegar and Honey, which is a very ſpeedy remedy, yet if neglected the Party ſtung is in danger of his Life. This I preſume has bin firſt found out by an Antipathetical quality which ſeems to be between thoſe Scorpions and Copper, for not far from the City is the Copper-mint, where if one of theſe be brought it dies immediatly. JAN. 1672.

Beſides theſe Scorpions, they are peſterd with another venemous Creature which they call *Enkurekan*, being very much like a Spider, but bigger than a Mouſe, ſom of theſe are ſpeckled, and ſom have long ſtreaks over the Back. Theſe keep moſt in ſtony Places, and haunt the Herb *Tremne*, almoſt like our Wormwood. The venemous Matter which they have in them they ſpit out, as ſom ſay Toads do, which whereſoever it lights, whether on man or Beaſt it immediatly penetrates and incorporates with the Blood, and ſo proceeds to the Head and Heart. So ſoon as the Patient is touched he falls immediately into a deep ſleep, in ſuch ſort that all the calling and beating him, will not avail or awake him; or if by chance it do he remains ſtill ſenceleſs. The beſt and ſpeedieſt Remedy for this, is the *Enkurekan* it's ſelf, pounded into a Cataplaſm and applied: but when theſe are not to be had, they uſe another mean, which is thus. The Patient is laid upon his Back and his Mouth ſet open, into which they pour as much Milk as they can make him digeſt; which done, they put him in a ſquare Cheſt, having on each ſide a Ring, through which are four Cords put and made faſt at one Ring on the Cieling. This Cheſt thus hanging, they whirl it about for a quarter of an Hour together, till the Patient breaks up and vomits all he has within him. This commonly lucks, if the Patient can be brought to ſwallow the Potion; yet they feel the vigorous force of the Poyſon for a long time after.

A great and venemous ſort of Spider.

An Antidot for their venom.

Theſe

JAN. 1672. Theſe nevertheleſs do not much annoy the Town, unleſs when the are brought in with the Faggots, which they uſe for Fewel. But wha is moſt worthy of Remark, is, that Sheep covet them more than an thing elſe, and if they chance to ſpy one run in at a hole will not lea throwing up Earth till ſhe gets it, and ſo ſnapp it up, yet ail nothin at all.

After we had lay Eight days in *Kaſchan* and bought Wares and Pro viſion, we broke up, and on the 13 at night came to *Carawanſer Chotza Caſim*, which ſtands in the middle of a Grove of Cypre and other Trees, which Winter and Summer grow always gree In the ſaid *Carawanſera* we found very good Accommodation. Her my Patron was taken with a ſudden Fit of the Cholic, which hel him ſo hard, that, we very much doubted of his Recovery, altho at laſt to my unfeigned Joy it went over.

On the 14th. we had very bad travailing way thrô dry and ſand Ground, and found no Villages nor Towns to refreſh our ſelvs at till we came at *Natens* which is a very pleaſant little City. Here w ſet down and took up our *Carawanſera* for that night. The Countre cloſe by *Natens* is very fertile and affords great plenty of good Win The Inhabitants being diligent Propagaters of the Vineyards. Ne this City is a Hill upon which is erected a very high Tower of ſquar and poliſhed ſtone which was built by *Schach Abas* as a Monumen of a Battail between an Eagle and a Hawk, where the laſt after a lon Encounter came off with Victory. It began now to freez harder an harder, as alſo to ſnow ſo that we were fain to ſtay 3 Day at *Natens* during which time we made good Cheer, and ſpared not our Pro viands which we had taken up by the way, having now got ſight o the Royal City *Iſpahan*.

On the 17th. we left *Natens* and that Day had very rocky ground to drive over, and by the way ſtop'd at a famous *Carawanſera* calle *Dombi*, where we reſted and refreſhed our ſelvs, and at night were fain to ſet down at *Ruk* a Village not far from *Iſpahan*, by reaſon o the ſnow, remaining there alſo the moſt part of the next day.

CHAP

CHAP. XXXI.

JAN. 1672.

Arrival at Iſpahan. *Their Reception with the* Dutch *Reſident. A Relation of the Stability of* Anthony Munſter, *who was urged to imbrace* Mahometaniſm: *his Death and Burial. The Manner and Situation of the* Dutch *Lodge. The Situation of* Iſpahan, *it's Greatneſs: Rivers running thrô the ſame. The Aqueduct, a mighty work of* Schach Abas. *The Streets of* Iſpahan. Maydan *and* Baſar. *Fair Arches and Galleries. The Sumptuous* Meſtzid *of* Schach Abas. Dowlet- *or* Schach-Chane, *the Royal Pallace. The* Divan-Chane, *or Court of Juſtice. The* Hiram-Chane, *or Palace of the Kings Concubines.* Allycarpi *a Sanctuary, or place of Refuge.* Carawanſeras, *Taverns.* Cahwæ-Chane, *Coffee-Houſes.* Perſian *Saints and Philoſophers.* Remal *and* Falkil, *two ſorts of Sooth-ſayers. Their ſtrange and ridiculous way of preſaging. The* Kayſery *or Gallerie of Shops.*

HAving ſtay'd the moſt part of 2 Days at *Ruk*, we ſet forward again, and on the 19 we came to the long-wiſhd-for *Iſpahan*. Where being arrived I longed greedily to ſee my Countrey-men, and went to my good Maſter *Hadſi Byram* to take my leav of him, with a Thouſand Thanks for his many Favours: I deſired him alſo to let ſom go with me to ſhow me the *Dutch* Lodge, which he with great willingneſs aſſented to, and ſent one of his Slaves with me. *Arrival at Iſpahan.*

Thus I went with Monſr. *Lewis Fabritius* and *Chriſtian Brandt* to the Lodge, where for that time the Heer *Frederic Bent* of *Enkhuyſen* was Chief Factor for the *Eaſt India* Company, Monſr. *Kaſenbroot* of *Rheenen*, Second, or Under-Factor, and Mr. *Hubert Balde* of *Amſterdam* Aſſiſtant. When we came at the Gate we found a Black, who was the Porter, and ſpoke very good *Nether-Dutch* whom we deſired to make our coming known; which when he had don, we were admitted in, and very friendly received by the ſaid Gentlemen, who invited us to ſtay there, which without much refuſal we accepted with many Thanks. They brought us forthwith into a very ſtately Room hung with Tapeſtry, and furniſhed with Beds, where we lay; and had alſo Victuals and Firing provided us, with what elſe was neceſſary. Beſides that they ſhow'd us all imaginable Friendſhip and Divertiſements, taking great delight to hear our many Evaſions and Deliverances from ſuch hard Adventures. I have elſwhere adviſed

JAN. 1672. how that being at *Scamachi*, we had a Letter from one of our Company, to which was ſet no name; yet preſumed that it was from *Anthony Munſter* the Jeweller. The certainty thereof I underſtood here, as alſo how he was brought to *Iſpahan*. Being com to *Iſpahan*, his Patron wrought very hard upon him to renounce Chriſtianity, and embrace the *Mahometan* Faith, promiſing him upon his ſo doing to eſteem him for his Son, to giv him one of his Daughters in Marriage, and a conſiderable Dowry, beyond what was cuſtomary in thoſe Lands. All theſe the young Man declined, ſaying, that neither Promiſes nor Threats ſhould ever prevail with him and therefore begg'd of him to reſt contented. His Patron finally marking, that he was not flexible to eſpouſe that Religion, he began to peſter and oppreſs him with all manner of Cruelty that he could invent, inſomuch that he became very Melancholic, and at laſt loſt his Senſes, in which condition he made his Eſcape into the *Dutch* Lodge, which he took up for his Sanctuary, and was kindly received by the Heer *Bent*, who held him ſo long in private till he had obtained his Freedom from the King. Yet ſtill continued this Frenzy with him, till he died, only ſom ſay that by certain Expreſſions he made, about the Eternity of the Soul, he was ſenſible of himſelf a little before his Death. He was buried with a more than ordinary Pomp, conſidering the meanneſs of his Perſon, as to outward Eſtate; but was highly ſet by for his perſeverance and conſtancy in the Chriſtian Faith. His outward Qualities were very commendable being of a handſom ſtature, fair Complexion and in every Way and Geſture very taking: nor was he leſs to be praiſed for the internal Faculties of the Mind and Soul, being very conſcientious and juſt in all his dealings, and withall pious. His ſweet Manners and Converſation was ſuch that thoſe who had the left converſe with him were very ſorry for his untimely, or to ſpeak more properly, his early Death, he not being fully 26 years of Age.

The *Dutch* Lodge is a very fair Building, not far from the Kings Palace, having many fair Appartments, Ware-houſes, and other Conveniences for repoſing Merchandizes. The many fair Rooms it has, are furniſhed with all neceſſary Moveables, beyond thoſe of the *Perſians*, and far more coſtly. Behind the Houſe is a fair and ſpacious Garden, having all ſorts of Fruit-trees proper to that and other Cli-

Climats, as alſo a great Vineyard and an Arboret, or Nurſery for young Trees. In the middle is to be ſeen a very noble Fountain, diſperſing it's water in various Figures in the Air, to an admirable height, ſurpaſſing moſt Water-works that I have ſeen in *Europe*. The *Hollanders* live there very ſplendidly, to uphold the Honour of the *Eaſt India* Company, and go in the *Perſian* Habit, as alſo their Waiters and Attendants, who are moſtly *Turks* and *Moors*: and becauſe I was to go for *Gameron* they gave me a new *Perſian* Suit: which I was to take with me. In the mean while I had work enough to ſatisfy their curioſitie with frequent rehearſals of what had befallen me in my foregoing Voyages to the *Indies*, and the *Levant*. *Jan.* 1672.

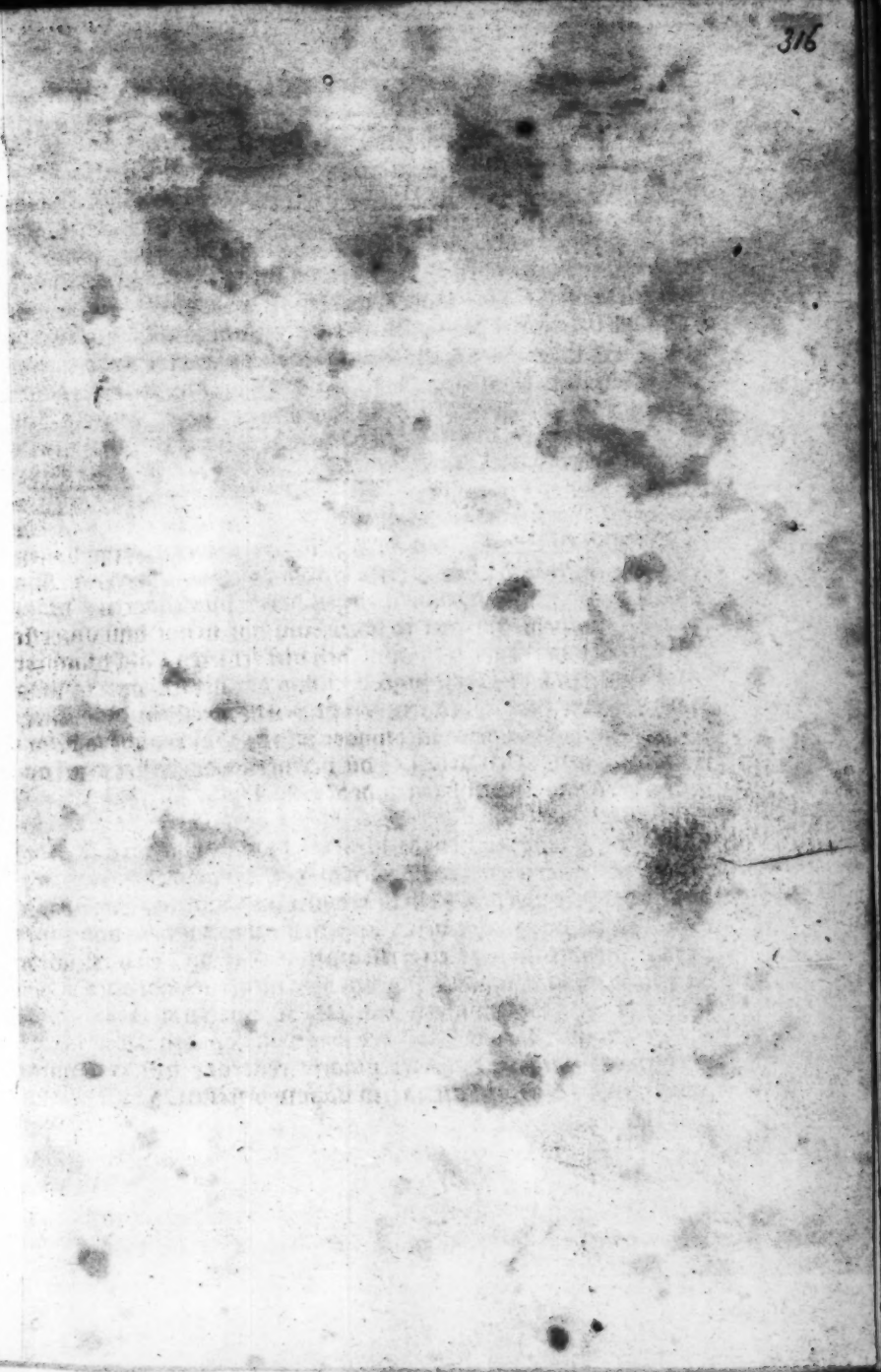
Iſpahan, called alſo *Iſphahan*, lies in 32 *degr.* and 26 *min.* in the Countrey of * *Erak*, formerly called *Parthia*. It is ſituated in a level and plain Landſhip, environed on every ſide with Mountains at a conſiderable diſtance, as the Mountains of *Demawend* on the South and South-weſt, *Maſanderan* and *Jeylak Perſan* on the North-eaſt. This is the greateſt City that I have ſeen in all *Perſia*, being, with it's Suburbs and all 16 hours going in circuit [about 48 *Engliſh* Miles] It is but very weakly fortified, the Walls being only of Earth and ſloaping inward, ſo that at Top they are not above 6 Foot thick; the Trench or Ditch is alſo very narrow, and in the Summer ſo ſhallow that the Children wade through it, and ſomtimes it is wholly dry: ſo that this City ſeems to fear no Enemy or forreign Invaſion, truſting to the potency and number of Inhabitants. * *Or*, Arak *as* Mercator *calls it*, *others call it* Chorasan, *and others* Lexa.

On the South and South-weſt ſide it is watered with the *Senderut*, a reaſonable great River riſing from the *Demawend* Mountains, which coming here is led thrô the Town by Pipes and Subterranean Aqueducts, for Kitchin and other uſes, althô in Gardens and Gentlemens Houſes they have Fountains apart. There is alſo a Branch of this River that runs thrô the Park wherein are Harts, and other Beaſts of chace: this Park or Warrand they call *Hozartzieris*. Another arm of the River is brought under Ground thrô the *Tzarbag*, or Royal Garden. Not far from hence is a fair Stone Bridge which lies over the River, wherein is great variety of rare Workmanſhip. Beſides the *Senderut*, there is another River, or rather Aqueduct, called *Abkuren*, begun by *Schach Abas* and not yet finiſhed, which is fetched from beyond the Mountains of *Demawende*. About the making of

JAN. 1672. this Aqueduct were more than a 1000 Men continually at Work, each Man having about 7^{d} *ſterl.* a day wages, yet what with the Violence of unuſual Floods, and what with the Forreign Warrs in which this Prince was involved, the work was totally laid aſide after a 3 Moneths labour. But the *Chans*, and Deputies who were more at leiſure, ſeeing the work ſo detarded joyntly lent their Aſſiſtance to carry on this laudable Deſign, in which they ſaw the King took ſo much delight, maintaining ſo many Men at their proper Expences. The Difficulty they met with was unſpeakably great, having hard Rocks of Flint and Marble to cut thrô, beſides much riſing and falling Ground, which they had to make equal. But the work being brought within 600 Paces of the Town the King died, and his Succeſſor, whoſe inclinations were quite of another ſtrain, had no mind to finiſh it inſomuch that it remains ſtill as it was when *Schach Abas* died.

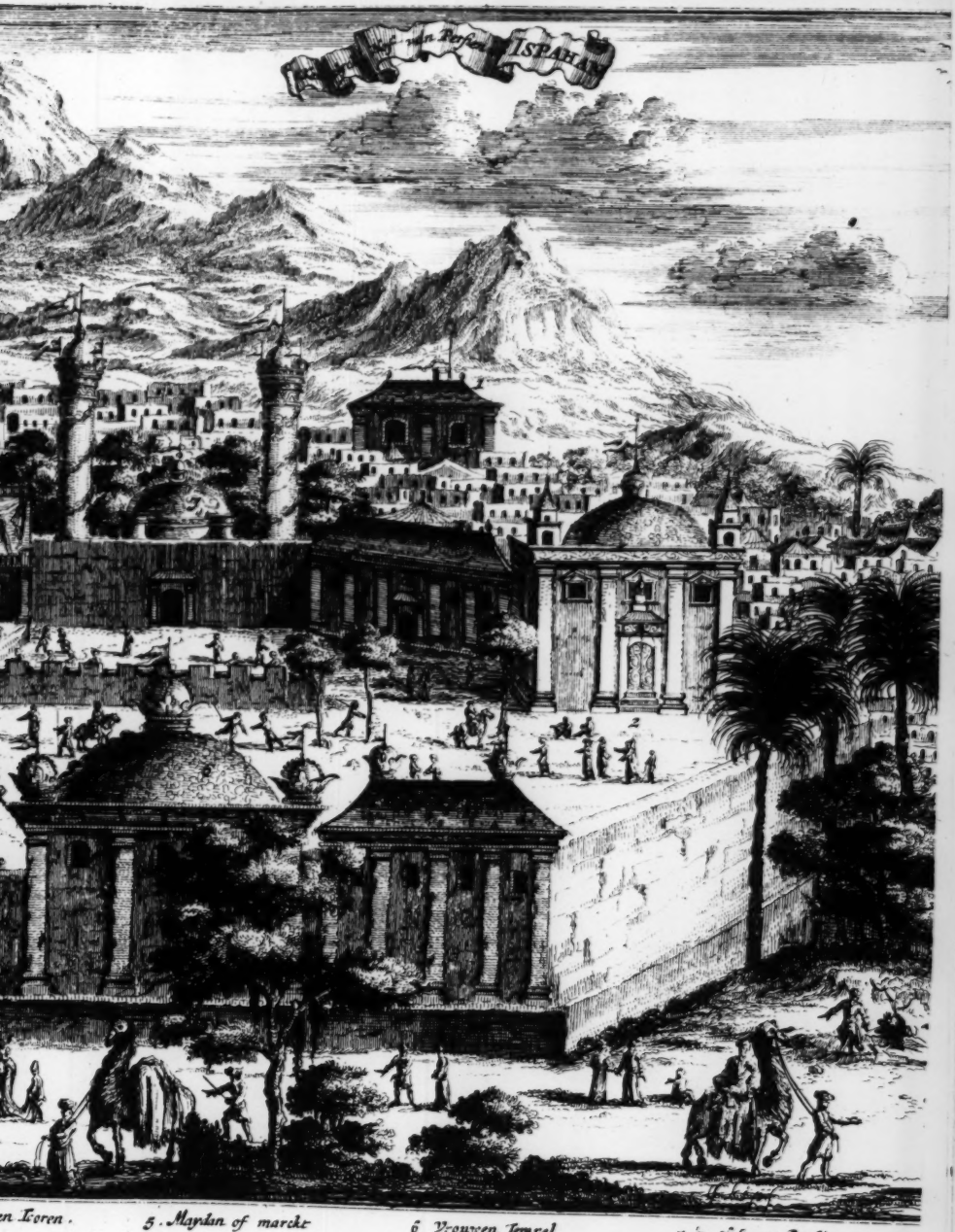
The Streets of *Iſpahan* were formerly very wide, but when the abovementioned *Abas*, King of *Perſia*, removed the Imperial Throne from *Caſwin* hither, he was followed by ſo many Gentry and others that had their Appendency from the Court, that whole Rows of Houſes were built in the middle of every Street, making by that one Street into 2. It is exceeding populous, inſomuch that many times when one would paſs thrô the *Maydan* or *Baſar* he muſt be fain to ſtay a long time, before he gets paſſage. The *Maydan*, which is a place ſerving as our Exchanges, is very large, being 700 Paces long, and 250 broad, and yet too little by far to contain the vaſt Multitudes which dayly have recourſe hither about different Buſineſſes. On the Weſt ſide towards the Kings Palace are many fair Galleries, Piazzas and Arches, where all the Goldſmiths and Jewellers have their Shops: and before the ſaid Piazzas are planted many Palm-Trees to ſecure them from the vigorous heat of the Sun. On the Eaſt ſide is another Gallerie with many fair Arches, where all ſorts of Mechanics work in the open ſight of all. Right over againſt this ſaid Gallerie is a Triumphal Arch erected, where the Kettle-drummers, Trumpetters and Fifers ſit, and play when the King goes out, or in, as alſo upon the Introduction of any forreign Prince, *Chan*, or Ambaſſador.

In the middle of the *Maydan* which is not far from the great Gate of the Palace is a Great Maſt like a May-pole planted, on the Top whereof they ſet Melon, at which they ſhoot, and oftentimes make great Matches,

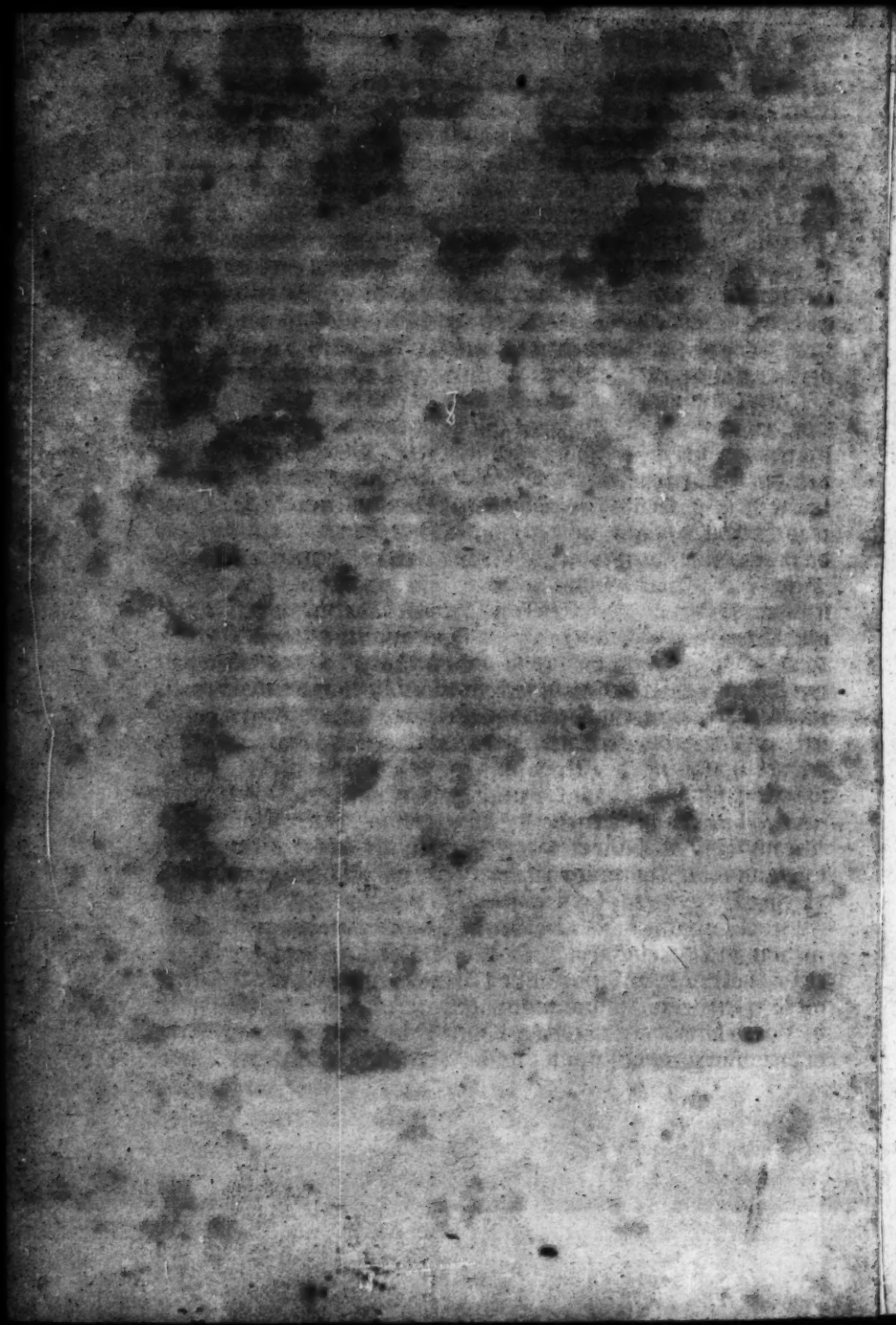




ngelse Logye 2. Metzid of Tempel. 3. Hollantse Logie. 4. Doodts Hoofden Toren.



en Leven. 5. Maydan of marckt 6 Vrouwen Tempel 7. 't Hof van Persien.



Matches, which is held for the principal Divertiſement uſed at Court, as Tilting was formerly in moſt Courts of *Europe*. *Jan.* 1672.

On the 23 of *January* was a great Match which I had the Fortune to ſee. It was appointed at the Interceſſion of the *Uſbec* Ambaſſador by the King who was himſelf preſent, and was mounted on a ſtately *Arabian* Horſe richly cappariſon'd, for the Sadle and Saddle-cloth were very richly embroydered and ſo thick beſet with Rubies and other Precious Stones that one could hardly view it. The Court and Royal Retinue were alſo well mounted and appeared very ſplendid. When they were ready to try their Dexterity one went up to the Top, and ſet up a Cup of Gold, which who could hit and bring it down, ſhould not only have it for his Pains, but alſo be preferred to great Honour, and take place among the Princeſs of *Perſia*. The King gave the *Tartars* the Advantage of ſhooting firſt who after they had ſhot more than an hour, were fain to give over: for it was to be don on Horſe back, and the Horſe in a full carier, and furthermore not to ſhoot till they came to a certain Place where they had the maſt directly on the left ſide. The Ambaſſador ſeeing that none of his men were ſo dexterous gave over, and deſired the King that he would vouchſafe to try the ſkill of the *Perſians*. Upon which the King ordered certain Perſons, who, without doubt, were very expert Marksmen, to ride in a circle, one for one, where the third that ſhot had the Fortune to bring it down, upon which the *Perſians* gave a ſhout that the Palace rang again. Upon this he was ſent for by the King and brought into the Palace with as much Triumph as if he had won ſom ſignal Victory; the Cup, Bow, and Quivers were like Trophys carried before him, by certain Heraulds thereto appointed, and he himſelf althô but a poor Mans Son of *Keylan*, promoted to great honour and reckoned in the Degree of a *Chan*. Beſides this the King gave him a conſiderable Penſion out of the Treſury to maintain his Grandour.

On the South ſide of the *Maydan* is a very ſtately *Meſtzid* which was founded and begun by *Schach Abas*, but finiſhed by *Sephy* his Nephew, who dedicated it to Twelve Saints, which are all included under the name of *Mehedi*, and, as their Hiſtorians affirm, were all buried in one Grave. The way from the *Maydan* to this *Meſtzid* is all paved with huge marble Stones, in the middle whereof is *The Metzid of Schach Abas deſcribed.*

7 Feb. 1672. a great Stone Bath where every one that will enter the ſaid Temple is firſt obliged to waſh. Leaving this Paſſage you go up two Stepps which leads you into a broad Plain, and about 8 hundred Foot directly forward another ſtep which brings you into the Church. The Gate which enters the *Meſquite* is of fair Marble and about as high as that of the *Meſchaich* of *Choddabende* in *Sultanie*. The Doors of this Temple are laid ore with Silver Plates, and ſet in with Flowers of Gold. Entring within the Gate, you com into a pompous Antichamber, the Floor whereof is beſpred with very fine Matts, upon which they fall down on their Knees, and make a ſhort prayer. From hence on each hand is a ſtately Gallery, each leading into another ſpacious Court, having in the middle a great Fountain, with a Bath. Above these great Galleries are ſom leſs, which are ſupported by marble Pillars the Chapters and Foliage whereof are neatly gilded. When you are paſt theſe Galleries and the Courts, you come into the Temple ſelf, entring in at a ſplendid Port, within and under the Cieling, all laid in with blew Tiles of true Porceline, and intermixed with Flowers of Gold. The Temple its ſelf is very large and ſumptuous, ſupported with huge marble Pillars. On the right hand at going out of this Church, you enter thrô an Arch into a magnificent Hall, where ſtands a Pulpit and an Altar, which ſaid place, for ſumptuouſneſs and uniformity of ſtructure, is reputed the moſt coſtly Building and moſt glorious Fabric in the whole *Emarath*. All the Marble whereof it is built, ſeeming to outvy the Snow its ſelf for whiteneſs, is brought hither, not without vaſt trouble and Charges, from the Mountains of *Elivend*.

The Palace. The Kings Palace, called *Dowlet*, or *Schach Chane* is alſo a very ſtately Houſe. Before you enter the outer Gate is a large Plain, on which are many Pieces of old Braſs Ordnance, unfit for uſe, and are only thrown together on heaps, and out of order: a true Emblem of ſuch Perſons as have in the Flower of their Youth been ſerviceable to their Prince and Commonwealth, but growing old and impotent becom Abjects; and are laid aſide. The Palace, 'tis true, is munited on every ſide with a Wall, but ſo meanly, that it would not reſiſt a Cannon ball, much leſs ſecure the Perſon of the King, if attacqued with any ſudden Force, which is the leaſt thing they dread. By day the utmoſt Gate is only guarded with 4 Sentinels but at

at night, by 15 Halberdiers: and in the Bed-Chamber of the King 30 young Gentlemen, being moſtly the Sons of great Perſonages, in whom the King repoſes moſt Confidence. Every night the *Kiſchiktzchi*, or Captain of the Guards, brings the King a Liſt of their Names; who are to ſtand upon the Ward the night following. Within the Palace are ſeveral great Halls or Appartments, amongſt which the *Tabchane* and the *Divan-Chane* are the chiefeſt: The former being the Banquetting Houſe, and the latter the Court of Juſtice. In the *Divan-Chane* Ambaſſadors are always received and thence introducted into the Chamber of Audience, the more becauſe the Glory of the Cavalcade and other Solemnities can be here the better ſeen. Another Appartment which is not much inferior to thoſe already made mention of, is the *Haram-Chane*, where the King diverts himſelf with his Wives and Concubines. The *Dekay* is the Place where the King retires, and has his Reſidence, when not ingaged in any important Affair, holding here his Table with his legitimat Wives. In ſhort there are many other Appartments within the Palace for inferior Concerns. Behind the Palace is a Garden which they call the *Chobbadar*, in the middle whereof is a beautifull little Chappel. Here is alſo the great Sanctuary, or Place of Refuge, which they call *Alkyarpi*, which is as much as to ſay, *Gods Gate*, in which Place a Malefactor is free from Juſtice. There is alſo another ſuch Place of Refuge, on the other ſide of the *Maydan*, called *Tzechil Satun*, ſo called from 40 huge maſſy Beams that reſt upon one Pillar ſtanding in the middle, and ſo ſupport the Roof. Hither it was whither the *Perſians* fled when the Town was taken in by the great *Tamerlan*, and oppoſed him again, but he breaking in with violence put all to the ſword, ſave thoſe that had got into the interior Temple, or *Metzid*, for which he had ſuch a veneration that he would not violate the Inſtitutions of *Mahomet*, or pollute the Sanctuary with Blood. Jan. 1672.

On the North ſide of the *Maydan*, are many Taverns and Taphouſes, and among thoſe a Houſe greatly frequented by Traders, called the *Tzaychatti-Chane* or Thee-houſe, which they prepare quite after another manner than the *Indians*, of whom the *Europeans* firſt had it; for here they put in ſo many aromatical Ingredients, that one can neither perceiv any Taſte or Smell of Tee in it. In drinking Tee they alſo accuſtom themſelvs to Play, and eſpecially at Cheſs, at which they

Jan. 1672. they are very quick and expert. The Coffee-houſes they call *Cahve Chane*; where they only go to drink Coffee and ſmoke Tobacco with which they are ſo deeply affected that they ſomtimes ſmoke in the Church. When they are within doors they have a great Glaſs full of water, thrô which they put their Pipes and ſmoke, much after the manner of an Alembic Still, which renders it very cool. When they draw, the water bubbles up as if it boyled, yet by reaſon of the ſtinking vapour that riſes from it, is very annoyſom. But when the ſmoke along the ſtreet have only ſuch a Pipe as thoſe which are now grown common in the *Low-Countreys*, being of ſeveral joynts, and the Head of Earth. Their Coffee they drink very hot, and are of opinion that it ſedates and aſſwages their Luſt to Women, which make their Wives ready to proteſt againſt it, rather willing that their Husbands ſhould tranſgreſs againſt the *Alchoran* and uſe the Juyce of the Grape than that *Arabian* Berry. The chief Cuſtomers which thoſe Public Houſes have, are the Barbers, who frequent and haunt them to be imploy'd in ſhaving their Heads: but every man that is able to buy a Raſor always carries one about with him, being very fearfull of the *Venereal Murrain*, which they call *Keſchi*, and of the *French* Pox, or ſom ſuch thing.

But quaint is the Habit, and more ſtrange the Cuſtoms of the Clergy, and ſuch as are under any Spiritual Order, who notwithſtanding their vain and palpable Fooleries, have drawn themſelves into a great eſteem of the Laity of all degrees. Theſe abſtain from Wine, live an auſtere life, and never marry till they grow very old. Som go in a long courſe Robe, others half naked, and a third ſort only with a Skin girded about their middle. They go about the Streets and when they come to any large Place as the *Maydan*, *Baſar*, or the like, ſit down, and with a moſt hideous yelling convoke an Auditory which being aſſembled they make a kind of a hortatory Oration which notwithſtanding the Scope or End, contains little elſe than a commemoration of the great and worthy Acts of *Aly*, and always at Peroration vilify and curſe the *Turkiſh* Saints *Omar*, *Oſman* and *Abubeker*. but more eagerly againſt the dogmatical Decrees of the *Ubec-Tartars*: But thoſe of that nation being of late years grown very numerous at *Iſpahan*, aſſumed the boldneſs to oppoſe them, for which end the King has allowed thoſe Worthies to go armed with Hatchets

as at preſent they do, and have free Toleration to knock any man down that ſhall offer to interrupt them. They have one only Monaſtery, or *Cœnobium*, where they all live together, which was built them at the Charges of the preſent King: and have alſo a conſiderable Sum allowed them for their maintenance, beſides what they gather from the People by mumping, or rather Mountebanking. JAN. 1672.

On the Weſt ſide about *Dowlet-Chane* are all the Sooth-ſayers, of which there be two ſorts, to wit, *Remal* and *Falkir*, both which are in their practiſe more ridiculous than our circumventing Gypſies, and conſequently not worth my Pains to recount, nor the Readers Patience to hear of 'em.

In going from the *Maydan* to the Northward you find a way which leads you to the *Baſan*, where is a very ſtately *Kayſerie*, full of Shops and thoſe ſtored with very rich commodities. This Market conſiſts in a certain number of Streets, that are moſtly arched over. Hither repair Merchants of all Nations, except *Perſians* alone, as *Indians*, *Tartars*, *Turks*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, as alſo *Engliſh*, *French*, *Italians*, *Hollanders* and other *Europeans*. Their way of Dealing is altogether for Money, nothing by Barter. *Abas* is the moſt plentifull coin in uſe among them, valuing ſomthing leſs than an [*Engliſh*] Shilling, and the *Schach Abas* which is half the value of the other; the latter is alſo moſtly called *Choddabende*. They do not uſe much Gold, but abundance of Copper which they call *Pull*, 40 of which Pieces make an *Abas*. The *Europeans* who com thither bring commonly Rix-dollars, which the *Perſians* once getting into their Hands will by no means part with them, for they are diligently ſought up by the Money-changers, who bring them to the *Serab-Chane*, or Mint, and make a conſiderable profit of them.

CHAP. XXXII.

Taberik Kale *the Treaſurie of the Kingdom. The Suburbs of* Iſpahan. Tziulfa, *a place where the* Armenian *Chriſtians have their Reſidence.* Tabriſabath. Haſſenabath. Kebrabath, *ſo called from* Kebber, *Perſians that are ſtill* Pagans. Tzarbag. *The Nature of the* Perſians. *Property of the Land. Celebration of the* Epiphany *by the* Armenian *Chriſtians.*

Iſpahan, as it is a Royal City of ſo conſiderable a Monarchy, and one of the firſt magnitude, ſo it has a great concourſe of Strangers

Jan. 1672. from all Countreys in the World, ſo that above all other Vocations the Inn-keepers generally thrive the beſt, and by their great doings accommodate all Perſons to their full Content: The *Caravanſeras* here are more ſumptuous by far than either thoſe of *Caſwin*, or any other City in *Perſia*. They are for the moſt part ſquare, ſom of them having 4 or 5 Galleries abov one another, and thoſe furniſhed with very commodious Appartments, and for their better Security for Theeves are ſurrounded with high Stone Walls.

In *Iſpahan* are alſo many fair Buildings, beſides what are already remembred, amongſt which the *Taberik Kale*, or Fort Royal where the Kings Treſury is, is one of the moſt eminent, ſituated between the Palace and the *Meſtzid Mehedi*, which is both munited with ſtrong Walls, guarded continually with a ſufficient Body of Soldiery, and has plenty of Braſs Cannon. The ſame alſo ſerves for a Magazin or Repoſitory of Armory. There are alſo two fair Chriſtian Monaſteries, the one for the *Carmelites* and the other for *Auguſtin* Monks.

Theſe with many other fair Buildings, too tedious to recount, are within the Walls. There are alſo many ſplendid Piles of Buildings without in the Suburbs, which they call the *Rhabath*. In the Suburbs are two eminent Wards, to wit, *Tzulfa* and *Ciulfa*, moſtly, or altogether inhabited by the *Armenian* Chriſtians, who are reputed the ableſt Merchants in *Iſpahan*, being tranſported hither by *Schah Abas* from their own Countrey, and have ſince injoyed ſundry Immunities, and have a Governour of their own, which they call *Daruga* who muſt bring up 200 *Tumain* yearly contribution to the King, which is taken out of their Public Stock. The private Dwelling-Houſes of thoſe *Armenians* do equal, or rather ſurpaſs thoſe within Walls for ſplendid ſtructure. On the one ſide of the River *Senderut* is another Place, called *Tabri-* or *Abas-Sabath* for that *Schach Abas* had allotted the People of *Tabris* this Part of the Town to dwell in. Another Ward, or Quarter of the Suburbs is called *Haſſenabath*, which is moſtly inhabited by the *Georgian* Chriſtians, commonly called *Trurtzi*. Theſe as well as the *Armenians* are great Merchants, being alſo highly in favour with the King, not only for the vaſt Tribute which they pay, but aſwel for their Loyalty and good deportment: and theſe are the only Chriſtians who are tolerated to live within the Walls, and have a Quarter of the Town allotted them near the *Meſt-*

zid

zid Mehedi, altho they rather chuse to dwell in the Suburbs, that they may be retire from the Calumny of the *Mahometans*, and the better enjoy the Benefits of a Christian Society. The *Kebrahath* is a District of the Suburbs lying on the West side of the City, so called from the *Kebbers*, which are a sort of ancient *Persian* Pagans, who following the old opinion of the *Persians*, when they were yet Heathens, will not embrace *Mahometanism*. These differ from the rest in Habit, as well as in Customs and Religion, wearing loose Drawers, with a long Coat only fastned at the Collar, open at the shoulders: Their Hair they let grow, all over their Head and Face. The Women are attired as the Men only with this difference, that they wear a long Silk or Cotton Scarf which trails on the Ground. The Language they speak is still the ancient *Lingua Persica*, for they are very curious in preserving their ancient Tongue without any Innovation, insomuch that the *Persians* who speak the modern Language cannot understand them [as the *English* cannot understand the old *Brittish*, or *Welsh*] yet these can both understand and speak the present *Persian* Tongue. They retain also the Ancient Characters, and adore the Sun and the Elements for Deities performing Monethly Sacrifices. Besides the veneration they have for the Sun, they do worship to the Starrs, but have little or no Judgement in the course of the same. Snakes and all other venemous Animals they hold for unclean, so that whosoever touches any of those, whether voluntarily, or by accident, must not enter into their Temples till he be purified. Their Dead they do not burn as most Pagans do, but when any Person dies, whether it be an Infant, or one com to full growth and Maturity, they wash the Body very clean, and carry it to a Place far distant from any Houses, and there set it upright against a Post, where they wait till the Ravens com and pick out the one Eie, which if it be the right Eie, they are of opinion that the Soul of the Departed is in Paradise, and therefore interr him very decently; but if the Bird pull out his left Eie first, then they hold it for a sure Token, that he is damned, and for his wicked Life to suffer perpetual Torments, and therefore esteem him not worthy of such solemn Exequies, but cast him head-long into a deep Pit. JAN. 1672.

Without the City of *Ispahan* are many fair Gardens and Summer-houses, belonging to the King and divers great Personages. The

JAN. 1672. moſt eminent of all theſe is the *Tzarbag*, not far from the great Bridge, being 4 ſquare, and about 2 [*Engliſh*] Miles in circuit. This (as was ſaid before) is watered with an Aqueduct that is conveyed under Ground by ſeveral ſmall leaden Pipes from the Main, and here and there vented by Fountains, which force the Water ſomtimes 36 or 40 foot high. On each corner ſtands a noble Summer Houſe, of an admirable rare Fabric. The Garden it's ſelf has the moſt and greateſt varieties of Fruit-Trees and Vegetables that ever I have ſeen, altho it was then Winter when I was there. And indeed the *Perſians* are great Lovers of Planting, Gardening, and all manner of Tillage; ſo that there is hardly a Houſe in all *Iſpahan*, but has ſomthing of a Garden behind it, more or leſs, whence it coms that this City is ſo great in compaſs.

As to the manner of their Hous-keeping and other peculiar Cuſtoms, I hold it needleſs to treat any thing about, ſince it may be collected out of what I have already ſaid in the foregoing Chapters. They are in general very ſociable, and for their Urbanity towards ſtrangers, draw many Forreigners thither. They are alſo Lovers of all kinds of Diſcipline, and the Gentry very ambitious in Arts and Sciences. The Land about *Iſpahan* is very fertile, and affoards all that is neceſſary for human ſuſtenance in good plenty. But the Town being very populous thrô the great concourſe of Strangers from all parts of the World makes all things very dear, but eſpecially Fewel, inſomuch that Wood and Charcoal are ſold by the Pound, and notwithſtanding it may ſeem to be in a warm climat, yet in the Winter it is very cold, or at leſt ſo ſeeming to them, who are uſed to the great heat of the Summer Solſtice. During the time of my being there they were very buſy about gathering their Ice, which is got and preſerved after this manner: Firſt they dig a great Pit in the Earth, about 40 Foot deep, which they encompaſs with a Wall, about 10 Fathom high which is commonly made of Clay, but that ſide next to the North is lower than the reſt, that the cool North Winds may allay the violent Heat of the Sun: then they dig or plow certain furrows in the Plains round about, which when it freezes, they ſet all over with Water, and ſo gather the Ice, and when they have enough cover it with ſtraw. This Ice is very common in uſe among the richer ſort in the Summer time, not only for cooling the Wines,

but

but aſwell for lying upon their Diſhes of Fruit, when they are brought up to the Table, which is only laid on a heap in the middle of the Diſh, and ſo diſſolves it ſelf, through all the Fruit. This is reckoned for a good commodity if it be a hot Summer, and is ſold as well along the Streets, as in Houſes. FEB. 1672.

On the 16 of *February*, was the Epiphany celebrated by the *Armenian* and *Georgian* Chriſtians. So ſoon as I heard what was the matter, I roſe pretty early in the morning with intent to ſee the Solemnity of the Day. The firſt I met was the *Jeſaulcor*, or Great Marſhal with all his ſubordinat Officers, who were ordered to prevent Tumults, and not to ſuffer Horſes and Camels with any Burthens to paſs over the Bridges and thrô the Streets that lead to *Tzulfa* and *Tzarbag*; which was not only don for the ſake of the Chriſtians, but upon the account of one of the Kings legitimat Wives, whom he entirely loved, being a *Georgian* by birth and educated in the Chriſtian Religion, and had a deſire to go and ſee the Solemnities performed, which the King would not deny her, for that ſhe was great with Child. About 8 in the morning were all the Chriſtian Ladies in Balconies, which were all hung with Tapeſtry, and thoſe of the greateſt rank with Canopies over head. Thoſe of meaner degree ſate on each ſide the River *Senderus*, and had a Guard of Soldiers under the Command of an Officer, to ſecure them from being abuſed by the *Mahometans*, and to ſuffer no Men to crowd in upon them. About 9 aſſembled all thoſe under Spiritual Orders and the Clergy belonging to the 10 Churches of *Tzulpha*, and the 2 Churches of *Iſpahan*. Thoſe were all attired in white Stoles and Capps of Cloth of Gold upon their Heads, with long Labels hanging down to their middle, but more gorgeous was the Attire of the Patriarch, being all over richly embroydered with Gold and adorned with coſtly Gems. Every Prieſt carried a Silver Croſs hung with litle Silver Bells and Baſons. The Croſſes which were carried by thoſe of higher degrees and in the formoſt Ranks were ſupported, each by 3 Men. The Inferior Clergy followed after with lighted Tapours in their Hands, accompanied with the moſt eminent of the Laity. The Superior Monks of *Iſpahan* adjoyned themſelvs to the Patriarch, 5 of them bearing up his Pontifical Robes, 2 on each ſide and one behind. About one a clock came the King mounted on a ſtately *Arabian* Horſe, without any con-

FEB. 1672. ſiderable Retinu ſave only the Chancelor and Grand Marſhal, the the Guards and the reſt of the Court having order to keep behind the Proceſſion. The *Begum*, or Queen before mentioned was carried before as a privat Gentlewoman in a Sedan to a great Merchants houſe, accompany'd only with one Gentlewoman, the Maſter of the Eunuchs and 4 of his Company: for the King ever repoſes great Confidence in the Chriſtians, and eſteems them as the moſt loyal of all his Subjects, as appears by his adventuring his perſon among them, without any Guards. But before the Proceſſion was ended it began to ſnow very hard, which did not only cauſe the King to leav them but put a ſtop to the further Celebration of this great Feſtival, which, by the preparations, ſeemed to be intended to be ſolemnized with very great Pomp: for beſides the Contribution of all the Chriſtians, who, as I have elſewhere noted, are very rich, the King ſends the Patriarch a conſiderable Sum of Money ſom time before, in order to the carrying on and maintaining this anniverſary Cuſtom. The Patriarch and Superior Clergy ſeeing there was no hopes of the Weather growing better, they departed without performing the ritual Ceremonies: but the Laity continued Dancing and Singing all the Night long.

In the mean while the *Caravan* was in a readineſs to depart for *Gameron*, and the Heer *Bent* gave order for Horſes and Camels to be bought up for us, to carry our Proviſion and Baggage. He alſo took care to buy us all Neceſſaries we had occaſion for on our Journey and was pleaſed to appoint me as *Caſſil Abaſſi*, or Overſeer of the Proviſion. About this time it froſe very hard, and as I not without wondring ſaw Ice 3 Foot thick, which was averred never to be known in that Countrey in any mans Age. How hard a ſeaſon it was for poor People may be gathered from what I have already ſaid how ſcarce all kind of Fewel is is *Iſpahan*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

The great Civility of Hadſi Biram. *The Authors Departure out of* Iſpahan. *Their incommodous Travelling thrô the Snow. Wells and Pits of Water abounding with Fiſh. They are much incommodated in their Travailing. The* Caravan *aſſailed by Robbers. Their Superſtitious horrour of Swines Fleſh. Sepulchre of* Schach Solyman's *Mother. The Sepulchre of* Noah, *his Wife, Children, and Childrens Children.* Tzilminar. *The Pompous Relicts and Ruins of the famous* Perſepolis, *and the noble Fort thereof. The Statue of* Ruſtan, *a* Perſian *Champion.*

ON the 17 of *February* we had order to make ready for our Journey, wherefore that morning I went to return my hearty Thanks to my good Maſter, *Hadzi Byram*, where coming and finding him at home I ſaluted him after the *Perſian* manner, withall manifeſting my gratefullneſs to him for his many Favours, which he had ſhown me, althô without the leſt deſerts; but he interpelling me in my diſcourſe, forbad me to talk any more of that, ſaying, *I have not yet his ſo worthy as to give you the Reward I promiſed you: which was to ſet you free when you came to* Iſpahan, *and now I underſtand you have redeemed your ſelf with your own Money: however I ſhall make it good to you by an Equivalent.* With that he opened a Cheſt and gave me 100 Dollars, ſaying, This I give you as part of Reward, for your care to ſave my life when I was in danger of looſing it at the *Caſpian* Sea. This extraordinary great Bounty coming ſo beſides my expectation, put me to a ſtand what reply to make at firſt, but conſidering how he might look upon it as an Ingratitude to be ſilent, I expreſſed my ſelf after this manner, *Sir, I am not able ever to do you ſuch ſervice as may recompenſe your Goodneſs, but I hope that* GOD *will remember your Bounty don in ſecret, which is the trueſt Charity, notwithſtanding the unworthineſs of my ſelf on whom it is ſhown.* Great reaſon it is that I ſhould record the worthy Deeds of this *Turkiſh Chriſtian* or *Chriſtian Turk:* not only as don to me, but as don to one of another Faith, and that without vain Glory, a thing he ever hated: his calling me aſide and forbidding me to make it known, manifeſt the Abſoluteneſs and Integrity of Charity, well knowing that I was juſt upon my departure, and conſequently not likely

FEB. 1672.

FEB. 1672. likely to be his Trumpeter: but the more he charged me to conceal it the more I reckon it my Office to publiſh it, that Chriſtians whoſe firſt and chief Duty towards their Neighbour is Charity, and that the remiſsneſs of that Duty may be convinced by thoſe who hold it as a voluntary and not an injoyned Act. In ſum his fair Carriage towards me, unfortunately thrown from a Condition of Freedom to a State of Slavery, had ſo far ingaged me to love and honour him, that (had it not been for the Reſtriction and Care of a Wife and Children who lived all this time as Widdow and Orphans) I could have been more content to ſerv him all my Life as a Slave, than to have the Liberty which I have before and ſince enjoyed, with ſuch Anxiety. When, with a faint Heart and Eies full of Tears, I took my laſt leave of him he embraced me, and told me he had yet hopes to ſee me once again, and when I was at a diſtance, cried out, GOD *in the higheſt Heavens conduct you:* GOD *Almighty bring you in ſafety home:* which were the laſt words I heard him ſpeak.

Departure of the Author from Iſpahan. My two Companions, to wit, *C. Brand*, and *L. Fabritius* were returned back again to *Derbent*, with intent to go by way of *Ruſſia*, and I departed with the *Caravan* of the Honorable the *Eaſt India* Company, from the Royal City *Iſpahan*, having a ſufficient number of Camels and Mules to carry our Proviſion and Baggage to *Gameron*.

Mayar. The ſame day we travailed 8 Leagues and about 10 a Clock came to a village called *Majar*, where we took up our nights Lodging. We had alſo in our Company ſom of thoſe *Perſians*, of whom I have already made mention that live ſtill in Heatheniſm, whom I found very civil and faithfull in all their Doings.

On the 18 it was very cold weather and ſnowy, that we could hardly keep a Horſeback. The ſnow was here thicker than ever I have ſeen it (to my knowledge) in the *Low-Countreys*, being between 4 and 5 Foot deep upon the Ground, and the Path ſo narrow, that the Horſes oftentimes going out of the Way, tumbled down in the ſnow with the Packs, which happening ſo often mainly detarded that days Journey. Before night we got the hilly Countrey and ſet down in the village *Caniſcha*, where, by reaſon of bad Weather, we reſted 3 days with the *Caravan*.

Upon the 22 we ſet forward again and had very hilly way, which proved

proved ſo incommodous that we travailed that day no more than 6 *Dutch* Miles, and took our Nights reſt at a *Caravanſera*, where we met another *Caravan* coming from *Gammeron* richly loaden with all ſorts of *Indian* Commodities, and bound for ſeveral Markets in *Perſia*. FEB. 1672.

On the 23 we broke up and the ſame day had bad and ſlippery way inſomuch that ſom of our Camels and Horſes fell, whereby the Cheſts and Goods were much endamaged. The Heer *Bent*, as I ſaid before, having appointed me as *Caſſil Abaſſi*, or Overſeer, it was my duty to look to the reparation of this Damage, and to ſee the Cheſts effectually mended, and therefore I went to ſee if I could meet with any Perſon who could help me in the Village, letting the *Caravan* remain ſo long in a *Caravanſera*. At laſt after much enquiry I found one, but coming back underſtood that my Portmantle and my Money was ſtole, which put me in a great ſtrait for I had not above the value of 25 *gild.* [or 55 *ſh. ſterling.*] left I ſuſpected that ſom of our Company was the Party that had committed the Theft, and had alſo a privat hint given me of it. The matter concerned me ſo far, that I forthwith began to tax the Party with it that I had in ſuſpicion, but he ſtoutly denied it, and was ſo diſpleaſed at me for blemiſhing his Reputation, that he intimated the matter to ſom of his Companions, who unanimouſly ſwore to be revenged on me and taking their opportunity fell all together upon me, and uſed me in moſt cruel manner. It was the Brother of the Party that told me, averring that he had ſeen it, but when he came to confront him; denied every word he ſpoke to me, inſomuch that I was fain for the time being to be patient, yet fully reſolved to have it out of his Hide the firſt opportunity. That day we travailed 7 *Dutch* Miles and came at night to a Village formerly called *Jurgeſtan*, now *Ieſegas*.

On the 24 we broke up again, and that morning met a Poſt coming from *Gameron*, and intending for *Iſpahan*, of whom I underſtood that the Director *van der Duſſen*, who had remitted the Money for my Redemption was gone for *Batavia*. Theſe Tidings I muſt confeſs, were very unwelcom to me, becauſe I knew it would be 4 Moneths before any Ships would go for *Batavia*, the more becauſe I was to endure the hot ſeaſon at *Gameron*. This day we travailed 6 *Dutch* Miles and at night came to a fair new-built *Caravanſera*.

The next day we broke up and paſſed thrô a fair Town called

FEB. 1672. *Surina*. About 12 a clock it began to ſnow very hard, ſo continuing till the Evening when we met with a good *Caravanſera*, which was no ſmall comfort to us, having no ſtomach to lie ſuch weather without a Roof in the open Field. The ſame day we travailed 7 *Dutch* Miles.

On the 25 we had very good weather, and the Way alſo reaſonable good ſo that in good time we got to a *Caravanſera*, which lay about 8 *Dutch* Miles, or ſomthing more from the other. Near this place are divers Ponds of ſweet Water affoarding alſo great plenty of Fiſh: wherefore we went to Angle, and took about 40 Carps, which becauſe of the Novelty were very acceptable, having eaten nothing all the way but ſalt Meat. Theſe Ponds as well as the *Caravanſera* were made, as we underſtood from an Inſcription over the Door, at the Charges of the *Dutch East India* Company.

On the 26 we had very high Hills to clamber over, ſo that the hollow places in the way being fill'd with ſnow, put us (notwithſtanding all the care and vigilance we could uſe) to a great deal of trouble, for the way being very ſlippery, the Camels, Mules and Horſes often ſtumbled and fell, which greatly endamaged the Cheſts which were but newly and very looſly repaired. Beſides that it ſnew very thick all the Forenoon, which made us long for a *Caravanſera*, that we could not reach till late at night coming to the Village *Guſti*, where we reſted for that night, having made no more than 5 *Dutch* Miles the whole day. That night and the next day it continued ſnowing, ſo that we reſolved to continue under roof till the weather grew better. About noon came a *Caravan* from *Syras*, but we having taken up the place, they were fain to go forward till they found another.

The Caravan ſurprized by Robbers.

On the 27 the weather grew better and the Sun ſhone, ſo that we proceeded on our Journey, but having travailed an hour or two, we were ſurprized by ſom Robbers, who all on a ſudden aſſail'd us and beſet the *Caravan* round, and fell a tearing all they could com at. Our Company, being affraid of their lives deſerted the Camels and left me alone to ſtand out the brunt of all. One of the Robbers thruſt his hand into a Bag in which were 3 or 4 Flitches of Bacon and ſom Hams, who, when he came to know what it was, fell a curſing and menacing me, that I did not warn him, for he was thereby unclean, and according to the *Mahometan* Superſtition not to com into the Society of others, or enter the Temple. That *Gnat*, it ſeems he ſtrain'd at,

at, yet ſtuck not to ſwallow a *Camel*. Having taken what they could carry they left me, but not without a Token to remember them, giving me ſo many Rebounders about the Head with their Truncheons, that I was taken up for Dead by my faithfull Fellow-Travellers, who came again when they ſaw there was none to moleſt 'em. That day we travailed 24 [*Engliſh*] Miles, and at night came to a very commodious and ſtately *Caravanſera*, ſuch as I had not met with all the way unleſs in ſom great City, being all round with Galleries. FEB. 1672.

On the 28 we ſet forward on our Journey and came to a fair Village called *Meſtzid*, where we had a very commodious *Caravanſera*, and ſtay'd there that night. The ſaid *Caravanſera* was nothing inferior to that we had the night before, aſwell in reſpect of Conveniency as ornament, having much variety of Carved work, as Foliage, Fruſtrage, &c. after the *Perſian* manner: the Walls alſo were covered with a neat ſort of white glazed Tiles. Near to this Place is the Sepulchre and Tomb of the Mother of *Schach Solyman*, being a fair Monument of white Marble: hither repair many devout Women to viſit the Tomb and pour out their Prayers and Supplications for themſelvs and Friends, which I remark'd was very brief, for they only (according to the general Injunction) puſh'd the Tomb with their Head 3 times, and as often ſtooped to kiſs it, then muttered out a ſhort prayer, which doubtleſs they have by form, and ſo departed. Having ſtay'd there that night we went in the Morning to buy up ſom freſh Proviſions and Fruits, that place being very famous for Winter-growth of Fruits, both as to plenty and Cheapneſs. *The Sepulchre of Schach Solymans Mother.*

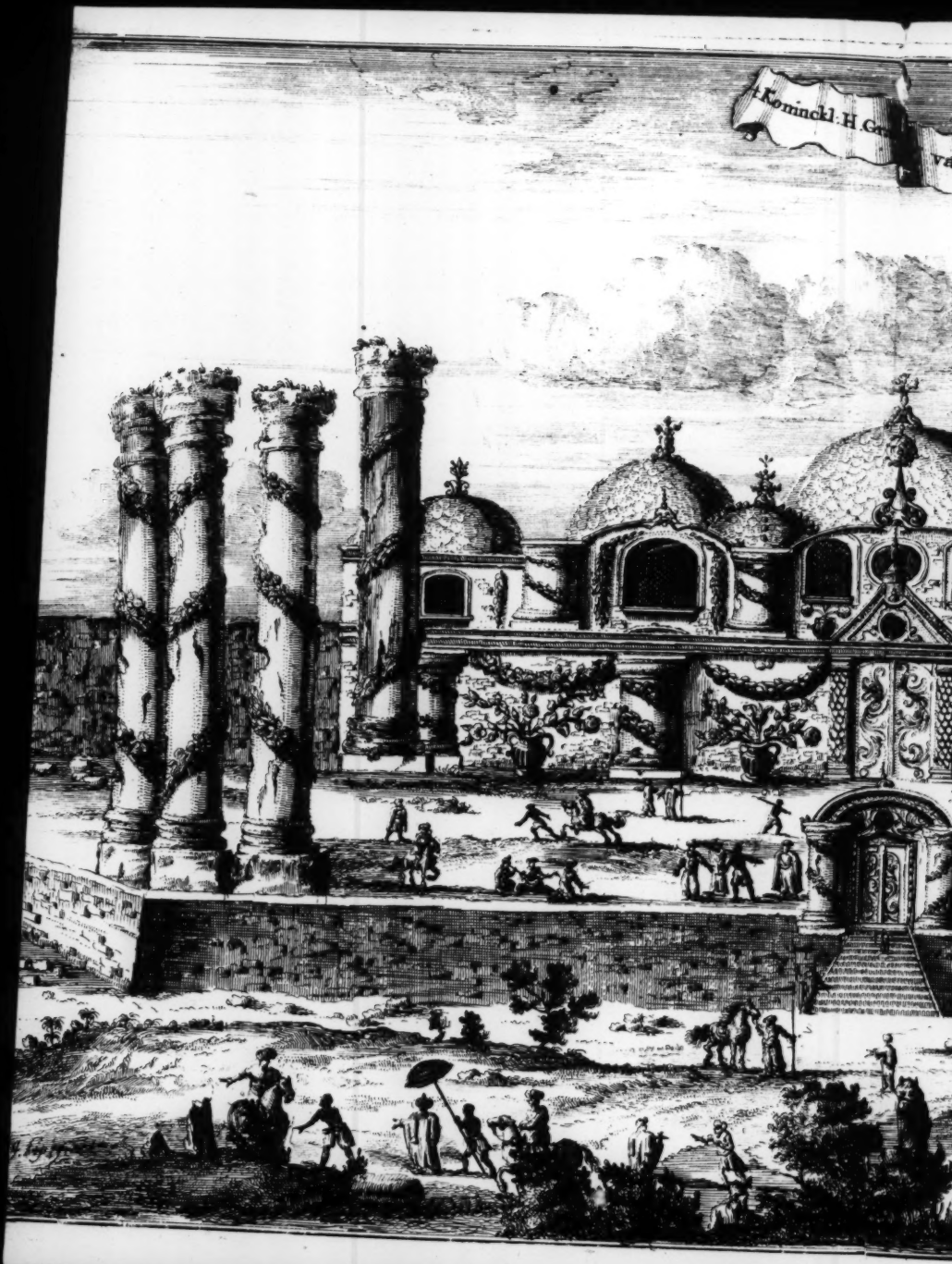
On the * Nine and Twentieth of *Febr.* we came to a little village called *Siwa*, having that day travailed 5 *Dutch* Miles. * *For it was Leap year.*

The next day we ſet forward on our Journey and travailing a good pace, came pretty early into the village *Murdaſch*, where we reſolved to reſt a little being almoſt wearied out with the badneſs of the Way and Weather. The next morning I took a turn without Town on Horſe-back, with one of our Company, where having rode about 2 Miles to the Eaſtward from the Town, we deſcried a huge fair Pile of Building, which afterwards by ſom Pilgrims that we met, we underſtood was a Sepulchre. The general Structure was a very fair Temple altogether built of Marble, ſtanding on a riſing ground and ſupported with 10 high and maſſy Pillars. When we entred we aſcended

MAR. 1672. aſcended ſeveral ſteps, and went thrô a very ſtately Gate of fair white and ſpeckled Marble; but underſtood very well that no Chriſtian was permitted to enter, leſt they ſhould pollute it: however being ſhorn after their manner, and having no diſcrepance of Habit whereby they might ſuſpect me to be any other than a very *Muſulman*, I went boldly in to view all that was to be ſeen, which a privat Perſon and a Layman was permitted to view, for the innermoſt Vault is not to be ſeen unleſs of Princes and the Spiritualiſts. Above the ſaid Vault hung ſeveral golden Lamps, which burn continually, and as the Watchmen told us the Coffins that ſtood below were of maſſy Gold. In this Sepulchre they told us were preſerved the Bones of *Noah* and his Wife, of *Shem*, *Ham* and *Japhet*, together with the 5 Sons of *Shem*, *viz.*, *Aſhur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, *Aram* and *Elam*, by whom the City * *Perſepolis* is ſaid to be firſt founded of old called *Elamus*. This was told me by an old *Perſian*, with whom I had ſom Diſcourſe, who alſo ſaid that he had the keeping of ſom old Regiſters and Antiquities. Here they alſo ſhow ſeveral Skeletons and Pieces of Bones to Pilgrims in Golden Diſhes, which they ſay are the Bones of *Noah* and of his Grand-child *Elam* [*but beleev it that liſt*].

* See Joſephus.

From this Temple we poſted forward to the Ruins of the Royal Fort called *Schilminar*, on *Tzilminar*, or according to the variety of the Dialects *Cehilminar*, which is as much as to ſay *Forty Pillars*, ſo called from ſuch a number of Columns that it has formerly had; althô the number is now ſufficiently diminiſhed, partly by the negligence of the *Perſians*, in reparation of the ſame, and partly from other Occaſions which make'em to uſe ſom of the Stones of this ſaid Caſtle: beſides the great diſeſteem which the *Mahometans* have for Heatheniſh Antiquities, rather inclined to raſe and demoliſh, than maintain and repair the Relicts of Gentiliſm, eſpecially what has bin built to any ſuperſtitious End. Thoſe Pillars that remain ſtill whole are 9 Cubits high, and about Five in compaſs at the Baſis. I told about 18 or 20 of thoſe ſaid Pillars that were whole to the Chapiter. It retains ſtill the name of K. *Darius* his Palace that being his Manſion-houſe. The ancient *Greek* and *Latin* Writers aſcribe the Founding of it to *Cyrus*, but the *Perſians* to one *Schach Iamſcha*, which I preſume cannot be reconciled: but however their Difference in Opinion be, certain it is that the Founder muſt have bin a mighty Prince, who hath raiſed


Kominckl. H. Ca


PERSEPOLI

raiſed ſuch an admirable Structure, appearing more like a vaſt City than one entire Building: and ſuch was the Satisfaction I reaped from it, that I ſhould not have repented my Labour to have travailed a Thouſand Miles to ſee it. This ſtupendious Palace is ſeated, as appears by the Ruins, on a Plain, environed on every ſide with Hills, and has extended it's Compaſs as far as the Hill called *Kuhi-rahmet*, which is as much as to ſay, the *Mount of Mercy*. On the Eaſt are two places of Entry with Marble Stairs, each ſtep being 30 Foot long and 17 of thoſe ſteps are wrought out of one Stone, which muſt neceſſarily have been a very great one, each ſtep being half a Foot high. Being aſcended 32 or 33 of thoſe Steps we came at a great ſquare Reſting place the Walls and Pavement whereof was altogether of hard and poliſhed Marble. On each ſide were the Images of divers Beaſts as Lions, Elephants, Griffins, Horſes and others Animals; afterwards we came into a large and ſpacious place, about 90 Paces ſquare, where were Eight Gates, 4 whereof were 4 Paces and 3 Two Paces wide. Above and on each ſide of theſe Gates were divers Statues and other Figures, which for their Boldneſs, due Conſtruction of Members, Symmetrie of Parts, Analogy of Depreſſion and Elevation, Holding and Foreſhortning of Plains, with all other Tokens of true Art, ſurpaſs all the Carved works that ever I have ſeen either in *Greece*, *Italy*, or the whole World beſides, that I have had the Fortune to ſee. Below ſtood a hard bright poliſhed Stone, ſet faſt in the Wall which might have ſerved for a Mirror, on which was an Inſcription in very ancient Characters ſuch as the modern *Perſians* cannot read. The Letters below were broad and riſing higher grew ſmaller towards the Top like an *Obeliſk*. I had work enough to view all the Images that were up and down, as of Giants, Lions, Bulls, Griffins, Tygres, The Olympian, or Games of *Hercules*, Battels, &c. The Statues have moſtly Weapons, Inſtruments of Muſic, or Garlands in their Hands. Here and there are ſeveral Horſemen armed with Bow and Quiver, Som with Spears, Rondaces, Scymiters and ſuch like Weapons. Their Habit is very ſtrange and ſeems to be very ancient: ſome have round Bonnets as the noble *Venetians* now, and Knights Templars of old uſed to wear. Abov the great Gate is a huge Statue appearing abov the reſt, having a long Robe on, with curled hair and a long Beard, a Torſe about his Head as

Mar. 1672.

Mar. 1672. formerly the *Roman* Emperours were went to have: under his Robe he had a Veſture full of Foldings which were very ſoft and ſilk-like, the ſleeves were very looſely cut and wide, hanging down like a Surplice, [or as thoſe of a Batchlor of Art in *Oxford*] In one hand he had a Mond, and in the other a Staff or Scepter. The *Perſians* ſay that it is the Statue of *Solomon* King of the *Hebrews*, but I rather take it to be *Alexander the Great*, becauſe of the Mond, who was the firſt Monarch (according to Hiſtory) that was ſo painted, as ſuppoſing himſelf to have conquered the whole World, and for ſom time had his Reſidence in this Palace. Beſides this were on each ſide ſeveral others which ſeemed to be of leſs degree and meaner Perſonages, as well by the Places where they ſtood as by the Habit, being clad in ſhorter Robes and narrow Veſtures, with ſleevs cloſe at the wriſt, like the Peſantry about *Derbent*. Som of theſe had long old-faſhion'd Spears, others led Horſes and Mules, and others brought oxen and Sheep with Mallets, Hatchets, Knives and other Implements for Slaughter as if they were a going to Offer. In this ſpacious Hall were alſo many other Figures as Emblemes, which were too dark and abſtruſe for me to unriddle. Leaving this Appartment we went into another more wide and ſpacious than the former. At one End was another Statue cloſe and (as I ſuppoſed) faſt to the Walls, which by the Crown, or rather Cap of State, ſeemed to be ſom Prince. He was on his knees, and as it were, praying to the Sun, Fire and a Serpent. The Inhabitants told me that it was the Image of *Jamſchet*, or *Jemſcha* to whom, as I have already ſaid, the *Perſians* aſcribe the Founding. The moſt part of thoſe Statues were gilded, and appear ſo yet. There were alſo ſeveral Battails admirably well don, and had good Symmetry and Proportion according to the Diſtance, Holding and Perſpective, all hewn out of black Marble and ſet faſt in the Wall. When this illuſtrious Pile has bin in it's glory, might not only have bin recounted among the Wonders of the World, but for it's admirable rare Works and ſtupendious Structure, well have claim'd the Priority as Paramount, according to the appearance of it's Ruins, which I found conformable to what is recorded of it in Hiſtory, for there appears the Foundation of a triple Wall, the firſt or outmoſt was about 32 Foot high, having many Bulwarks and Towers, which have bin as excellent for their Ornament as Strength

as sufficiently appears by what is still remaining. The second seems to have been nothing inferior to the first for Beauty nor Strength, and twice as high: The third was 120 Foot high: on each side was a Passage to enter, where were many Watch-Towers and Gates of durable and hardest Marble. These Fortifications were also environed with Pallisados of huge Beams, and many Batteries, to the Terror of the Enemy. It is neither to be known nor guessed what an immense Treasure this vast Fabric has cost, when it has bin first founded: and it is highly to be lamented that such a stately Fabric should be laid wast upon such a light account, which in som manner might be thought intransitory, or not to suffer decay so long as Art had any Countenance upon Earth. The Historians all concurr in this Opinion that it was burn'd by * *Alexander the Great* in a drunken mood, at the instigation of the notable Whore *Thais*, who perswaded him that he could not gratify the *Greeks* and spite the *Persians* more, than to set this City on Fire, which had ever bin a Terror, not only to *Greece* but to the whole World. Upon this Motiv the King went himself in Person and lay the first fire to it, being imitated by a Train of Courtiers and Whores all besotted with drink', so that this wonderfull great and the most splendid Palace in the Universe was in a moment laid in Rubbish, there being much Cedar in it. When the Soldiers saw all on a flame, they ran to quench it but seeing the King very busy in setting it on Fire, they fell to a contrary work, and in stead of indeavouring to quench it brought wood to increase the Fire; whence it appears that the strongest Fort, I presume, that ever was, or is in the World, was demolished by the powerful Interest of Women and effects of Wine. MAR. 1672.

* Qu. Curtius lib. 5.

About 2 Leagues from *Chehilminar* are the Ruins of som Statues, and amongst others one which they say was the Image of *Rustan*, a *Persian* Champion of great fame; for which reason every great Hero among them that has performed any valorous Atchievment is called *Rustan*, and glories as much in that, as the *Greeks* of old by the usurped name of *Achilles*, or the *Roman* Stage-players in the name of *Roscius*. This Image as also all the rest are about 3 times as great as the Life, and armed with Clubbs and other ancient Armor. But to rehearse the Fables that the *Persians* told me of those Heros, would rather impair the Credit of what is already said in conformity with Truth than

The Image of Rustan a Persian Champion.

MAR. 1672. than giv Satisfaction to the Curious; wherefore here as in many other places where I might have interſperſed ſuch Dreams, I thought good to ſpare the pains of relating them.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Arrival at Scyras. *They meet with ſom Carmelites. The baſe dealings of thoſe of the* Caravan. *The Author meets with the Theef that had pillaged him. Mr.* Struys *well entertained by a* French *Chirurgeon. A Deſcription of* Scyras. *Diverſe* Meſtzids, *or Sepulchres. The Pallace of the* Chan. *Excellent Wine about* Scyras. *Noble Orchards. Departure from* Scyras. *The Special Bounty of the* Carmelites *and the* French *Chirurgeon. Dates plentiful and cheap. How the Date-trees are propagated. Arrival at* Scharim. *They meet a* Caravan. *Aſſailed by night of* 30 *Robbers, who kill* 5 *Men of the Company, and at laſt by a unanimous continuance of the* Caravan *force them to yield. The Robbers beg Quarter which is refuſed. They ſuffer themſelvs to be bound, are diverſly tortured and diſpatched. Great plenty of Partridges.*

AFter we had refreſhed our ſelvs and reſted the *Caravan*, we got all in a readineſs, and the firſt day towards the Evening came to the Village *Alikon*, which we found well pleniſhed with all neceſſaries and Refreſhments for our ſelvs, and good Provender for our Horſes and Camels. Thus having ſpent the fore part of the night in mirth and divertiſement, we took our reſt, and the next day purſued our Journey coming on the 8 of *March* to *Scyras*, where I brought the Goods of the *East India* Company into their Ware-houſe there.

So ſoon as I was arrived at *Scyras* I came to underſtand that there was a Monaſtery of *Carmelites* in the Town who had bin always friendly to Chriſtian Paſſengers and Travailers in aſſiſting them with their advice, &c. Whereupon I went to find out the Convent, and being come got ſpeech with 2 of them who received me very kindly, and deſired me to lodge in the Convent ſo long as I ſtay'd at *Scyras*, and treated me all the while with all the Delicacies they could get, and the Wine that the Countrey affoarded. The one was an *Italian* of the City of *Naples* by name *Felicello*; the other a *Pole* from *Warſaw* and called *Jadiſlau*.

During

During my aboad here our *Caravans* Company had made unanimous resolution among themselvs not to proceed on their Journey with me, and that upon very slender and weak pretences: they had already received half their Moneys at *Ispahan*, and we were not half way by much: but whether it was because my Money was stollen, or because (perhaps) that they feared to be examined about the Theft when we came to *Gameron* and so condignly punished, I cannot determin: But whatsoever their Reason was, they left me there at a great loss, so that I was fain to seek out a new Conduct, and supply my self with fresh Camels and Horses, which without the help of the 2 Monks had bin impossible for me to accomplish. MAR. 1672.

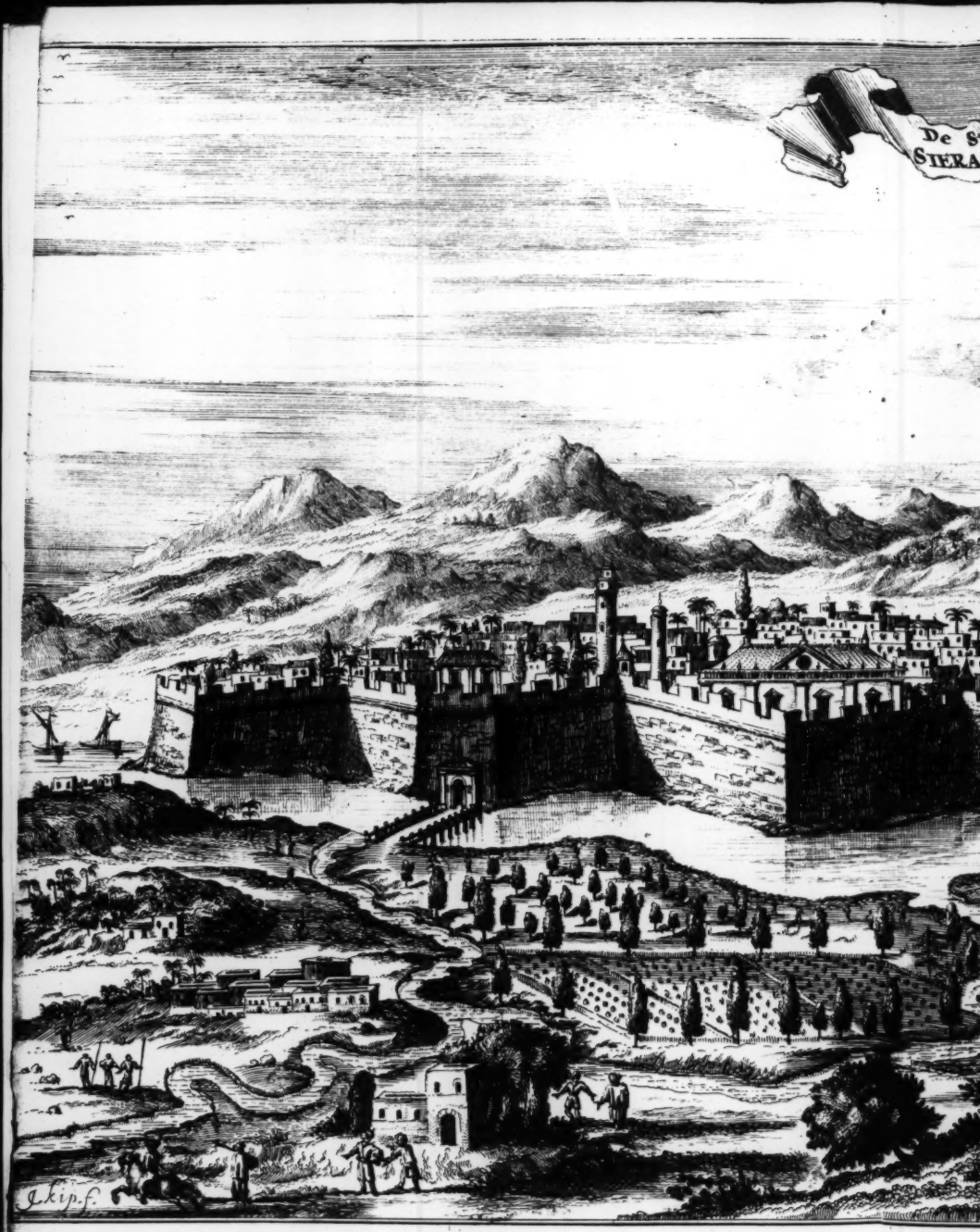
The third day after my arrival at *Scyras* I went without the Town to walk, and accidentally found the Thief who had stole my Moneys, and with the help of his Brother had so misused me, as was said before, bathing himself in the River, so that seeing so fair an opportunity to revenge the Villany, I ran towards him and with a *Damaskin* Scymiter I alwaies wore, gave him an excellent Cross on the Cheek, and besides that lent him a few slashes about his back and shoulders, which don I took his clothes and cut them all to patches, so that the poor Caitiff was fain to go mother naked into the Town. I threatned him also to write to *Ispahan*, and make complaint at Court, and in order thereto to address my self to the *Chan* of *Scyras* to dispatch the Letters. This it seems put him into such Consternation as well as his Companions, that he durst not appear abroad to challenge me for any injury don him, fearing, perhaps, upon my address to the Deputy that they would be secured till further Information: nor did I ever see him since.

Besides the gentle Reception and the great kindness these Friars showd me, I was kindly treated by one Doctor *Robin*, a *French-man*, which the *Persians* called *Hakim Robin*, for *Hakim* in their Tongue is as much as to say Doctor: but his first name I cannot remember. This same Gentleman, I must confess, showed me great friendship, and sent a Letter for me to Holland inclosed in his own. So that in the hardest and greatest extremities I ever found som Friends, and when I was almost in despair of ever returning to my pristin State, and plunged in the most grievous Miseries, obtained nevertheless by the Providence of Almighty GOD, som unexpected Sublevation,

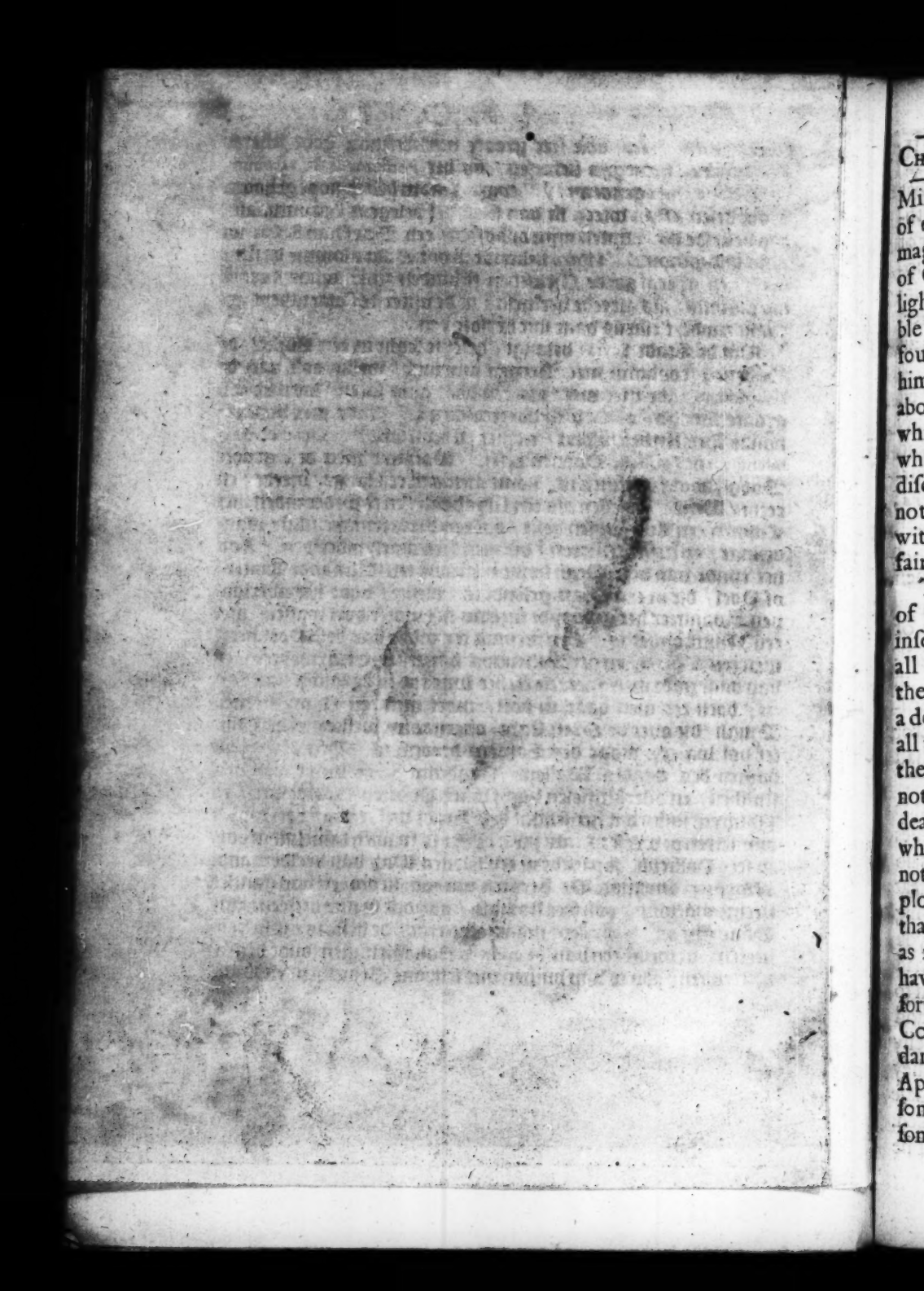
MAR. 1672. that I ſhould know what it is to be miſerable, and what it is to be thankfull.

Scyras as moſt other Towns in *Perſia* lies in a Valley, environed on every ſide with Hills. On that ſide towards *Iſpahan* is only one Thorowfare or Paſſage, which is laid ore with an Arch all over painted with variety of Beaſts and Animals, and inſcribed in ſeveral Places with *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Rhymes and Mottos. When one is paſſed thrô the ſaid Arch is a fair and ſpacious ſtreet, which leads to the City, being plain, wide, eaven, and planted on each ſide with Trees [like the Palmal in *Saint James's* Park] which with the great number of Gentlemens Houſes on each ſide renders it as an amiable Paradiſe. At the end of the way is a ſtill ſtanding pool or pond, which is drawn off with a Trench on each ſide: having paſt this we come over a Plain or Flat field, and juſt before the Gates of the City to a great long Stone-bridge which lies over a Ditch, which in the Summer time is dry, but in the Winter gives the Inhabitants work enough to keep it in with damming, for ſomtimes when it ſnows and the Water falling unexpectedly from the Mountains it overflows the whole champain Land, between the aforeſaid Pool and the Ditch, is a little Chappel founded by a *Carmelite* Friar, which is often viſited by the Chriſtians that live in *Scyras*. The *Maydan* or Market of *Scyras* is without the Walls, which they ſay is by reaſon that this Place is of great Importance and in danger of being ſurprized or taken in by the Boors that live without the *Perſian* Juriſdiction, who have more than once attempted to make themſelvs Maſters of the Town and Fort. On each ſide the Town appear the Ruins of Old Walls, Gates, Towers, Pillars and other great Buildings, which is a fair argument that *Scyras* has bin formerly much larger than it is now at this day, which is nevertheleſs a Town of conſideration, in reſpect of the preſent Trade and number of Inhabitants. The greateſt part of the City Walls are of Marble, for that is there in greater plenty than Friſe [or *Portland*] Stone with us: but as for the Streets they are neither fair nor ſpacious, but void of elegant building and uniformity of ſtructure, and by reaſon that they lie unpav'd very foul and hardly to be paſſed in bad and rainy Weather. There alſo many *Meſtzids* or Churches but thoſe very mean and hardly worth our taking notice of: onely one which they call *Sadur*, being as the Cathedral of

Minſter


De S
SIERA
J. kip. f.


De Stad
SIERAS in Pe



Minſter may paſs for an eminent Building, in which they ſay that one of *Mahomets* Succeſſors lies interred. Within it appears with great magnificency, and is very well ordained as to it's ſtructure and Order of Colums; in the middle is a Chore, or Quire, which receives it's light from a Lanthorn or Tower of Glaſs above. The next remarkable Temple is that of *Aga Riza* a very rich *Indian* Merchant who founded it at his proper Charges and left a conſiderable ſum to erect him a Tomb at the Eaſt and thereof. There is a very fair *Baſar* round about with rich Shops and many Galleries. There is alſo an Academy which may take place with the beſt public Edifices about Town, in which are taught the Literature there in uſe, beſides variety of other diſcipline and ſciences. Theſe are all the Buildings that are of any note in *Scyras* ſave only the Palace of the Deputy, which is environed with a thick ſtone Wall, and has on each ſide ſeveral ſpacious and fair Galleries. Mar. 1672.

The Land round about *Scyras* is very fertile, produces great plenty of Corn and Fruit, but abov all is eminent for the rich Vineyards; inſomuch that this Place and Countrey has got the name beyond all the Provinces in *Perſia* for delicate Wine, ſurpaſſing not only the Candian and Canary-Wines but all the Wines in the World for a delicate taſt, reliſh, and flavor. From hence the King of *Perſia* and all the great Perſonages at *Iſpahan* have their Wine, and hither repair the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to market: nay, ſuch is the eſteem thereof, that notwithſtanding the great abundance of the yearly product, it is as dear here as *Canary* Sack in the *Low-Countreys*. This Trade in Wines which they of *Scyras* have is at preſent ſo conſiderable that there is not ſo much as half an Acre together of waſt ground, or hardly imployed in any other uſe, for the Vineyards com ſo cloſe to the Town that one may throw a ſtone from the Walls into them. Such ground as is not proper to nouriſh the vine they convert to Orchard uſe, and have many fair Arborets or Nurſeries for young Fruit-Trees of all ſorts, which are tranſported hence to other Places, the Fruit of this Countrey being nothing inferior to their Wines. They have abundance of Oranges, Cittrons, Pomegranats, Almonds, Dates, Apples, Pears and almoſt all Fruits that I have ſeen elſewhere, inſomuch that the Town of *Scyras*, as one beholds the Countrey from ſom high building or Tower ſeems to ſtand in the Center of an Earthy

MAR. 1672. Paradiſe. Without the City is a Ward inhabited by a People that came from *Babylon*, when that City was taken in by the *Turks*. Without ſtands a fair Houſe built for charitable uſe, where all the Poor of the City that are deſtitute of a Meals meat may have their needs ſupplyed at the Kings charges, if they have the humility to fetch it: this Houſe is called *Aly Kapin* where there are ſeveral perſons in ſervice to dreſs Victuals for the ſaid uſe, and have as good cuſtom as all the Inns in *Scyras*.

Having ſtaid here a conſiderable time, and ſo nobly entertained by the ſaid *Carmelites* all the while I was in *Scyras*, I went to take my leave of them, giving them many Thanks (the only Treſure I had by me) for their many Civilities, and ſetting forward on our Journey came at night to a good and very commodious *Caravanſera*, where we took our Reſt. Near this Place was a Fiſh-pond in which ſom of our company got great ſtore of Fiſh on a ſudden, with a Hook and Line, for they were alwaies provided therewith to uſe when occaſion and opportunity concurred.

The next day it blew hard and was intermixed with ſhowers of Rain, ſo that we had very bad travailing and almoſt wearied out. Towards the Evening I happened to eſpy ſom perſons driving on very hard after us, and coming nearer, to my great joy and happineſs I deſcryed that it was Father *Feliſello* the *Carmelite*, and Doctor *Robine*, who were going for *Gameron* to direct ſom affairs they had there.

Beſides my good Fortune to enjoy the Company of ſuch Friends I was further obliged by freſh kindneſſes, they offering me alwaies to eat with them, till we came to our Journeys end, which was no ſmall happineſs for me, conſidering my mean Condition, and great ſtrait, being very ſhort of Moneys and almoſt in deſpair of coming to *Gameron* with the Charge I had upon me. I cannot but tell you how much I was aſhamed to be ſo careſſed by Strangers, who had nothing to expect from me, and loath I was to be ſo burthenſom to them of whoſe hands I had not deſerved the ſmalleſt friendſhip and kindneſs that they manifeſted towards me, yet being ſo cruelly ſtraitned on every hand I was forced to accept of their Offer. They held a very noble Table, and had taken along with them a great Caſe of Bottles full of *Scyras* Wine, which they ſpared not ſo long as it laſted.

The

The Doctor had with him 3 Men to attend him and was every where highly respected, being a Gentleman of a sweet Temper, discreet and and sociable, so that my Journey seemed much shorter for his Company. This day, being as I said very bad weather, we hardly travailed 6 *Dutch* Miles. MAR. 1672.

The next day setting forward we came at night to a Village called *Dobba*, where we set our *Caravan* down. This Village appeared like a Camp or Army with their Tents, the Cottages being so mean, and the highest house hardly sufficient for a tall man to stand upright, being built only of Reeds and Twigs plated like Basket-work and daubed over with clay. The Inhabitants like the Cottages they lived in were very poor and despicable People, insomuch that we had not much Divertisement or accommodation there. This day we hardly advanced 5 *Dutch* Miles.

On the 4 we set forward and went over very Rocky and hilly way, passing through several villages. Upon those Hills grow great store of Dates, and are so cheap that one may buy 100 lb. weight for the value of 2 Shillings *Sterl.* and are both of an excellent taste and lovely colour. The Date-tree seems to have som harmony with living Animals, in their Procreation, and have also their Sexes. The Female will not bear any Fruit if planted alone, so that they are always planted by Pairs together all along, and indeed do naturally grow so. But the Female growing old will not bear Fruit, unless they take a piece of the Top-branch of the Male and ingraft it in the Female, which they also do to som young Trees to make them bring forth good Fruit, which would otherwise be of a bitter and odious Taste. I have further remark'd that when the Male and Female are planted a small distance asunder they will lean towards each other, as if there were som mutual sympathy between them. The Inhabitants who have bin, from one Generation to another, used to plant and propagate these Trees told me many remarkable things about them, which because I will not be prolix, I shall ommit. This day we travailed 7 *Dutch* Miles, and at night got a fair *Caravanſera* to take our rest in.

Great store of Dates.

The strange manner of procreation of those Trees.

The next day we had very dry ground and a barren Countrey to pass thrô, and in som places rocky, so that we travailed that day no more than 5 Miles. On our way and near the *Caravanſera* which we took up for that night, we saw great Flocks of wild Goats which

MAR. 1672. ſom of our Company had a great mind to taſt, and went out in t Evening upon the Chace, but the Creatures were too cunning to catch'd, ſo that our Hunters were fain to return to the *Caravanſe* hungry and weary. The ſeaſon being ſharp and cold we laid on great pile of wood, and warmed our ſelvs throughly.

The day following in the Afternoon we came to a Town call *Scharim*, which I preſume had bin anciently a City and walled it ſtood in the middle of a grove altogether of Date-Trees. It is a Town of conſiderable Traffic in conſideration of their Manufact rie in Cottons, there being very many Weevers. There is alſo a ve fair Market-place, where beſides the many Shops of their own M nufactories, are ſeveral rich Ware-houſes of Silks and *Perſi* Stuffs, in which they alſo drive a great Trade and have correſpo dence with the greateſt Marts in all the Countrey round. Beſides t great Concourſe of Trading-people, they have a Market twice a we for the Boors, which is no ſmall advantage to the Town. Findi this a very commodious place to reſt in, we tarried here 3 days refreſh our ſelvs, and eaſe our Camels, Horſes and Mules, having 3 or 4 days had very bad way and weather.

Having ſufficiently taken our reſt at *Scharim*, we ſet forward a had very good weather, travailing all the day long thrô a flat Co trey, and by the way ſaw many Noblemens houſes, and here a there a Grove of Date trees, and many fair Orchards, ſo that t was the moſt pleaſant days Journey we had from *Iſpahan*. Here met a huge *Caravan* conſiſting of a great Troop of Men, Came Mules, and Sumpter-Horſes loaden with rich *Indian* Wares. T ſaid *Caravan* came from *Gammeron*, and intended to go by the ſame Po we came, being bound for *Scamachy* and *Surwan*. In this compan met accidentally with a *Perſian* who had bin our Neighbour at *machy*, and delivered him two Letters, the one for my Maſter *Byram* which was written in *Turkiſh*, and the other for my Wife, wh he promiſed to ſend for me by way of *Smyrna*. At night we ca to have very rocky and ill way, but found a *Caravanſera* where we to our reſt, having travailed that day about 24 *Engliſh* Miles.

The Caravan aſſaulted by Robbers in the Caravanſera.

When we were lay down to ſleep we were ſurprized with abo 30 Robbers, that came boldly into the *Caravanſera*, with intent, as had reaſon to believ, to murther us all whilſt we were aſleep.

true they did not at first make any assault but deferred their purpose till midnight, thinking perhaps, that we not suspecting them might grow supine, and judging our selvs secure, grow so negligent as to fall asleep; but we thought good to set a narrow Watch and kept our selvs in a readiness all the Night, with Weapons in our hand, for fear of a sudden assault. About midnight they fell in and fought outright, so that 5 of our Men lay presently under Feet, being in all 37. We fought joyntly together with good Courage so that we speedily allayed their Fury. Our Party as we could observe were much stronger than theirs, yet if we had not bin unanimous and faithfull to one another we had not com so well of, for there was not one Man from the greatest to the least, but fought manfully and with a good will, till the very last, when they ran into another Room and shut the Door after them, which was no small advantage to us: for, when we had them so pen'd up we knew our selvs secure, there being no other Passage for them to com out at. The Door we barricado'd in with huge Stones, and with all our Carbines and Blunderbusses poured in shot upon them, so long, till they began to beg for Quarter, which we resolved not to giv them, but promised them the liberty to com forth and to stand to our mercy. In the mean while we had observed that several of them lay dead and wounded. After they had consulted a while among themselvs they resolved to com forth, but we refused to let them com all together, but one by one: keeping a narrow watch at the Door that they should not rush out altogether. Having got them out they were very patient and suffered us to ty them back to back. Those that were wounded we killed outright; and so when it began to be light we set forward on our Journey, taking the rest being abov 20 along with us, and coming to a Grove of Date-Trees, there hung them up by the heels, and stripping off their Cloaths slashed off their Noses, Ears and Hands, which we nailed to a Tree as Monuments and Relicts of Roguery, and left the Bodies hanging. How we came to be so happy as to conquer those Villains was no small wonder to me, since there was never a man among the Company that fought with any other Order than as his Courage led him, so that we see what Som will do and can atchieve, when Life and Goods lie at the stake. Their Punishment 'tis true, was severe enough to let them die a lingring Death, but the Loss of our Companions was so precious to us

MAR. 1672.

The Robbers beg Quarter.

Their Punishment.

MAR. 1672. us that could we but have bethought a harder, they had bin ſure have gon that way to pot: and not have had the opportunity to pr upon Paſſengers again.

Having performed the Hangmans Office we went to our Cam and *Caravan*, leaving the Bodies there for an Example to their Co panions. The way proved very hilly and uneaven, waſt and rock being of a hard Flint-Stone, and indeed ſo uneaſy that we had mu ado to get all the Camels and Horſes forward, ſom weary and rea to lay down, others ſtumbling and others ſtraying, for the way was n beat. However in the Evening after 4 *Dutch* miles Travail we go *Carawanſera*, and there reſolved to take our reſt. Here about we ſa great Flocks of Partridges, which Father *Feliſello* who was paſſi dextrous with a Birding-piece, went out to ſhoot, and brought many as ſerved us for ſupper, which we illuſtrated with a Glaſs of licat *Scyras* Wine.

Great plenty of Partriges.

CHAP. XXXV.

The incommodous Travelling over Mountains. They com into an Inn (or Carawanſ *where they are well entertained. Arrival at* Lar. *A Deſcription of that To The Unwholſomneſs of the Air and water there. The Inhabitants give Hoſpitality and Lovers of all kinds of Diſcipline and Science.* Mummay Kob *a pretious Balſam. Remarkable Monuments of Robbers executed. Depart from* Lar. *They meet with another Troop of Robbers, whereof 7 are kill They are overtaken by* Monſr. Kaſenbroot. *Their Arrival at* Gamron.

THe next morning being the 12 of *March*, we got all in a re dineſs in order to our Journey, and had very ſteep and dang rous rocky hills to clamber over, inſomuch that we durſt not ke a Horſe-back but were fain to allight and lead the greateſt part of t way, being in danger if the Horſes ſhould happen to ſtumble to daſht in pieces upon the ſharp Flints which were terrible to look a in reſpect of their acuity and ſharpneſs. Theſe are a part of that Circ of hills which encompaſs the famous *Taurus*. This day we advance 5 *Dutch* Miles and got a good *Carawanſera*.

On the 13 we betook our ſelvs to our Journey, and about 3 i the After-noon got to a *Carawanſera*. Father *Feliſello* finding he ſom

ſom ſheep to be ſold bought a Lamb, which althô it was in the Faſt he was reſolved to Feaſt of, ſaying that all Meats was diſpenced with a Travailer who muſt eat what he can and not what he will. But this being the Birth-day of the good Father he was reſolved to celebrate it with a good ſupper, which indeed we had, and drunk good ſtore of Wine to boot, in which we remembred the Catholic King and his Royal Highneſs the Prince of *Orange* in ſeveral healths, and that to ſuch a Meſure that we were in as good as mood a thoſe Potentates themſelvs could be; in ſhort we were ſo moiſtned within, that we ſlept that night without much care. MAR. 1672.

On the 14 in the morning betimes we ſet forward and paſſed by ſeveral Pitts which were digged through from one to another under ground, ſo that the water ran through them all. The ſame Pits were well ſtored with Carps and other Fiſh which our Company angled for and took ſeveral, which ſerved us for a Novelty at night, theſe Pitts or rather Ponds were convey'd by a channel or narrow Conduit to a great Stone Ciſtern which was near to a *Caravanſera*, where we took our Nights reſt, having that day travelled 5 *Dutch* Miles.

On the 15th. about Noon we came into the Village *Barry* where we ſet down and ſtay'd there 2 Days, finding our ſelvs unable to go any further without a Pauſe, and the Camels and other Beaſts almoſt wearied out; underſtanding moreover that we had very hilly and rocky way to paſs over. This day we had only advanced 4 Miles [*Dutch*]

On the 18th. betimes in the morn we left *Barry*, and clambered up a very ſteep Hill, meeting by the way ſom Gentlemen that were diverting themſelvs with the Hawk, which there, as well as in *Europe*, is held for a noble Game, and not a Gentleman but has his Faulcon. In the Afternoon we got the height of the Hill where we found a very old Man, who neither combed nor ſhaved his Hair but let it grow negligently, ſo that it looked like a Mop. This Man as we underſtood afterwards was one, that lived a Heremitical and auſtere Life, being reputed for a Saint among the Inhabitants. The ſaid Hermite came to me and begged that I would give him a pipe of Tobacco which I did, and got his Prayers for it. Having that day travelled 6 Leagues we came pretty late in the Evening to a *Caravanſera*.

MAR. 1672. On the 19 we travailed through a moſt pleaſant Valley, where we ſaw many Boors Cottages and great groves of Date-trees, on the right hand and on the left. We called at a Boors houſe and would have bought of them ſom Milk, but the People would take no Money for it. They aſked me from whence I came, I told them from *Surwan Scamachy*; but that being a place they had never heard of in their lives, aſked me further if that were as far as *Iſpahan*, I told them it was more than twice as far, at which they greatly wondred thinking that I muſt needs com from the utmoſt bounds of the World, theſe being a poor ignorant People and never travail farther than their Market Town, which is a little Grange in the Valley, and never heard tell of any Countrey than their own; in ſhort they would have had me to ſtay longer with them, but my Time was too precious to ſpend in anſwering all they would have aſked me. At night we came to the City *Laar*, where we took up our Reſting place in the *Dutch* Lodge, where we found very good Convenience, and only an old Man and a Woman to look to the Houſe and aſſiſt the *Caravans*, who were ſet there by the Company. Here I got the Cheſts and Caſes repaired that were broken and endamaged, by the often falling of the Camels thrô the rocky way.

Laar or *Lar* is a pretty big Town; but has no Walls to reſiſt or endure a ſtrong ſiege, ſave only ſuch as are made of Bricks that are dry'd in the Sun, but is reaſonably ſtrong in reſpect of its Scituation, as well as for the Fort or Caſtle, which is built upon a Hill on the North-ſide, the Walls thereof are of ſolid ſtone, and the Fort it ſelf ſo ſeated that it can command the whole Town, having one narrow Paſſage to enter it, which is very ſteep: it is ſupplyed with ſeveral pieces of great Ordnance, which the King ſent hither from *Ormus*, when by the help of the *Engliſh* he took that City in. About *Laar* grow abundance of Date-trees, but no Wine, and by reaſon that they have no Commerce or Traffic abroad but poor, muſt ſupply themſelvs with Water, which, as well as the Air here about, is very unwholſom, inſomuch that many times Strangers who are to make uſe of it for want of Wine fall ſick, and are tormented with a ſmall Worm, but long, which breeds between the Skin and the Fleſh, and cannot be taken out without great pain. They ſhow'd me one that was above 5 Foot long, and not ſo thick as an ordinary Goos-quill.

The

The Inhabitants of *Laar* are very free and ſociable to converſe with-all, and great Lovers of Sciences and Learning. Not far from the Caſtle is a certain Rock out of which iſſues a very precious Balſem, called by the *Perſians*, *Mummay Kobas*. This Balſem, or Oil, is gathered only in the Moneth of *June* about which time it runs *ſtillatim*, or drop by drop, out at a Vein. The ſaid Rock from whence it coms is continually guarded with a ſtrict Watch, by Order of the King, and none is ſuffered to touch it upon pain of Death. This Oil is reckoned and well known by experience to be the greateſt Antidot againſt Poyſon in the World, althô never ſo ſtrong; and is therefore held by the King as an ineſtimable Treſure, and never ſuffered to be exported out of his Dominions. The King alſo willing to ſhow any of his Subordinat Princes and Deputies an extraordinary and high Favour, always ſends them a few drops thereof, to make it the greater in eſteem and value, and with one injoyns them, not to ſend it out of the Kingdom, upon pain of his diſpleſure. Without *Laar* are erected ſeveral Pillars for Monuments of the Execution of ſeveral Robbers, who had made the high Ways unfree to Travel: Half of their Bodies are ſet up on theſe Pillars, and the other half buried in the Ground, being cut aſunder whilſt they are ſtill alive.

MAR. 1672.

A moſt precious Balſem proceeding a Rock.

Having tarried here 3 Nights and 2 Days, we ſet forward on the 22 and had very bad and rocky way. We ſaw here great Flocks of wild Swine whereof our Company ſhot 2 with their Hand-guns, but durſt not fetch them for fear of the *Perſians*, that threatned to leav us if we did, for they loath them more than Toads. We alſo ſhot ſeveral Eagles which nothwithſtanding they prey upon the Pigs the *Perſians* fed heartily upon them. This day we travailed 7 *Dutch* Miles, which we thought more than a *diëta rationabilis*, or an ordinary Stage, in regard of the badneſs of Way and Weather: and at night had a good *Caravanſera*.

Abundance of Wild Swine, and Eagles.

On the 23 we broke up and paſſed by a fair Town called *Pharate*, which we left on the right hand. The ſaid Town was pleaſantly ſeated in the middeſt of a Grove of Date-Orange- and Lemmon Trees. By the way we met with a Party of Robbers who furiouſly ſet upon us, but finding themſelves too weak betook themſelvs to flight leaving 7 Dead behind them. We alſo loſt 2 Men of our Company that were outright killed in this Bickering, and had ſix wounded. The Dead

The Caravan aſſaulted by Robbers.

MAR. 1672. we buried near the Way and bound up the wounded. At night we came to a ſmall Village called *Sarap*, where we took up our nights reſt, having that day advanced 6 Miles.

On the 24 we ſet forward again, and at night came to a great Village which we took up for our Stage, having a fair and ſpacious *Caravanſera* in it. We had no ſooner diſburthened the Camels, but had 50 or 60 Women who came and proffered us Milk to ſell, and were ſo importunat and troubleſom, that we could not get rid of 'em, till we ſet the Doggs upon them. Theſe went all with their Face uncovered, which I had not ſeen any Honeſt Women in all *Perſia* do, except in one Village between *Scamachy* and *Iſpahan*. This day we had furthered our Journey by 7 Miles.

On the 25 we had a great and wearisom Mountain to travail over at the Foot whereof was a River which we were forced to wade thrô, by reaſon that the ſtone-bridge which had formerly lain over it was broken down. After we had travailed 5 *Dutch* Miles we took up our nights reſt in a *Caravanſera*. But we could here get no manner of Refreſhment, the Countrey round about being dry and barren, producing nothing but Date-trees, that we could ſee.

On the 26 towards night we came to a Grange of Fiſher-men of whom we bought a few for our uſe. We were no ſooner ſet down but came Monſr. *Kaſenbroot* with his Slaves riding into the Town, being ſent for from *Iſpahan* to *Suratte*. The night being very ſtill we could eaſily hear the ruſhing of the main Ocean. That day we had travailed 7 Miles.

On the 27 we went onwards, and about Noon came to a *Caravanſera* which lay cloſe to the ſhore, and could ſee Ships a ſailing, which filled me with a more than ordinary Joy, not having ſeen ſuch a comfortable ſight in a long time. Hence we ſaw *Gammeron* and could diſtinctly diſcern the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Flaggs fly abroad that were planted upon the Lodges. However we thought good to tarry there that night having only advanced 4 *Dutch* Miles, that we might enter *Gammeron* the fore part of the Day.

On the 28 for the laſt time we made ready for the purſuit of our Journey, and in the Fore-noon came into *Gammeron*, where we were friendly received and, I by permiſſion of the Heer *François de Haas*, then Director brought into the Companies Lodge. At my firſt coming

every

every one took me for a *Perſian*, being ſhorn after that manner, but hearing me ſpeak *Dutch*, they aſked me if I was one of thoſe who were in the ſervice of the *Czar* of *Moſcovia*, I anſwered, Yes, and alſo gave them a full Relation of what had paſſed and of the great hardſhip I had ſuffered ſince in Slavery and otherwiſe, about which they were very curious and aſked me divers Queſtions. The Director himſelf was alſo pleaſed to ſend for me into the great Hall where he welcom'd me out of my Slavery, and promiſed to ſend me by the firſt Shipping for *Batavia*. MAR. 1672.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Deſcription of Gamron, *or* Bendar, *and the* Etymology. *The great Traffic with all Nations. Unwholſomneſs of the Air, and Heat at* Gamron. Palepunſchen *an unwholſom Drink how made. The Earth dry and barren. Fertility of* Kiſmiſch. *Of the Inhabitants of* Gamron. *A wonderful Tree growing without the City. An* Indian (reputed) *Saint. The beſt ſeaſon for ſtrangers to come and Traffic at* Gamron. *Merchandiſe brought thither by the* Engliſh. *The* Engliſh *receiv Toll with the* Scach. *The* Hollanders *trade without paying Toll. The Author falls very ſick and in deſpair of Recovery. The kindneſs and bounty of* L. van Akerſloot *to him. He recovers. Set ſail from* Gamron. *Arrival at* Maſchate *and a Deſcription of that Town. The violent Heat about* Maſchate *which renders the Air very unwholſom. Their Departure from* Maſkate. *Arrival at* Batavia. *The Author hires himſelf for Sailmaker. Comes with 7 Ships before* Bantham. *Arrival at the* Cape of Good Hope.

Gameron is alſo by the *Perſians* called *Bendar*, which is as much as to ſay, *The Key of the Kingdom*, like the Name *Derbent*, already mentioned. It lies in 27 *degr.* Northerly Latitude upon the Gulf of *Perſia*: on each ſide ſtand 2 Caſtles built after the old manner of Fortification, but very ſtrong and able to command the Haven from ſide to ſide: they are alſo well ſupplied with Men and have good ſtore of Ammunition. That part of the Town which lies toward the Countrey is munited with a reaſonable ſtrong Wall; and has without at a convenient Diſtance ſeveral Redoubts, to defend the Upper Quarter of the City; There is alſo a conſiderable ſtrong Redoubt on the Coaſt. *Gammeron* is in reſpect of it's commodi- *Deſcription of Gammeron.*

MAR. 1672. ous ſite becom a very famous *Emporium* and that on a ſudden, being lately a poor ſmall Town, inhabited by Fiſhers It is frequented by *Indians*, *Moors*, *English*, *French* and *Hollanders*, who drive here a migh-

The Strong Trade at Gammeron. ty Trade which three laſt have their Houſes of Reſidence next to the ſhore, and ſtand very Convenient for loading and unloading of Goods. *Gammeron* is a place ſubject to a very unwholſom Air being a hot Climat: the Heats continuing violent from *May* till *September* which is the reaſon that ſo many Strangers either die or dwindle away with a lingring Diſeaſe, which if they once get, it will hardly leave them, althô they ſhould change the climat. Beſides the Unwholſom Airs and Damps, there are many Strangers who deſtroy themſelvs with drinking of a Liquor much in uſe there called *Palm-punshen*, being compounded of *Arak*, *Sugar*, and *Raiſins*, which is ſo bewitching that they cannot refrain from drinking it, if they once com to taſte it, being very delicious and tempting. It occaſions a Giddineſs in the Head, Feavers, and Fluxes, and is ſo corroſive that ſom who have drunk immoderatly of it and died, being opened, their Bowels were gnawed through and through. The ſcorching Heat of that Clime alſo renders the Earth very dry and barren ſo that there is little or nothing that grows about it, ſave only Dates, which like beſt in ſandy and dry ground, but as for Gardens they are very rare to be ſeen except here and there a little one which with great trouble and continual Watering bring forth a few Pot-herbs, and Roots. However they are very well ſupplyed with many ſorts of Refreſhments, as Cittrons Oranges, Pomegranats, Peaches, Apricocks, Grapes, Almonds, Apples, Pears and other Fruits as well as Plants, which grow upon the Iſland *Kimish*, about three Leagues from *Gammeron*; but their moſt uſual Diet is Fiſh. The Inhabitants

Of the Inhabitants of Gammeron, go almoſt quite naked by reaſon of the great Heat, and are of a tawny yellowiſh Colour. The Women adorn their Arms, Noſes, and Ears with Rings and Plates of Gold, Silver, Copper, and Iron every one according to their ability.

A ſtrange Tree without Gammeron. About a Mile without *Gammeron* is a wonderfull kind of a Tree alwaies which grows round, and the Branches declining to the Ground riſe out again, as if it were from another Root, and ſo continues for 250 Paces in circuit. This ſame Tree bears a ſort of Fruit round and yellow, but ſouriſh of Taſt, and has ſmall ſtones or Kernels





ds like a Fig. Hither repair many lazy People to ſhadow them- MAR. 1672.
ys under it, being thick and impenetrable for the Sun. Under
is Tree is a Pagod, or little Temple, wherein they ſay the Foun-
r (being one of their Holies) lies at reſt: this Pagod is attended
waies by one of their Saints, and is continually viſited by the *Indi-* Indian Pagod.
ans who go thither to perform their devout Offices. The *Indian* who
eeps it never ſhaves himſelf, but lets his Beard and the Hair of
is Head grow ſo long as it will, which by his permiſſion I meſured
nd found it more than 6 Foot long, After I had don I gave him a
mall piece of Money, valuing about Twopence, for which he ſhow'd
imſelf very thankfull, and brought me in to ſee the Pagod and
Tomb. Above was a Canopy of ſilk, and on each ſide were Lamps
hat were never ſuffered to go out. It was alſo painted round with
Beans, wherewith they ſay that the Soul of the Departed Saint is
agely delighted. I deſired to know the ground of that their Opi-
on and by what Token they were ſo perſwaded: His anſwer was,
hat it was not lawfull to impart ſuch ſacred Myſteries to Unbeleev-
rs. In the Moneth of *October* the Heat is almoſt paſt, at what
ime reſort hither Merchants from all Places to negotiate their Af-
airs: The *Perſians* and *Armenians* come by way of *Iſpahan*, and the
Arabians thrô *Babylon*, or *Bagdet* as it is now called, with multitudes
of *Caravans* conſiſting of many Thouſands of Camels, Horſes, Mules
nd other Beaſts of Portage. Hither alſo repair both *English* and
Hollanders bringing all ſorts of Commodities that are there Market-
able and may be vended. The *English* bring moſtly Wollen Manufa-
ory, Pewter, Steel, &c. The *Hollanders* trade there moſtly in Spices
nd *Indian* Commodities. The *Portugeez* Tongue is here almoſt
niverſally ſpoke, they having ſo long had that place, and yet above
ll other *Europeans* are obliged to pay Cuſtom: The *Dutch* Fa-
tors buy their Silks at the Price Courant and are alſo Cuſtom-free.
But the *English* are not only Cuſtom-free here but alſo go Sharers
with the King of *Perſia* in the Cuſtom that is received at *Ormus*, for
he good Service they did in aſſiſting the King to take that Town
rom the *Portugueezes*. The *Hollanders* notwithſtanding their being Cu-
ſtom-free have nevertheleſs a hard Task to ſatisfy the *Sabandar*, or
chief Officier, who always coms in with new Pretences and Inventions,
which he knows they will rather comply with than ſuffer any obſtructi-
on of Trade.

On a

IVL. 1672. On the 18 of *July* I was viſited with a moſt violent burning Feav which raged ſo cruelty that I grew deſperate, for I felt my ſelf eve

The Author taken very ſick of a burning Feaver. day weaker and weaker, wherefore ſuppoſing, notwithſtanding t contrary opinion of many, that if I ſhould change the Air, tha ſhould change the Air, that I ſhould recover, and therefore g one to addreſs himſelf to the Heer Director *de Haas* and in my na intercede that I might go for *Batavia* with the Ship Ruptſenbur which lay ready for ſail. The Director was pleaſed to give order th I ſhould go aboard which was matter of Joy for me, fearing if I ha ſtay'd much longer that I ſhould have taken my leav of the Worl Thus I was brought aboard, and met there with one *Laurence* v *Akerſloot*, who aſked me from whence I was? I told him, From *Wo mer*; he told me that he was alſo born near *Wormer*, and for o Countreys ſake gave me his *Cabin*, charging his Servant th when I called for either *Spaniſh*, or other Wine that he ſhould dr it for me, and ſerve me with what I had occaſion for; this kindn I have great reaſon to remember and be thankfull for, being an u ſpeakable Trouble to him, who lay ſo long in a place where he w ill at eaſe, nor did he ever fail or decline to the very laſt. Mean whi I lay very diſconſolate and ſo ill that the Doctor had given me ov I was ſo ſwollen that the Cabin where I lay was too narrow for m I therefore prayed the Doctor to let me blood, but he refuſed, ſaying that if I came to dy, it would be ſaid that he was the occaſion o it, however I ſtill perſiſted, till at laſt he was fain to condeſcen

He recovers. So ſoon as I was let blood I found my ſelf abundantly eaſed, and fro time to time grew better, altho 't was very long before I was reſtor to my former ſtrength. The Carpenter of the Ship was alſo at t ſame time ſtruck with a violent Feaver and dyed by the Way.

Finally we ſet ſail, and came on the firſt of *Auguſt* with a p

Arrival at Moſchate. ſperous Gale in the Bay of *Maſchate*, which is a fair Haven lying

Deſcription of the Town. 23 *degr.* 36 *min.* Northerly latitude within, or upon the Bought the Haven is a City, which towards the Countrey is environed wi Hills and ſufficiently fortified with Walls and Bulwarks: on th ſide next the Sea is alſo an Earthen Wall thrown up ſince it has b under the Juriſdiction of the King of *Perſia*; for before it was b an open Town; except for ſome ſmall Towers the Portugueezes ha built, when it was in their Poſſeſſion, to check the ſavage *Arabian*

wh



1. d' Vyfmarckt. 2. d' Stuant: verſien met veel Coopmans waren. 3. Twee Hollantſe Scheepen.





who were wont to com by night in whole Troops, and plunder their Houſes: On the right hand as you enter the Haven is a Fort upon a ſteep Hill, which for its Fortification by Nature ſeems to be impregnable except in caſe of hunger. The ſame Fort is alſo ſufficient to command and defend the whole Haven: it has alſo a privat way leading to the Haven under ground. This City according to it's greatneſs is populous enough, but not ſo populous as it was ſoon after *Ormus* was taken in by the King of *Perſia*, then ſerving as an *Aſylum* for the *Portugueezes*, *Indians* and *Arabians*. *JULY.* 1672.

In the Moneths of *Auguſt* and *September* it is here ſo incredible hot and ſcorching, that I am not able to expreſs the condition that Strangers are in, being as if they were in boiling Cauldrons, or in ſweeting Tubs, ſo that I have known many who not able to endure the Heat would jump into the Sea, and remain there till the Heat of the day be over. During the time of my abode there the Heer *Padberg* came a Envoyé from the Lord General, to eſtabliſh the Commerce and Trade of the Company on a better foot at *Moſchate*: but he had not made an end of that Affair when we left the Place.

On the Third of *Auguſt* we ſet ſail, and on the 22 got ſight of the *AUG.* faſt Land, and Cape *Comorine*, which is a fair Promontory on the *Malabar* Coaſt. We directed our courſe thence for *Ceylon*, and ſo for *Batavia*.

On the 28 we got the Straits of *Sunda*, where we met ſeveral *Javaners* that came aboard us, and bartered Fiſh, Coconuts, Pieſang, Ananaſſes, and other Fruits for Iron Hoops. The Day following we got the height of *Toppers* Angle, and on the 30 came into the Road of *Batavia*. *Arrival at Batavia.*

On the firſt of *September*, I went aſhoar and ſo directly to the General and Council to return them my humble Thanks for their unſpeakable Favour and Goodneſs in redeeming me from the wofull Eſtate of Slavery, with promiſe of returning the Moneys diſburſed upon my return home, which in the year 1673 I faithfully performed. *SEPT.*

On the 27 I went to liſt my ſelf in the Companies ſervice for Sailmaker for 18 *gild. per* Moneth aboard the Ship called **De Hollandtſche Tuyn**.

On the 15 of *October* we received Order with 6 other Ships to cruiſe upon the *Engliſh* and *French* Ships before *Bantham*. Mean while I long- *OCT.*

Oct. 1672. ed ſo to ſee my Wife and Children that I had no more enjoyment my ſelf, ſo long as we made ſuch delay: wherefore I aſſumed boldneſs to ſend 2 Letters, one to the Heer *Spelman* then Ordin Council for the *Indies*, and another to the Heer *Pieter van Hoorn*, hu bly begging that I might be diſmiſſed my preſent ſervice and be ſe home; which they were graciouſly pleaſed to aſſent to, and gave or that I ſhould imbarque my ſelf aboard the Flyboat **Nieuw-poort** return to *Batavia* and ſo to go aboard the Ship *Europa*: wherewith

Feb. 1673. ſet ſail on the 4 of *February* 1673, in Company with the Ship **T**[**ſ**]**heer**, as Admiral; The **Alphen**, Vice-Admiral, and **Pynaker**, Re Admiral, beſides the Ships **Starmeer**, and **Papenburg**. We direct our Courſe W. and by S. thrô the Straits of *Sunda*.

On the 5 we came before *Bantham* and found there the 7 Sh which were cruſing before that place for the *Engliſh* and *French*.

On the 6 we found our ſelvs without the Straits of *Sunda*, and our Courſe directly South-South-Weſt till we came in the height of *degr.* then altered, and bore up W. S. W. till we came at 28 *degr.* then ſet our courſe directly South till we came at 32 *degr.* which is

Arrival at Cabo de Bona Eſperance. height of *C. de Bona Eſperanza* where on the 15 of *April* we arri in the Bay, and found there ſom Ships that were bound for the *Ind* coming from *Holland*. Here we firſt heard the doleful news that *French* had already made themſelvs Maſters of 3 of the 7 Provinc that the 2 *De Witts*, the *Penſionary* and *Ruart* of *Putten* were ſadly maſ cred in the *Hague*; as alſo that his Royal Highneſs the Prince of *Ora* was made **Erf-Stadt-houder**, or Lord Deputy Hereditary.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Their Departure from the Cape of Good Hope. *The Ship* Europa *taken by* Engliſh. *The* Engliſh *take the Iſland of* St. Helena, *and* 2 Dutch *Ships more* T *Author warns the reſt of the Ships. Three* Dutch *Ships ſcape a ſcouring. A rival at* Aſcenſion. *Abundance of Tortoiſes on that Iſland. A Deſcripti of the ſaid Iſland. It's Unfruitfullneſs and want of freſh water. A Debate be among the* Engliſh *to leav the* Dutch *upon the Iſland. Departure from* Aſcenſio *Arrival at* Kingſale *in* Ireland. *Their Departure from thence, Arrival at* Bri *and finally at Home.*

WE tarried here till the 17 of *May*, on which day we receive an Order from the Governour to depart with the Ship *Euro*

for

for the Iſland St. *Helena*, which Iſland he had taken from the *English* about 14 Weeks before. The reſt of the Ships were to follow us in 7 or 8 days time, and ſo to ſail together for *Holland*. MAY. 1673.

Thus having a brisk Gale of wind we hoiſed ſail, and had aboard us one Captain *Bredenbach* who was to be Governour of St. *Helena*, We ſet our courſe North-Weſt and on the 21 of *May* being Whitſuntide came before *Saint Helena*, but coming juſt in at the Bay we found we had got a wrong Sow by the Tail, finding inſtead of our own, 7 great *Engliſh* Men of War, with a Fireſhip and 3 Merchant Men. The *Engliſh* finding us within Shot did ſo welcom us with their upper and lower Tires, that we were preſently quit of Hopes, Ship and Goods. They gave us Nutmegs enough, but thoſe were ſo cruel hard that we could not grate (much leſs digeſt) them with our wills: In ſhort they ſhot ſo hotly upon us that we had ſeveral Men on a ſudden killed and many wounded. We had aboard us about 30 Men and had not above 5 or 6 Guns that we could uſe. Being thus in a great Strait and not knowing what to do having no leiſure to conſult, it was reſolved that we ſhould board the *Aſſiſtance* an *English* Friggat of 48 Guns, which followed us with the Fireſhip. Hereupon our Captain gave order that the Hatches ſhould be ſhut and nailed up, that none might creep out of the way, but unanimouſly to fall upon our Enterpriſe: yet when all was don we came ſhort of Ammunition, and were at laſt fain to ſurrender our ſelvs, Ship and Goods to the Mercy of the *English*, who never left firing upon us with 12 and 18 Pounders. *The Ship Europa taken by the Engliſh and plundered.*

The *English* were no ſooner com aboard but they fell a plundering us, ſearching ſo narrowly that I knew no longer how to conceal the Jewels which my Patroneſs *Altine* had given me, being Ten *Bruto*, or rough Diamonds, for I had ſold one at *Batavia*, which was the meaneſt, for about 1000 *gl.* And now that good Treaſure, which I had ſo long hid, and ſecured from Theeviſh hands, lay at Stake for an Offering to impious *Mars*, and finding that they began to make a new Search, I called an *Engliſhman* aſide, and told him that I had ſo many rough Diamonds, which if he would pleaſe to take and hide for me, I would give him 5, upon further Condition that he would be faithfull to me and redeliver me the other back again when we arrived in *England*: but abov all to keep the matter ſecret. He

MAY. 1673. promiſed me with many Proteſtations that he would. In the mea while the *English* continued plundering and breaking up the Cheſt throwing the rich Silks and Cottons ſo on Heaps, that we coul hardly yet a paſſage through. My Treſurer was a while very faith full and ſtill, but coming accidentally to get drunk, revealed our Se crets to another of his Meſs-Mates, hoping that it would go no fu ther; but it was not long before it came to the Captains Ear wh without the leſt warning came and commanded the Cheſt to b broken up, where he found the Stones: and gave the Aſs half a Hun dred Blows on the Ribbs for his pains: and ſo was I bereaved o the laſt and beſt Treſure I had. The only thing they left me was m Papers and Journal, which was not without much Intreaty: a poo Abſtract for ſo many years Miſery, having incluſivly no more t thank (nay much leſs) the Chriſtians than the *Mahometans* and P gans, ſave for my Slavery; for which I may not blame any in pa ticular, it being a general Rule among them to convert ſuch as th hold for Heteredox to Slaves.

Thus being newly delivered out of one miſery I was immediat involved in another; and ſo far might this deſpair have wrought wi me, that had it not bin the Goodneſs of GOD to indue me with more laudable and a more pious Principle, I could have willingl thrown my ſelf precipitantly out of the World; being weary o Life, and as unwilling to embrace the greateſt Solace that can be ex pected, yea, or enjoyed in this wearifom Pilgrimage to the Grav which puts an end to all corporal Afflictions, and the Haven wh ther we are all a ſailing, howſoever we be provided for that Spiritu al Mart. Nor do I doubt but that thoſe who ſhall have the Patience read theſe Memorials, will imagine my Miſery to have bin great. B I farther preſume that they in the moſt earneſt contemplation of th Schęme of anxiferous and calamitous Events that from time to tim have befallen me, will never be ſuch real Compatients as to ſurve the amaritude of my Sufferings by the Scale of their Thoughts an Cenſures. *Yet welcom, moſt welcom, be the Decrees of the moſt glorious LORD of Life; and HE out of his immenſe Bounty grant me patience to ſuffer wha he is pleaſed to inflict upon me, how ſevere ſo ever it be.*

Eight days before our Arrival there had the *English* taken in th Iſland, being forced to put in there for want of Water: not knowing any

any thing to the contrary, but that it was ſtill in poſſeſſion of their own Nation, and were ſent out to convoy their *East-India* Ships howeward: but coming into the Bay were not a little ſurpriſed, that they were ſaluted with Balls in ſtead of looſe Powder. However the *English* were reſolved to com aſhoar ſom way or other, for they were deſtitute of Water, all the 7 Ships of War and the Merchant-men with the Fire Ship hardly able to make out 15 Hogſheads of Water, and were beſides that at a great loſs for Refreſhments, having been long off at Sea to and again. The Admiral therefore gave command to attempt an entrance at the South ſide of the Iſland, where it was ſo narrow that they could not go abov 4 in a rank, inſomuch that if the *Hollanders* could have miſſed ſo many men out of the Fort, might have knockt them all down with Stones, with 50 or 60 Men, ſo that the *English* invaded the Iſland unmoleſted. The Governour ſeeing that they were ſurpriſed, and he unable to defend himſelf againſt ſo great a Power, ſurrendred upon Articles and Compoſition. This was the Relation of the *English*. JUN. 1673.

On the 4 of *June* the *English* got two Ships more of the 5 that followed us with another coming from *Ceylon*, who, not knowing any thing to the contrary but that the *Hollanders* were ſtill Maſters of the Iſland, came ſailing without any dread directly thither from the Cape. For the *English* had planted the Princes Flag aloft, and a Red Flag on the High way, which was a privat Token that the *Hollanders* had among themſelves. When I remarked what the meaning of all this was, and how eaſily our Ships would be deceived, I went to the Shore, where I eſpied the Ships not abov half a *Dutch* league diſtant, and immediatly pulled of my Shirt and ſet it upon a Stick, that at leſt they might begin, if they ſhould have the Fortune to ſee it, to conſider well with themſelvs, what ſuch might import; but it ſeemed that they took no notice of it, or elſe did not ſee it, otherwiſe it had bin time enough for them to have ſcap'd the Scouring. 'Twas not long before I was ſpied by two *English* Sentinels, who came in all haſt, and beat me after a moſt lamentable manner: which when they had don brought me before the Governour, who asked me, what I meant by that Token, I told him with great liberty, *That I thought it my duty to warn my Nation from the Peril which they were ready to run in, and that I ſuppoſed that if, I had bin an* Engliſhman *and had*

JUN. 1673. *known them under the like Circumſtances I ſhould have don no more than what I was bound to do.* To which the Governour ſmiling replied; That I did honeſtly and deſerved to be commended, but withall charged me not to tranſgreſs any more, and ſo let me go without any further Trouble. Whence we may learn what difference there is, between drinking at the Fountain, and drinking at the Current.

Mean while the Ships came on undauntedly; and were hardly ſailed within the Bay, but deſcryed a *Lyon* in an *Aſſes Skin*, in ſtead of an *Aſs* in a *Lions Skin*, and diſcerned a Wolfs Body with a Sheeps Voice, the Colours they ſaw ſpoke good *Dutch*, but the Ships danced an *Engliſh* Jig, wherefore they thought it beſt to tack about and make all the ſail they could: which the *Engliſh* perceiving, out after them all in a Body, and took the Admiral and Vice-Admiral, but the Rere-Admiral and the other 2 made their Eſcape, and could not be overtaken. The Admiral behaved himſelf with good courage, and had probably not bin taken if his Mizzin Peek had not bin brought by the board. The Ship that engaged and took him was the *Weſt-Freezlandt*, being formerly a *Dutch* Ship and taken by the *Engliſh* in the year 1665, and was now mounted with 54 Guns. Our Admiral would fain have boarded her but could not, for the *Engliſh* poured inceſſantly upon them with ſmall ſhot, inſomuch that he was fain to yield, the Commander himſelf being wounded in the Leg.

The next day we were ordered to go aboard directing our Courſe for *Aſcenſion* Iſland, which ſerv the *Engliſh* for a Rendezvous, where we arrived on the 19 of *Iune*. Here the Men went to take Tortoiſes, which are there in very great abundance, ſom of 200 and ſom 300 lb. weight. Theſe Creatures are Amphibious, that is to ſay, living as well by water as by land; but by night com upon the Strand where they lay their Eggs, which are by the heat of the Sun engendred in the ſand.

The Iſland *Aſcenſion* lies in 8 *degr.* and 30 *min.* Southerly Latitude about 40 Leagues from *Saint Helena*. It is altogether rocky and produces nothing of growth, having in it high Hills, yet not ſo high as thoſe in Saint *Helena*. The whole Iſland is white with the Dung of Mews, Cormorants, and a ſort of Wild-geeſe that com thither to build and breed, as alſo to prey upon the dead Fiſh which lies in heaps upon the ſhore, and in the ſmall Inlets, and Creeks.

There

There is no freſh Water upon the Iſland, which if there had we had bin very unhappy, for the *Engliſh* had intended to leav us there with a little Proviſion, till our own Ships ſhould come to fetch us off: but ſeeing there was none, they were ſo kind as to carry us for *England*. The reaſon of their deſign to do ſo, was becauſe they had very many ſick aboard, and grew every day weaker and weaker by the Death of their Men: fearing therefore that we ſhould riſe and make our ſelvs Maſters of the Ship when we found an Opportunity, being about 300 *Dutch* in all. *Jun.* 1673.

On the 23 of *June* we left *Aſcenſion* Iſland, and ſet our Courſe N. W. till we came under the Æquinoctial, and then North till we came in 13 *degr.* which is the height of the *Barbados*, then ſteered N. and by E. till we came in 43 *degr.* where we altered our Courſe N. E. till we found that we were in 48 *degr.* then changed our Point N. E. and by E. till we came at 51 *degr.* 11 *min.* then ſteered Eaſt till we had 51 *degr.* 20 *min.* and the next day got ſight of *Ireland*, and the day following arrived ſafe at *Baltamore*, which is a very fair Haven and good Anchor-ground, as alſo a ſafe Harbor for Shipping againſt all Winds. Being arrived here the Captains gave us liberty to go where we liked, ſo that ſom of our Men went over Land for *Kingſale*.

On the 26 we had news of the Engagement between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. The day following I ſet forward with ſom of our Company afoot over land, paſſing through many fair Towns, as *Balthamore*, *Top*, *Roſs* and others.

On the 28 we came at the Caſtle *Til Britton*, where we ſtay'd all night, and the next morning betimes ſet forward on our Journey, and about noon came to *Kingſale*, being one of the moſt commodious Havens and ſtrongeſt Place that I had ſeen in all *Ireland*. The Haven is ſufficient to contain a conſiderable number of Shipping, as at our being there were 80 or 100 ſail laying at Anchor, all Ships of a great Burthen. The City it's ſelf is alſo ſtrongly Wall'd and has an impregnable Fort. We tarried here 10 days, and ſet forward again for *Cork*, where we happily found a Ship ready to ſail for *Briſtol*. *Cork* is a fair City and the *Metropolitan* of the Province of that name, being alſo a Biſhops Seat. The Maſter received us aboard, and in the Afternoon ſet ſail, and that night came to Anchor before *Cow*, which lies about 5 Leagues from *Cork*.

On

Aug. 1673. On the 10 betimes in the Morning we weighed, and had a brav Gale of Wind. About Noon we deſcried a ſmall Veſſel which w preſumed was a *Dutch* Privateer, but ours being a good ſailer outſtrip her far. The next day we found our ſelvs in St. *Georges* Channel, an about the Evening came before *Briſtol*. On the 12 I went aſhoar an purſued my Journey afoot to *London*, where on the 15 I arrived, an ſtayed 3 Days, viewing to my great aſtoniſhment the City all rebuil after a magnificent manner, being not long before in Rubbiſh an Aſhes by a dreadfull Fire, that happened in the year 1666, but no appearing with a far greater luſtre than before. From *London* I travailed to *Harwich* paſſing thrô many fair Villages and a moſt delightfu Countrey. And from hence imbarqued for *Holland*, where after man Miſeries and Perils, by the Goodneſs of Almighty GOD, I embraced my Wife and Children on the 7 of *October*, in the year 1673.

Anchora de prora jacitur, ſtat littore puppis.

THE END.

The Copy of a

NARRATIV,

Written from aboard the Ship EAGLE, belonging to his Imperial Majesty the *Czar* of *Moscovia*, riding at Anchor before ASTRACHAN upon the River *Wolga*, bearing date *September*, XXIV, M DC LXIX, *O. S.*

ON the 28 of *May* we left *Moscou* and with a small Boat fell down the River *Occa*, till we came at *Dedenof*, being the Wharf where the Ship and Yacht were built which we found ready for a Launch.

ON the 6 of *Iune* we set sail with our Ship, and Yacht coming the day following before *Nisen Novogorod*, where the River *Occa* incorporates with the *Wolga*. In the mean while we had run our selvs a ground three or 4 Times, but that was more thrô the unskilfullness of the Pilot than the Badness of the River, which is deep and navigable: as also on each side inhabited and grown with Woods. The name of the Gentleman who resided at Nisen as *Waywood*, or Governour, was *Maxim Ivanowitz Nachokkin*, who made us very welcom and according to their custom sent us several Dishes of Meat, also during the time we lay there at Anchor came several times aboard us; and at our departure convoy'd us down som part of the River, and supplied the Officers with Necessaries and Refreshments.

HAVING the advantage both of Wind and stream we arrived the First of *July*, before the mouth of the River *Casanka*, which is about a mile from *Casan*. Here we broke our Cables, and with much ado made fast to the shore with a single Rope: We had also lost our Bowspriet among the Trees in falling down the *Occa*. The *Waywods* name of *Casan* was *Iurien Petrovitz Trobieskay*, a liberal Gentleman and not at all incomitable; he treated us several Times at his own House, and upon our Departure gave us som Provision aboard us. After 15 days aboad here we looosed and passed by several fair Towns, as *Camuschinka*, *Dosoroska* and others too long to relate. This said *Camuschinka* is lately built by Order of the *Czaar*, being fortified Diamond wise by Collonel *Thomas Bailey*, an *English* Gentleman: It's end is to prevent the Irruption of the *Cosacs*, the River *Camuschinka* running into the *Don*.

ON the 13 of *August* we got sight of *Astrachan*, and on the 14 came before the Town where we gave the *Salvo* with all our Cannon and 60 Musquets, and in the Evening dropped Anchor in the Road, near the Town. We had before got Intelligence how that the *Cosacs* had appeared upon the *Wolga*, but coming to *Astrachan* were further informed how that the *Russes* were gon out against them, in which Expedition were 50 Stroegs and about 3000 Men, under the Command of *Knees Simeun Ivanowitz Geboof*, who was the third Voyce, or suffrage of

Aſtrachan. It is now 3 years ſince the firſt riſing of the *Coſacks* in which time they have depopulated many fair Towns upon the *Caſpian* Sea, and about a year agon had taken in *Iaick*, a City belonging to the *Czar*, where they had beſides many Inſolencies committed killed and diſpatched abov 8000 Men by cruel and unheard-of Torments, amongſt whom was one *Dutch* Officier, of known fame for his good Conduct.

IN *Perſia* they had taken in and demoliſhed 3 Citys, and moſt barbarouſly maſſacred the Inhabitants, and growing both in number and power were becom very formidable, both to the King of *Perſia* and the Great Duke. They were headed by one *Stenko* (or *Stephen*) *Radzin*, a diſcontented Perſon and one of great Power, as to his proper Abilities, bearing a Soveraign Aw among them. About 14 days before our Arrival at *Aſtrachan*, he had taken a coſtly *Perſian Boes*, valued at ſeveral Tuns of Gold, in which were Horſes and ſeveral other Preſents ſent from the King of *Perſia* to the Great Duke of *Moſcovy*.

ON the 17 as the *Waywod* of *Aſtrachan* was aboard our Ship came an Expreſs, bringing news that *Radzin* and the *Coſacs* had ſubmitted themſelvs to the Great Duke, upon which the *Waywod* gave order that we ſhould fire our Guns, which we did. The ſaid Letters further mentioned how that they had delivered the Horſes belonging to the Great Duke to the *Ruſſian* General.

ON the 19 came 3 *Coſacs* into *Aſtrachan* in very coſtly Attire and with great pomp, whereof the youngeſt was the Orator. The *Waywood* after a long Treaty aſſured them of being eſtabliſhed in the Great Dukes Favour. But it ſeemed that they had ſom diſguſt, becauſe they were not formally introduced, as is cuſtomary with all Ambaſſadors and Legates. The *Waywod* excuſed it, ſaying "That he him-"ſelf was a *Boiar*, and reſided there in quality of *Waywod*, yet at his firſt taking "that Dignity upon him was not introducted by his Predeceſſor, nor the Nobility "of *Aſtrachan*, which was Argument and Token that he was not to do the like to others. When the Conference was over, the *Waywod* invited them to his Houſe and gave them a ſplendid Treat.

ON the 21 early in the Morning came the *Ruſſian* Fleet before the Town conſiſting of 53 *Stroegs*, or Rowing-Barks: upon each *Stroeg* was only one Piece of Ordnance, but thoſe in the Rere had 2, to wit, one before and another abaft. Aboard each were ſo many *Strelitzers* (which are the Soldiery) that they could not mov if there had bin occaſion, to do any execution. The ſaid Fleet by order of the *Waywod* came to Anchor on the other ſide of the River. About 3 in the Afternoon came the *Coſacs*, conſiſting in 23 Sail and a conſiderable number of Men. Upon their Arrival we had an order from the *Waywod* to receiv 200 *Strelitzers* aboard under our Standard, who placed themſelvs in order round about the Ship. The *Ruſſian* Army then looſed and came before the City, giving the *Salvo* with all their great Guns at once, with abov 3000 Muſquets: which the *Coſacs* anſwered with their Cannons and Muſquets; upon which they in the City put out a white Flag, which was a Token for us to Fire, which we did with all our great Guns, and about 200 Muſquets. Mean while the Maſter of our Ship fell over board, but was taken up again, thô with much ado, for the weather was a little tempeſtuous. Soon after

the

the *Ruſſians* gave fire a ſecond time and came cloſe up to our Ship; upon which we gave fire for the laſt time with 13 Guns and 200 Muſquets. The *Coſacs* rowed off, and came to Anchor where the *Ruſſian* Fleet rode at firſt.

ON the 22 in the Morning betimes, the *Coſacs* rowed up the River, and were on a ſudden out of ſight: and that morning iſſued a Proclamation that none ſhould have any Commerce or Converſe with them. On the 23 came *Radzin* himſelf in Perſon into *Aſtrachan* and was ſaluted by all the Gentry: the *Waywod* was alſo council'd to bring the Ammunition and Standard of the Rebells into the City, which he reſolv'd upon. Mean while came news to the *Waywod* that *Radzin* was drunk, whereupon he gave order that they ſhould endeavor by good and gentle words to get him out of Town: he being very unruly when overtaken with Liquor, in which mood he had deſtroyed many Men, both of his own Rout and others. But the Inſolencies he had committed during this Uproar cannot be recounted, altho 'tis ſaid that beſides the many Thouſands of the Great Dukes Subjects he had cauſed to be maſſacred, whereof himſelf boaſted to have diſpatched 8000 at one time, he had from time to time maſſacred above 40000 *Perſians*.

The Copy of a

NARRATIV,

Sent from Capt. *D. Butler*, dated at *ISPAHAN*, *March* 6th. 1671.

Worthy Sir,

AFTER a tedious delay we finally received an Order from the Great Duke to imbark our ſelvs with the Ships Company, and com to *Moſcou*. Which being ſhown us I inſiſted continually that according to the ſaid Order I might go up, but it was thought good that the Ship ſhould be firſt put in Equippage, and ſupplied with Ammunition, and in caſe of neceſſity be uſed againſt the *Coſacks*, who under the Conduct of one *Stenko Radzin* as chief, had already depopulated many fair Countreys upon the *Caſpian* Sea, and then reconciled to the Great Duke. But in the Moneth of *March* came news how that the *Coſacs* were again revolted, upon which Colonel *Leventi Bogdonof* was diſpatched by the Great Duke with a Band of 800 Men, to wit, 400 *Ruſſian* Cavalrie and 400 *Nagaian Tartars*, to march to *Zarit a*, a City lying about 80 *Dutch* Miles above *Aſtrachan*; that being a City which abutts upon the Frontiers of the *Coſacks*, and commands the paſſage of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*; which River nevertheleſs doth not fall into the *Wolga*, as ſom have bin of opinion, and as moſt Maps do make it, for the *Coſacks* do come almoſt a days Journey with their Boats from the *Don* to the *Wolga*, which they ballance with pieces of Timber, the better to endure the violence of the ſtream, for they are but of one entire piece, or Trunks of Trees hollowed out. Theſe people have the *Ruſſian* Speech and the ſame Religion. They have alſo their *Aſyla*, or Places of Refuge, granted them by the Great Duke, whither they have recourſe when they have perpetrated any villanous Fact, or Enormity.

ABOUT the 27, or 28 of *April* came a Narrativ by a Courier from the aboveſaid *Bogdanof*, importing how that the *Coſacks* had taken in *Tzaritza*, and that about 1200 *Moſcovians* were kill'd and drown'd: but to give a full account of the Stratagems they had uſed to gain the Town, would make me more prolix and tedious than my preſent deſign is to be. Theſe 1200 *Strelitzers* or Soldiers, were a part of thoſe that were ſent from *Moſcou* to enforce the reſpectiv Garriſons upon the *Wolga*, but eſpecially this City, in which the Great Duke repoſed great Truſt, being able to check (as I have ſaid before) the main Paſſage of the Rebels, in their March for the South-Eaſt Countrey.

THE ſame day came news how that the Field-*Tartars* were at diſcord and factious among themſelvs, and being drawn into 2 Head-parties uſed all manner of hoſtile

Acts

Acts againſt each other, ſo that *Bogdanof* thought good to draw up and march forward to *Chornojar*, a City about 50 *Dutch* Miles from *Aſtrachan*. He had alſo ſent down a Captiv *Coſac* to *Aſtrachan* who was put upon the Rack, and in ſuch manner tormented that all had compaſſion of him.

MEANWHILE all things are made ready at *Aſtrachan*, and the Shipping deſign'd for ſervice in this Expedition put in equippage. The *Waywood* alſo ſends a Perſon of Quality with a Body of Soldiery to joyn with thoſe under *Boogdanof*: theſe were then to be commanded by a *Pole*, whoſe name was *Ivan Ruſſinſki* and a Proſelyte in the *Ruſſian* Church, and next to him one *James Wondrong*, a *Scotch* Gentleman, born in *Edenburg*, aged about 33 years, and univerſally well ſpoken of, for his Piety and faithfull deportment. The *Dutch* Officers, were *Paul Dolf* Captain and *Engineer*, with his Son in Law *Lewis Fabritius*, beſides Captain *Robert Hind* an *Engliſhman*, *Nicholas Schaak* my Lieutenant was alſo made Captain. There were alſo 2 *Dutch* Lieutenants ſent upon this affair who were baptized into the *Ruſſian* Church. As alſo 2 or 3 Enſigns. The reſt of the Officers were moſtly *Poles* and *Ruſſes*.

UPON the 25 of *May* being Munday in Whitſun-week the Captains departed from *Aſtrachan* in about 40 *Stroegs*, all under the command of *Knees Simeun Ivanowitz Elboof*. Each *Stroeg* had one Piece of Canon and all neceſſary Ammunition, the whole number of the Men that were aboard this Fleet (as appeared by the Muſter-roll) did not exceed 2600 Men, whereof 2100 were of the *Strelitzers* of *Aſtrachan* who have ſome manner of Diſtinction among themſelvs.

THE ſame day the *Coſac* who had bin ſo cruelly tortured was hanged up in ſight of the whole Army. In the mean time the Inhabitants of *Aſtrachan* began to murmur and breath Rebellion, inciting one another againſt the Governour and Magiſtracy, which ſeemed to be a very bad *Omen* of ſome ill Conſequence, for from that time forward they continued bolder and bolder till at length it burſt out into palpable Rebellion. About this time arrived a *Dutch* Chirurgeon at *Aſtrachan*, who had bin in the Retinue of the *Moſcovian* Ambaſſador at *Iſpahan*, of whom I bought ſom Silk ſtuffs and 480 Hides of *Turky* leather, for which I immediately tendered the Money.

ABOUT the beginning (I think the 4th day) of *June* came a Gentleman from *Chornojar* with very unwelcom News. His Meſſage was that the ſame day that *Knees Simeun Ivanowitz* with the *Ruſſian* Army was arrived before that City, the *Coſacks* appearing far more numerous and ſtrong, thoſe in the City revolted, declared themſelvs *Coſacks*, and ſurrendred up the Town to *Radzin* and the Rebells. He added further, That all the loyal Officers who indeavored to diſſwade them there from, were moſt inhumanly maſſacred. This ſad Expreſs, altho ſmothered as much as was poſſible by the *Waywod* and Council of *Aſtrachan*, was nevertheleſs come to the knowledge of the Townſmen, who were very impatient to bear the yoke of Obedience any longer. Upon this news I was ſent for by the *Waywod*, who aſked me if my Men were able to manage the Cannon, and gave order that in the firſt place all the Cannon ſhould be viſited that lay upon the Walls, and to repair thoſe that were defectiv which was forthwith done.

ON Thurſday the 5th of *June*, we left the Ship, and brought all the Goods in the Fort, by order of the Governor, our Gunner alſo loaded a great part of the Ordnance. Still continued whiſpering and murmuring againſt the Governour, ſo that neither He, nor the Council, durſt appear without doors for fear of an Uproar. The Chirurgeon of whom I have already made mention, having bin converſant about 14 years with the *Ruſſes*, and not unacquainted with their tumultuous ſpirits, told me, he could eaſily foreſee that the City would be betray'd ere long, if the Commonſort did not ſee better marks and clearer evidence of Security; and without doubt we that were Strangers and in ſervice of the Great Duke muſt expect ſom woful Cataſtroph: and therefore ſince our Pay was retracted, and our ſervice only about the Ship, and not in the Land Army, it was more adviſable to betake our ſelves over the *Caſpian* Sea to the *Perſian* Coaſt. I had already ordered our Men to buy up Moneths Proviſion of Neceſſaries, fearing a Siege.

UPON this Motion of the Chirurgeon I ſummoned up my Officers and the Council together with them, what was beſt to be don in this caſe: they unanimously reſolved that it was more ſecure to betake our ſelves to flight, ſince we had no Pay and therefore not under any obligation to ſerve the Duke by Sea, much leſs by Land. They were willing to leave all they had at *Aſtrachan* except only their cloaths, becauſe it would be an incumbrance: yet becauſe I had many coſtly Cloaths and other Goods, they reſolved to take as much as they could with them, and pack'd all up in a great Portmantle and a Trunk which I had, beſides two little Cheſts, which I aſſented to. Every one took as much Proviſion of Bread in his own Portmantle as he thought might ſerve him; and it was reſolved that we ſhould leave none behind, ſave only 2 Seamen, who had each a Wife and a young Child. On Friday in the After-noon my beſt Things were brought aboard, it being intended that we ſhould depart that night, which the two Seamens Wives coming to perceive would by no means go with us. But I weighing well the Enterprize with my ſelf, and conſidering the danger of adventuring with 22 Perſons more, in a Shallop of 26 Foot long, I thought it not good to eſſay the matter. I had with me one *Chriſtian Brand* my Gunners Mate, with whom I reſolved to ſtay and ſee what the event would be at *Aſtrachan*, and (if our fate was ſuch) to die on the Bed of Honour, rather than to flee we knew not whither. This I intimated to the Maſter and the Doctor who alſo were content to venture their Lot. Immediatly I ſent a Seaman to the Maſter Mate aboard the Shallop to acquaint them with the Alteration of my Reſolution, but that night the Gates were ſhut ſooner than the cuſtomary hour; ſo that he could not get ſpeech to them. This put me into ſome doubt, fearing that they might put off without me: but the Maſter and two Seamen perſwaded me to the contrary ſaying they would never have the boldneſs to go without me which for that time made me reſt contented. That Evening I went the Rounds with the Vice-roy upon the Walls of the Caſtle, which was laid ore with Heaps of Stones, to uſe in caſe of Storm.

ON the ſeventh of *June*, being Saturday early in the morning, I ſent a Seaman to the Ship again with ſom privat Inſtructions; but he making ſom delay, and I not having the patience to wait any longer went my ſelf, with the Chirurgeon, and found that they

they were gone off with the Shallop. The Maſter and the reſt were (or ſeemed to be) ſurprized at the matter, as not beleeving they would have had the boldneſs to go without further order. 'Tis true it ſeemed not ſo ſtrange to me being only what I expected from them. However we concluded it the ſafeſt way for our own ſecurity to acquaint the *Waywod* with the matter, before he ſhould come to hear it from others, and with one to let him know the reaſon. But he who was my Interpreter was alſo fled with them, ſo that I was fain to make uſe of the Chirurgeon before mentioned. Having acquainted the Governour with what had paſſed, he ſhow'd himſelf outwardly not to be much concerned, eſpecially when I told him that they were not gone over to the *Coſacks*.

THE ſame day came a Courier with an Expreſs from *Moſcou*, being the ſame Gentleman who had brought the news how that the *Ruſſes* about *Zaritſa* were revolted. This Gentleman's name was *Danile Tourlekojof*, and had been formerly with me aboard our Ship upon the *Wolga*, between *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*, and intimated me with privacy how that the Revolting Party had uſed the Lievtenant General and other *Ruſſian* Officers after a moſt barbarous manner, and that *Aſtrachan* it ſelf, as well as all the Countrey round about, was already betray'd: but further told he not.

THE day following, being the 9th of *June*, I received an order from the Governour to viſit the Fortifications of the City. The like orders had an *Engliſh* Colonel, who was come hither from *Terki* which City was was alſo fortified anew by the ſaid Coll, being ſituated in the Land of the *Circas-Tartars*, about 2 Leagues from the *Caſpian* Sea: The old City, or Caſtle, as *Adam Olearius* writes, was firſt built and fortified by one *Cornelius Claaſz*, a *Hollander*. This Gentleman had the charge of one Quarter committed to him, and my ſelf the other, to repair it ſo, that the Men might be ſecure. Soon after came the *Waywod* himſelf in perſon and deſired our Advice what to do for Security of the Town. The *Engliſh* Gentlemans advice was to make ſome Outworks without the Walls: but I adviſed him to make Proclamation that all ſuch as had any way revolted or engaged themſelvs to the *Coſac* Party ſhould be pardoned, and declared free Remmiſſionaries, in caſe they would come and ſubmit themſelvs to the Governour, and that the Townsmen ſhould have ſome money diſtributed among them, and the moſt popular to be drawn in by promiſe of Advancement and the like; ſo that thoſe being leading Men might appeaſe the reſt: However my advice in that was rejected.

MEAN while a narrow Watch was held, and the Soldiery lay all night upon the Walls, and 2 Men at every Port-hole, to be ready in caſe of a ſilent Attacque.

THE *Perſians*, *Calmuc*-and *Circas-Tartars*, under conduct of a *Perſian* Gentleman, who was there upon his way to the Court at *Moſcou*, upon an Ambaſſage from the King of *Perſia*, did alſo their utmoſt indeavors to aſſiſt us, and paſſed away the night with Muſic, Dancing and other Mirth. The Poſt aſſigned them was the *Poet Nietze Baſna*, being the Bulwark where they uſually torture their Malefactors.

ON Sunday, being the 15th. of *June* I was invited to dinner with the *Waywod*. When the Table was done he gave me a Preſent, to wit, a yellow Silk Coat, 2

pair

pair of Breeches and 2 ſhirts, that being the Cuſtom of the *Ruſſians* upon extra dinary Occaſions [forſooth] He alſo made me many fair promiſes, beſides the fr dom of his Houſe and Table for my Good ſervice, having about 100 Men un my Conduct: nor did I appear too remiſs in my duty, for I went the Rounds ev night ofter than my Order and Injunction was.

THE Thurſday following, being the 19th. we had Intelligence how that the C Forces were greatly increaſed and that they were a Marching towards us; which no continued and was confirmed by a continual recourſe of Land-*Tartars* and Fiſh into *Aſtrachan*. There was alſo a falſe rumor ſpread about the Town, as if Men that were fled had loaden the Cannon that lay upon the Walls with looſe Po der, others that it was with Balls and no Powder, and a third, that it was firſt w Balls and then with Powder, all which coming to the Governours Ear he ſent me, but coming to worm the Guns in his preſence found it was but a falſe and licious report raiſed by ſome prejudiced Perſons to caſt an *odium* upon them and turn me out of Favour.

ON Friday the 20th. of *June*, the *Waywod* made me Lieutenant Coll. in pl of *James Wondram*, which by proviſion I took upon me, but being not well pl ed with my Charge, the Coll. who obſerved it, ſeem'd a little diſcontented, ſaid in preſence of the Governour, That it was not now a fit time to ſolicit in for things, whence I collected that he thought that I had made it my buſineſs to be adv ced, but was ſoon after better informed, when he would himſelf have confir me in the Regiment and I with great earneſtneſs declined it. The Poſt which assigned me was in the ſame Quarter with the Coll. on the *Tartarian* ſide, wh the Fort was the weakeſt.

ON Sunday, *June* 22 came the *Coſacks* within ſight of *Aſtrachan*, and ſen *Coſac* Trumpetter with a *Ruſſian* Prieſt to demand the Town. The ſaid *Coſac* alſo a Letter for me in *Dutch*, wherein I was adviſed not to fight with my Men, hoped for Quarter, or Mercy at their hands. The ſaid Letter was taken from by the *Waywod*, before I had read it quite out, and torn in Pieces. The Trumpetter and Prieſt had Gaggs put in their Mouths, that they ſhould cauſe no co motion or alteration among the Commons; and were ſoon after beheaded.

ON Munday came the *Coſac*-Army with about 300 Keels, great and ſm cloſe to the City, puting in at a River near the Vineyards that ly about half a Leag from the Walls of the Town. Upon this we ſet the *Tartarian* Tents on fire. Mea while I ſtood upon the top of the Governours houſe, with the Governour hi ſelf, and caſually eſpied ſeveral Boats in the River before the Town: I therefo adviſed the Governour not to let them tarry there for althô they were but Fiſh Boats yet they might give intelligence to the Enemy; wherefore he gave order imm diatly to ſink them, which was forthwith put in execution. That afternoon the *Perſia* and *Circas-Tartars* had taken 4 *Coſacks*, who were put to the Rack and after co feſſion, two were hanged up, and other two beheaded in preſence of the Governour.

THE day following the Collonel would have confirmed me in the Office I th ſupplied, to wit, as Lieutenant Colonel which I nevertheleſs declined as before. This ſame day about noon the Great Dukes Factor preſented us with a Pipe of ſtrong

Beer,

Beer, and a Quantity of Tobacco, which we distributed among the Soldiers to give 'em Courage and keep them content. In the forepart of the night I went with the Chirurgeon to do the Rounds, which don I lay me down to sleep a little in my Tent but was quickly awaked with the Alarm, which gave notice how that the *Cossacks* approached to begin their first storm, which happened about 3 a clock at the *Wosnasinske* Gate, where our Ship-master and the *Waywods* Brother had the watch. The first I espied was a square Body of the Enemy who approached very near, upon which I gave fire with our 12 Pounders, and was seconded by those of the next Post, who shot very fast. *Interim* came the *English* Colonel *Baily* to me in great hast with most of the *Dutch* and *German* Officers, bringing news how that the City was already betray'd. The Colonel was himself wounded on the cheek with a Pike, as also in two or three places on his Leg, for being all in Armour they could not hurt him elsewhere: and this he said was done by our own Soldiery. He told me further that he had done his utmost indeavour to pacify them and if it were possible to cast an *odium* upon the *Cossacks*, as Rebells; but was fain to smother all his reason sore against his will and at last glad to come off with his Life. After a small conference together I advised the Colonel to go again to his Post, and see if the perswasion of other Officers had wrought any thing upon the *Streliszers*: but the next news I heard was that the *Streliszers* had massacred all the Officers, which grieved me most highly, because that they had adventured their persons by my advice. Neither did this bloody Action hold up with that, for it came forward so far that Captain *Wederos* who had the next Post to me was taken by his own servant, pinion'd fast and afterward in most cruel manner murthered by his Soldiers. The Chirurgeon of whom I have already made mention seeing this, would have thrown himself off the wall to avoid the danger of those bloody Traitors; but I did all I could to with-hold him, and at last called to mind a certain Port-hole just under the Tower which might serve us for an *Exitus* out of all those imminent dangers, in which we had certainly suffered if we had not taken care betimes. Thrô this we took our way and I charged the Chirurgeon with his Servant (being a *Pole*) to follow me, as also two of our Ships-Folk, to wit, *James Trappen*, and *Christian Brandt*. Coming below we found there two *Russes* who stood Sentinel, whom I charged to let us through. These not knowing any thing of the Tumult let us thrô without much difficulty or Interrogations. The Chirurgeon went out before, and I followed, but knew not what became then of the two Seamen and the *Pole*. We were forced to wade thrô the Ditch to the neck, aiming at the Tartarian Field Quarters, which, as I have said, was burnd up that it might not be an advantage to the Enemy, which place we held for the most safe and secure. They shot at us mainly from the Walls, but all to little purpose for we were got pretty far without Cannon reach, at lest for single Bodies: But marching a little forward we met two men, whom we supposed to be *Cossacks*, the Chirurgeon having a Firelock resolved to discharge as he also did, and so far surprised he was that he grew desperate and throwing himself into the River fell a swimming. When I came up with them I understood that they were also fled for fear of being massacred by the Commonalty; upon which I called out to the Chirurgeon that they were honest Men and under

the ſame Circumſtances we were our ſelves, &c. but could have no anſwer from him. However not willing to leave him ſo, I went to look out for him, and found him among the Reeds half ſpent, whence I drew him out, and perceiving him to be in a way of Recovery marched forward along the River; and at laſt found a Fellow ſleeping in a Boat, whom we awakened and compelled to bring us over to the other ſide: but finding no place of ſhelter or ſecurity we fell down the River, and about 10 in the forenoon came to a Fiſhing place called *Troſilzen Outzjouge*, where we related all what had paſſed at *Aſtrachan* to the Fiſhers. We would have gone further, but the *Ruſſians* would not go with us. However I prevailed ſo far with the Chirurgeon that he was willing rather to go to Sea, than to truſt himſelf to the mercy of the *Coſacks*. But he was very loth to truſt himſelf in ſuch a ſmall Boat, being well acquainted with the danger by untemperate Winds, inconſtant Seaſons, and uncertain Tides. I had no more money by me than 7 *Rubbels* [about 3 lb. Sterl.] and bought a Mug-tent or Pavilion with a loaf of Bread weighing about 10 lb. and with that put off, truſting to the Providence of Almighty GOD, having the advantage of the Tide. After two hours rowing we met 2 Fiſhers Boats, to whom we related how affairs ſtood at *Aſtrachan*. The Fiſhers gave us very good words and comfortable Language, promiſing to aſſiſt us in what they might. We rowed as hard as we could, and bare them company to their Fiſhing place, called *Ivanowa Outzjoug*, where we met with a *Ruſſian* Colonel, 2 Captains and 46 *Strelitzers*. The Colonels name was *Maxim Lopatim*, and lay in Garriſon at *Terky* intending for *Aſtrachan*, but had not as then heard of the horrid Treaſon and Rebellion of the Commonaltie there, nor ſo much as of the Attacque and Siege of the *Coſacks*. He underſtanding how affairs ſtood there, reſolved to row back with us in the Boat to *Terky*, and adviſing the two Captains to do the like who put their Goods aboard, and tacitly left the *Strelitzers* at *Ivanowa Outzoug*. Thus we rowed with all our might, till we got the *Caſpian* Sea, ſtill keeping near the Bank. After a little rowing we eſpied a Boat which rowed very hard after us: we alſo did all we could to outrow them, but they being more expert than we in general, gain'd room of us, and coming near our boat, one of the *Ruſſian* Captains jump'd over board, and was afterwards taken up by them. All the Arms we had was my Piſtol, for the Chirurgeon had thrown his into the Water, when he ſwam to ſave himſelf without *Aſtrachan*, as I have already, mentioned. In the Keel or Veſſel that followed us were ſeveral Fiſhers, together with the *Strelitzers*, which were formerly under the Command of thoſe Officers that were with us ad left at *Ivanowa Outzoug*, who it ſeems ſo reſented the matter that they had declared themſelves *Coſacks*, thro diſguſt that the Officers had not given them warning of the affairs of *Aſtrachan*, who probably would have bin faithfull if they had bin ſo kind as to acquaint them with the matter. In ſhort they cloſed up with us, took, plundered, bound and brought us back again to the Fiſhing place, where the Colonel alone had the Liberty to exerciſe his Devotion in the Church, but we were ſecured with a ſtrong Guard all the night long.

ON Thurſday the 25 of *July* they made preparation to bring us up to *Aſtrachan*, and about noon we got ſight of the Town: and coming to a very convenient place

to

to land at, they went a ſhoar and divided the ſpoil, which they had taken from us. Being now alone I conſulted with the Chirurgeon how that we might eaſily make our eſcape being unbound and the Boat only made faſt to a half-pike which I could very eaſily manage. The Chirurgeon intimated the matter to the Colonel, deſiring that he would joyn indeavours with us to get free: but (whether out of fear, or in hopes of better uſage at the hands of the Rebells I cannot tell) he forthwith diſcovers the deſign, and gave the Rebells warning to have a care: upon which they ſet a watch and guarded us ſo ſtrictly that we could not make our eſcape. Seeing that our Enterpriſe proved abortiv and ineffectual, I told the Chirurgeon that I would run a little up the Iſland and ſwim over the Water to the *Tartars*, which I eſſay'd to do, but was follow'd and taken; yet had that attempt not bin in vain if I had not chanc'd to fall which was no ſmall diſadvantage to me: however I betook me to the Water which I found there very ſhallow, ſo that they with a little wading fetch'd me out. But having got me, I cannot expreſs with what cruelty they uſed me, beating me black and blew, which done, they bound me faſt and threw me into the Boat, ſo rowing up to the Town. By the way the Chirurgeon made a propoſal to them that if they would ſave us alive, they ſhould have 100 *Rubbels* for my Ranſom and 70 for his own. They promiſed to do their Indeavour for us. In the Evening we arrived at *Aſtrachan* where we were brought up before the General of the *Coſacs*. I had no Cloaths about me ſave only a pair of leathern Breeches, which were full of holes. The General ſate at the Gates of the Biſhops Palace croſs-legg'd after the *Turkiſh* manner drinking Brandy, and was ſo drunk that his Eies roll'd in his Read. He aſked the Chirurgeon who he was? and what his Function was? which when he knew, gave him his Life, and ordered him to take care of the *Coſacs* that were wounded. Afterward he aſked, who I was? the Chirurgeon made anſwer that I was his Companion: he further aſked me what I could do; but the Chirurgeon leaving me, I could not return him any anſwer. The *Ruſſian* Colonel being examined, was immediately carried up to the top of a Tower called *Rooſcat*, and hurled headlong down. From the ſame Tower alſo was the Vice-roy, or *Waywod*, whoſe name was *Ivan Simennowitz Proſorofski*, after many Tortures thrown alſo præcipitantly from Top to Bottom; as alſo the Vice-Chancelor with all the Officers, of what degree ſoever they were, either thrown down, or caſt into the Water.

MOST dreadfull was this maſſacre which continued for ſome time together; but GOD Almighty gave me an undaunted ſpirit. The *Coſac* General looking earneſtly upon me commanded his Men to give me Brandy, and made me drink off 2 cups one after another, and then gave order to bring me into the Camp: But what became of the 2 *Ruſſian* Captains I cannot tell. As I paſſed by to the Camp being put in a Boat that lay next to the Generals, I was eſpied of a *Ruſſian Strelitzer* who brought news of my being ſtill alive to Madam *Wonderham*, the Lieutenant Colonels Widdow. I have already made mention how that among the *Dutch* Officers that went out with the ſaid Lieutenant Colonel, was one *Paul Radolph* his Son in Law who was the only Perſon that remained alive: feigning himſelf in ſuch extremity to be a *Coſac*, for he was well acquainted with their ſpeech and manners. This

young Gentleman hearing that I was ſtill alive came to find me out in the Boat; and during this while were whole Boat-loads of Men brought into the ſtream, and thrown into the Water, being tied together ſo that they could not help themſelvs with ſwimming. In this poſture I lay my ſelf till Friday *June* 27, expecting every moment my laſt Cataſtroph. That day they brought me into a Tower, and tied me ſo hard, that my blood for want of a natural reflux began to corrupt within my Body. My Arms were pinion'd, and my hands made faſt behind my Back: my feet alſo were ſo hard bound that I never expected to have the uſe of them again. Lying in this Poſture and moſt lamentable ſtate I ſpent my Time in ſighing and groaning. The Chirurgeon of whom we have already ſpoke came to viſit me: I deſired them to ſollicit for my Death, but they ever diſſwaded me from it. Yet ſtill I inſiſted very hard that they would make interceſſion for me to the General that I might be diſpatched, giving them a private reaſon for that my earneſtneſs. Now there was a Rule among the *Coſacks*, that if any came to interceed for a Captiv that he ſhould dy himſelf for him, which the Chirurgeon told me alſo, yet promiſed he would adventure himſelf to the General, and for that time took his leave.

THIS night I was moſt barbarouſly uſed by the *Coſacks*, and *Gogelats*, a People of *Ukrain* ſo called. And in the mean time was moſt fearfully vexed with Toads and other vermin that continually ran over my Body and about my head in whole ſwarms. However I ſpent my time in prayer as one condemned to dy and aſſured of a ſpeedy Death, of which (I may truly declare) I was not in the leſt affraid, only feared that they would hang me up by the Heels, or put me to ſome ſuch lingring death, with which they continually threatned me.

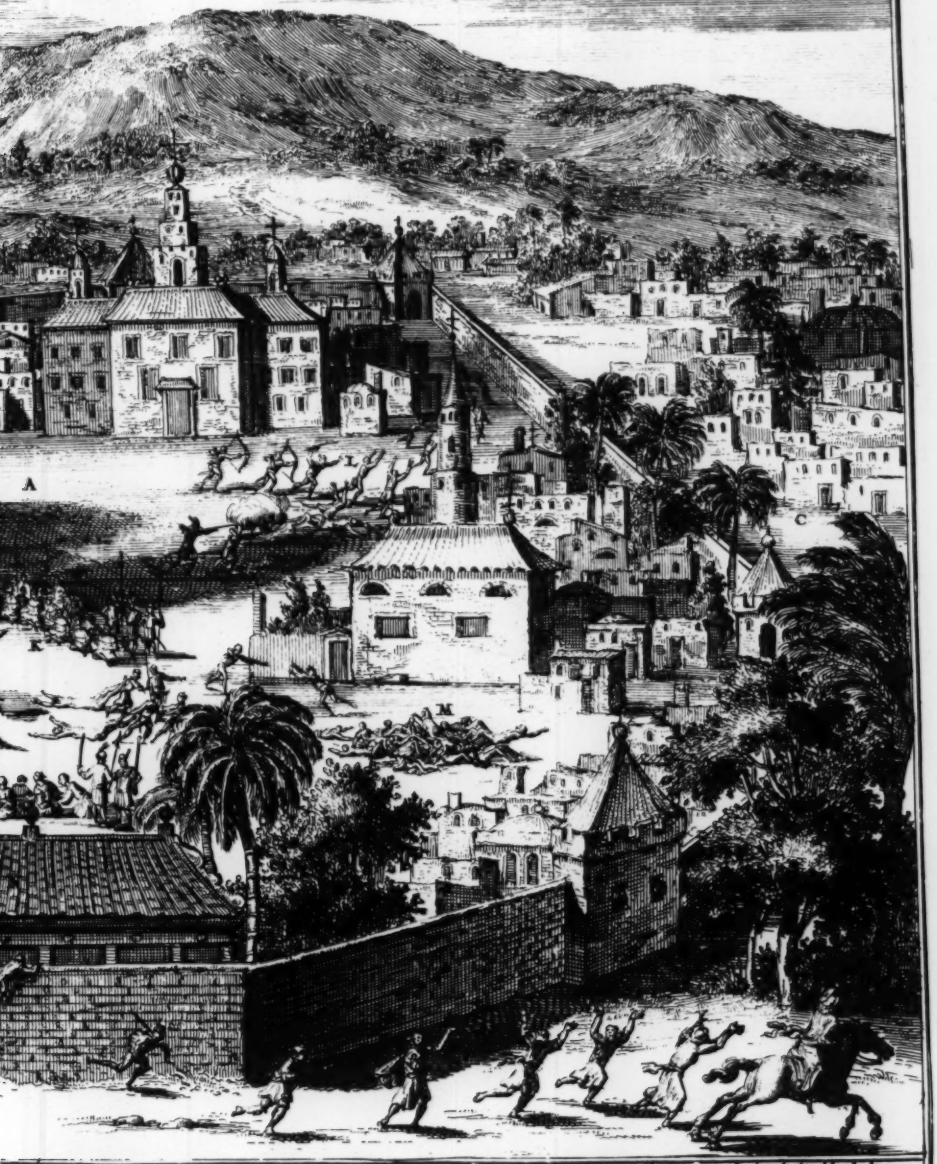
ON Saturday the 28 of *June* came the aforeſaid Chirurgeon, and told me that the General had ſent for me: and being untied I could hardly ſtand upright, yet made a ſhift to hupple after him. Being come in to the preſen ce of the General after a few idle impertinent Queſtions he aſked me bad me go home with the Chirurgeon. From Sunday to Thurſday I continued there in houſe with him, in which time I ſaw much cruelty commited, ſome hanging up by the Feet, others with their Feet and hands chopt off left in the open ſtreet to ſhift for themſelves, none daring ſo much as put forth a finger to help them.

ON Thurſday *July* 3d I was again taken and carried to the Brink of the River where I expected to part with my Life. But the *Coſacks* told me, if I would pay the 100 *Rubbles*, which the Chirurgeon had promiſed them on my behalf, I might go free: which the Chirurgeon, who againſt his will feigned himſelf to be a *Coſack*, was content to diſburſe for me, which afterwards I was obliged to repay upon demand, when able.

ON Sunday I was ſent for by the General, who was then a Drinking at the Emperors Cellar, but nothing of moment paſſed at that time he being drunk, and forced me to drink off ſeveral Bowls of Brandy and Wine after one another, ſo that I was affraid to diſpleaſe him, being (as I have elſewhere remembred) very outragious when drunk; wherefore I took occaſion to ſteal out of his preſence.

ABOUT this time happened many memorable paſſages, and cruel Examples of Tyranny, which would prove too tedious to relate. I ſhould want words to expreſs the


Schrickelycke Moordt int Slodt vdn As
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
Decker. fec.
A. Slot-Slot van Astracan.
B. Toren staende ant Slot.
C. D. Stadt-Astracan.
D. D' Russchen overste vande Tera gesmeten.
E. D'Gouverneur Jean Simonnowitz en. G. Officiers van Prosorski elendich
onder Casselier vande wren gesmeten. ongebracht
M. Plants daer sy de Doden op malkander smeten N. Wyn pars'ery O. De Ketel P. Het Gerecht Hays Q. Muur van 't Slodt



H. Mauro Mecrowitz secretaris by de
rebellen gegangen de soon van een
Chan wrt Golan.
I. Twee Soonen vande Gouverneur byde
Poris omsingelt by de rebellen opgehangen.
K. Caningen. die alle omgebracht syn.
L. Vrachtwade die Astrachanders
gebout worden.

the moſt barbarous and inhuman Acts and Torments, which the *Coſacks* ſtudied to kill and torture the Inhabitants and Loyal Officers, who did not forthwith ſubmit themſelvs to their unreaſonable and unjuſt Wills.

On the Wedneſday following was the Secretary *Alexo Alexowits* hung up upon a Fleſh-hook by the Ribbs, and ſuffered much deſpightful uſage and Torments before he died. The ſame was done to a Noble mans Son of *Gilan*. Alſo two Sons of the Vice-roy, Deputy, or *Waywod* were hung up by the heels, the one being a very hopefull youth of about 16 years of Age, and the other a Child of about 7 or 8 at the moſt.

The Day following they were both found alive, and the youngeſt at the interceſſion and Mediator of ſome of *Radzins* Minions was taken down, and ſaved alive; but the eldeſt was thrown down from the Top of the Tower, whilſt ſtill alive, which was the Death his Father ſuffered.

The ſame day I had News how that *Chriſtian Brand* one of my Men was ſtill alive, and was conſtrained to feign himſelf as *Coſac*.

On the 20th of July the *Coſac* General *Radzin* departed with an infinte number of ſmall Shipping and ſeverall Thouſands of Men, drawing 20 Men out of each Company to ſerve for the Garriſon at *Aſtrachan* and left there 2 Governors of equal Command and Power, the one being a *Coſac*, and the other a *Ruſs*.

ON the 2 of *Auguſt* began a New Maſſacre continuing for ſeveral days together, where takeing one day with another, were 150 Perſons killed, ſparing neither ſex nor Age. For which reaſon I began to hunt out for a Cave in the Earth where I might ſave my ſelf in time of need, hearing of nothing but a perpetual and inceſſant maſſacre; and a general Lamentation of Parents for their Children, Widdows and Orphans for their Huſbands and Fathers, and that as well among thoſe who had bin inſtrumental and moſt forward to let in the Rebells, as others that oppoſed it; a juſt reward for their Treachery who had been aſſiſtant in the Bloodſhed of thoſe who under GOD ſhould have protected them from ſuch diſmal Calamities.

ABOUT this time I diſpatched three Letter for *Iſpahan* and had notice how that *Chriſtian Brandt* was ſet free. It ſeems that he was taken for a *Perſian*, having a brown, ſwarthy complexion, and by ſuch means was ſpared in the maſſacre; for all the *Dutch* were hewn down, or otherwiſe diſpatched, ſave onely *L. Fabritius* Son in Law to Captain *Rudolph*.

ABOUT the ſame time I had news by the Chirurgeon, how that my Ships-company that betook themſelvs to flight with the Shallop were run aſtrand on the *Scemkal* or *Dageſtan* Coaſt, a Countrey butting out againſt the *Caſpian* Sea.

ON the 22 of *Auguſt* was much Tyranny committed in the City, and people of all ages maſſacred. The Chirurgeon after a long ſoliciting procured a Paſport to depart with a Servant to attend him, altho not without giving Security for his Return. This gave me likewiſe opportunity to leave the place under pretext of being his Servant.

ON Munday in the afternoon being *Aug.* 25 we left *Aſtrachan* and imbarqued our ſelves aboard a Veſſel belonging to ſome *Banjan* Merchants, who were alſo pillaged and robbed of all they had.

ON Tuſeday we came to Sea, ſailing cloſe by the Coaſt and to the Southward. We alſo ſaw 3 ſmall Veſſels, or Barks which indeavoured to keep Company with us. Having paſſed *Settinabo Gora* the Wind was flat North, and about the Evening all was calm.

THE Day following one of the above mentioned Shipping hail'd us, and ſaid that they were bound for *Terki* and came from *Aſtrachan* being laden with Salt. We kept them Company along the Coaſt near the broken Land which is all grown over with huge tall Reeds: we had 11 and 12 Foot Water. At night one of thoſe Veſſels ſtray'd about a Cannon ſhot from us: and the next morning 2 Barks made up towards us and gave Fire, without doing any Execution: But when they came near us the cowardly *Banians* fell upon their knees and begged their Lives. In each Boat were 9 Perſons and aboard of us were 46, ſome *Perſians*, *Tartars* and *Bouchars*, but moſt *Banians*. Coming to board us they plundered all to our very Proviſion. I had about 8 *Rubbles* in Money and my Seal-ring which had bin once already redeemed from the *Coſacs*. This Ring with the Money I gave to the Chirurgeon; but they threatning to put him to the Torture when it came to his turn to be pillaged; he confeſſed all and delivered up the Money and Ring, beſides 4 double Ducats of his own: but found an opportunity to hide 52 Ducats more after an eſpecial manner about his Body.

WHEN the *Coſacks* had taken all and pillaged us of what they could find, they held a certain ſort of a Council among themſelvs what they ſhould do with us. At laſt it was reſolved after a long debate, that we ſhould be ſaved alive but turned off to Sea, with charge not to come anigh the Coaſt any more, upon pain of being thrown over board if they came to take us again.

UPON this they left us, and gave us opportunity to make uſe of the Wind, which was Weſterly, and about the Evening with a briſk Gale, and a dark moon we ſet ſail and bore up to the Sea.

BUT after we had ſailed about 2 Leagues the Weather began to be ſomwhat boiſtrous, ſo that we were fain to put in at a ſmall Creek of an Iſland, where we lay at Anchor till Saturday following; at what time the Weather growing more calm and temperate we weighed and bore up again to the Coaſt, where we immediatly deſcried 2 Barks that made up to us, and at laſt came cloſe by the board. The Chirurgeon and I had taken our laſt Farewel of each other, expecting nothing more than Death. In ſhort, they fell a plundering us, and I to paſs for a *Banjan* had anointed my ſelf with Black tempered with Greace, and tied a Handhercheif about my Head, but it was ſo botchingly don that they found occaſion to aſk the Chirurgeon, what for a Black Devil that I was? In the mean while they ſearched very cloſe for Bread and Proviſion which I ſeeing pointed to my mouth, whereupon they were ſo merciful as to return me a part of the Proviſion back again. Two *Degeſtan* Merchants were thrown over board and the Chirurgeon who paſſed for a *Pole* was moſt ſeverely beat. They threatned that if they met us again near the Coaſt that we ſhould have no Mercy at their hands. Meanwhile I had loſt my little Compaſs, ſo that we had no other help in directing our Courſe, than only the Sun and North-ſtar. Towards the Evening it began to blow hard again and the Pyrats left

us,

us, bearing up close to the Coast. The Surgeon had again hid his Gold in a place where they did not once make search for it.

THE Wind continued hard till Thursday following, blowing mostly from North-W. and by N. and now changed again into W. N. W. which was good and favourable for us; but the *Banians* would in no wise give their consent that we should weigh Anchor, for that they thought it too high and boistrous.

BUT on Saturday the Wind continuing still in the same point, we weighed, and with a fresh Gale steered away South and by West; and soon after descried a small Vessel riding at Anchor, being one of those that left *Astrachan* with us: those aboard were *Persians* and had the luck to escape the *Cosacks*, keeping off at Sea. When they saw who we were, they weighed and kept us company. Towards the Evening the Wind blew North-East, and I found that we had sailed too much Westerly, I press'd hard that we should alter our course, but could not prevail with them to steer another way: so that in the Morning we found our selves close to the Coast, and had the Wind at East and by N. With this sort of Shipping it is very difficult to steer without 12 points of the Compass Wind to their advantage.

HOWEVER we thought good to keep close to the Coast, but towards the Evening it growing calm we rowed off to the Seaward and lost the other Vessel. Meanwhile we began to be distressed for want of Provision, and fed of the crums of moldy Bread: and the greatest part of the Company had no more to eat. But the *Banjans* were best provided, and imparted to us such as they had.

INTERIM, the Wind came about East, and E. and by S. so that we were constrained to drop Anchor, and so to ride three days at half a fathom Water. Yet growing calmer we ever now and then rowed a little. But having spent all our wood were at a great loss for Fewel to bake bread, of that little quantity of Meal which the *Banians* had left: and were fain at last to cut up some parts of the Ship for Chips, which stood us in very good stead. The Wind then continued Easterly and we steered as far Southerly as we could, till on the 10th. of *September* towards the Evening we came to a good place of Anchorage, near the Coast, of 5 Foot water, where I stept ashoar to seek up some Wood and Herbs, or what else I thought might be serviceable to us on our Voyage.

ON Thursday being the 11th. of *September* we sailed close by the Coast which we kept in sight till Saturday following, when as the *Banians*, a poor and helpless People not able to endure such hardship, pressed very hard that we should put ashoar, which out of meer pity we were willing to do, being all wet and very cold.

MEANWHILE we were set upon by a party of *Cosacks*, who now the third time plundered us: but the Chirurgeon not having time nor the conveniency to hide his Ducats as before, digged a hole and hid them in the Sand, and threw down his Musquet about the same place for a token to find them again. I also being afraid, ran and hid my self among the Reeds; but they making a very narrow scrutiny found me out: and having by me a Psalmbook found that passage or Title of a Psalm, where *David* is said to have feigned himself mad before the *Philistines* to escape them, I resolved to do the like, by which means I escaped. When they had me

they

they diſputed what Countreyman I was, and ſome of them ſaid I was a *Dutchman*; but others ſaid I was a *Georgian*, and to my Happineſs the latter ſway'd it. However (not without wounding and killing of ſome of our Company they let us go, and themſelvs departed from us: which the Chirurgeon ſeeing went and after much ſeeking found his Gold.

ON the 20 of *September* it was very good Weather; we therefore made ready to ſet ſail. About noon being under ſail we ſaw about 30 *Tartars* on the Strand who called out to us that we ſhould come aſhoar: This unwelcom ſummons mainly added to our fear; inſomuch that one of the *Banians* ran aſhoar and fell down upon his Knees. The Boat was drawn aſhoar, and after they had conſulted a little together what they ſhould do with us they demanded Ranſom, which was agreed upon for 3 *Rubbles* each Man. They were *Circas* and *Nagayan Tartars*, and accepted of one of the *Banians* for a Pledge till the Ranſom was paid. We went about two Miles with them and left our Veſſel behind us. I had with me a little Coffer of Books which I carried along with me; and was fain to trudge afoot without either Shoes or Stockings thrô Thiſtles and Brambles, inſomuch that my Feet were all bliſtered and bloody. Towards the Evening we came in a Bay where their Shipping lay. Here I met with an *Armenian* whom I had formerly known at *Aſtrachan* who treated me very kindly, as alſo my Companion the Chirurgeon: but we having in ſo long a time not eaten any thing which was fitting for human food, did Anatomize what was ſet before us at ſuch that the *Armenian* obſerving it, thought good to take away before we had half ſatiſfied our appetite for fear we ſhould ſurfeit our ſelves.

HERE we tarried three Days, waiting for a good Wind to go for *Tarku*, but that not falling out in this time are determined rather to go by land than to ſtay there Wind-bound, it being not above a Days Journey, yet very perillous for the *Tartars* who continually lay in wait for diſtreſſed, and ſtranded Paſſengers, in theſe unhappy Proceedings of the *Coſacks*, who made the *Caſpian* Sea very unſafe to ſail.

ON Tuſeday being the 30 of *September* we ſet forward, and after a very tedious Days Travel thrô Boggs and Marſhes we got to a Village inhabited by *Nagayan Tartars*: where we took up our nights reſt in the *Circas* Quarter. Here we met with a Friend of the Chirurgeons, whom we offered 8 Ducats to conduct us to *Derbent*, which he undertook to do. Here I ſpoke alſo with *Ivan Turken* Agent to his Imperial Majeſty, who was a *Turk* born, but a *Ruſſian* Proſelyte, and had a Brother at *Moſcou* who was of the Reformed Religion and an intimate Friend of mine. This ſaid Gentleman intreated me to ſtay longer at *Terku*, but I declined their kind offer yet was fain to accept of it for 2 Days having ſo charged and overloaden my ſtomach with eating that I fell ſick upon it.

ON the 6th. of *October* we ſet forward for *Derbent* in company with the *Banians*. Now by the way you are to note that every day we ſuffered ſuch hunger, a Mans ranſom was thrown into the water, which the ſuperſtitious *Banians* hold for a ſpecial act of Piety and a Religious Injunction. By the way we met ſom Thouſand of *Tartars*, for whom we were not a little affraid, they being *Nagayans* and noted Plagiaries.

AFTER

AFTER three days travel we came to a Village called *Andre Dereefad* which was ſubject to one *Chapelle*, a *Tartarian* Prince. We ſtaid here till Munday following being the ſeventh of *October*. Here I happened to ſpy a *Perſian* who had my Pluſh-Coat on, which he ſaid he had bought at *Terku*. The Fur or Lining coſt me thirty five *Rubbles* at *Muſcou*; and the *Perſian* was willing to ſell it me again for five or ſix *Rubbles*, but I could not accompliſh ſo much Money as to purchaſe it. Here we alſo came to underſtand that my Ships-folk who fled in a Challop were ſtranded and taken ſlaves.

ON Thursday the tenth *ditto*, we came into *Terku*, where we had two *Armenians* for our Friends; theſe alſo brought me to one of their Acquaintance for Protection, where I was adviſed to keep my ſelf very private, being a free Prize for the *Tartars*. Here we alſo found *Lewis Faber* of whom I have already made mention, as alſo *Chriſtian Brand* one of my Ships-folk; who left *Aſtrachan* three Weeks after us, and had been eight Days at *Terku*.

ON the thirteenth we left *Terku*, and hired a perſon for eight Ducats to conduct us to *Derbent*.

ON the ſeventeenth we paſſed by *Boynak*, where I underſtood ſom of our Men were in ſlavery, I ſent our Conduct up to the Town (not daring appear there my ſelf) with Letters to adviſe them to perſiſt in the Chriſtian Faith, if they were preſs'd upon to embrace Mahometaniſm with promiſe of doing my beſt to procure their Redemption. But my Squire the Courier, thought good to give us the Bag, having already got his Money in hand, nor did I ever hear a word from them, althô I gave them directions how to write to me at *Derbent*. However when I arrived there I found *Cornelius de Vries*, who had been my Gunner; and one *Peter Arentſz* of *Sceveling*, who gave me a perfect account of the Ships-Company, how they were taken Slaves, and whither they were carried, *&c.*

WE ſolicited by the *Sultan* of *Derbent* for the Redemption of our Men, who was pleaſed to diſpatch Letters on that behalf to the Prince of the *Calmuc-Tartars*; but having ſent two Poſts, and all to no purpoſe or effect, I went to tender my thanks to the *Sultan* for his Civility and Indeavours; to which he reply'd, "That he was ſorry he could not prevail with the *Tartars* to anſwer "my Deſire, yet was willing to do us any kindneſs that lay in his power, if "we could imagine any mean whereby they might procure their Liberty, *&c.* I inſiſted further to have ſom Horſes for our uſe on the Journey which he granted; but there was none to be had in all the Town, the *Caravan* being but newly ſet forward for *Scamachy*. Yet finding another ready to depart, the Seamen went afoot in company of the *Caravan*. I ſupplied them alſo with neceſſary Proviſions, and told them that I would ſtay a day, or two longer, to ſee if I could get ſom Horſes and then follow them. But it was in vain, for I could not get any, wherefore I followed the *Caravan* and coming at *Scabran*. which is reckoned the half way, we were informed that there were ſeveral Hackneys in the Town, which we hired.

ON the twenty ninth we arrived at *Scamachi*: where we found *John Struys*

our Sail-Maker, who was bought by a *Poliſh* Ambaſſadour, whoſe Aſſiſtance I deſired in an Addreſs to the *Chan*; 'tis true he ſeemed willing to do us ſuch a favour if it could have been done without much Trouble. Here I delivered a Requeſt to the *Chan*, and had *Audience*, wherein I made a plain demonſtration of the Injury our Men ſuffered by the *Calmucs*, *&c.* He promiſed me to do his beſt for them, but all was to no purpoſe, ſo that I was fain to take up ſeventy five *Abbas* upon ſecurity of a *Banian* Merchant, which was to be paid at *Iſpahan* within ſeven Weeks time and twenty five *Abbas* Uſe, or Intereſt; but in caſe of failure of payment in *Iſpahan*, to be paid at *Scamachy* within three Months with fifty *Abbas* Intereſt; the Chirurgeon being my ſecurity. Here I alſo reck'ned with the Chirurgeon, and gave him an Obligation under my hand for what I had received of him, as alſo for what he remained ſecurity for me at *Scamachy*.

ON the fifteenth I left *Scamachy* having with me *Cornelius* the Gunner. *P. Arentſz.* ſtaid with the Chirurgeon, and *J. Struys*, *L. Fabritius* and *Chriſtian Brand* with the *Poliſh* Envoy.

I had very much difficulty by the way to come to *Iſpahan*, yet by the Providence of Almighty God arrived here the tenth of *March*, and have Reſidence for the time, in the *Dutch* Lodge: where I find Sr. *Frederic Bent* Preſident for the *Eaſt-India* Company, to whom, as well as the Gentlemen his Aſſiſtants, I am infinitely obliged to for many Civilities ſhown me. *Cornelius* the Gunner they have ſent away for *Gameron*. I alſo cauſed *J. Struys* and the ſaid Gunner, with another Fore-Maſt Man to ſign a Declaration how they fled away from *Aſtrachan* and left me and the Maſter aſhoar.

SIR, I have not elſe to write, but fearing by this prolixity to have tired your Patience, I ceaſe to be more tedious, and commit you to the Protection of the Moſt High GOD, who that he would in Mercy vouchſafe us a happy meeting is the only and hearty Prayer, of

SIR,

Your obedient Servitor,

DAVID BUTLER.

A TA-

A TABLE

of

The Names and moſt remarkable Things contained in the three Voyages of *IOHN STRUYS.*

A.

AMrack, *what it is.* 54.
Animoſities *in* Aſtrachan. 193.
S. Anthony, *how the Ruſſians ſay he came to* Novogorod. 123.
Ararat, *its Situation and deſcription,* 214, & ſeqq.
Araxes [flu.] *deſcribed.*
Ardebil *a City in* Perſia *deſcribed.*
Argentero. 74.
Argoſtoli, *a good Harbour.* 98.
Arno [flu.] 68.
Aſcenſion *Iſland.* 318.
Aſſhur, *a Feſtival Day among the* Perſians *celebrated in memory of* Hoſſeyn *with a ſolemn Proceſſion.* 263.
Aſtrachan, *it's Situation and Deſcription.* 177, & ſeqq.
Aſtypalæa, *ſee* Stampalia.
An Atteſtation *given the Author by a Hermite upon Mount* Ararat. 216.
Auricular *Confeſſion in the* Ruſſian *Church.* 154
Auſere [flu.] 68.

B.

BAchal, *a Town in* Media. 238.
Bachu, *a place famous for Steel and Iron work.* 280
Bairam, *or* Biram del Carban, *the Paſchal Feaſt of the* Perſians. 305
Banjans, *their Superſtition.* 275.
Baptiſm *among the* Ruſſians. 153.
Baronez, *a ſtrange kind of Fruit found near* Aſtrachan. 180.
Baſilius (Imp.) *firſt Eſtabliſher of the Chriſtian Religion in* Moſcovia. 151.
Baths, *why uſed in* Moſcovia. 147.
In Perſia. 212.
The Bath *of* Tenos, *where the Heathens were wont to waſh before they entered the Temples.* 111.
Battoki, *a form of Puniſhment in* Moſcovia. 156.
Bears *and Wolvs affrighted with Fire.* 119.
A ſtrange Paſſage of a hungry Bear. 121.
Wonderfull boldneſs of Bears ibid.
Bear-baiting *in* Moſcovia. 129.
Beleaſar. 136.
The greateſt Bell *in the World at* Moſcou, *with an accompt of its weight & Dimenſions.* 134.
Bernardo Bragadino *his admirable Courage in an Engagement againſt the Turks* 86,
Bethzyrvan, *Mountains in* Perſia. 283.
Biloege, *the Fiſh whereof* Cavear *is made.* 199.
Boa Viſta [inſul.] *Situation and Deſcription.* 5.
Bocharen, *a Place affoarding great plenty of Furrs.* 223.
Bochdan, *the Ambaſſad-ur for the King of* Poland, *his ill deportment at* Scamachi, *deſires to become* Turk, &c. 244, & ſeqq.
His churliſhneſs to the Author, ibid.
Aſks his advice if he might go for Holland *by the conſent of the* Eaſt-India *Company their Directors.* 246.
Boghze Dome, *a Place appointed for Burial of unſanctified* Ruſſes. 150.
Boldea *the Haven of* Riga. 115.
Bologne, *a City in Italy reſembling a Ship.* 72.
Bonzi *of* Syam *their Office, Habit, &c.* 35.

Bottarge, *a delicate Dish prepared at* Corfu, *made of the Roes of Sturgeon*, 97.
Alſo at Xante. 99.
Bouchadde, Tenedos *ſo called by the* Turks. 91.
Bouchourt, *ſee* Trachana.
Boynak *a Town in* Tartary. 108.
Brak, *the Authors Companion ſold by the* Semkal-Tartars *for* 3 *years, and then by Reverſion to return to his firſt Patron*, 234.
His Wife raviſhed by the Tartars *in preſence of the Company*, 210.
She becomes the Prince of Scemkals *Concubine*, 234.
She hinders her husband for going away, ibid.
He goes away privately, and was never heard of ſince, ibid.
Butriato, *a famous place for Fiſhing*. 97.

C.

CAback [vide Kaback]
Cabo Verdo *Iſlands*. 5. & ſeqq.
Caffers, *th' Inhabitants of* Sierra Liones *ſo called*. 9.
Calmuc Tartars *an ougly People*. 174. *deſcribed*. ibid.
Cambodiers *ſeveral of them taken in a* Junk, *freighted with prohibited Goods, and by the Loving Kindneſs of the* Hollanders, *turned adrift in a Boat without Ruder, Sail, Oars or Proviſion, being but* 40. *Dutch Leagues from Land*. 45.
The ſame Junk *periſhes upon the Rocks, before the Fort* Zelandia. 55.
Candia, *deſcribed*. 100. & ſeqq.
Caſpian *Sea deſcribed*. 122, 224.
Caſwin *a famous Town formerly the Royal Seat of the Kings of* Perſia. 304.
Cavear, *whereof made*, 199.
Uſed in ſtead of Butter, *during the Faſt in* Moſcovia. ibid.
Caſan, *a City and Countrey in* Ruſſia, 166. *deſcribed*. 177, & ſeqq.
Cephalonia [*Inſul.*] 98.
Cerigo, *an Iſland lying about* 13 Dutch *leagues from* Candia. 99, 100.
Chalſe Schuran, *or Dipping of the Croſs, a Ceremony uſed by the* Armenians. 248.
Children, *put to death at* Madagaſcar, *and why*. 19.
Chioggio, *a City in* Italy *oppoſite to* Venice *famous for Fiſhing and Gardens*. 73.
Chryſolodos, *his Tomb in the Iſle of* Pathmos. 79.
Churches, *in the City* Moſcou *computed to be in number above* 1700. 135.
Circas Tartars *the Bounds of their Countrey*, 204.
Their Perſons deſcribed, ibid.
The Women great beauties, ibid.
Go with naked Breſts, 205.
Their emulation in Habit, and freedom to converſe with Strangers, ibid.
The Religion of the Circas Tartars *and their Idolatry*, ibid.
Their Funerals. 206.
Circumciſion *uſed at* Madagaſcar. 21.
Cochino, *formerly called* Epheſtias *and then the chief Town of* Lemnos. 91.
Colomna, *a beautiful Village in* Moſcovia. 125, 158.
Communion *in the* Ruſſian *Church, how*, 154.
Condea *a Town in* Lemnos. 91.
Congo, *a good* Corps du Garde *and Lanthorn for the Chriſtians to enter the* Archipelago. 100.
Corfu, *an Iſland of great ſtrength*. 95.
Colac Krim, *an exceeding high Mountain*. 173.
Coſacks, *their Diviſion and Limits*. 183.
Cothany, *a Town in* Media. 238.
Crap, *a Root uſed in Dying*. 222.
Crim *or* Cerem Tartars, *their Cuſtoms, Nature and Idolatry*, 163.
Ceremonies about the Dead, uſual Habits and

and Marriages. 164.
Crocodiles *uſed for Medicine at* Syam. 29.
Cuſmademianſki, *a City upon the* Wolga,
Czar *of* Moſcovy *ſends to* Amſterdam, *for Seamen.* 114.
Whence and Why he is called Czaar, 155.
His Power and Soveraignty, ibid.
His Title, ibid.
His Revenues and ſtrictneſs of Juſtice. 156.

D.

DAgeſtan *a Countrey of the* Tartars *ſubject to ſeveral Princes and Lords.* 210.
Dageſtan Tartars *why ſo called,* 2:7.
The nature, form, and way of Living of the Inhabitants, ibid, & ſeqq.
More merciſull than the Calmucs. 234.
Date-Trees *how procreated.* 341.
Delos, *an Iſland in the* Ægean *Sea famous for the many Temples and Relicts of Heatheniſh Antiquities.* 110.
Den Dupvel van *TAYOVAN, an Animal in* Formoſa, *ſo called by the* Hollanders. 56.
Derbent, *the Key of* Perſia *on the* Hyrcan *Sea.* 225.
The Ruins and Relicts of the Walls thereof built by Alexander the Great. 226.
Watch Towers and great Slave-market at Derbent. 227.
Slaves unkindly uſed at Derbent. 228.
Dian Manans, *an imagined Deity among the* Madagaſcars.
Dick Kop, *A ſmall Fiſh of a wonderfull ſtrength.* 225.
Don *a River, formerly* Tanais, *whence the* Don Coſacks, *runs not into the* Wolga *according to the vulgar opinion.* 194.
Dwino, 136.
Dydenof, *a Town and Wharf on the* Volga. 158.

E.

EArth-quakes *frequent at* Xante, 99.
Zantorini, 107.
2 *great Earth-quakes at* Zantorini, ibid.
Several Earth-quakes at Scamachi, *where by one* 80000 *Men were deſtroyed, Mountains and Villages removed, &c.* 240.
Eaſter, *how celebrated by the* Moſcovians. 158.
Elephants *uſed for Executioners at* Syam, 47.
Served in Gold, 32.
Wars about the white Elephant. 33.
A merry paſſage about an Elephant. 63.
Embro [inſul.]
The Engliſh *take* Saint Helena, 355.
And the Ship Europa, *a Dutch* Eaſt-India *Ship,* ibid.
Alſo the Admiral and Vice-Admiral. 358.
Enkurekan, *a venemous creature like a ſpider, but bigger than a mouſe.* 311.
Epiphany *celebrated by the Armenian Chriſtians at* Iſpahan. 325.
Ervan *or* Urwan, *a City under Mount* Ararat *in* Armenia. 213.

F.

FAſts, *four ſolemn Faſts in the year in* Ruſſia, *and the great Prophaneneſs therein committed.* 154.
Ferrara, *a Town in* Italy. 73.
Firando *in* Japon. 59.
Flax, *a great Commodity in* Moſcovia. 135.
Formoſa [Inſul.] *it's Situation, Clime and Circumference,* 55.
Fertility and Products, ibid.
Form and complexion of the Inhabitants, 56. 57.
A Man with a Tail burn'd at Formoſa. ibid.

Habit of Men and Women there. 58.
Furrs, *a great Profit to the Great Duke of* Moſcovia. 138.

G.

GAmeron, *or* Bendar *in* Perſia *deſcribed.* 349.
Garlick *and Onions much uſed in* Ruſſia 137.
Garriſenda, *a Tower in* Bologne *built crooked for a Proof of Art.* 72.
Genua *deſcribed.* 3.
Gilan *an eminent place for Silk.* 223.
The Bay of Gilan *it's compaſs.* 224.
Greece *deſcribed.* 92.
Cuſtome and uſual Attire of the Inhabitants. 92, 93.
Grotta Sybilla. 70.

H.

HAdzi Biram Aly, *a rich Merchant in* Perſia *buys the Author.* 229.
The Author ſaves him from drowning. ibid.
His great kindneſs to the Author. 230.
Hardineſs *of the* Ruſſians *in extremities.* 137, 138.
Hares, *in great abundance about* Cothany. 238
St. Helena (Inſul) 63.
Hemp, *a main Product and the ſtaple Commodity in* Moſcovia. 301.
Het Vuys te Gennip, *the Ship on board of which the Author was in great danger.* 66.
Honey, *found in great plenty at* Milo, 111.
And in Moſcovia. 135.
Hoſſeyn, *a* Perſian *Saint and Second Son to* Aly *a Feaſt celebrated to the memory of him.* 263
Hunting, *a main exerciſe in* Formoſa. 59.

I.

St JAgo [Inſul.] *Situation, 6. and Deſcription 7.*
Japoneezes *their Form, Nature, Habit and Cuſtoms, &c.* 61.
Ilha del Fuego. 7.
Ilha de Brava. 8.
Indrapoura [Inſul.] 24.
Ilpahan *deſcribed.* 315.
Judia *the chief City of* Syam *deſcribed.* 27.

K.

Kabacks, *Alehouſes or Taverns in* Moſcovia, *farmed of the Emperour.* 156.
Kabelang, *a Province in Formoſa.* 38.
Kalikleſthan. 251.
Kamuſchincha, *a* Ruſſian *Town taken in by Craft of* Radzin. 193.
Kaſſchan, *its Scituation and Deſcription.* 310.
A Key *made of an Emerald, ſhown in a Church at* Genua. 4
Keydar Peyamber, *a very high Mountain in* Perſia. 301.
Kieſelarſche Kolthre. 201.
Kiſſel-baſſched; *the Soldiery ſo called at* Derbent, *their unruly and ill temper.* 209.
Kiſiloſeyn, *a ſwift River in* Perſia. 299.
Knutter, *a form of Puniſhment in* Ruſſia. 156.
Koſtar, *a great River running through the Mountains of* Elbur. 236.
Koctep, *a village in* Perſia. ibid.

L.

LAzaro Mocenigo *fights the* Argerines, Tripoleezes, *&c.* 103.
Killed. 105.
Laar, *or* Lar, *a City in* Perſia *deſcribed.* 246.
Leghorn *deſcribed.* 67.
Lemnos, *attacqued by the* Venetians *and ſurrendred upon Articles,* 92.
Deſcribed. ibid.
Lifelanders, *their Properties, Habits and Cuſtoms.* 127.
Linden-Tree, *its manifold uſe.* 165.

A List *of the Head-Officers in the* Venetian *Navy as they were ingaged againſt the* Turks. 83.
Lorenzo Marcello *General of the* Venetians *killed.* 88.

M.

MAdagaſcar; *Situation of the Iſland.* 15.
Cuſtoms of the Inhabitants, 19.
Their Marriages, 18.
Funerals. 19.
Religion, Superſtitions, 21.
Government. 22.
An odd paſſage, where a Dutch Captain meets with a King of that Countrey who had formerly bin his Slave. 13.
Fertility of Madagaſcar. ibid.
Majo [Inſul.] *Situation and Deſcription.* 6.
Malefactors, *how punished in* Moſcovia 156.
Malhora, *a rock near* Leghorn. 67.
Marco Bembo *Admiral of the Ships of war in the* Venetian *Armade hotly ingaged with the* Turks; 86.
Takes the Capitana; 89.
Killed. 105.
Mares-milk *in great eſteem by the* Tartars. 182.
Marriages *of the* Madagaſcars, 18
Of the Syammers, 39.
Of the Moſcovians. 131, & ſeqq.
Merchants, *eight murthered in a Wood of* Moſcovia 126.
Metellino, *ſee* Mytelene.
Meynderts *Iſland.* 203.
Middleton, *an* Engliſh *Ship engaged with a Fleet of Turkiſh Galleys, againſt which ſhe valiantly defends her ſelf.* 79.
Milo [Inſul.] 74 75.
Eminent for able Sea-men and Fiſhers, 111.
The prime place to Water at. ibid.
Mochan, *or* Mokan, *a great Heath in* Perſia, *dangerous for Robbers.* 283.
Moſcou *deſcribed.* 130.
Mulbery Trees *in great plenty at* Tenos. 111.
Mummay Kobas, *a moſt coſtly Balſem proceeding out of a Rock.* 262.
Murtherers *delivered over to the Friends of the murthered Party in* Perſia. 262.
Muſkar, *a City in* Media. 237.
Muſkettos, *many of thoſe Flies in* Lifeland.
Mytilene, *an Iſland in poſſeſſion of the* Turks. 76.
A bold Attempt of the Author and his Company to fetch off cattel from Mytilene. ibid.
A deſcription of that Iſland. 109.

N.

NAchay, *a little Fiſh of a wonderfull ſtrength.* 225.
Nagayan *and* Crim Tartars *deſcribed.* 181.
Nangueſaque, *or* Nangueſaky, *a City in* Japon, *built by the* Portugueezes. 60.
Merchandiſe and Traffic of that Place, ibid.
A great Hurricano that happened there, ibid.
Situation and Deſcription of Nangueſaky. 61.
Naphtha, *an oil running out of Rocks, how got.* 237, 238.
Napoli di Malvazia *attacqued by the* Venetians. 106.
Natens *a City in* Perſia. 312.
Naurus, *ſee New years day.* 257.
Nayſobath, *a fair village in* Schirwan, *or* Old Media, *where the* Holſteyn *Ambaſſadors ſuffered Shipwrack.* 237.
Necromancy, *much practiſed in* Lifeland. 117.
New years day *celebrated by the* Perſians. 257.
Nicſia, *an Iſland famous for the Temple of* Apollo, *whoſe Ruins ſtill appear.* 10.
Nieu meulen [*oppid.*] 116.

Niſen-

Niſen-Novogored. 161.
Niſobath, [*ſee* Nayſobath]
Noah's *Sepulchre.* 332.
Novogorod *deſcribed.* 123.

O.

OEtsjoege. 199.
Onions *and Garlick much eaten in* Ruſſia. 137.
The great Orchard *near* Tzurbag, *how planted,* 213.
Variety of fruit therein. ibid.
Oron, *the* Primo Vizier *comes down to ſee Ingagement between the* Venetian *and* Ottoman Armada. 104.
Oſmin, *a Province and Dominion of the* Tartars. 210.
Their manner of chuſing a Prince or Protector. ibid.
The Author and his Company taken, hardly uſed, made Slaves and brought to the Prince of Oſmin. 210, 211.
Taxed for Coſacs *and* Radziniſts. 212.

P.

PAdar, *the Inhabitants of* Kectep *in* Perſia *ſo called, much addicted to ſtealing.* 237.
Pagods *of* Syam. 35, 36.
Liberality of the Syamers *to the* Pagods *and* Bonzi. ibid.
Palm-Sunday *how celebrated by the* Ruſſians. 157.
Palſo Caſtro *a Town in Lemnos.* 92.
Paniegros *a* Poliſh *Nobleman murthered in his* Bed. 243.
Parmach, *or* Barmach, *a Mountain where they get* Naphtha, *or* Petroleum. 237.
Patany *aſſiſts the King of* Syam *againſt* Ava. 33.
Pathmos, *the City and Iſland.* 93.
Patriarch *of* Moſcovia, *his Office, Power, Habit, &c.* 152.
Peace, *how treated upon and ratified by the Kings of* Madagaſcar. 23.
Pelicans *in great abundance about the* Caſpian *Sea.* 201.
Perſepolis. 332: & ſeqq.
Petroleum, *ſee* Naphtha.
Petzora, *a montanous Countrey in* Ruſſia. 136.
Pitſiora *in* Lifeland *deſcribed.*
Piſa *deſcribed.* 68.
Pletskow *in* Lifeland *deſcribed.* 121.
A ſhank-bone of a giant to be ſeen at Pletskow. 122.
Po [flu.] 73.
Pochmelie, *a* Ruſſian *Diſh.* 119.
Poddowodda, *what it is.* 122.
Polygamy *allowed at* Madagaſcar, 18.
In Syam, 40.
By the Crim-Tartars. 164.
Porto de Caniſos. 1.
de Ribeirra Corea. ibid.
de Praye. ibid.
Prattelino, *a famous Pallace in* Florence. 69.

Q.

QUas, *a* Ruſſian *Liquor.* 139.

R.

RAdzin, *his Offſpring,* 183.
The Reaſon of his Rebellion, 184.
The firſt Inſolences he committed, ibid.
His Treachery and Cruelty on the Confines of Perſia, 185.
He ſubmits and obtains pardon from the Czar, 186.
Throws a Perſian *Princeſs into the* Wolga, 187.
His ſtrictneſs and Puniſhment of Adultery, 188.
Returns back for Don, 189.
The Ruſſians *that follow him are demanded by*

by the Governor of Aſtrachan, ibid.
Which he refuſes to ſend back. 190.
He gains the Aſtrachan *Fleet by Treachery,* 191.
His Power and Aw, ibid.
His cruelty when drunk, ibid.
The Increaſe of his Army, ibid.
He refuſes the Title of King, 192.
Sends Legates to the King of Perſia, *and their ill ſucceſs,* ibid.
Sends out Emmiſſaries into ſeveral Towns upon the Volga, 193.
Increaſes his Fleet and Army, ibid.
Takes in Kamuſchinka *by craft.*
Revenues *of the King of* Syam, 34.
Of the Czar of Moſcovia. 156.
Rheno [flu.] 72.
Rheſan *a fertile Province in* Moſcovia. 136.
Riga *deſcribed.*
Roſtof, 136.
Ruſſes, *their Form, Nature and Properties,* 138.
Their Diet and uſual Drink, 139.
Their Beaſtlineſs when drunk. 140.
Their great eſteem of Brandy *and Tobacco,* ibid.
Addicted to Calumny and Jarrs, ibid.
Their uſual Habit, Painting or ſtaining of the Face in practiſe among the Female kind, 141.
The Marriages of the Gentry, ibid, & ſeqq.
Of the Peſantry, 145.
And of the Clergy. 153.
Their Divorcements and the occaſion of the ſame, 146.
Their Superſtitious opinion about cleanneſs and uncleanneſs; 146, 147.
Of their Baths and Hardineſs, ibid.
Their Peculiar Actions, Geſtures and Cuſtoms of the Ruſſians *from other People,* 148.
Of the Viſitation of their ſick. ibid.
Ceremonies about their Dead, 149.
And the manner of their Funerals, 150.
Of their Religion and Church Government, 151.

S.

Sabakſar. 165.
Sakky, *a Liquor uſed in* Japon. 60.
Samos, *an Iſland in the* Archipelago, 93.
Two Prizes taken there from the Turks, ibid.
The Author and 6 more there taken and made Slaves. 94.
Sariol Kurgan, *a Mountain famous for the Sepulchre of an Emperour and 70 Kings.* 173.
Sattiry Boggere, *an Iſland at the Mouth of the* Wolga *taken in by the* Coſac-*Rebells.* 173.
The Rebells erect there a Watch-Tower. 185.
Sauceages *of* Bologne *how made.* 72.
Savona [flu.] 72.
Scabaran *a Cape in the* Caſpian *Sea.* 224.
Item *a City in* Media, *famous for Rice.* 237.
Scalimene, Lemnos *ſo called.* 91.
Scamachi, *or* Sumahi, *a famous Mart in* Media *it's Situation,* 238.
Deſcribed, 239.
Very ſubject to Earth-quakes, ibid.
Scirwan *an eminent Place for great plenty of Silk.* 273.
Scorpions *very annoyſom at* Kaſchan. 311.
Scyro [Inſul.] 110.
Sierlan, *an Iſland.* 203.
Sierras, *or* Scyras *deſcribed.* 331.
Skorodom, *a part of* Moſcou *ſo called.* 135.
Slave market at Ervan, 213.
At Derbent. 238.
Slaves, *how unjuſtly uſed by the* Turks, 80.
How uſed at Derbent, 228.
And in Moſcovia. 138.
Smeriglio, *a black ſtone of great eſteem, found at* Nicſia. 109.
Smiowa, *a Mountain,* 173.
Smolensko, 136.
Spoon meat *much uſed in* Ruſſia. 137.

Stampalia, *or* Aſtypalæa *one of the* Cyclid *Iſlands.* 109.
Standia *the Rendevous of the* Venetians. 103.
Stariza, *taken in by the* Coſacks, *and* 1200 *Soldiers kill'd* 194.
Stenko [*or* Stephen] Radzin, *ſee* Radzin.
Storm *at Sea near* Xante. 74.
Sultan *of* Derbent *very favourable to the* Hollanders. 233.
Sultanie, *a famous Town in* Perſia *deſcribed* Swiatki. 166.
Syberia, *a woody Countrey in* Moſcovia, *famous for* Furrs, 136.
The Place of exile for Men that beat their Wives too much. 140.

T.

TAfflis, *a City in* Georgia. 249.
Taurus [Mount.] 299.
Teil-tree [*ſee Linden tree*]
Temple *of* Jeruſalem *at* Moſcou. 134.
Of Appollo, *it's Ruins.* 109.
Tenedos *beſieged by the* Venetian *Armade and ſurrendred upon Articles.* 91.
Deſcribed. ibid.
Beſieged again by the Turks *but in vain.* 104.
Tenos, *the Caſtle blown up with its own Powder.* 110.
Terky, *a Moſcoviam City its Situation and preſent condition.* 203.
Terra Lemnia, *or* Sigillata. 92.
Torſtok *a River and City in* Moſcovia. 126.
Tobacco, *coveted by the* Ruſſians, 126.
Forbidden by Proclamation to be ſmoked. 140.
Tortoiſes *in great abundance at* Balharu *in* Perſia. 283.
At Aſcenſion *Iſland.* 358.
Trachana *and* Bouchort *two ſorts of Bread made at* Mytilene, *very durable.* 109.
Troy, *the Remnant of that famous City.* 78.
The Author *taken in a Vineyard near* Troy *and made ſlave by the* Turks.
Tweer *a City in* Moſcovia. 116.
Tzanle, *a beautifull Town in* Perſia. 284.
Tzawaar, *a Place in* Perſia *where every one is to ſhow a Paſport.* 281.
Tzornoyar, *a City in* Ruſs-Tartary. 176.
Tzurbag. [oppid.] 203.

V.

VIathe, *its Sterility but abundance of Furrs, Honey, and Fiſh.* 136.
Volſke, *a Province in* Moſcovia *rich of Furs.* 136.
Uſtioga, *a Province in* Moſcovia, *famous for plenty of Fiſh and Caſtel.* 137.

W.

WAter, *conſecrated by the* Armenian *Chriſtians.* 248.
Wax *a great Commodity in* Moſcovia. 135.
Whirlpools *in the* Caſpian *Sea.* 222.
Whore-market *at* Caſwin *in* Perſia. 305.
Wildgeeſe *and Pelicans in great abundance about the* Caſpian *Sea.* 201.
Wolf *baiting at* Moſcou. 129.
Great multitudes of thoſe Beaſts near Colomna *in* Moſcovia, 161.
Wolmar [oppid.] *deſcribed.* 118, 119.
Wolodomir, *a fertile countrey in* Ruſſia. 136.
Wood: *A Wood in* Syberia *whoſe end cannot be found out.* 137.

X.

XAnte, *an Iſland affoarding great plenty of wine.* 74.
Many Earth-quakes on that Iſland. 99.
Great ſcareity of Water. ibid.

Z.

ZAntorini, *an Iſland ſubject to* Earthquakes *and Meteors.* 107.
Wine very cheap on this Iſland 107.
The Author left aſhoar and in great peril of being taken. ibid.
Zelandia, *a Fort in* East-India. 63.
Zemſchi Precaus *a Place in* Ruſſia *where any perſon that is found Dead is brought and expoſed to public view.* 150.
Zide Tzaybrail *taken up and canoniſed after he had bin dead* 100. *years.* 215.
His Sepulchre deſcribed. 290.
The Revenues of the ſame. 296.
Zierlan, *or* Tzierlan *an Iſland on the* Caſpian *Sea.* 203.
Zouaſchi *a Neſt of* Turkiſh *Pyrats,* 107.
Taken by Lazaro Mocenigo. ibid.

ERRATA.

PAg. 117. l. 3. read, *and ſhave all their Hair, except* p. 52. l. 12. *before. ibid.* l. 20. *ſteel.* p. 3. l. 27. *about. ibid. valleys.* 45. 18. *with.* p. 71. l. 20. *Gratitude left* p. 153. l. 30. for *than* read *thou.*

If any thing elſe occurr that may obſcure the ſence which (by reaſon of my abſence from the Preſs) happens in ſome places, the Reader I hope will either be pleaſed to pardon, or amend with the Pen, as alſo the Literal Errors which my leiſure at this time will not permit me to rectify.

NB. The Book-binder may alſo pleaſe to take notice that the Print of the Maſſacre of *Aſtrachan* may be more fittly placed at *pag.* 373. than before the Narratives, according to the Directions given after the *Elenchus*, in the fore part of the Book.

